

# ANCIENT INDIAN TRADITION & MYTHOLOGY

TRANSLATED BY  
A BOARD OF SCHOLARS

EDITED BY  
Dr. G. P. BHATT

VOLUME 30

ANCIENT INDIAN TRADITION AND  
MYTHOLOGY SERIES

[PURĀṆAS IN TRANSLATION]

VOLUMES

ŚIVA 1-4

LIṄGA 5-6

BHĀGAVATA 7-11

GARUḌA 12-14

NĀRADA 15-19

KŪRMA 20-21

BRAHMĀṆḌA 22-26

AGNI 27-30

VARĀHA 31-32

BRAHMA 33-36

VOLUMES UNDER PREPARATION

BHAVIṢYA

BRAHMAVAIVARTA

DEVĪBHĀGAVATA

KĀLIKĀ

MĀRKAṆḌEYA

MATSYA

PADMA

SKANDA

VĀMANA

VĀYU

VIṢṆU

VIṢṆUDHARMOTTARA

THE  
AGNI PURĀṆA

PART IV

TRANSLATED AND ANNOTATED BY  
N. GANGADHARAN

MOTILAL BANARSIDASS • DELHI  

---

UNESCO • PARIS

*First Edition : Delhi, 1987*

MOTILAL BANARSIDASS  
Bungalow Road, Jawahar Nagar, Delhi 110 007

*Branches*

Chowk, Varanasi 221 001

Ashok Rajpath, Patna 800 004

120 Royapettah High Road, Mylapore, Madras 600 004

© MOTILAL BANARSIDASS

ISBN: 81-208-0306-x

UNESCO COLLECTION OF REPRESENTATIVE WORKS—Indian Series

*This book has been accepted in the Indian Translation  
Series of the Unesco Collection of Representative  
Works jointly sponsored by the United Nations  
Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization  
(UNESCO) and the Government of India.*

**All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced in any form or by any means, without the written permission of the publisher.**

PRINTED IN INDIA

BY JAINENDRA PRAKASH JAIN AT SHRI JAINENDRA PRESS, A-45 NARAINA INDUSTRIAL AREA, PHASE I, NEW DELHI 110 028 AND PUBLISHED BY NARENDRA PRAKASH JAIN FOR MOTILAL BANARSIDASS, DELHI 110 007.

## PUBLISHER'S NOTE

The purest gems lie hidden in the bottom of the ocean or in the depth of rocks. One has to dive into the ocean or delve into the rocks to find them out. Similarly, truth lies concealed in the language which with the passage of time has become obsolete. Man has to learn that language before he discovers that truth.

But he has neither the means nor the leisure to embark on that course. We have, therefore, planned to help him acquire knowledge by an easier course. We have started the series of Ancient Indian Tradition and Mythology in English Translation. Our goal is to universalize knowledge through the most popular international medium of expression. The publication of the Purāṇas in English Translation is a step towards that goal.



## PREFACE

This thirtieth volume in the series on *Ancient Indian Tradition and Mythology* forms the fourth and last part of the *Agni Purāṇa*. It contains the English translation of chapters 312-383.

The project of this series was envisaged in 1970 by the late Lala Sundar Lal Jain of Messers Motilal Banarsidass. Thirty-six volumes of the series, including the present one, have so far been published and others are in progress. With the release of this volume complete sets of the translation of ten Mahā-purāṇas, viz. Agni, Bhāgavata, Brahma, Brahmāṇḍa, Garuḍa, Kūrma, Liṅga, Nārada, Śiva and Varāha are now available to the interested readers.

Two attractive and very useful features of this Part of the *Agni Purāṇa* are: (1) a new Introduction supplementing the one added to Part I and giving additional information about the subject matter discussed in the various chapters of the *Purāṇa* and its salient points and thus rendering superfluous any attempt to give a summary of the contents of the present Part here, and (2) also a detailed Index covering all the four parts of the *Purāṇa*.

It is our pleasant duty to put on record our sincere thanks to Dr. R.N. Dandekar and the UNESCO authorities for their kind encouragement and valuable help which render this work more useful than it would otherwise have been. We are extremely grateful to Dr. Gangadharan of the Sanskrit Department, University of Madras, for translating the text and contributing the Introduction as well as the Index. We are also thankful to all those who have been helpful in our project.

—*Editor*



# CONTENTS

PREFACE	vii
ABBREVIATIONS	xiii
INTRODUCTION	xv
CHAPTERS	
312. The occasions for the use of the <i>Tvaritā-mantra</i> and the benefits	863
313. The <i>mantras</i> relating to the worship of different gods	865
314. <i>Mantras</i> relating to the worship of Goddess Tvaritā	868
315. Narration of <i>mantras</i> relating to paralysing, captivating etc.	871
316. Narration of different kinds of <i>mantras</i>	872
317. The different kinds of <i>mantras</i> of Śiva	873
318. The mode of worshipping Gaṇapati, accomplishing all things	876
319. Mode of worshipping Vāgīśvarī (Goddess of speech)	878
320. The different mystic diagrams	879
321. The appeasing rites relating to <i>Aghorāstra</i>	883
322. The appeasing rite employing the <i>mantra</i> of the weapon of Paśupati	885
323. The <i>mantra</i> of the weapons of Aghora and the six constituents	887
324. Appeasing rite for lord Śiva	891
325. The benefits of wearing the rosary beads and the counting of the formulae with them	894
326. Description of the mode of worshipping Goddess Gaurī for gaining enjoyment, emancipation etc.	896

327. The greatness of establishing a <i>līṅga</i> and worship with the accessories	899
328. The rules of prosody	901
329. An abridgement of rules of prosody relating to the Vedic metres	902
330. An abridgement of the rules of metres	902
331. Metres of different kinds	905
332. The metres of un-equal characteristics in the four quarters	908
333. Description of metres having equal characteristics in the alternate quarters	910
334. Description of metres having similar characteristics in the four quarters	911
335. The tabular representation of long and short vowels of different metres	915
336. Description of phonetics	915
337. Description of the characteristics of a <i>kāvya</i>	918
338. Description of the different types of drama	921
339. Description of the sentiments, emotions, hero etc.	923
340. Description of diction and mode	927
341. Description of the actions and movements of the limbs	928
342. Definition of dramatic representation	930
343. Definition of the embellishment of words	933
344. Description of the embellishment of sense	939
345. The embellishments of sound and sense	942
346. Investigation into poetic excellences	944
347. Investigation into poetic blemishes	946
348. List of mono-syllabic words	950
349. The <i>pratyāhāras</i> and fundamental rules in grammar	953
350. The forms of completed euphonic combinations	954
351. Perfected forms of inflection in the nouns	957
352. Narration of the finished forms of the substantives in the feminine	966
353. The finished forms of substantives in the neuter	968

354. The relation between a noun and a verb in a sentence	979
355. Different kinds of compounds	973
356. The rules governing the formation of <i>taddhīta</i> (secondary nominal bases)	976
357. The formation of the primary nominal bases by adding primary affixes known as <i>uṇādi</i> , beginning with affix <i>u</i>	980
358. The completed form of the verbs after adding the conjugational signs etc.	981
359. The finished forms after adding the <i>kṛt</i> affixes (primary affixes added to verbs)	985
360. The synonyms of group of words denoting the celestial region and the nether world	986
361. The indeclinables	996
362. Words having many meanings	1001
363. The words denoting earth, city, forest and herbs	1005
364. Words denoting men and four classes of men	1013
365. Words relating to the class of brahmins	1017
366. Words relating to <i>kṣatriya</i> , <i>vaiśyas</i> and other classes	1018
367. The class of words dependent on the substantives for their genders	1024
368. Constant dissolution, occasional and total dissolution	1028
369. The description of absolute dissolution and the process of creation	1030
370. The constituent parts of a body	1034
371. The description of hells	1037
372. The major and minor religious observances ( <i>yama-s</i> and <i>niyama-s</i> )	1041
373. Description of <i>āsanas</i> (different physical postures) and control of breath	1044
374. Contemplation	1046
375. Fixing-up of the mind in the object of contemplation	1049
376. Deep meditation ( <i>samādhi</i> )	1051
377. Knowledge of Brahman	1055

378. Knowledge of Brahman	1057
379. Knowledge of Brahman again	1059
380. Knowledge of non-dual Brahman	1062
381. The essence of the <i>Bhagavadgītā</i>	1068
382. The <i>Yamagītā</i>	1073
383. The glorification of the <i>Agni purāna</i>	1077
INDEX	1085

## ABBREVIATIONS

Common and self-evident abbreviations such as Ch(s)—Chapter(s), p—page, pp—pages, V—Verse, VV—Verses, Ftn—footnote, Hist. Ind. Philo.—History of Indian Philosophy are not included in this list.

- ABORI *Annals of the Bhandarkar Oriental Research Institute, Poona*
- AGP S. M. Ali's *The Geography of Purānas*, PPH, New Delhi, 1973
- AIHT *Ancient Indian Historical Tradition*, F. E. Pargiter, Motilal Banarsidass (MLBD), Delhi
- AITM *Ancient Indian Tradition and Mythology Series*, MLBD, Delhi
- AP *Agni Purāna*, Guru Mandal Edition (GM), Calcutta, 1957
- Arch.S.Rep. Archaeological Survey Report
- AV *Atharva Veda*, Svādhyāya Mandal, Aundh
- Bd. P. *Brahmāṇḍa Purāna*, MLBD, Delhi 1973
- BG *Bhagavadgītā*
- Bh. P. *Bhāgavata Purāna*, Bhagavat Vidyapeeth, Ahmedabad
- Br. *Brāhmaṇa* (preceded by name such as Śatapatha)
- BS. P. *Bhaviṣya Purāna*, Vishnu Shastri Bapat, Wai
- BV. P. *Brahma Vairavarta Purāna*, GM, 1955-57
- CC *Caturvarga Cintāmaṇi* by Hemādri
- CVS *Carāṇa Vyūha Sūtra* by Śaunaka; Com. by Mahidāsa
- DB *Devi Bhāgavata*, GM, 1960-61
- De or *The Geographical Dictionary of Ancient and Medieval India*, N. L. De, Oriental Reprint, Delhi, 1971
- GDAMI
- Dh. S. *Dharma Sūtra* (preceded by the author's name such as Gautama)
- ERE *Encyclopaedia of Religion and Ethics* by Hastings
- GP *Garuḍa Purāna*, ed. R. S. Bhattacharya, Chowkhamba, Varanasi, 1964

GS	<i>Gṛhya Sūtra</i> (preceded by the name of the author such as Āpastamba)
HD	<i>History of Dharma Śāstra</i> , P. V. Kane, G. O. S.
IA	<i>The Indian Antiquary</i>
IHQ	<i>The Indian Historical Quarterly</i>
JP	<i>Purāṇa</i> (Journal of the Kashiraj Trust), Varanasi
KA	<i>Kauṣīlya Arthaśāstra</i>
KP	<i>Kūrma Purāṇa</i> , Venkaṭeśvara Press Edn., Bombay; also Kashiraj Trust Edn., Varanasi, 1971
LP	<i>Līṅga Purāṇa</i> , GM, 1960; also MLBD, Delhi, 1981
Manu.	<i>Manusmṛti</i>
Mbh.	<i>Mahābhārata</i> , Gītā Press, Gorakhpur, VS 2014
MkP	<i>Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇa</i>
MN	<i>Mahābhārata Nāmānukramaṇi</i> , Gītā Press, Gorakhpur, VS 2016
MtP	<i>Matsya Purāṇa</i> , GM, 1954
MW	Monier Williams' <i>Sanskrit-English Dictionary</i> , MLBD, Delhi, 1976
NP	<i>Nāradiya</i> or <i>Nārada Purāṇa</i> , Venkaṭeśvara Press, Bombay
PCK	<i>Bhāratavarṣiya Prācina Caritrakośa</i> , Siddheshwar Shastri, Poona, 1968
Pd.P.	<i>Padma Purāṇa</i> , GM, 1957-59
PE	<i>Purāṇic Encyclopaedia</i> , V. Mani, English version, MLBD, Delhi, 1975
PR or	<i>Puranic Records on Hindu Rites and Customs</i> ,
PRHRC	R. C. Hazra, Calcutta, 1948
ṚV	<i>Ṛg-Veda</i> , Svādhyāya Mandal, Aundh
Śat.Br.	<i>Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa</i>
SC or SMC	<i>Smṛti Candrikā</i> by Devanna Bhaṭṭa
SEP	<i>Studies in Epics and Purāṇas</i> , A.D. Pusalkar, Bharatiya Vidya Bhavan (BVB), Bombay

# INTRODUCTION

In the introduction to the first part of this translation, the origin of the *Purāṇas*, the definition of the term and the five topics that the *Purāṇas* were expected to cover, the number and sequence of the *Purāṇas*, their date of composition and classification into different groups were explained in detail.

The *Purāṇas* themselves and the modern scholars as well have made attempts to classify the *Purāṇas* into different groups on the basis of their subject matter.<sup>1</sup> On account of the varied nature of their contents, the *Garuḍapurāṇa*, the *Agniḥpurāṇa* and the *Nāradaḥpurāṇa* were classified as *Purāṇas* of an encyclopaedic nature.

The traditional list of the *Purāṇas* found in the *Viṣṇuḥpurāṇa*, places the *Agniḥpurāṇa* as the eighth in order. The text printed by the Venkatesvara Steam Press, Bombay has 383 chapters whereas the text printed by others has 382 chapters. This is because the former contains an additional chapter numbered 135 dealing with *Saṅgrāmaḥvidyā*.

This *Purāṇa* as it is available to us now has been shown<sup>2</sup> to be a spurious one composed between 700 and 1000 A.D. on the basis of the materials on *dharma* incorporated therein. The *alaṅkāra* section also indicates the influence of various schools of *alaṅkāraśāstra* upto Bhoja's times and may be deemed to have been included around 9th century, and the genuine *Āgneyapurāṇa* with the name of *Vahnīpurāṇa* is counted as an *Upapurāṇa*. Yet it is an invaluable piece of document throwing light on the culture of that period. Although the text itself gives the number of verses as 12000 (ch. 272, vv. 10-11), Bhāgavata, BV. & Padma as 15400, Skanda and Matsya as 11600, the text as in the

---

1. See Dr. N. Gangadharan, *Liṅgapurāṇa—A Study*, pp. 49-50.

2. R. G. Hazra, *PRHRC*, pp. 134-40.

present translation has about 9650 verses<sup>1</sup> besides some collection of tantric syllables not put in the metrical form.

Besides the five topics that a *Purāṇa* should deal with, according to the definition, this *Purāṇa* contains many other topics, some legitimately following from the five topics and others of varied nature. The subject matter coming under these topics reflect the cream of the culture of the particular period and serves as a guide to understand the same. This *Purāṇa* deals with varied topics such as (a brief description of) the manifestations of Viṣṇu (and) summary of the epics, *smṛti* material, *mantra* and *tantra*, physiognomy, political expediency, medicine, equinology, veterinary science, science relating to elephants, metrics, poetics, grammar, lexicography, archery and lapidary science.

As only a brief indication of these topics is given in the Introduction to the First Part a detailed survey is made now pointing out the sources wherever possible.

#### *The Pañcalakṣaṇa (five topics)*<sup>2</sup>

It was pointed out<sup>3</sup> in the Introduction to the First Part that this *Purāṇa* satisfies very meagrely the five-topics definition made applicable to a *Purāṇa*.

We find a theistic Sāṅkhya theory of evolution adopted by this *Purāṇa*. Though the theory of evolution of the universe from Prakṛti and Puruṣa is adopted, Lord Viṣṇu is described as the main force behind all creation. The creation is described as the sport of lord Viṣṇu as in the Vedānta. Viṣṇu enters Prakṛti and Puruṣa and agitates them. *Avyaktu* precedes the principle of *mahat*. *Ahaṅkāra* comes forth from *mahat*. Then come into being the *vaikārikas*, the *tājasa* and *tāmasa*. Ether, the sound-principle, wind, the principle of touch, fire, the colour-principle, water, the taste-principle and earth, the smell-principle came into being from the *rājasa ahaṅkāra*. The five *tanmātras*—sound, touch, light, taste and smell evolved from the *tāmasa ahaṅkāra*.

1. The number given on p. xxii in the Introduction to Part I may be corrected.

2. See pp. xvi-xviii, Introduction to Part I.

3. *Ibid.*

The organs of sense came into being from the *taijasa ahaṅkāra*. The ten celestials and mind came forth from the *vaikārika ahaṅkāra*. Then the self-born Brahmā became desirous of creating different beings. He first created water. Hence water is referred to as *nārāḥ*. Since the Lord had His abode in the water, He was designated as Nārāyaṇa.

The seed deposited by Brahmā in the water developed as the golden egg. Brahmā was born of his own accord from that. After living a year in that, Brahmā divided that egg into two—heaven and earth, and the Lord created the sky between them. The ten quarters supported the earth floating on the waters. Being desirous of creation, the Lord of beings created time, mind, speech, desire, anger, attachment and other counterparts. From lightning he created thunder and clouds, rainbow and birds. After creating Indra, he created the Vedic hymns. The higher and lower beings were created from the arms. He then created Sanatkumāra and Rudra from anger. He then created the seven sages, Marīci, Atri, Aṅgiras, Pulastya, Pulaha, Kratu and Vasiṣṭha. Having divided his body into two, he became a male with one half and a female with the other (known as Śatarūpā).

*The different stages of creation* : After having given an account of creation, the *Purāṇa* furnishes some details relating to the various stages of creation. The primary creation consists of the creation of *mahat*, *tanmātras*, the *vaikārikas*, namely, the *mukhya-sarga*, the *tiryaksrotas*, the *ūrdhvasrotas*, the *arvāksrotas*, the *anugraha* and the *Kaumāra*.

Intellect is the first creation of Brahmā. The subtle principles are then created. They are known as the elements. The evolutes known as sense-organs are then created. These are known as the primary creation. The fourth is the creation of the immobile things known as the main. The creation of the lower order refers to the creation of animals, birds etc. Then proceeds the sixth creation—higher orders, the celestials. Man is described as the seventh creation, referred to as the middle order. The eighth is the creation of compassionate divinities. These latter five are said to be subject to transformation. The ninth is the creation of Sanatkumāra and others. These

are the nine creations of Brahmā which are the main constituents of the universe.

*Mythological aspect of creation* : In keeping with the Purāṇic tradition of describing the secondary creation, the Purāṇa describes the mythological aspect of creation. These accounts fall under four heads : (i) Svāyambhuva Manu and his progeny, (ii) Dakṣa and his progeny, (iii) Kaśyapa and his progeny, and (iv) the overlordship of different regions. These are described in chs. 18 & 19.

The female half known as Śatarūpā of ascetic disposition had two sons Priyavrata and Uttānapāda and a beautiful daughter<sup>1</sup> from Svāyambhuva Manu. Uttānapāda had two wives Suruci and Sunīti. Uttama was born as his son through Suruci and Dhruva through Sunīti. Dhruva practised austerities for gaining fame and attained an excellent position. Dhruva had two sons Śiṣṭi and Bhavya through his wife Śambhu. Śiṣṭi had five sons through Succhāyā. Ripu, the eldest among them had Cākṣuṣa through his wife Bṛhatī. Cākṣuṣa begot Manu through Puṣkariṇī (also known as Vīriṇī) (daughter of Vīraṇa Prajāpati). Manu had ten excellent sons through Naḍvalā. Ūru, the eldest among them got through Āgneyī six sons, Aṅga and others. Aṅga through Sunīthā got Vena. As Vena was cruel, he was killed by the sages. They churned his right hand and Pṛthu was born from it. He was the most important king who brought peace and prosperity for his subjects. Hence the earth was known as Pṛthvī. Then in line of succession were born Antardhāna and Prācīnabarhis. To Prācīnabarhis were born ten sons known as Pracetas through Savarṇā. They were proficient in archery. They did severe penance, remaining in the waters of the ocean for ten thousand years. Having gained the status of a progenitor and pleased Visnu, they came out of the waters. They found the earth and sky overspread with trees. They burnt them down. Beholding that, Soma, the king of the plants approached them and requested them to renounce their anger, offering the excellent maiden Māriṣā born to the nymph Pramlocā and the ascetic Kaṇḍu and nourished by him. The Pracetas married her and Dakṣa was born to them.

1. The Purāṇa does not give her name. She is referred to as Devahūti in Bh. P.

Dakṣa created mentally the immovable and movable objects, bipeds, quadrupeds, and then the sixty maidens of whom he gave ten to Dharma, thirteen to Kaśyapa, twenty-seven to Soma, four to Ariṣṭanemi, two to Bahuputra and two to Aṅgiras. Different beings were born from them. Among these, the two wives of Kaśyapa were Aditi and Diti. The twelve Ādityas—Viṣṇu, Śakra etc. were born through Aditi and the two demons Hiraṇyākṣa and Hiraṇyakaśipu and the demoness Simhikā were born through Diti. Among the sons of Hiraṇyakaśipu, Prahrāda was a great devotee of Lord Viṣṇu. Virocana was born from Prahrāda and Bali was born from Virocana. Bāṇa was the eldest among the hundred sons of Bali. He propitiated Lord Śiva and gained a boon.

Tāmrā, one of the wives of Kaśyapa, had six daughters, viz. Kākī, Śyenī, Bhāsī, Ḡrdhrikā, Śuci and Sugrīvā. Different birds and animals were born from them. From other wives of Kaśyapa were born other kinds of birds and animals. Innumerable are their offsprings. Diti, who had lost her offspring, propitiated Kaśyapa, desirous of getting a son capable of destroying Indra. When she had gained her desire, Indra waiting for an opportunity when she was impure, destroyed the embryo. They became celestials known as Maruts, fiftyone in number.

#### *Overlordship of different regions*

After having installed Pṛthu as the ruler (of the earth), Lord Viṣṇu set apart different regions for others such as the Moon, Varuṇa, Vaiśravaṇa, Viṣṇu, Pāvaka, Vāsava, Dakṣa, Prahlāda, Yama, Hara, Himavat, Citraratha, Vāsuki, Takṣaka, Garuḍa, Airāvata, bull, tiger, Plakṣa, Uccaiḥśravas, Sudhanvan, Śaṅkha-pād, Ketumat and Hiraṇyaromaka. This we find in ch. 19, verses 22 to 28. Then it describes the progeny of Bhṛḡu, Marīci and others through Khyāti, Sambhūti and others.

#### *Dissolution*

This *Purāṇa* devotes two chapters (368 and 369) to describe the process of dissolution. Dissolution is said to be of four kinds—*nitya*, *naimittika*, *prākṛta* and *ātyantika* (continuous dissolution taking place daily, the dissolution that occurs at the end of a

*kalpa* period, the dissolution of everything being burnt by fire, and the absolute dissolution).

The *naimittika* dissolution is first described. Hardly any life remains on the earth. For a hundred years it does not rain. The seven rays of the sun cause evaporation of all waters. All animals perish for want of food and drink. Viṣṇu takes his abode in the seven rays of the sun and drinks the water of the oceans as well as the water inside the earth and the nether region. The seven rays finally grow in intensity and get transformed into seven suns. Then the three worlds together with the nether regions are reduced to ashes. The surface of the earth also gets changed and appears like the back of a tortoise. After all things have been burnt, clouds gather from the breath of Viṣṇu. They pour down perpetual showers of rain and the fire that has been raging for a hundred years is put out. When the water rises to the level of the region of the seven sages (Great Bear), the final storm arises from the breath of Lord Hari and the clouds get dispersed by the storm. God Hari lies down on the surface of the water and is praised by the sages and the realised souls.

The *prākṛta* dissolution takes place as follows: The different modifications of *mahat* get dissolved one after the other. First the earth with its attribute *gandha* gets dissolved into water, water with *rasa*, into light and then fire alone persists in the universe. In its turn wind destroys the suns with their attributes of colour and light. Wind together with its attribute touch gets destroyed by *ākāśa* (ether). *Ākāśa* gets merged in the universal space together with the material principles. *Mahat* consumes the universal space together with its attribute of egoism. Puruṣa, the pure consciousness and Prakṛti get finally merged in the Supreme Soul.

The *ātyantika* dissolution means the merger of the individual souls with the absolute Brahman. This is gained by knowledge and renunciation of the world. Agony is two-fold: (1) pertaining to body, and (2) pertaining to mind. The first one is manifold. After the death of a person, the individual soul discards the dead body and assumes the *ātivāhika* body that is taken to a region to suffer for his deeds. The god of death prescribes the nature of punishment or rebirth. Then the text describes

heaven and hell and the nature of suffering of the soul which cannot be brought under the head of spiritual dissolution.

### *Genealogical lists in the Agni-purāna*

The genealogical lists in the *Agni-purāna* are late compilations, just like those in the *Garuḍa-purāna* and the *Bhāgavata-purāna*. They do not reproduce any of the old verses of *Vāyu-purāna*, *Brahmāṇḍa-purāna* etc. The genealogies are restated in fresh verses. The narration here gives mere pedigree without any allusions—The *Agni-purāna* follows the tradition set by the *Matsya-purāna* regarding the Aikṣvākus and the common tradition for other dynasties. Following the general Purāṇic view Manu is described as the originator of the two ancient dynasties—Solar and Lunar. He is given as fifth in descent from Lord Viṣṇu. The *Agni-purāna* gives the number of the sons of Manu as eight whereas the *Brahma-purāna* gives it as nine and the *Viṣṇu-purāna*, *Matsya-purāna* and the *Padma-purāna* give it as ten by splitting the name Nābhāgodiṣṭa as Nābhāga and Diṣṭa in the *Viṣṇu-purāna* and adding *Iṭa* as the eldest in the *Matsya-* and *Padma-purānas*.

The *Agni-purāna* speaks of Ilā as the daughter of Manu and summarises the episode relating to her metamorphosis without going into the details. Beginning with the description of the Solar race in ch. 273, it describes the Lunar race, the dynasty of Yadu, the lineages of Aṅga and Puru in the succeeding chapters concluding in ch. 278. The *Purānas* refer to two branches of the Solar dynasty—(1) the line of Ikṣvāku and (2) the line of Śaryāti (sons of Manu). The lineage of Ikṣvāku, the eldest son of Manu, is briefly narrated in the *Agni-purāna* (ch. 273, verses 18-39). The list of descendents of *Purūravas* representing the Lunar race is given in ch. 274, verses 12 to 23. The genealogy of the Yādavas beginning with Yadu is given in ch. 275 proceeding upto the progeny of Balarāma and Kṛṣṇa. The account in the *Agni-purāna* does not speak about the kings of the period after the Bhārata war, which we commonly find in the other *Purānas* as the kings of the future.

### *The Manu-periods*

This *Purāna* devotes only one chapter (ch. 150) to describe the fourteen Manu periods, the sons of Manus and the respec-

tive gods, sages and Indras during their period. While this subject has been dealt with in detail in the *Purāṇas* like Vāyu, the narration here is brief. Svâyambhuva Manu is the first Manu. For the sake of humanity, laws were codified by him. The names of other Manus are Svārociṣa, Uttama, Tāmasa, Raivata, Cākṣuṣa, Vaivasvata (the present Manu), Sāvārṇi, Dakṣasāvārṇi, Brahmasāvārṇi, Dharmasāvārṇi, Rudrasāvārṇi, Raucya and Bhautya.

### *Bhuvanakośa*

Chs. 107 and 108 describe the different worlds, the earth and continents. The greatness of sacred spots such as the river Gaṅgā, Prayāga, Vārāṇasī, the river Narmadā and Gayā are described in chs. 109—14, followed by a detailed account of the mode of making a pilgrimate to Gayā in chs. 115 and 116 and the performance of ancestral rites in ch. 117. Then follows a description of Bhārata (country), the different continents and the extent of the universe in chs. 118-20. A list of the different hells and the nature of torments therein is given in ch. 371.

### *Material on dharma*

In conformity with the contents of most of the *Purāṇas*, a considerable space has been devoted to matters relating to *dharma*. This material we find in chs. 151—212, 227, 252—72. We find here description of the duties laid down for different castes, the duties of men belonging to different stages of life, rules relating to marriage, codes of conduct, pollution and purification, the merits of offering libation and the performance of good deeds, propitiation of the planets, different kinds of major sins and expiations for them, the vows to be practised on the different lunar days, on week days, in different asterisms, in different months and seasons and rules and regulations relating to vows and gifts of varied nature.

In this section we also get a reference to the names of the twenty writers on *dharma* such as Manu, Viṣṇu, Yājñavalkya, Hārīta, Atri, Yama, Aṅgiras, Vasiṣṭha, Dakṣa, Saṁvarta, Śātātapa, Parāśara, Āpastamba, Uśanas, Vyāsa, Kātyāyana,

Brhaspati, Gotama, Śaṅkha and Likhita. In the above matter the *Agnipurāṇa* has based the account of the four stages of life on the *Manusmṛti*, even borrowing verses at times. Besides the above the *Purāṇa* also mentions the forty-eight *saṁskāras* such as *Garbhādhāna*, *Puṁsavana* etc. Chs. 253-58 describing the administration of justice, debts and their repayments, rules relating to disputes, different kinds of ordeals, procedure for division of properties, settlement of disputes relating to the boundaries of fields and punishment for making defamatory speeches and committing other offences are mostly based on the *Yājñavalkyasmṛti*.

The subsequent chs. 259—72 describe the application of the mantras of the different *Vedas* and different kinds of worship to ward off bad effects of portents etc. and they are narrated by Puṣkara.

#### *Other philosophical concepts*

Although all the schools of philosophy were developed by the time the *Agnipurāṇa* was compiled, we find here a gist of only a few systems, such as Yoga and Vedānta. Besides the meagre Sāṅkhya account of evolution which we have already noticed, these philosophical ideas are dealt with in chs. 372-382. Beginning with an exposition of the eight constituents of *Yoga* such as *yama*, *niyama* (and the like), the text explains knowledge relating to Brahman, summarises the *Bhagavadgītā* and concludes with a *Yamagītā* spoken by Yama to Naciketas. Although the exposition on principles of *Yoga* is a summary of those given in the sūtras of Patañjali, we find here an orientation of the same to establish the unity of the individual soul and Brahman.

Though there is no direct reference to the Vedānta system as such, it deals at length with the fundamental doctrine of identity of the individual soul and the supreme soul avoiding all sorts of discussions relating to technical matters. The *Advaita* viewpoint is illustrated by means of two episodes in ch. 380.

#### *Gītā material in the Purāṇa : Bhagavadgītā*

The knowledge and utilisation of the *Bhagavadgītā* by the

*Purāṇas* goes without saying. Dr. Raghavan has made<sup>1</sup> a comprehensive survey of the *Gītā* thought and expression as found in other parts of the *Mahābhārata*, the *Purāṇa* and *Uṇapūrāṇa* literature. The *Agnipurāṇa* epitomises the *Bhagavadgītā* in 58 verses in ch. 381 and describes the *Yamagītā* in 37 verses in ch. 382. The following table shows how the *Agnipurāṇa* has utilised the *Bhagavadgītā* material:

Bhagavadgītā		Agnipurāṇa	
Ch.	Verse	Ch. 381	Verse
II	11a, 62, 63, 69		2a, 3, 4a, 5b, 6a
III	17b, 18a, 28		6b, 7a, 7b, 8a
V	10		9b, 10a
VI	29		10b, 11a
	41b		11b
	40b		12a
VII	14		12b, 13a
	16, 17a		13b, 14a
VIII	3-6		14b, 17a
	10b		17b
	13a		18a
XIII	1, 2b		20a, 20b
	5-17		21-33
	24, 25		34, 35
XIV	17		36
	23b		37a
	25		37b
XV	1		38
XVI	6a		39a
	2-3		39b
	7b, 21		40
XVII	7b, 8, 9, 10, 11b,		41-46
	12, 14, 16		
	20-22		47
	23a		48a
XVIII	5		48b
	12, 14		49, 51
	20-25		52-53a
	26-28,		53b, 54-57a
	30-35, 46		

1. See *Journal of Oriental Research*, Madras, II, pp. 86-122. See also Intro. to Part I, p. xxi of the translation of Agnip.

Besides the above, ch. 19 is an imitation of the Vibhūtiyoga chapter (number 10) of the Bhagavagdītā.

### *Yamagītā*

The *Yamagītā* (ch. 382) mentioned as having been expounded by Yama to Naciketas contains also the doctrines of teachers such as Kapila, Pañcaśikha, Gaṅgāviṣṇu, Janaka, Jaigīṣavya and others. Here we find references to the merits of devotion to Viṣṇu which confer the earthly benefits as well as release from this mundane existence. Lord Viṣṇu is regarded as the chief force behind all creation. The expositions of the teachers lay stress on the following: Self-realisation is much more beneficial than gratifying one's senses. Equanimity towards all the beings and shedding all desires is the greatest good. True knowledge consists of having the correct perspective of birth, youth and old age. One gets the ultimate good by discharging the duties as laid down in the Vedas. The renunciation of all desires leads one to Brahman.

### *The manifestations of Viṣṇu and the narration of the epics*

After the introductory first chapter, the *Purāṇa* describes the ten manifestations of Lord Viṣṇu in chs. 2 to 16. Giving a brief account of His manifestations as a Fish, Tortoise, Boar, Man-lion and Dwarf, it elaborates the story of Rāma in chs. 5—11 and that of Kṛṣṇa in ch. 12 and describes the origin of the Kauravas and Pāṇḍavas in ch. 13. The story of the Mahābhārata is narrated in chs. 14 and 15. Then the *Purāṇa* describes the manifestations as Buddha and Kalki in ch. 16. Later in ch. 49 we find a description of the characteristic features of the images representing the ten manifestations of Lord Viṣṇu while dealing with those of the images of different gods. We have a description of the different manifestations of Lord Viṣṇu again in ch. 276. Here there is a reference to these manifestations as upholding dharma in the battles of the celestials against the demons. There were twelve such battles which resulted in events like the churning of the ocean, the destruction of Andhaka, the killing of the demon Vṛtra, the conquering of the deadly poison *hālāhala* etc.

*Political expediency*

Political expediency is described in chs. 220 to 242 preceded by two chapters describing the mode of performing the coronation of a king and the sacred syllables for the coronation. These occur in two versions here, the first one as expounded by Puṣkara and the second one as by Rāma. While the first version is a summary of the *Matsya-purāṇa* chs. 215—227, the second version is an adaptation from the *Nītisāra* of Kāmandaka. Sometimes even verses or lines are reproduced *verbatim*. The version by Puṣkara deals with the coronation ceremony, the requisites of those in the service of a king, the code of conduct for the servants, the building of a fort with the residence of the king within, the steps to be taken for providing security to the king as well as women, the duties of a king in general and towards women in the harem, the means of conciliation, the code of criminal laws, military expedition indicating the propitious periods for the same, good and bad auguries, the political expedients used by a king, the daily duties of a king, the rites preceding the march of a king and a hymn in praise of goddess Śrī (Lakṣmī) for the sake of success in battles and general welfare.

The version narrated by Rāma contains the general ethics, the seven constituents of a kingdom, viz. king, ministry, kingdom, fort, treasury, army and allies—helpful to one another, the duties of a king, priest and servants, the six expedients to be employed by a king, the importance of having a good counsel, four kinds of upāyas and the statesmanship of a king while making a military expedition explaining some of the different arrays of the army. An array is said to have seven parts such as chest, sides, wings, centre, back (hip), rear and the edge. It describes arrays such as *guru*, *bhoga* and *daṇḍa* and their modifications. Certain religious rites relating to a king's expedition and consecration of the umbrella and other royal insignia are described in chs. 268 and 269.

*Physiognomy and characteristic features of royal fan, bow, sword etc.*

In continuation of the previous section the *Purāṇa* describes the good and bad effects of the characteristic features of men and

women in chs. 243 and 244. The next chapter deals with the characteristics of royal fan, bow and sword. The handle of a royal fan should be made of gold. A royal umbrella should be made of the feathers of particular birds only. It should be circular and white. The seat of a king should be made by using the wood of *kṣira* tree. Then the text describes in detail the characteristic features of different parts of a bow. The arrows may be made of iron, bamboo or reeds.

The science of archery, the use of other weapons, riding horses and elephants and thirty-two kinds of military art are dealt with in chs. 249 to 252. In the first two chapters here we find details about the different postures adopted in archery and practical hints for striking a target. The next chapter describes the method of making a noose and its use. The subsequent chapter opens with an enumeration of thirty-two kinds of employment of a sword, eleven ways of manipulating a noose and explains the use of weapons such as *tomara*, *gadā* and the like for specific purposes.

Ch. 246 gives the names of different kinds of gems and points out the characteristic features of an auspicious diamond for being worn by a king. It then describes briefly the excellent varieties of other gems also.

### *Alaṅkāraśāstra*

The various elements constituting a *kāvya* such as characteristics of a *kāvya*, the sentiments, the literary diction, the embellishments of words and sense, and the literary merits and blemishes have been dealt with in chs. 337, 339-40, 343-47. The *Purāṇa* has taken this material from the *Nāṭyaśāstra* of Bharata and *Kāvyaadarśa* of Daṇḍin.

After defining *kāvya*, the text gives the classification of *kāvya* as *gadya*, *padya* and *miśra* with their further divisions. The poetic embellishments are divided into those of words, of sense and mixed, with their further sub-divisions. The embellishments of sense are divided into eight categories : *Svarūpa* (natural state), *Sādrśya* (similitude), *Utprekṣā* (poetic fancy), *Atiśaya* (exaggeration), *Vibhāvanā* (effect taking place without the cause), *Virodha* (contradiction), *Hetu* (reason) and *Sama* (evenness of description). Following Daṇḍin *Upamā*

(simile) is divided into sixteen varieties. The embellishments of words are the following nine: *Chāyā*, *Mudrā*, *Ukti*, *Yukti*, *Gumphanā*, *Vākovākya*, *Anuṣṛāsa*, *Citra* and *Duṣkara*. Among these the first six varieties are in fact different modes of expressions and cannot be termed as *alaṅkāras*. That is why only the last three are normally referred to as embellishments of words in rhetorics. Most probably the purāṇic text represents a different tradition. The *Purāṇa* treats *Yamaka* as a variety of *Anuṣṛāsa*. The *Purāṇa* refers to the number of varieties of *Yamaka* as ten, but actually names only eight. *Anuṣṛāsa* is said to be of five kinds. *Citra* is divided into seven varieties and *Duṣkara* into three. After defining the mixed variety of embellishments, the *Purāṇa* gives six sub-divisions which are actually treated as *Guṇas* by writers on rhetorics like Daṇḍin and Vāmana.

*Guṇas* (merits) are classified as *Sāmānya* and *Viśeṣa* and described as enhancing the beauty and sweetness of a description, imparting lustre to its theme. *Doṣas* (blemishes) are treated elaborately. They are said to be seven as associated with *vaktā*, *vācaka* and *vācya*. These are again subdivided. *Ritis* (style) are divided into four: *Pāñcālī*, *Gauḍī*, *Vaidarbhi* and *Lāṭī*, adding the last one to the three given by Vāmana in his *Kāvyaḷaṅkārasūtravṛtti*. These *ritis* have probably got these names from their use in a particular region. The *Purāṇa* makes a passing reference to the four *Vṛttis* used in dramatic compositions and discusses only the first two. They are mainly dependent on the action of drama and not upon the words or style thereof and are thus distinguished from *Ritis*.

### *Sentiments (Rasas)*

*Rasa* is traced to the Supreme Reality, the very embodiment of *Ānanda*. *Ahaṅkāra* and *Abhimāna* proceed from that. The latter gives rise to *Rati*. The other sentiments arise from *Rati*. *Rāga*, *Taiḱṣṇa*, *Avāṣṭambha* and *San̄koca* are produced from that giving rise to the four sentiments *Śṛṅgāra*, *Raudra*, *Vīra* and *Bibhatsa*. Each one of these sentiments gives rise to *Hāsyā*, *Karuṇa*, *Adbhuta* and *Bhayānaka* respectively. Although the theory of *Rasa* propounded by the *Purāṇa* agrees with the view of Bhoja, there

is this difference that according to the latter *Śṛṅgāra* is the only sentiment and others proceed from it.

### *Concept of Dhvani*

Though the principle of *dhvani* as envisaged by Ānandavardhana is not recorded in the *Agnīpurāṇa*, we can say that the concept is not entirely unknown to it. The constituents of literature are *dhvani* (sound), *vāṇi* (import), *pada* (word) and *vākya* (sentence). The *Purāṇa* (ch. 345) includes *Abhivyakti* among the embellishments of words. While explaining this term, the text has discussed the different powers of words to indicate different senses. In that context, all expressions are divided into *Śruti* and *Ākṣeṣa*. *Abhidhā* and *Lakṣaṇā* are brought under the first category and *Dhvani* is included in the second. *Dhvani* is defined as the flashing of the sense not got by mere hearing. The word and sense make their own import secondary, giving primary importance to that got by means of *Dhvani*. Thus the definition here is not very much different from that given in *Dhwanyāloka*. But the *Purāṇa* treats this as an embellishment and includes it in *Ākṣeṣa*, *Samāsokti*, *Apahnuti* and *Paryāyokta* (ch. 345, v. 18).

### *Dramaturgy in the Agnīpurāṇa*

The topics relating to dramaturgy are : the characteristics of a hero and heroine, the movement of limbs at the commencement of a dance and exposition of acting (chs. 338 and 341-42). The subject is not dealt with in detail and the other important topics are merely summed up. They are: the purpose of drama, namely, the attainment of the three-fold objective of human existence, twentyseven types of drama without making any distinction such as *Rūpaka* and *Uparūpaka*, the plot together with the two movements (*Sāmānya* and *Viśeṣa*) associated with it, thirty-two kinds of introductions such as *Nāndi* etc., the prologue giving information about the poet's ancestry divided into three classes based on how the stage-director introduces the play, sources of the plot—old treatises or poet's creative genius, and mere listing of the five elements (*arthaprakṛti*) such as *bija* etc., five motions (*ceṣṭā*) such as

*prārambha* etc. and five junctures (*sandhi*) such as *mukha* etc., the time and place of action of a drama, blemishes such as disclosing a thing at an improper time and inclusion of absurdities in the plot, the characteristics of hero and heroine etc. and the actions and movements of various parts in dancing and acting.

The last item in the above is described in two chapters (chs. 341-42). The *Purāṇa* does not discuss all the points and it merely refers to different technical terms, explaining some of them. This material has been drawn from the *Nāṭyaśāstra* of Bharata. Thus this *Purāṇa* has assimilated divergent views relating to different schools of *Alaṅkāraśāstra* from the originator Bharata down to Bhoja. Hence it is appropriate to assign a post-9th century date to this section of the *Purāṇa*.

*Medical science including equinology etc.*

The *Agnīpurāṇa* in chs. 279-86 deals with various topics relating to the science of medicine such as medicines, diseases and properties of medicinal preparations most probably borrowed from the works of Suśruta, Caraka and other early writers on medicine. The text begins with a desire of the Fire-god to describe the science of medicine as expounded by Dhanvantari to Suśruta. The *Purāṇa* groups together diseases under four heads, viz. organic, mental, extraneous and functional. Fever and leprosy fall under the first head of ailments. Anger, envy etc. are classified as mental derangements. The third variety denotes the diseases owing their origin to some extraneous cause. The last variety consists of items such as thirst, inflammatory fever etc. It is explained how the three humours in the body—wind, phlegm and bile—get deranged on account of the food eaten by us and give rise to various diseases. Hence one should take care to eat food appropriate to the season and that too with moderation. One should take a drug which has an opposite action to nullify the effects of excessive production of a particular humour.

Drugs are divided into two classes, stimulating and soothing. The *Purāṇa* describes (ch. 281) the preparation of herbal extracts. In order to have a healthy life, a man should have the three physical functions—eating, sleeping and coition—

without abstaining from or indulging excessively in anyone of them. The remedial measures fall under five heads, viz. juice, cakes of poultices, distilled extracts, cold juice and fresh extracts (decoction). The text also explains the principle and benefits of massaging and doing physical exercises in the proper way.

The next chapter (ch. 282) describes horticulture dealing with the planting of different kinds of trees, rules of watering them and methods to get good fruits and flowers. Chs. 285-6 describe different kinds of recipes for various ailments as well as for longevity.

### *Elephant lore and equinology*

The *Purāṇa* describes through the mouth of Pālakāpya the treatment of the diseases of elephants in ch. 287. It begins with the narration of the good and bad features of elephants and then deals with the treatment of their diseases. This ch. is an adaptation from the work of Pālakāpya. Ch. 291 describes the propitiatory rites for curing the ailments of elephants. Equinology is dealt with in chs. 288 to 290, Dhanvantari and Śālihotra being the interlocutors. Beginning with a description of the diseases of horses and the management of horses, it explains the remedial measures and the propitiatory rites for curing their ailments. The chapters relating to their diseases and treatment are obviously based on the work of Śālihotra. The *Purāṇa* (ch. 292) explains the greatness of cows and the need for attending to their welfare. The merits of cow's urine, feces, milk and *rocānā* are explained. The *Purāṇa* suggests a feed for making the cows yield profuse milk.

### *Prosody*

The *Purāṇa* describes prosody that was expounded by Piṅgala and makes a summary of the eight chapters of *Chandassūtra* of Piṅgala in chs. 328-335. The first chapter here in three verses explains the *gaṇas* (formed by permutation of long and short vowels). The second and third chapters explain the Vedic metres briefly. This is continued in the next chapter also. Then the secular metres are described. Ten varieties of *Āryā*, six varieties of *Vaitāliya*, five varieties of *Mātrāsamaka*, two varie-

ties of *Śikhā* and *Tūlikā* are described. Metres in Sanskrit are divided into three groups, viz. *Sama* (all the quarters having the same characteristics), *Ardhasama* (two halves similar in all respects) and *Viṣama* (two halves not equal). Ch. 332 summarises part of a chapter of *Piṅgalasūtra* dealing with the third category. The second and first categories are dealt with in order in the subsequent two chapters. The last chapter has very briefly summarised the *prastāra* method dealt with by Piṅgala. On the whole the *sūtras* of Piṅgala have been put in metrical form with the readings being incorrect sometimes and at times some metres having been omitted. In the translation the incorrect readings have been corrected as far as possible on the basis of Piṅgala's work.

### Phonetics

This topic is dealt with in ch. 336 in 21 verses. Although there is no mention that this is a summary of *Śikṣā* ascribed to Pāṇini, most of the verses here agree with the text of Pāṇini. The total number of letters is given as either sixty-three or sixty-four. They are classified into twenty-one vowels, twenty-five consonants, eight semivowels, four twin sounds such as the nasal, *anusvāra*, *visarga*, *ka*, *pa* and *la*. The origin of sound is explained. The letters are divided differently into five classes on the basis of the places of articulation. The text lays emphasis on correct pronunciation of letters to avoid incurring sin.

### Grammar

We find this topic described in this *Purāṇa* in chs. 349-59, having Skanda as the interlocutor for the first eight chs., and Kumāra for the rest. This is obviously a summary of the *Kaumāra Vyākaraṇa* or *Kātantra* of Sarvavarman. The topics dealt with are: the *Pratyāhāras* and their formation, rules of combination of vowels and consonants, finished forms of inflections in nouns, substantives in the feminine and neuter gender, the relation between a noun and a verb in a sentence (*kāraka*), different kinds of compounds, the formation of secondary nominal bases (*taddhitas*), the formation of primary nominal bases (*uṇādis*), verbal terminations and formation by adding primary

affixes (*krts*) to verbs. Thus this summary covers all the important topics relating to grammar and it helps to understand a system of grammar different from Pāṇini. Whereas the text gives only the completed euphonic combinations, I have given (under ch. 350) in the translation the individual words which have been combined. Similarly under compounds also (ch. 355) I have given the individual words which have been compounded.

### *Lexicography*

This section in *Agnīpurāṇa* comprising chs. 360 to 367 does not mention the name of Amarasimha or his work *Āmalīṅgānuśāsana* (*Amarakośa*). But it is a summary of the different sections of the lexicographical work of Amarasimha giving words pertaining to the celestial region and nether world, indeclinables, words having many meanings, words denoting earth, city, forest and herbs, words denoting men and their four classes, words relating to the class of brahmin and other castes and words dependent on substantives for their genders. The summary is very unsystematic. After giving a summary of the first *kāṇḍa* of *Amarakośa*, the *Purāṇa* jumps to the middle of the second *kāṇḍa* and after giving extracts from *kāṇḍa* three returns to the second *kāṇḍa* again.

### *Tāntric material*

The *Purāṇa* has much material relating to *Tantra* such as description of various *maṇḍalas*, *cakras* and *mantras* relating to different gods and goddesses, Kubjikā, incantations of different kinds to remove evil effects of diseases and to destroy enemies. Besides the chapters bearing the influence of the Tāntric practices, there are many other chapters dealing with the worship of various deities bearing a tinge of Tāntricism. The mystic syllables like *ham*, *hrim* etc. are profusely used. The preparation of the altar, *mantras*, *mudrās*, *dikṣā* of various types, mystic *maṇḍalas*, investiture of images with sacred threads, consecration of temples, making the images of different gods etc. bear the stamp of the tāntric practices. A perusal of this translation will show that chs. 21 to 106, 140 to 149 and 300

to 326 have enough material relating to the t̄antric practices. This shows that this *Purāna* was influenced much by the T̄antric practices.

### *Jyotiṣa*

The effect of the asterisms on human undertakings, the almanac setting forth the calculation involved in reckoning time, the circles such as the *Svarodayacakra*, *Śanicakra*, *Kūrmacakra*, *Koṣacakra* and *Rāhucakra* for subduing enemies etc., the essence of astrology as propounded in the science of victory in battles, combinations of good and bad asterisms to secure success etc., the auspicious and inauspicious periods of the day, guidelines for storing and selling grains, different circles and diagrams such as *Ghātakacakra*, *Naracakra* and *Jayacakra* indicating success or failure in battle, *Sevācakra* which indicates loss or gain and indications from planets about the traits of the newly born are described in chs. 121 to 133. Then ch. 139 gives the names of sixty years of the Hindu almanac indicating the good or bad results which they augur.

### *Architecture and Sculpture*

This subject lies scattered in chs. 38-39, 42, 44-46, 49-57, 67 and 104-6. Beginning with a description of the benefits of constructing a temple and preparing the ground for constructing a temple, it proceeds to describe the construction of a temple. The characteristics of the images of Vāsudeva and other gods, the characteristics of pedestals and the physiological features of images, the characteristics of different *śālagrāma* stones representing different forms of Viṣṇu, iconographical representations of the manifestations of Viṣṇu and other forms of Viṣṇu, representations of images of different goddesses and the planets, the characteristics of the *liṅga*, the characteristics of the pedestals of images, the installation of images, renovation of old and damaged images and the general characteristics of a divine edifice are explained. In ch. 104 we get the names of five classes of temples, viz. *Vairāja*, *Puṣpaka*, *Kailāsa*, *Maṇika* and *Triviṣṭapa* characterised by structures of different shapes such as square, rectangle, circular, oval and octagonal. Each

one of these is divided into nine thereby giving rise to forty-five divisions.

The foregoing survey explains the importance of the *Agni-purāṇa* that has presented to us the cream of literary excellence and philosophical speculations together with abundant material catering to the religious and sociological needs.<sup>1</sup>

---

1. In addition to the critical apparatus referred to on p. xxiii of Introduction to Part I, the following studies would also be useful for understanding the importance of this *Purāṇa* :

- (1) J. J. Meyer for the horticulture matter in *Agni-purāṇa*. Festschrift M. Winternitz pp. 56 ff.
- (2) The Alaṅkāra section of the *Agni-purāṇa* (critical edn., translation and study) by Suresh Mohan `Bhattacharya, Firma KLM Private Ltd., Calcutta, 1976 and
- (3) New Catalogus Catalogorum Vol. I (Revised edn.) pp. 31-34.

## CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND TWELVE

*The occasions for the use of the Tvaritā-mantra and the benefits*

*Fire-god said:*

1-3. I shall describe the application of the (Tvaritā) Vidyā that would bring about success in matters pertaining to *dharma* and fulfil worldly desires. One who knows the *mantra* divided and spread over nine squares in the regular and reverse order as a whole and divided in combination with *karṇā-vikarṇa*(?) and then by their parts combined in the different triangular forms together with the image of the Goddess would know the *mantras* that confer success as well as the manifold external applications.

4-10. The mantras are manifold in different scriptures. It is difficult to find (the description of) their application therein. The first would be long. It is not described in the early hours of the morning. (The *mantras*) having a single letter, two letters and three letters would be applied. (The mystic diagram) should be divided by four lines each drawn horizontally and vertically. Thus there would be nine chambers. These (letters) should be established in the central region clockwise and then the order is split. One who finds the order by means of combination of the order that votary would have all the desired things in his folded hands. The three worlds would be at his feet. He would get the earth consisting of nine sections. The votary should write the principle of Śiva all around on the skull or on a rag (got) from the cremation ground after he has come out. The name should then be written on it at the centre or on the pericarp. It should then be fumigated with the burning charcoal of *khādira* (tree). Then a piece of birch-bark should be held under the feet. (By this process) one would be able to bring under his control the entire universe together with the movable and immovable things in seven days.

11-12. (Otherwise) the name (of the enemy) should be written inside a thunderbolt (shaped) diagram drawn inside (a circle

having) twelve spokes sanctified with (the principle of) Sadāśiva ('always auspicious'). (Alternatively) (the name should be written) on a wall, or a plank or a stone slab with turmeric. There would be paralysis of the face, the arrest of movement and the arrest (of the movement) of the army.

13-17. A wiseman should write (the name of the adversary) with poison and blood inside a diagram of a club in the middle of a hexagon on a skull in the cremation ground and add (the principle of) the Goddess. This would kill the enemy struck in the cremation ground in no time. It will also ruin the kingdom. The name of the enemy should be written on a disc. The Goddess should be invoked on the blades of the disc. The enemy would be destroyed by means of his name. A person should write the principal letter (of the *mantra*) of Tārṅṣya in the middle part of the sword. Then the name of the enemy should be written with the ashes (collected) from the cremation ground. One would be able to win a country. One should strike with the ashes of a dead person. (The *mantra* of) Śiva should be used in creating dessionion, division and death. The *Tāraka* and *Netra* (*mantras*) should be employed in propitiatory and nourishing (rites).

18-21. This is the application (known as) *dahanādi* (capable of) captivating even Śākinī (an attendant of Goddess Durgā). (The diagram) having the Vāruṇī (*mantra*) at the centre and endowed with Vakratuṅḍa (bent tusk) would no doubt destroy the diseases such as leprosy and the like. Repeating the Karālī (*mantra*) set up (as spreading) from the middle and ending with the northern direction would guard one's own amulet. The same should be coupled with the principle of Śiva and directed against the opponent. Then it should be located in (the directions) beginning with the west. This would destroy sufferings due to fever. (If the location is done) commencing with the north and ending with the middle, it would cause heaviness in the body. (If it is done) beginning with the east and ending with the middle, it would make (the body) light in a moment.

22-25. After having written this on the *bhūrja* leaf (with resin) endowed with the marks of thunderbolt, one should add the principal letters of the *mantra*. This would offer protection to the bodies etc. If it is encircled by engraved gold, this amulet

would annihilate death. The same worn (on the body) would (remove) obstacles, sins and subdue enemies. (It) would (also) confer good fortune and longevity. No doubt, it would give victory in gambling and battle even if the army of Indra (is to be fought against). This amulet is one like the (gem) *cintāmaṇi* and would confer progeny on barren women. One would be able to conquer other kingdoms, (recover one's own) kingdom and gain sovereignty over the earth. By repeating (the syllables) *phaṭ, strīm, kṣe, hūm* a lakh (number of times), one would gain control over the *yakṣas* (semi-divine beings) and others.

## CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND THIRTEEN

*The mantras relating to the worship of different gods*

*Fire-god said:*

1-2. I shall describe the mode of worshipping (lord) Vināyaka (the lord of obstacles). One should first worship the energy of the pedestal. One should worship the eight (things) such as the virtue and the like on the stem. The pericarp, filaments etc. (of a lotus) and a lotus representing the three qualities (should be worshipped). Then (the Goddesses) Jvālīnī, Nandā, Suyaśā, Ugrā, Tejovati and Vindhyavāsini should be worshipped.

3-6. (The different) forms of Gaṇapati should then be worshipped (as follows) : "Victory to *gaṇa*" would be for the heart. (Obeisance) to one having single tusk that is strong (is) for the head. (Obeisance) to the one having immovable ears (is) for the tuft. (Obeisance) to the elephant-faced (is) for the armour. The assignment should end with '*hūm phaṭ*'. (Then the following) eight (forms of Gaṇapati should be worshipped): Mahodara (big-bellied), Daṇḍahasta (one that holds the club in the hand), Jaya (victorious), Gaṇādhīpa (lord of the Gaṇas), Gaṇanāyaka (leader of the Gaṇas), Gaṇeśvara (lord of the Gaṇas), Vakratuṅḍa (one having bent trunk) and Ekadanta (one having single tusk) should be worshipped in the east (and other directions); one that is fierce, Lambodara (big-bellied), Gajavakra (having

elephant face), Vikaṭanāmā (known as dreadful) and Vighna-nāśana (the destroyer of obstacles) should be worshipped in the east (adding the syllable) *hūm*. Dhūmravarna (grey-coloured), Mahendra and others (should be worshipped) outside (the diagram). This is the mode of worshipping the lord of obstacles.

7-12. I shall describe the mode of worshipping (Goddess) Tripurā. (One should worship first) Asitāṅga (black-coloured one), Ruru, Caṇḍa (wrathful), Krodha (angry one), Unmatta (intoxicated), Kapāli (one wielding the human skull), Bhīṣaṇa (the dreadful one), Samhāra (the destroyer) and Bhairava (the terrible one) in order. (The Goddesses) Brāhmī, Hrasvā, Bhairavā, Brahmāṇī, Ṣaṇmukhā and Dīrghā (should be worshipped). The four celebrates—Samayaputra, Yoginiputra, Siddhaputra and Kulaputra should be worshipped in (the angular points such as) the south-east and others. Hetuka, Kṣetrapāla, Tripurānta, Dvitiyaka, Agnivetāla, Agnijihva, Karāli, Kāmalocana, Ekapāda and Bhīmākṣa should be meditated as the seat of the pretas and worshipped with (the *mantras*) *aiṃ* and *kṣeṃ*. Goddess Tripurā, seated on a lotus seat, holding a book and offering protection (with the right hand) and a garland and conferring boons with the left hand (should be worshipped with) the two *mantras* *aiṃ*, and *om*. The location in the heart etc. is also done with the principal *mantra*. It is a perfect net (that yields) the desired (result).

13-16. The name (of the enemy) should be written at the centre of (a diagram of) an eight-petalled (lotus drawn) on the ground. (Or it should be written) on a piece of cloth at the cremation ground with a charcoal from the cremation ground. Or an image (of the enemy) should be made with charcoal of the funeral pyre ground well. After contemplation (the incantation) should be placed inside the stomach (of the image) and it should be bound with blue thread. Then there would be the magic incantation. *Om*, obeisance! O Fortunate One! Jvālāmālinī (one having the flames as a garland)! One surrounded by flocks of eagles! Oblations. A person who goes to the battle after repeating (this) *mantra* would become victorious. *Om*, *śrīm* *hrīm*, *kliṃ* obeisance to Śrī. One has to worship Goddess Ghṛṇiṇī belonging to the sun on a square (drawn) in (the directions)

commencing with the north. (Goddesses) Ādityā, Prabhāvati, Hemādri, Madhurā and Śrī (should be propitiated). *Om*, *hrīm* obeisance to Gaurī. This *mantra* of (Goddess) Gaurī would yield all things when (it is used) for doing oblation, meditation, repetition and worship.

17-20. A person who prays to the Goddess of red complexion, having four arms and holding a noose and conferring boons with the right hand and holding a goad and offering protection (with the left hand), after contemplation of Her form, would live for a hundred years. He would be a wiseman. There would not be fear due to thieves and enemies. An angry person would become graceful by drinking the water charmed with the *mantra* in the battle. A collyrium or mark (made with the same) would make one get poesy at the tip of his tongue. The repetition of that (*mantra*) at the time of coition would captivate (the concerned person). (One would captivate a person) by looking at the genital organ after the repetition of the (*mantra*). (A person would be captivated) by the touch (after the repetition of the same). One would accomplish all things by doing oblation with sesamum. A person who eats food that has been charmed seven times (with the above) would always (get) fortune.

21-22. This (*mantra*) is a form of Ardhanārīśa (hermaphrodite form of lord Śiva), as well as (Goddess) Lakṣmī, (lord) Viṣṇu and others. One has to repeat (the *mantras* of Goddesses) Anaṅgarūpā, Madanāturā, Pavanavegā, Bhuvanapālā, Sarvasiddhidā, Anaṅgamadanā and Anaṅgamekhalā for (gaining) fortune.

23-24. (The syllable) *hrīm*, the vowels and (the letters) *ka* etc. should be written at the centre and on the petals of a lotus or on a hexagon or on a pot. (A person that looks at women after doing thus) would captivate the women. *Om*, *hrīm*, *chūm*, O Nityaklinnā (ever moist) ! O Madadravā (one who exudes intoxicating fluid) ! *Om*, *Om*. This principal *mantra* after location on the six limbs (the two shanks, two arms, head and middle) (and then written) on red-coloured triangle (and worn on the body) would have great power to melt (the heart), make happy and agitate.

25-26. (Goddess) Nityā (should be worshipped) at the centre as well as (the angular points such as) the north-east to-

gether with the noose, goad, skull, the wish-yielding tree, lute and red-coloured (?). (Goddesses) Nityā, Abhayā, Maṅgalā, Navavīrā, Maṅgalā(?), Durbhagā, Manonmanī and Drāvā should be worshipped in the (directions) commencing with the east.

27-28. *Om, hrīm*, obeisance to Anaṅga<sup>1</sup> (without a body). *Om, hrīm, hrīm*, obeisance to Smara (one that makes one to remember), (obeisance) to Manmatha (one that agitates the mind), to Māra and to Kāma. The five (forms of God of love) should be contemplated as holding a noose, goad, bow and arrows and as in the union of Rati (Goddess of love) (and her companions) Virati (non-attachment), Prīti (pleasure), Viprīti (displeasure), Mati (thought), Dhṛti (firmness), Vidhṛti (fickle-mindedness), and Puṣṭi (nourishment). *Om, cham*, O Nityaklinnā (ever moist) ! Madadravā (exuding intoxicating liquid) ! *Om, Om, a, ā, i, ī, u, ū, ṛ, ṝ, l, l̄, e, ai, o, au, aḥ, aḥ, ka, kha, ga, gha, ṇa, ca, cha, ja, jha, ṇa, ṭa, ṭha, ḍ, ḍha, ṇa, ta, tha, da, dha, na, pa, pha, ba, bha, ma, ya, ra, la, va, śa, ṣa, sa, ha, kṣa*. *Om, cham* oblations to Nityaklinnā and Madadravā, The energy of support and the lotus (should be worshipped) on the lion and the Goddess in the heart and other (limbs). *Om, hrīm*, Gaurī (white coloured) ! The consort of Rudra (Śiva) ! Yogeśvarī (mistress of faculties) ! *Hūm, phaṭ* oblations.

## CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND FOURTEEN

### *Mantras relating to the worship of Goddess Tvaritā*

*Fire-god said :*

1-3. *Om, hrīm, hrūm, khe, che, kṣaḥ, strīm, hrūm, kṣe, hrīm, phaṭ* obeisance to (Goddess) Tvaritā. After doing the *nyāsa* (location of the *mantra*) (Goddess) Tvaritā possessing two or eight arms should be worshipped. The energy of support and lotus (should be worshipped) in (a diagram of) a lion and the Goddess and the heart etc. (should also be worshipped). Gāyatrī (per-

1. This and the following four names denote the God of love.

sonification of the *mantra*) should be worshipped in a circle in the east (and other directions) (showing) the *praṇītā (mudrā)*. (The Goddesses) Hūmkārā, Khecari, Caṇḍā, Chedanī and Kṣeṣaṇī (should also be worshipped). Hūmkārā, Kṣemakārī and Phaṭkārī should be worshipped at the centre. Jayā and Vijayā (should be worshipped) at the entrance. The servant (should be worshipped) in front of them.

4-10. (One should do) oblations with sesamum with (the repetition of) the *vyāhṛtis* in order to get all things. Obeisance to Ananta! Oblations. Obeisance to Kalikā! Svadhā. Oblations to King Vāsuki. Vauṣaṭ to Śaṅkhapāla. Vaṣaṭ to Takṣaka always. Obeisance to Mahāpadma. Oblations to Karkoṭanāga *phaṭ*. Obeisance to Padma. (The diagram of) *ni-grahacakra* (the magic circle that causes obstruction) should be drawn on one's clothes, or a piece of cloth or on the body, or the birch-bark (leaf) or on a slab or on staffs. The name of the *sādhya* (the object to be accomplished, namely, the enemy) (should be written) in the middle chamber and (the syllables) *om*, *hrim*, *kṣūm* on the chambers on the east and other (directions). The thorns and Kālarātrikā (should be written) in the north-east, west etc. and (lord) Yama (the lord of death) outside. (The following mystic couplet should be written on the other chambers):

Kālināravamāli kālināmākṣamālinī  
māmodetat tadomomā rakṣata sva sva bhakṣa vā  
yamapāṭaṭayāmaya maṭamo ṭaṭamo ṭamā  
vāmo bhūrivabhūmeyā ṭaṭariśvaśvarī ṭaṭa.

(The syllable) *vam* (should be located) outside the chamber of lord Yama and (the syllable) *tam* that has the potency to kill.

11-12. (The above verse should be written) with crow's quill at the cremation ground or the junction of four roads with a mixture of lamp soot, the resin of neem, marrow, blood, poison, charcoal, and piṅgaladhārā (?) and placed under a pitcher. Otherwise it should be placed in an ant-hill. The spell (placed) under a *bibhitaka* tree is capable of destroying all the enemies.

13-16. The *anugrahacakra* (a circular figure that confers

1. This and the following are the names of different serpents.

grace) should be written on a white leaf or on the *bhūrja* (bark) with shellac or saffron or red sandal. The name (of the enemy) should be written in the central chamber on the earth and the wall. (The *mantra*) *Om haṁsa* and the *paṭṭiśa* (a kind of spear) should be written in the region of the west. The charm of (Goddess) Lakṣmī and Śiva and others should be written in the north-west etc. in order. (The mystic verse is) :

śrīḥ sāmamomā sā śrīḥ sānau yājñe jñeyā nausā  
māthā līlā lālī vāmā yājñe jñeyā nausā māyā

Śighrā (should be worshipped) outside where the six 'līlā' (is placed). The pitcher is also (placed) outside. Śighrā is outside where *jñeyā* is placed. (The syllable) *raṁ* is in the different direction. The pitcher would be outside.

17. The wheel of lotus on a lotus (figure) would conquer death, convey (a person) to heaven and (give) firmness. It is the foremost appeasing rite among such rites. It confers fortune etc.

18-22. (In the wheel known as) Rudra, there should be chambers of the number of Rudras (i.e. eleven). That (*mantra*) should be written therein beginning with the syllable *om* and ending with *hrūṁ phaṭ*, the first letters of the *vidyā* being written at the end. This is known as the *pratyaṅgirā* which accomplishes all the desired objects. In (a circle having) eighty-one chambers, the first letters (of the *vidyā*) (should be located) such that they would be from the beginning to the end and the name (of the enemy should be added) ending with *vaṣaṭ*. This is (known as) a different *pratyaṅgirā* (*vidyā*) which would accomplish all tasks. The *nigraha* and *anugraha* (obstruction and grace) circles should be drawn to have sixty-four chambers. This is (known as) *amṛti vidyā* (reviving). (The syllables) *krīm sāḥ hūṁ* with the name (of the enemy) at the centre and the syllable *phaṭ* at the beginning (written) on a leaf should be encircled by three syllables of *hrīm*. This (charm) worn with (a mark of) a pitcher will kill all enemies and yield all things. If (this *mantra*) is repeated in the ear letter by letter or as a *daṇḍaka* (a group of letters), it would destroy poison.

## CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND FIFTEEN

*Narration of mantras relating to paralysing, captivating etc.*

*Fire-god said :*

1. I shall describe to you (the *mantras* and acts) relating to paralysing, stupefying, captivating, ruining the enemy, neutralising the (effects of) poison and diseases and causing the death (of an enemy).

2-4. A twice-born should draw (the figure of) a tortoise of six inches (length) on a birch-bark by (the act of) *tāḍana* and then locate the *mantra* on the face and four feet. The syllable *krīm* should be written on the four feet, the syllable *hrīm* at the centre of the face, the *vidyā* (*mantras*) on the belly and (the name of) the person concerned on the back. After having encircled it with the *mālāmantras* (garland of letters), it should be placed over a brick. It should then be covered with the back of a tortoise and then charmed with the *karāla* (*mantra*).

5-8. After having worshipped the great tortoise (manifestation of Viṣṇu), (the votary) should sprinkle water on the feet (of that form). After having thought of the enemy, (the votary) should kick seven times (on the ground) with the left foot (of the tortoise). It would cause paralysis to the enemy. One should assume a terrible form by having change in the complexion of the face and write the garland of *mantras*. *Om* ! One who paralyses the face of the enemy ! An embodiment of desire ! One that stands with arm discharging an arrow ! *Hrīm phem*, *Phetkariṇī* ! Paralyse (2<sup>1</sup>) the face of my enemies given by the gods ! Paralyse (2) the face of all my enemies ! *Om*, *hūm*, *phem*, *Phetkariṇī* ! Oblations ! *Phaṭ* ! After having written the *mantra*, one would gain great strength at the end of its repetition. One should draw (the figure of) a tree and the trident on the right hand with the left hand. The *mantra* of lord Aghora (a form of Śiva) should then be written. One would paralyse the enemies in the battle. *Om*, obeisance to the Fortunate One ! O Bhagamālinī ! Agitate (2) ! Throb ! O Nityaklinnā ! melt (2), *hum saḥ* ! Embodiment of the syllable *krīm* ! Oblations. One who wears a mask with the resin with (the repetition of) this (*mantra*) would stupefy the world.

1. The figure indicates repetition of the preceding word.

9-13a. *Om, phem, hūm, phaṭ Phetkārīṇi ! Hriṁ*, burn (2), stupefy (2) the three worlds. O Guhyakālikā ! Oblations. One would captivate the king and others by making a (fore-head) mark with this (*mantra*). The dust (under the feet) of a donkey mixed with the *sūtaka*<sup>1</sup> fluid and the menstrual blood of a woman should be thrown on the bed (of a person) in the night. This would cause enmity. The hoof and horn of a cow, the hoof of a horse and the head of a serpent (charmed as before and) thrown into the house (of a person) would cause the ruin of the enemy. The root of the yellow *karavira* together with mustard (would be potent) to cause death. The blood of a serpent and a musk-rat together with *karavira* would also produce similar result. A lizard, bee, crab and scorpion are ground well and thrown into oil. One who anoints with that (oil) would get leprosy. *Om* (obeisance) to the nine planets. Conquer (2) my enemies. Kill (2) (them). *Ām, som, maṁ, buṁ, cuṁ, om, śaṁ, vām, keṁ, om* oblations.

13b-14. After having worshipped (the planets) with hundreds of *arka* (flowers), this should be placed in a cremation ground. The planets should be drawn on a birch-bark or in an image for the ruin of the enemies. *Om* Kuṅjarī, Brahmāṇi! *Om* Mañjarī, Māheśvarī! *Om* Vetālī, Kaumārī! *Om* Kālī, Vaiṣṇavī! *Om* Aghorā, Vārāhī! *Om* Vetālī, Indrāṇi, Urvaśī! *Om* Vetālī, Caṇḍikā! *Om* Jayānī, Yakṣiṇī! O Nine Mothers ! eh ! Seize (2) my foe. After having written the name of the enemy on a birch-bark, if it is worshipped in the cremation ground, (the foe) would die.

## CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND SIXTEEN

### *Narration of different kinds of mantras*

*Fire-god said:*

1-5. The syllable *hūm* is at the beginning. Then the letters *khe, ca, che*, and the *visarga* that is outside the group of conson-

1. The discharge at the time of the birth of a child.

ants (are added). It ends with *strim̄, hūm̄, kṣepa* and *phaṭ*. This *vidyā* is known as subduing all things. It also destroys the poisons of serpents. *Om̄, khe, che* should be practised to revive a person bitten by a deadly serpent. *Om̄, hūm̄, ke, kṣaḥ* should be used to destroy poison and enemies. *Strim̄, hūm̄, phaṭ* is (the *mantra*) to be used for conquering sins and diseases etc. *Khe, cha* is the application for removing evil obstacles. The application of *hūm̄, strim̄, om̄* would captivate women. The application of *khe, strim̄, khe, cha* should be used for captivating and conquest. *Aim̄, hrim̄, śrim̄, sphem̄, kaim̄, kṣaum̄, Bhagavatī! Ambikā! Kubjikā! sphem̄, om̄, bham̄, tam̄* subjugate. Obeisance to Aghora on the face! *Brām̄, brām̄, kili, kili, viccā, sphaum̄, hem̄, sphūm̄, śraum̄, hrim̄, aim̄, śrim̄*. This *vidyā* of Kubjikā is known to accomplish all the things. I shall describe to you again the *mantras* narrated by (lord) Īśa (Śiva) to (lord) Skanda.

## CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND SEVENTEEN

### *The different kinds of mantras of Śiva*

*The Lord said:*

1. (The *mantras*) of Śiva are divided into eight kinds, such as *sakala* (endowed with parts), *niṣkala* (without parts), *śūnya* (void), *kalāḍhya* (abounding in parts), *khamalaṅkṛta* (adorning the sky), *kṣapaṇa* (suppressing), *kṣaya* (destroying) and *śiva* (benevolent). The letters which lay inside and belong to (the regions of) the throat and lips (should be present in them).

2. O Guha (name of Kumāra, son of Śiva and Pārvatī) ! There are eight kinds of the benevolent (*mantra*) known as *para* (supreme). The form of the word *Sadāśiva* is efficacious for accomplishing all things.

3-8a. (The forms) of the vowels are *Amṛta, Am̄sumat, Indu, Īśvara, Ugra, Ūhaka, Ekapāda, Oja* and *Auṣadha*. *Am̄sumat* (among these) is capable of subjugating. (The forms) of the letters *ka* to *kṣa* are: *Kāmadeva, Śikhaṅḍī, Gaṇeśa, Kāla, Śaṅkara, Ekanetra, Dvinetra, Triśikha, Dirghabāhuka, Ekapād, Arddha-*

candra, Balapa, Yoginīpriya, Śaktīśvara, Mahāgranthi, Tarpaka, Sthāṇu, Dantura, Nidhīśa, Nandī, Padma, Śākinīpriya, Mukha-bimba, Bhīṣaṇa, Kṛtānta, Prāṇa, Tejasvī, Śakra, Udadhi, Śrīkaṅṭha, Simha, Śaśāṅka, Viśvarūpa and Narasiṃha (representing) *kṣa*.

8b-11a. (The syllable of) Viśvarūpa should be made to be pervaded by the syllables of Sūrya (Sun). After having coupled the syllable of Śaśī (Moon) with Amśumat, (the syllable of) Īśāna pervaded by (the syllable of) Ojas should first be raised up. (Among the above names), the third should be known as (Tat)Puruṣa, the fifth as Dakṣiṇa, the seventh as Vāmadeva, the next one as Sadyojāta and the ninth as coupled with the *rasa* (*bija*). This is known as the *brahmaṣaṭcaka* (the five brahmans).

11b-14. All the mantras begin with the syllable *om* and end with (the name in) the fourth case and obeisance. (The first one is presided over by) Sadyojāta. The second one is the heart together with the subordinate one. The fourth should be known as the head known by the name Īśvara. Ūhaka should be known as the tuft endowed with Viśvarūpa. Its *mantra* is known to be the eighth. The eye is considered as the tenth. O Śikhidhvaja (Kumāra, having peacock as the banner) ! The weapon is said to be the Moon known as Śiva. Obeisance, oblation, *vauṣaṭ*, *hūm* and *phaṭka* is the order.

15-17. I shall describe the *prāsāda mantra* (the benevolent one) relating to the heart etc. belonging to *phaṭka*. One should raise the (syllable) known as Rudra from Īśāna adorned with Amśu that remains above the group in the region of head pervaded by Auṣadha. It has half-crescent *nāda* (nasal sound) upwards having two dots in the middle. Viśvarūpa is at the end bent thrice. This is the *prāsāda mantra* capable of accomplishing all the things.

18-21a. After having raised the syllables of the tuft ending with the syllable *phaṭ* placed on the half crescent, it is known as Kāmadeva that flows (and is verily) the great Pāsupata weapon that destroys all evils. I have described the *prāsāda* (*mantra*) endowed with parts. I will describe (the *muntra*) without parts now. (This consists of) Auṣadha, Viśvarūpa, Rudra, orb of Sun, coupled with *nāda* of the form of half-moon, without designa-

tion and bent. The *niṣkala* (*mantra*) confers enjoyment and emancipation. It is always benevolent because it is endowed with five parts.

21b-31. (The *mantras*) that are void (consist of) *Amśumat*, *Viśvarūpa* and divested of *Brahmāṅga* (class of letters). Its form is the essence. It destroys obstacles when worshipped by boys and ignorant men. *Amśumat* coupled with *Viśvarūpa* and situated over the *Ūhaka* is the *mantra* known as *kalāḍhya* (fully endowed with parts). It is always used in the worship in the same way as the *mantra* with parts. The *khamalaṅkṛta* consists of *Narasimha* (*mantras*) situated in *Kṛtānta* pervading above the radiant life force, coupled with *Amśumat* and pervaded by *Ūhaka* above and below. It is composed of half-moon *nāda* adorned by *Brahmā* and *Viṣṇu*. The *Udadhi* (*mantras*) and *Narasimha* should be divided with the vowels of *Sūrya*. The other subsidiary rites should be done as before. The first letter is that which is known as *Ojas*, coupled with *Amśumat* that is to be raised. The foremost among the second letter is the *Amśumat* pervaded by *Amśu*. Similarly the *Amśumat* (pervading) the *Īsvara* is capable of conferring emancipation. The *Ūhakas* are pervaded by *Amśu* and (followed by) *Varuṇa*, *Prāṇa* and *Tajjasa* (syllables). It is known as the fifth one. The next one is the *Kṛtānta*. The *Amśumat* (coupled with) *Udaka* and *Prāṇa* is raised as the seventh one. The *Padma* is pervaded by *Indu*. The *Nandiśa* is coupled with *Ekapāda*. The first one is added at the end. (That is known) as *Kṣapaṇaka* consisting of ten syllables. The third, fifth and seventh would number half of it. The *Sadyojāta* would be the ninth, the *hṛd* and other (*mantras*) (taken) from the second. The *mantras* consisting of the (above said) ten syllables should end with *phaṭ*. This *astra* (*mantra*) should be raised.

32-34. The subordinate *mantras* (in the above) should be coupled with obeisance. It is not done in any other way. From the second to the eighth are considered as the *Vidyēśvaras* (the lords of the *mantras*)—*Ananteśa*, *Sūkṣma*, *Śivottama* the third, *Ekamūrti*, *Ekarūpa*, *Trimūrti* the next one, *Śrikaṇṭha* and *Śikhaṇḍi* are known to be the eight *Vidyēśvaras*. The ends of the *mantras* from that of *Śikhaṇḍi* to the end of *Ananta* are said to be the embodied form.

## CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND EIGHTEEN

*The mode of worshipping Gaṇapati, accomplishing all things*

*The Lord said :*

1-2. The Viśvarūpa (syllable) should be raised and placed above the Tejas. Then the Narasimha and Kṛtānta are placed below one below the other. The *praṇava* (*om̐*) should be placed below that and the Udaka below that. The Amśumat that remains in the Viśvamūrti, the letter of the throat and lip region and the *praṇava* (*om̐*) (should be below that).

3. The first four letters should end with obeisance. It should then be coupled as before with the *aṅgamantras* adding also the syllables of Sūrya and Viśvarūpa, the cause.

4. The syllable *om̐* should be raised first and the luminous form without a second one should be repeated. The Ghoraghoratara (terrible one) (should be repeated). That form should then be remembered.

5-6. After having made the *caṭa* sound twice, the (syllable) *om̐* should be repeated. Then one has to repeat twice 'burn' and then twice 'vama'. After having stated 'kill' twice, one should repeat *hūm phaṭ* at the end. This would be the *mantra* of the weapon for (lord) Aghora. I shall describe the *gāyatri* (*mantra*) (sacred to the same deity) now—"We know the true self of (lord) Maheśa. We meditate on the supreme god. May that auspicious god kindle our (mind) to that." This *gāyatri* (*mantra*) is capable of accomplishing all things.

7-14. One has to worship (lord) Gaṇa (Gaṇapati) when one sets on a journey or in battle etc. for prosperity. One has to draw (the figure of a lotus having three petals inside a triangle on a fourth part of a square place divided into twelve chambers. On its back (back of the lotus) steps and pathway (should be drawn) having (the mark of) a horse on (each) petal. There should be silken cloth for footrest together with eight lotuses having three petals. The platform should be made above that measuring a fourth part. (The figure) should have a door containing (a figure of) a lotus. The side door from the chamber should be made pale. The circle drawn with doors and side-doors would destroy obstacles. The central lotus should

be red. The lotuses outside that should (also be red). The pathway should be made white. The doors (should be coloured) as one wishes. The pericarp as well as the filaments would be yellow in colour. This circle is known as destroying obstacles. (Lord) Gaṇapati should be worshipped. The first name would be that of (lord) Śiva together with Indra and others. The head is struck with Tatpuruṣa. *Om* is the first (syllable) with obeisance at the end.

15. (The gods) Gaja (elephant), Gajaśīrṣa (elephant-headed), Gāṅgeya (son of Gaṅgā), Gaṇanāyaka (lord of the Gaṇas), Trirāvartta (turned round thrice), Gaganaga (one who travels in the sky), Gopati (a leader) (should be worshipped) in the first row.

16-22. Vicitrāṁśa (one possessing strange characteristics), Mahākāya (one having a big body), Lamboṣṭa (having a hanging lip), Lambakarṇaka (one having drooping ears), Lambodara (big-bellied), Mahābhāga (very fortunate one), Vikṛta (having strange appearance), Pārvatī-priya (one who is dear to Pārvatī), Bhayāvaha (frightening), Bhadra (auspicious), Bhagaṇa (the cluster of asterisms), Bhayasūdana (one that destroys fear) are the twelve (to be worshipped) on the ten rows. Devatrāsa (frightening the celestials) (should be worshipped) on the west. Mahānāda (one having a great sound), Bhāsvara (one having lustre), Vighnarāja (lord of obstacles), Gaṇādhipa (lord of the Gaṇas), Udbhaṭa (the pre-eminent one), Svanābha (self-originating), Caṇḍa (wrathful), Mahāśuṇḍa (one having a big trunk), Bhīmaka (the terrible), Manmatha (captivating the mind), Madhusūda (the destroyer of Madhu), Sundara (beautiful one), and Bhāvapuṣṭaka (one that nourishes one's thoughts) (should be worshipped). (Lord) Brahmeśvara (lord of Brahmā), Brāhma, Manovṛtti (mental attitude), Saṁlaya (well-absorbed), Laya (absorption), Dūtya-priya (fond of being a messenger), Laulya (extremely desirous), Vikarṇa (having a strange ear), Vatsala (affectionate), Kṛtānta (the destroyer) and Kāladaṇḍa (death) (should be worshipped) on the north. A sacrificial pitcher should be worshipped as before. The *mantra* should be repeated ten thousand times. Oblation should be done one-tenth of that number. When the other (*mantras*) are repeated oblations should be made ten times.

After having performed the final oblation, one should do the consecration. One would accomplish everything. A person should honour the preceptor by (giving) land, cows, horse, elephant, clothes and other articles.

## CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND NINETEEN

### *Mode of worshipping Vāgīśvari (Goddess of speech)*

*The Lord said :*

1. I shall describe the worship of (Goddess) Vāgīśvari (Goddess of speech) in a circle. The *mantra* (made up of syllable of) Ūhaka together with (that of) Kāla added with the letters (would be the *mantra* for the Goddess).

2-4. O Niṣāda (hunter) (denotes Kumāra) ! The *mantra* (for Goddess Vāgīśvari) should be used like that of the Moon and Sun. No letter need be assigned. One should contemplate (the Goddess) as having the complexion of jasmine and moon, embodying the fifty letters<sup>1</sup> (of the alphabet), adorned with garlands of pearls and flowers, (holding the postures of hand) offering boons and protection and holding books and possessing three eyes. One should repeat the garland of letters from 'a' to 'kṣa' remembering as pervading (the body of the Goddess) upto the tip of the head and the ends of the shoulders.

5-10. The preceptor should make a circle for the sake of initiating (the disciple) in a *mantra*. A lotus (figure) that is good (for the worship of the Goddess) should have twelve tips divided into two parts. One should make ready the pathway and steps. There should be eight lotuses on the cross-road. The pathway and steps should be provided outside also. There should be doors in two squares. Similarly the side-doors, the construction of angular points and two strips of cloth should be done. The nine lotuses (should be) white. The pericarp of the lotus (should have) the hue of gold. The filaments should be variegat-

1. The letters *a* to *kṣa* of the Sanskrit language.

ed. The angular points should be filled with red (-coloured substance). The inner space between the lines of the sky (should be painted) black. The doors should be of the measure of the elephant of Indra. (Goddess) Sarasvatī (should be contemplated) at the centre of the (above) lotus. (Goddess) Vāgīśī (should be contemplated) on the eastern lotus. (Goddesses) Hṛllekhā, Citravāgīśī, Gāyatrī, Viśvarūpā, Śāṅkarī, Rati and Dhṛti (should also be worshipped). (The syllable) *hrīm* and the respective syllables (should be worshipped) in the east and other (directions). (The Goddess) should be contemplated as (Goddess) Sarasvatī. Oblations (should be done) with clarified butter from the milk of a tawny cow. One would then become a Saṁskṛta and Prākṛta poet and one who is well-versed in the science of poesy and other things.

## CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND TWENTY

### *The different mystic diagrams*

*The Lord said :*

1-5a. O Guha<sup>1</sup>! I shall describe to you the Sarvato-bhadra<sup>2</sup> (that which confers good from all sides). A wiseman should worship the favourite Goddess of energy on the east at (the time of) the equinox. Then he should hold the thread east-west having the middle point between (the asterisms) Citrā and Svāti and mark at its centre after causing it to move gently. Two points on the north and south should be marked from its middle point. The two points should be brought in line with the middle point after having moved (the string) gently north-south. The junctions of angular points should be marked such that one would have one hundred and fifty divisions. Thus a quadrangle would be formed by causing the four lines to move gently. The auspicious Bhadra diagram should be drawn in that.

- 
1. denotes Kumāra, son of Śiva and Pārvati.
  2. a kind of mystical diagram.

5b-8a. (The quadrangle) should be divided into eight squares. The pathways and doorways should be made in two squares each. The cupola should be proportionate to the measure of the lotus. The excellent angular joints should be formed by turning round two squares. The lotus should be (painted) white, the pericarp yellow; the filaments variegated, the pathway red and the door having the hue of Lokeśa (Lord of the world). The angular point (should be) red. (This is the lotus to be drawn) in the case of a daily rite. Listen to me! (I shall describe the mode of drawing) a lotus for an occasional (rite).

8b-9. There are two varieties of lotus (diagrams), (the diagram) that does not touch and (the diagram) that touches, which confer enjoyment and emancipation. That which does not touch (is intended) for those who desire for release (from worldly existence). That which touches is of three (kinds)—young one, middle one and old. (These three) yield the fruits and perfection according to their respective names.

10-14. Lines should be drawn in the different directions as well as the directions in between in the place for the lotus. Five circles should be drawn (having dimensions) equal to that of the lotus. There should be nine lotuses around the pericarp in the first (circle). The second (circle) should have twentyfour pericarps. There should be a union of petals, the tip of the petal resembling the temple of an elephant. The fifth should be of the form of the sky. This is known as contiguous (type of) lotus. In the unctiguous one, the tip of the petal should be divided into four from the bottom. After having discarded two parts, a petal should be set with one-eighth of the remaining. The petal should be anointed with the line at the union from the base. This would be *Vṛddha* class on the left and right.

15-17a. In the alternative one should whirl round from the middle of the union to form a semi-circle. The two unions and the foremost line (should be made into circles). This would form a young type of lotus. One should turn it from behind with half the measure of the union line. This lotus having pointed tip known as youthful class is capable of conferring enjoyment and emancipation. The *bāla* class of lotus is known as of two kinds—*mukta* and *vṛddha* useful in subjugating (one's enemy) etc.

17b-22. A ground measuring nine cubits should be made ready as having nine central points with parts possessing *mantras*. A lotus (should be drawn) at the centre having a banner at the centre and a door proportionate in size to that of the lotus. Leaving its neck portion and the adjacent parts, a pathway should be made outside. The pathway should have five parts. There should be ten parts around that. Lotuses (should be drawn) in the eight directions and the directions in between. The lotus at the entrance should have a pathway. A pathway of five foot (breadth) adorns outside that. The door and the neck (should measure) like that of the lotus. The frontal and neck (should measure) a foot. The cupola should be made a foot. There should be three doors in the (different) directions. The angular joints will have three chambers. Two chambers would bear the mark of a mace. The central lotus (should be) white (and other lotuses should be) yellow, red, blue, whitish yellow, smoky, red and yellow conferring emancipation.

23-24a. One should worship Śiva, Viṣṇu and others in the eight lotuses on the east etc. After having worshipped Indra and others at the centre of the edifice, the weapons in the lotuses and (lord) Viṣṇu and others in the external pathway, one would get (the fruits of performing) the *aśvamedha* (sacrifice).

24b-30a. One should draw a great circle in connection with the investiture of the sacred thread on the idol etc. A piece of ground (measuring) eight cubits should be divided into eight chambers. There should be a lotus in two chambers at the centre and the pathway in one chamber. Eight blue lotuses should be marked in the different directions and the spaces in between. Thirty blue lotuses without the union of petals (should be drawn) measuring the same size as the central lotus. There should be a pathway behind occupying a chamber. There should be (the figure of) *svastika-s* above that. As before the pathway outside should be in eight (chambers) divided into twenty parts having (the figure of) *svastikas* in two chambers. The doors and the boundaries should be proportionate to the lotus. The angular point, the pathway and the lotus in the circle should be red, yellow and blue respectively. O Guha ! the *svastika* (figure) etc. of varied colour are capable of fulfilling all the desires.

30b-33. (The circle having) five lotuses should measure five cubits. It should be wholly divided into ten parts. The pathway (should occupy) two chambers of the lotus, and the tablet (in one chamber). There should be four lotuses at the cardinal points. There should be a pathway on the rear in one chamber or two chambers. The doors should be endowed with boundaries and adjacent spaces. There should be a lotus at the centre. In this circle consisting of five lotuses, (the lotus) in the east (is) white and yellow, the lotus in the south (is) of the hue of lapis lazuli, the lotus in the west (is) of the colour of jasmine, the lotus in the north (is) of the colour of a conch and all the rest of varied colour.

34-37. I shall describe a circle of ten cubits which yields all the desires. It should be a four-sided one divided into ten parts. The door would occupy two chambers. As (described) earlier (there should be) a lotus at the centre. I shall now describe (the circle known as) the destroyer of obstacles. After having made (ready) a place (measuring) four cubits, a circle measuring two armslength (should be drawn). The pathway (should measure) only a cubit. It should be made to contain many figures of *svastika*. The doors should measure a cubit. There should be circle containing lotus (figures) in the cardinal points. Five white coloured lotuses (should be drawn). God without any attributes should be worshipped at the centre. The heart (and other limbs) (should be worshipped) in the east and other directions. The weapons should be worshipped in the directions in between (these directions).

38-41. As before the five Brahmans (forms of Śiva should be worshipped). I shall describe the support of intellect. A place should be divided into hundred parts and a lotus (should be drawn) in fifteen parts. (Figures) of eight *liṅgas* should be drawn in the (eight) directions. The girdle should occupy a part and the boundary would be in two chambers. The preceptor should provide decorative festoons etc. making use of his creative thinking.<sup>1</sup> There are one thousand four-hundred and forty circles for the gods Hari, Śambhu and Sun and the goddess.

---

1. Verse number 40 is cryptic and has not been translated.

42-48. Listen to me ! I shall describe the decorations and marks to be made in (a place) divided into seventy (parts). Fifteen, one, three and five (chambers) in the cardinal points should be erased. The temple of *liṅga* should be made above in two chambers on the sides. A lotus should be drawn in two chambers at the centre. A lotus should be drawn in one chamber on either side of the *liṅga*. By destroying the six lines of the decorations the remaining (would form lines) for (lord) Hari. After having erased the two squares above, it is said to form the auspicious *aṣṭaka* (having eight parts) of (lord) Hari. It is decorated by erasing four lines and possessing beam like (lines). Then the lotus for a seat is made in twentyfive (chambers). After having retained two chambers on each side, the eight secondary decorations (are made). The diagram sacred to the goddess is big at the centre and small above. There should be a lotus at the centre in nine chambers and four chambers in the cardinal points. The remaining thirteen chambers form a circle resting on one's intellect. That one having one hundred and sixty petals based on one's intellect (is intended) for Hara (Śiva) and others.

## CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND TWENTYONE

### *The appeasing rites relating to Aghorāstra*

*The Lord said:*

1. (The propitiatory) rite for the weapons has to be done first. It is capable of yielding the results in all actions. The weapons relating to (lord) Śiva and others should be worshipped at the centre. The thunderbolt and others (weapons) (should be worshipped) from the east onwards in order.

2. One would gain victory in battle etc. by worshipping five discs in (a place measuring) ten cubits. In the worship of the planets the Sun (has to be worshipped) at the centre and the Moon and others (planets) in the east and other directions.

3-4. All the planets (would be beneficial) as if they are in

the eleventh house, by their worship. I shall describe (the rite of) appeasing the weapons that would destroy all the portents, remedy the baneful influences of planets and crush the epidemics and enemies. One should repeat (the *mantra* sacred to) the weapon of Aghora<sup>1</sup> that would burn the impediments.

5-6. (The repetition of the *mantra*) a lakh times would destroy (the baneful influences of) the planets. (One should do) oblations with sesamum (to nullify) portents. (In the case of portents occurring) in the sky one should do (oblation or repetition) half a lakh times which would destroy the portents. It is beneficial to do oblation with ghee a lakh times in the case of portents relating to the earth. All types of portents are nullified by doing oblation with ghee and *guggulu* (fragrant gum-resin).

7. There is no doubt that diseases (get cured) by performing oblation with *dūrvā* (grass), unbroken rice and clarified butter and bad dreams get destroyed (by doing oblation) one thousand times.

8. The evil effects of the planets would get nullified (by doing oblation) with ghee mixed with *japā* (flower) ten thousand times. Oblation performed with ghee ten thousand times would appease the afflictions due to Vināyaka (an evil spirit).

9-10. The spirits and goblins would be appeased by (the oblation of) *guggulu* ten thousand times. (One would get good results) by offering oblations with *dūrvā* (grass), clarified butter and unbroken rice when a giant tree falls down or a serpent or a heron perches on the house or while one enters the forests etc. One would get good results by offering oblations with sesamum and clarified butter when a portent or earthquake occurs.

11-12a. (Oblations done) with *guggulu* ten thousand times would be beneficial if the trees ooze out blood. Oblations made with sesamum and clarified butter half a lakh times (would be beneficial) when (the trees) bear flowers and fruits in improper season, (when there is) unrest in the country, (when enemies) invade the country and epidemics affect the bipeds etc.

---

1. One of the five forms of Śiva.

12b-13a. It is said that rite of appeasement should be done ten thousand times in order to appease the epidemics in elephants, in order to strengthen the tusk of the female elephants and when the elephants are found rutting.

13b.-14a. When there is a miscarriage of the foetus at an improper time, or when the child perishes after birth, or when the children are born deformed or when one undertakes a journey, one should do oblations ten thousand times.

14b-15a. Oblations done with sesamum and clarified butter one lakh times would yield excellent results, half that number (would yield) medium results and a quarter of that number (would yield) poor results.

15b-c. Similar to the repetition (of the *mantra*) oblation done (with the *mantra*) would confer victory in battle. One should repeat (the *mantra* of) the weapon of Aghora after making the (mental) location (of the *mantra* on the limbs) and contemplating the excellent five-faced (lord).<sup>1</sup>

## CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND TWENTYTWO

*The appeasing rite employing the mantra of the weapon of Paśupati*

*The Lord said:*

1. I shall describe first the appeasing rite and repetition with (the *mantra*) of the weapon of Paśupati. If it is repeated with *phaṭ* at the end it would remove one's misfortune. *Om* ! Obeisance to the lord ! to great lord of the flock ! to one possessing matchless prowess and strength ! to one having fifteen eyes ! to the person having varied forms ! to one who is armed with different kinds of weapons ! to one having blood besmeared all over the body ! to one who is blended with a mass of collyrium ! to one who is fond of the cremation ground and goblins ! to one who removes all impediments ! to one who confers all perfec-

1. Aghora is one of the five faces of lord Śiva; the other faces are : Iśāna, Tatpuruṣa, Vāmadeva and Sadyojāta.

tions ! to one who is gracious to the devotees ! to one who has innumerable faces, arms and feet ! to the one who has attained perfection ! to one who frightens the goblins ! to one who causes commotion in Śākinī (female attendant on goddess Durgā) ! to the person who controls the diseases ! to one who destroys the sins ! to one who has the Sun, Moon and Fire as the (three) eyes ! to one who is the armour of (lord) Viṣṇu ! to one who (holds) the sword and thunderbolt in the hand ! to one who has the club of Yama and the noose of Varuṇa (the lord of the West and upholder of moral law) ! to the one holding the trident of Rudra ! to the person who has the burning tongue ! to the person who drives away all diseases ! to one who controls the plants ! to one who annihilates the malicious serpents ! *Om phaṭ* to the black and brown ! *Phaṭ* to the person having the sound *hūm* as the weapon ! *Phaṭ* to one holding the thunderbolt in the hand ! *Phaṭ* to the spear ! *Phaṭ* to the club ! *Phaṭ* to Yama ! *Phaṭ* to the sword ! *Phaṭ* to lord of north-west ! *Phaṭ* to Varuṇa ! *Phaṭ* to the noose ! *Phaṭ* to the banner ! *Phaṭ* to the goad ! *Phaṭ* to the mace ! *Phaṭ* to Kubera (lord of wealth) ! *Phaṭ* to the trident ! *Phaṭ* to the hammer ! *Phaṭ* to the disc ! *Phaṭ* to the lotus ! *Phaṭ* to the serpent weapon ! *Phaṭ* to Īśāna ! *Phaṭ* to the club weapon (called *kheṭaka*) ! *Phaṭ* to the headless trunk ! *Phaṭ* to the weapon, the headless trunk ! *Phaṭ* to the weapon, the skeleton ! *Phaṭ* to the weapon, the feather of a peacock ! *Phaṭ* to the weapon, the sharp knife ! *Phaṭ* to the weapon Brahmāstra ! *Phaṭ* to the weapon Śaktyastra ! *Phaṭ* to the weapon of the Gaṇa (attendant of lord Śiva) ! *Phaṭ* to the accomplished weapon ! *Phaṭ* to the weapon *pilīpiccha* ! *Phaṭ* to the weapon of the Gandharva (semi-divine being) ! *Phaṭ* to the weapon of *mūrvā* (a kind of grass from which strings and girdles of *kṣatriyas* are made) ! *Phaṭ* to the weapon of the right ! *Phaṭ* to the left ! *Phaṭ* to the weapon of the west ! *Phaṭ* to the weapon of *mantra* ! *Phaṭ* to the weapon of Śākinī (female attendant of Goddess Durgā) ! *Phaṭ* to the weapon of yoginī (another female attendant of Goddess Durgā) ! *Phaṭ* to the weapon, the club ! *Phaṭ* to the weapon, the great club ! *Phaṭ* to the weapon, the serpent ! *Phaṭ* to the weapon of Śiva ! *Phaṭ* to the weapon of Īśāna ! *Phaṭ* to the weapon of (Tat) puruṣa ! *Phaṭ* to the weapon of Aghora ! *Phaṭ* to the weapon of Vāmadeva !

*Phaṭ* to the weapon of Sadyojāta! *Phaṭ* to the weapon of the heart! *Phaṭ* to the great weapon! *Phaṭ* to the weapon of Garuḍa (vulture vehicle of lord Viṣṇu)! *Phaṭ* to the weapon of the demons! *Phaṭ* to the weapon of the Dānavas (demons, progeny of Danu)! *Phaṭ* to the weapon of the man-lion form (of Viṣṇu)! *Phaṭ* to the weapon of Tvaṣṭṛ (a celestial god)! *Phaṭ* to all the weapons! *naḥ phaṭ!* *vaḥ phaṭ!* *paḥ phaṭ!* *phaḥ phaṭ!* *maḥ phaṭ!* *śriḥ phaṭ!* *hrai phaṭ!* (region) *bhūḥ phaṭ!* (region) *bhuvaḥ phaṭ!* (region) *svaḥ phaṭ!* (region) *mahaḥ phaṭ!* (region) *janaḥ phaṭ!* (region) *tapaḥ phaṭ!* *Phaṭ* all worlds! *Phaṭ* all nether worlds! *Phaṭ* all principles! *Phaṭ* all life forces! *Phaṭ* all nerves! *Phaṭ* all causes! *Phaṭ* all the Gods! *hrīm phaṭ!* *śrīm phaṭ!* *hrūm phaṭ!* *srūm phaṭ!* *ām phaṭ!* *lām phaṭ!* *Phaṭ* to indifference (for worldly pleasures)! *Phaṭ* to the weapon of illusion! *Phaṭ* to the weapon of desire! *Phaṭ* to the weapon of the guardian of the field! *Phaṭ* to the weapon, the sound *hūm!* *Phaṭ* to the weapon of the Sun! *Phaṭ* to the weapon of the Moon! *Phaṭ* to the weapon of lord of obstacles! *Gauṁ gauṁ phaṭ!* *Khrom Khraum phaṭ!* *Hrom hraum phaṭ!* Cause to roam about (2) *phaṭ!* Burn (2) *phaṭ!* Cover (2) *phaṭ!* Uproot (2) *phaṭ!* Threaten (2) *phaṭ!* Revive (2) *phaṭ!* Drive away (2) *phaṭ!* Destroy all misfortunes *phaṭ!*

2-3. The repetition (of the above) even once would destroy all the impediments. One would destroy all the portents by repeating hundred times and would be victorious in the battle etc. One would accomplish even that one could not accomplish by doing oblation with ghee and *guggulu* (fragrant gum-resin). One would have all (kinds of) peace by reading this weapon of (lord) Paśupati (lord of flock of beings).

## CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND TWENTYTHREE

*The mantra of the weapons of Aghora and the six constituents*

*The Lord said:*

1-2. Death, diseases and other things are controlled by (the repetition of) the *mantra* “*Om hrūm haṁsa*”. One has to bring

into effect appeasement and nourishment by doing a lakh of oblations with *dūrvā* (grass). O Six-faced one<sup>1</sup> ! Appeasement of portents, (un-natural flowering of) the trees and those relating to gods, sky and the earth (could be done) with (the repetition of) the *praṇava* (*om̐*) or *māyā*<sup>2</sup> (*mantra*). “*Om̐* ! obeisance ! O Gaṅges ! Kāli ! Kāli (one having dark complexion) ! Mahākāli ! Mahākāli (the great dark-complexioned one) ! One who eats flesh and blood ! One having red and black face ! Bring the men under control ! Oblation ! *Om̐* !

3-5a. After having repeated (the mantra) one lakh times and offering oblations one-tenth (of that number) one would become the accomplisher of all tasks. One would subjugate Śakra (Indra; the chief of the celestials). One need not say about (its influence on) the mortals. This *mantra* is capable of making (the votary) invisible, captivating and paralysing (others). It brings the enemies under control and confuses the intellectual faculties of the enemies. This mystic learning is the Kāmadhenu (wish-yielding divine cow) when repeated seven times.

5b-6. I shall describe the foremost formula which would captivate enemies, thieves and others. One should remember (this formula) revered by (lord) Hara (Śiva) in the case of all kinds of great apprehensions. After having repeated one lakh times (one should do) oblation with sesamum which would accomplish (the task). Listen (to me) ! (I shall describe the formula of) deliverance: *Om̐* ! The plough-bearer ! The trident-bearer ! Come ! Protect me with the truths of (gods) Brahmā, Viṣṇu and Rudra ! Oblations to Lord of speech !

7-9. (Goddess) Śivā (consort of Śiva) is known as Durgā because (She) saves (people) from adversity. *Om̐* ! Fierce bearer of the skull ! Gnash the teeth ! Gnash ! Destroy (2) Mysterious one ! *Phaṭ Hriṃ* ! The rice grains should be consecrated with this excellent formula after repeating thirty times and given to thieves. (It would establish their) innocence if the chewed cud ejected (by them) is white. *Om̐* ! One having glowing eyes ! One shining with dark-brown matted hair ! One who drives away !

1. denotes Kumāra, son of lord Śiva and Pārvatī.

2. the letters ā, i, ī, u, ṛ, ḷ, ḹ, kha, ma, ya, kṣa, hrūm, klīm

One who frightens the three worlds! Cut (2)! Roam about (2)! Attract (2)! Break (2)! Twist (2)! Burn (2)! Cook (2)! Thus Rudra, who accomplishes, makes known! I shall bring back the person possessed by spirit even if he has gone to the heaven, region of the gods or sporting in the summit! Accept (2) the offering I am giving! Oblations! After having offered the victim to the guardian of the ground and (the performance of the rite) of locating the planets, (the enemy) would be subjugated. The enemies would get destroyed. The enemy forces would be routed in the battle.

10-13. One would nullify three kinds of poisons by the location of the *hamsabija*.<sup>1</sup> After having made equal proportion of *aguru*, sandal, *kuṣṭha*, saffron, *nāgakeśara*, *nakha* and *devadāru* and mixing with honey, one should fumigate the clothes etc. of an idol. This would bring good result in discussion, charms, adorning women and quarrels. (The same fumigation) is consecrated with *māyāmantra*<sup>2</sup> in the case of selection of a bride and for fortune. A person who looks at a person after wearing a mark on the forehead with the yellow pigment (got from a cow), *nāgapuṣpa*, saffron and arsenic (and uttering the syllable) *hrīm* would subjugate him.

14-17. Pulverised *śatāvare* drunk with milk would help (a man) to get a male child. Pulverised *nāgakeśara* boiled with ghee would also help (a man) to get a male child. Similarly one would get a male child by drinking the seeds of *palāśa*. *Om*! O Cāmuṇḍā! Rise up! Make (this person) yawn (2)! Charm (2)! Subjugate this person (2)! Oblation! This is the twentysixth formula that is accomplished. After having (made an image) of the lady (to be subjugated) with the earth (got) from the banks of a river and writing the name on an *arka* leaf with the juice of the *unmatta* (plant) and having urinated, (the formula) should be repeated. Then the lady would be subjugated.

*Om, kṣum, saḥ, vaṣaṭ*. This formula (known as) the great conqueror of death gives nourishment when repeated and used for doing the oblation.

- 
1. The letters *ma, ya, ra, sa* and *ha*
  2. containing the letter *hrīm* etc.

*Om̐, haṁsaḥ, hrūṁ, hrūṁ, sa, hraḥ, saum̐, skaiḥ* consisting of eight syllables (is known as) a formula that revives the dead and brings victory in battle.

18-21. The formulae beginning with *Īśāna* and others confer virtues, pleasures etc. (Lord) *Īśāna* (*Śiva*) is the lord of all formulae, lord of all beings. He is the lord of *Brahmā*. May that Brahman, (lord) *Śiva* always be benevolent to me! *Om̐* I know (the lord) *Tatpuruṣa*. I meditate on (lord) *Mahādeva* (the great god). Hence that *Rudra* incite us. *Om̐* obeisance to those who are not fierce, to those who are fierce, to those who are most fierce and to all the manifestations of *Rudras*. *Om̐* obeisance to *Vāmadeva* ! Obeisance to the seniormost ! Obeisance to the most excellent ! Obeisance to *Rudra* ! Obeisance to *Kāla* (time) ! Obeisance to *Kalavikaraṇa* ! Obeisance to *Balavikaraṇa* ! Obeisance to the strong one ! Obeisance to one who controls strength ! Obeisance to one who controls all the beings ! Obeisance to one who disturbs the mind ! *Om̐* I resort to (lord) *Sadyojāta* ! Obeisance to *Sadyojāta* !

On the lord of the beings (2) ! On the lord of eternal being ! Be manifest in me. Obeisance to the god proceeded from the eternal being.

I shall describe the six formulae which are accessories to the five Brahman (formulae). *Om̐* ! Obeisance to the Supreme ! to the grantor of desires ! to the Supreme lord ! to the lord of communion ! to the lord produced out of communion ! to the doer of all things ! Do (2) ! True (2) ! Lord of beings (2) ! One manifest from the eternal beings ! *Vāmadeva* ! Doer of all things ! Destroyer of sins ! Always benevolent ! One who is pleased ! Obeisance to you ! Oblations.

(The formula of) the heart, which yields all things, consists of seventy letters. *Om̐* ! *Śiva* ! Obeisance to *Śiva* ! *Śiva* ! *Om̐* ! Oblations to the glowing (energy) in the heart is (the formula for) the tuft. *Om̐* ! One who is verily of the nature of benevolence ! One possessing great splendour ! Omniscient ! O Lord ! Turn round ! One who is most fierce ! One having a dark armour ! Obeisance ! One having a great armour ! Bind (2) the heart by the command of *Śiva* ! Whirl round (2) ! Pulverise ! One who holds the subtle thunderbolt ! One who has the strong

noose! One whose strong body bears the bow and thunderbolt!  
You enter my body and paralyse all the evil forces (2)! *Hūm*!

The armour consists of one hundred and five letters. *Om*!  
To the Vigour (of the lord)! *Om*! Make the eyes quiver (2)!  
One having subtle form (2)! Pierce (2)! Pierce intensely (2)!  
Cover (2)! Vomit (2)! Kill (2)! *Hūm, phaṭ* (is the) weapon  
of Aghora.

## CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND TWENTYFOUR

### *Appeasing rite for lord Śiva*

*The Lord said:*

1-3. I shall describe the appeasing rite for Śiva which is preceded by the collection of formulae of Aghora. It is the lord of seven crores (of formulae). It is fierce. It is capable of destroying sins such as killing a brahmin etc. It is the abode of both excellent as well as ordinary achievements. It destroys portents pertaining to the celestial region, sky and earth. It devours poisons, spirits and goblins. It confers all the desires. It is an expiation destroying a host of sins. It destroys misfortune and difficulties.

4-7. After having located Ekavīra, the five faces should always be contemplated. (The face should be contemplated as) white in (the rites of) appeasement and nourishment, red in (the rites of) subjugation, yellow in (the rites of) paralysing, smoky in (the rites of) *uccāṭana* (a kind of charm for expulsion) and black in (the rites of) attracting (a person). One should worship the thirty-two letters for confounding (an enemy). The formula should be repeated thirty lakh times and the oblation should be done one-tenth (of that number). Gum resin mixed with *amṛtā* would accomplish all things. There is no other formula superior to the Aghora formula that would give enjoyment and emancipation. (By this repetition) one who is not a religious student would become a religious student and one who has not had his ablution after completing studies would have that.

8. The weapon of Aghora and Aghora are the two excellent formulae. One who repeats (the formulae) or does oblation (with them) or worships would rout the army of the enemy in the battle.

9-13. I shall describe (the rite of) appeasement of Rudra which is beneficial and which accomplishes all the desires. For the sake of progeny, for removing the malignant influences of the planets, for removing poison and curing diseases, for controlling famine and epidemics, for removing (the effect of) bad dreams, for gaining army and kingdom, for the destruction of enemies (it should be performed). When trees bear flowers untimely and for controlling all spirits (the formula should be used). (The word) obeisance should be used for worship, ending with oblation for making the oblation, the syllable *vaṣaṭ* for strengthening and *vausaṭ* for nourishment. In the place of 'ca' letter two times, the union of that class (of names) is made.

*Om* ! Obeisance to Rudra and to you and to the bull. (Obeisance) to one who does not leave, to unborn one, to the prime entity, to the worshipful, to Īśāna and to one possessing valour. (The following) five (are worshipped) in the north. (Obeisance) to the omnipresent, to the dreadful one, to one having distorted features, one who does not have any change in the form.

(Worship is made) for the sake of removal in (the principle of) *kāla* and water in the south-western direction.

Obeisance to Ekapiṅgala, to Śvetapiṅgala (and) to Kṛṣṇapiṅgala. Obeisance to Madhupiṅgala. (Obeisance) to Madhupiṅgala in self-restraint. (Obeisance) to Ananta, to Ārdra, to Śuṣka (dry) and to Payogaṇa in the principle of *kāla* (time). To the dreadful one, to the most dreadful one in the two principles of *māyā* (illusion). To the thousand-headed one, to the thousand-mouthed one, to the thousand-handed and footed one and to the thousand *liṅga* in the principle of learning. One should locate on the right petal from thousand-eyed. To Ekajaṭā, Dvijaṭā, Vijaṭā, to the form of *Svāhā*, to the form of *Svadhā*, to the form of *vaṣaṭ*, to the six Rudras. O Guha ! these are situated in the leaf of fire in the principle of Īśa. To the lord of goblins, to the lord of beings, to the lord of Umā and to the lord of

time. The six are to be worshipped in the eastern petals in the principle called Sadāśiva. To Umā, bearing a dreadful form, *Om* ! do (2), Ruhiṇi (2) ! You are Rudra, God of the celestials, Viśākha ! Kill (2), burn (2), cook (2), churn (2), *туру* (2), *aru* (2), and *suru* (2). Remember the appeasement of Rudra. O Kṛṣṇapiṅgala ! Obeisance to the lord of the universe, the lord of the untimely goblins. (Goddess) Umā and (god) Maheśvara should be worshipped in the pericarp in the principle of Śiva. *Om* to one pervading the sky, to the form of the sky, to omnipresent Śiva, to the endless, to one without anyone to govern, one who is not resorted, to Śiva. These nine terms are said to pervade the sky in the principle of Śiva. Obeisance to the eternal one ! to the one seated on the yogic altar ! to the eternal *yogin* ! to the person having contemplation as food ! *Om* obeisance to Śiva ! Lord of all (beings) ! One having Iśāna as the head ! One having Tatpuruṣa and others as the five faces ! O Guha ! The five chambers on the eastern petal in the principle of *sat* should be worshipped ! To one having Aghora as the heart ! To one having Vāmadeva as the secret organ ! To one embodied as Sadyojāta ! *Om* obeisance ! To one extremely secret ! To one who conceals ! To one who does not have death ! To one who presides over death ! To one of the form of radiance ! in the leaf (presided over) by Fire, in the principle of oblation ! in the principle of knowledge ! in the south ! To the supreme lord ! To the sentient and insentient ! To the sky-pervading one ! The splendour of the prime splendour ! in the principle of illusion in the south-west ! in the principle of time in the west ! *Om*, *dhṛ*, *dhṛ*, *nānā*, *vām*, *vaṁ* ! Deathless one ! Born of death ! Benevolent one ! The supreme soul ! Great god ! Master of good feelings ! Great splendour ! Presiding deity of *yoga* ! Release, release, churn, churn ! *Om* ! O Sarva (everything) (2) ! *Om* Bhava (The source) (2) ! One who bestows happiness on all beings ! In the son of Wind (god) and in the man of restraint in the north ! One who is manifest in the presence of all ! One who is above Brahmā, Viṣṇu and Rudra ! One who is not worshipped ! One who is not worshipped ! One who is not extolled ! The witness (2) ! Come ! Come ! O Sun ! O Fire (2) ! O Knowledge (2) ! Sound ! Subtle one (2) ! Benevolent one (2) ! Giver of

all things (2) ! *Om* ! Obeisance to Śiva. *Om* obeisance to Śiva. *Om* ! Obeisance. One should worship, offer oblation and repeat (the above formula) in the *prākṛta* principle in the north-east. It would remedy all afflictions due to planets, diseases and incantations and accomplish all things.

## CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND TWENTYFIVE

*The benefits of wearing the rosary beads and the counting  
of the formulae with them*

*The Lord said :*

1-3. One should wear a garland of rosary beads even or uneven (in number) and firm. One may wear beads having single face, three or five faces or as available. Beads having two, four or six faces, unbroken and having sharp thorns are commendable. One should wear the four-faced (bead) on the right hand and the tuft etc. (By this) one not observing celibacy would become a celibate, and a person not observing religious ablution would get the vow fulfilled. Otherwise one should wear a golden ring after having worshipped with the formula of Śiva.

4-7a (They are divided into four) classes (*gocaras*) : Śiva, Śikhā, Jyoti and Sāvitra. *Gocara* means the family. A person who has been initiated is to be known from that. The *Prājāpatya*, *Mahipāla*, *Kapota* and *Granthika* (belong) to the Śiva (class of beads). The *Kuṭilas*, *Vetālas*, *Padmas* and *Hamsas* (belong) to the Śikhā class (of beads). The *Dhṛtarāṣṭras*, *Bakas*, *Kākas* and *Gopālas* belong to (the class of beads) known as *Jyoti*. The *Kuṭikas*, *Sāraṭhas*, *Guṭikās* and *Daṇḍins* (belong) to the family of *Sāvitrī*. Thus there are four varieties in each one of these (classes).

7b-13. I shall describe the constituents of the formulae by which the formula would yield perfection. The formula should be written on the ground omitting the *kūṭa* and *ṣaṇḍa* (class of letters). The component letters of the formula should be separa-

ted (one by one) and the nasal sound should be added separately. (The letters) in the name of the votary should be separated. The letters (in the name) of the votary should be added at the beginning and end of the formula. (These letters) from the name (of the votary) should be reckoned as *siddha* (successful), *sādhya* (capable of being accomplished), *susiddha* (successful easily) and *ari* (hostile). A formula having the *siddha* (letters) at the beginning and end would give hundred percent results immediately. (A formula having) *susiddha* (letters) at the beginning and end should be deemed (to have the same result) as the *siddha* (letters). (A votary) should avoid at a distance the *ari* (letters) at the beginning and end. The *siddha* and *susiddha* (formulae) should be used for (rites of) same nature and the *ari* and *sādhya* (should also be used) similarly. The presence of thousands of hostile (letters) in the middle would not be a defect in a formula having *siddha* (letters) at the beginning and end.

14-17a. In the well-known formulae such as *māyā*<sup>1</sup>, *prasāda*<sup>2</sup> and *praṇava*<sup>3</sup>, there are no divisions. The formula presided over by Brahmā (is known) as Brahmavidyā. Those known as *vaiṣṇava* (pertaining to Viṣṇu) are sacred to Viṣṇu. The formulae of Rudra are called Viras. Those pertaining to Indra are dear to Īśvara. Those presided over by the serpents would make the serpents motionless. Those relating to the Yakṣas (a kind of semi-divine beings) are fond of ornaments. Those sacred to the Gandharvas are excessively (fond of) music etc. Those relating to the demons are dreadful. (The formulae) of the goblins are covered by filth. One should examine a formula and then impart (it).

17b-20a. (There are) formulae beginning with one letter and ending with *phaṭ* upto those having fifty letters. The formula (known as) *bālā* consists of twenty letters. That (known as) Rudra consists of twentytwo (letters). The formulae having more than that number upto three hundred (letters) are known as *vṛddha* (expanded). The letters beginning with *a* and ending

- 
1. See p. 888 fn. 2.
  2. the syllables *haṁ*, *hauṁ*.
  3. the syllable *om*.

with *ha* represent the white and dark fortnights. Among the ten vowels omitting the *anusvāra* (nasal sound) and *visarga* (aspirated sound) the shorter (vowels) represent the phases of the white fortnight and the longer ones those of the dark fortnight.

20b-21. (The incantations) for peace etc. (should be practised) when (the Sun) has risen. Those for subjugation (should be done) when (the Sun) is on the move. The incantation for creating dissension (should be practised) when (the Sun) has completed the revolution at the twilight periods and those for stupefaction (done) at sunset. The spells for peace (should be practised) when (the wind) flows through the *Iḍā* (one of the arteries) and those for attracting (a person) (should be done) when (the wind flows) through the *piṅgalā* (one of the arteries).

22-23. (Charms) for destruction and driving away (and such other results) (should be practised) at the time of the equinox. The incantations are thus of five kinds. The principle of earth (remains) on the lower part of the lip, lustre above, water in between, ether on the sides, wind outside and the great lord pervading everywhere. One has to practise the spell for paralysing in the earth (principle), appeasement in water, subjugation etc. in (the principle of) light, (spell) for driving away (a man) in (the principle of) wind and the auspicious moment in (the principle of) ether.

## CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND TWETYSIX

*Description of the mode of worshipping Goddess Gauri for gaining enjoyment, emancipation etc.*

*The Lord said :*

1. I shall describe the (mode of) worship of Umā (consort of Śiva) for fortune and conferring enjoyment and emancipation. (I shall also describe) the meditation of the formula, the

mystic diagram, the *mudrā*<sup>1</sup> and the oblation which are the means (for the same).

2-6a. After having drawn Citrabhānu (Bhairava form of Śiva), Śiva and Kāla together with Great Energy, Iḍā (one of the arteries) is drawn together with the lord and the modification. The second (circle) should have the door and words which please (goddess) Gaurī (synonym of Umā). The principal formula of (goddess) Gaurī should be made to end with fourth case (dative). *Om, hrīm, sah, śaum* obeisance to Gaurī (is the formula). Six inches should be endowed with the three letters appropriate to the group. The seat (should be spread out) with *praṇava* (syllable *om*) and the image (of the goddess) with (the formula of) the heart. The syllables of water, time and Śiva in the formula should be raised. The life (syllable) should be endowed with long vowels and (location on) the six parts of the body (should be made). (The consecration of) the seat should be made with the *praṇava* and the consecration of the image with the formula of the heart.

6b-7. O Child! Thus I have described to you (according to) the Yāmala. I shall explain to you (according to) the Ekavira now. The basic syllable consisting of those of (lord) Śiva and the goddess devoid (of the syllables) of heart are spread out endowed with the order of creation with (the syllables of) *vahni*,<sup>2</sup> *māyā*<sup>3</sup> and *kṛśānu*.<sup>4</sup>

8-10a. (The goddess) *Gaurī* should be worshipped in (an image made of) gold, silver, wood or stone. In the alternative (the goddess may be worshipped) in Her unmanifest form in five balls at the centre and the (four) angular points. (The goddesses) *Lalitā*, *Subhagā*, *Gaurī* and *Kṣobhaṇī* (should be worshipped) in order beginning with the south-east. (The goddesses) *Vāmā*, *Jyesthā*, *Kriyā* and *Jñānā* should be worshipped in the circle beginning with the east. The unmanifest form of (lord) Śiva (should be worshipped) on the left side together with the pedestal.

---

1. Holding the fingers interlocked in a particular position representing different things.

2. the syllable *ī*.

3. See p. 888 fn 2.

4. the syllables *ṇa*, *ra* and *raṁ*.

10b-13. (In the worship of the manifest form of the goddess) (the goddess should be worshipped) as manifest with two eyes, the syllable *om* (containing the three letters), pure and being present with (lord) Śaṅkara (Śiva). Two lotus seats (should be provided). (She may be endowed) with two arms or four arms. She may be riding a lion or wolf or have eight or eighteen hands. (She may be wearing) a garland and rosary beads. (She may wear) a bunch of lotuses on the neck. She may be holding an arrow or bow with the right hand and a book, betel-leaf, club, offering protection and a *kamaṇḍalu* (waterpot) with the left hand. One should place in each one of these (hands) Gaṇeśa, mirror and an arrow.

14-19. In the alternative (the goddess) should be made in Her manifest and unmanifest form. The deity is invoked on the pedestal by (showing) the *padma mudrā* (posture of the hands formed as a lotus). It is said that *liṅga mudrā* (posture representing the *liṅga* shape) is for (invoking) (lord) Śiva. For (invoking) both, the *āvāhani mudrā* (invocation posture) (is to be used). The posture for invoking the goddess is *yoni* (female generative organ). The mystic diagram (for the worship should be) a square. A lotus having three petals occupying the central four chambers should be made within that square. A triangle in two squares in the middle and a half crescent in double that space (should be made) in order. The entrance should be double that as well as double that of the approach to the door. (There should be) three doors in each one of the three directions. In the alternative (the goddess) may be worshipped on a *bhadra* (lotus diagram) or on the ground after having established (the goddess) and worshipped Her with the five things got from a cow and the five sweet things. (A votary) should offer red flowers and offer hundred oblations with the five sweet things and clarified butter facing the north. Then the final oblation (should be made). (The votary) would accomplish all the desired things. After having offered a victim, three or eight girls should be fed. The offering made to the goddess should be given to the devotees of Śiva and should not be taken by oneself.

20-22a. (By this worship) one desirous of getting a daughter would get a daughter, a person not having a son would get a son, an unfortunate woman (would get) fortune and the king

(would get) a kingdom and victory in battle. By (repeating the formula of the goddess) eight lakh times, a votary (would get) efficacy of speech and the gods would come under his control. (The votary) should not eat without offering (to the goddess). One should worship with the left hand especially on the eighth, fourteenth and the third (lunar days).

22b-26. I shall describe the worship of (lord) Mṛtyuñjaya (the conqueror of death; a synonym of Śiva). (The god) should be worshipped inside a pitcher. The *praṇava* (the syllable *om̐*) should be used for the oblation. The lustre of the god would be had by this (method). The basic formula (should be) ending with *vauṣaṭ*. (The votary) should show the *kumbhamudrā* (posture of the fingers representing a pitcher). Oblations should be made with milk, *dūrvā* (grass), clarified butter, *amṛtā*, *puṇarnavā*, sweet porridge and cake. The formula should be repeated ten thousand times. (The god should be contemplated as) having four faces and four arms, holding pitchers in two hands and offering boons and protection by two (others). (The god) should be (mentally) bathed with the *kumbhamudrā*. One who partakes the auspicious herb sanctified with the formula would have healthy life, fortune and long life. When contemplated, He would destroy untimely death and when worshipped (would confer) wonderful results.

## CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND TWENTYSEVEN

*The greatness of establishing a liṅga  
and worship with the accessories*

*The Lord said:*

1-5. The austerities are completed after having worshipped Satya and others, the presiding deities of austere observances. Ariṣṭa, the lord of the thread (of a rosary) is capable of nullifying misfortune. (A string) having golden and gem (beads) (confers) fortune. (A string) (containing beads made of) great conches is for causing death. (A rosary) (containing) conch-shells is for a charm (while) that one (having) pearl beads increases

progeny. (A rosary having) crystal (beads) confers fortune. (A rosary having) *rudrākṣa* confers emancipation. A *rudrākṣa* of the size of a *dhātri* fruit is excellent. The mental repetition (may be done) with the central bead or without the central bead in the string. The repetition should be done using the ring finger and the thumb. While doing so one should not cross the central bead. When the rosary has fallen down by mistake, one should repeat (the formula) two hundred times.

6-7a. A bell possesses (the sounds of) all the instruments. Hence sounding it confers wealth. The *liṅga* (the emblem denoting lord Śiva) and the abode (of the deity) should be cleansed with cow-dung, cow's urine, earth from the ant-hill, ashes and water.

7b-10a. O Skanda! The formula 'Obeisance to (lord) Śiva' is capable of accomplishing all things. These five syllables are commended in the *Vedas*. The six syllables<sup>1</sup> are commended in the world. Lord Śambhu (Śiva) is present at the end of 'Om' like the seed of a (holy) fig tree as a seal. It is known that 'Obeisance to Śiva' is the designation of Iśāna and others in order. One would acquire the collection of formulae by repeating the six syllables. 'Om obeisance to Śiva' is the excellent formula.

10b-12. (The votary) should worship the *liṅga* with this (formula) since (lord) Śiva dwells in the *liṅga* for the sake of conferring His favour on the people and since He is the conferer of virtues, desires, wealth and emancipation. A person who does not worship the *liṅga* does not become a fit person to get virtues etc. One would get enjoyment and emancipation by worshipping the *liṅga*. Hence one should worship (Him) so long as he lives. One should never eat without worshipping Him. It is better to discard one's life (than not to worship Him).

13. (One would become) Rudra by worshipping Rudra, Viṣṇu by worshipping Viṣṇu, Sūrya by worshipping Sūrya and the goddess etc. by worshipping the goddess.

14. One would acquire a crore times more benefits by establishing the *liṅga* than what one would acquire by doing sacrificial rites, penances and offering gifts, visiting sacred places and reading the *Vedas*.

---

1. The five syllables with the syllable *om*.

15. One who worships the earthen *liṅga* during the three twilights with *bilva*, would redeem one hundred and eleven generations of his family and would attain heaven.

16. A person should build a temple according to his capacity. The small or big (temple) (built) by a poor or a rich person would have equal benefit.

17. On account of the transitory nature of one's life one should set apart two parts (of his wealth) for the sake of virtuous deeds and one part of the wealth for maintaining his life.

18. A person who builds a temple would redeem twentyone generations of his family and gain wealth. One would get manifold benefits (by building a temple) with earth, wood, brick and stone etc.

19. A person who builds a temple of God with eight bricks, would reach heaven. Even one who builds a temple with dust in sport would acquire wealth.

## CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND TWENTYEIGHT

### *The rules of prosody*

*Fire-god said :*

1-3. I shall describe<sup>1</sup> (the rules of) prosody in order as laid down by Piṅgala making use of the basic letters. There are eight *gaṇas* (classes), viz. *magāṇa*, *nagāṇa*, *bhagāṇa*, *yagāṇa*, *jagāṇa*, *ragāṇa*, *sagāṇa* and *tagāṇa* made up of the letters *ma*, *na*, *bha*, *ya*, *ja*, *ra*, *sa* and *ta*. Each one of these *gaṇas* is formed by three syllabic instances. All the three syllables may be long or short or the first or middle or final syllable may be long or short. A syllable is long or short according as the vowel at the end is long or short. A short vowel becomes long when it is followed by a nasal sound or *visarga* (aspirated sound) or a conjunct

---

1. The *Purāṇa* summaries very briefly and does not give a clear definition. Hence the translation has been rendered in such a way as to make it clear.

consonant or a *jihvāmūliya*<sup>1</sup> or a *upadhmaniya*<sup>2</sup>. Thus the gaṇas are eight according to tradition.

### CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND TWENTYNINE\*

*An abridgement of rules of prosody relating to the Vedic metres*

*Fire-god said :*

1. The Gāyatrī and the Goddess are of equal (number of) letters in the section on metres. It would have fifteen letters. (The metre called) Prajāpati (consists of) eight letters.

2. (The metre) Gāyatrī (used) in the *Yajurveda* (consists of) six letters and that in the *Sāmaveda* would have twelve letters. It would have eighteen letters in the *Ṛgveda*. Two more letters are added in the *Sāmaveda*.

3. The fourth quarter in the *Ṛgveda* and all the quarters in the Prajāpati would get lengthened. There would be increase of one syllable each in the rest. The Āsurī would drop one (letter).

4. (The metres) Uṣṇik, Anuṣṭubh, Bṛhatī, Paṅkti, Triṣṭubh and Jagatī should be known as gradually (increasing). All these Gāyatrīs (are known as) Brahma.

5. If groups of three (of the above) are added each one would be the name (of the metres) of the *Ṛgveda* and *Yajurveda*. They should be written in a square of sixty-four chambers.

### CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND THIRTY\*\*

*An abridgement of the rules of metres*

*Fire-god said :*

1. When a quarter does not have the sufficient letters it has to be filled with *iya* etc. The Gāyatrīs are known to have

---

1. A term applied to the *visarga* before *k* and *kh* and also to *r*, *l* and the gutturals.

2. The *visarga* before the letters *p* and *ph*.

\*This chapter sums up second chapter of Piṅgala.

\*\*This chapter sums up the third chapter of Piṅgala.

eight in a quarter. The Jagatī (would have) twelve in a quarter. Virāṭ is said to have ten.

2-5a. The Triṣṭubh has eleven letters in a quarter. There are also others having Ekapāda<sup>1</sup> (one foot) etc. (Gāyatra metre) consists of four feet, six letters in each foot. In some places it has seven letters. The Pratiṣṭhā (gāyatrī) has three feet (having eight, seven and six letters respectively). Vardhamāna consists of three feet having six, eight and eight letters respectively. (The Pratiṣṭhā gāyatrī) has three feet having six, eight and seven letters. The Nāgīgāyatrī (consists of) three feet having nine, nine and six (syllables) respectively. Vārāhī (would have) six, nine and nine (letters). The third one (Virāṭ gāyatrī) having two feet (would have) twelve and eight (syllables) and that having three feet (would have) same syllables as Triṣṭubh (ie., eleven syllables each).

5b. The Uṣṇik metre is described in the Vedas (as having) eight syllables in two feet (and twelve syllables in the third foot).

6-7a. (The variety of) Uṣṇik (known as) Kakub (would have) three feet (consisting of) eight, twelve and eight letters. Pura-uṣṇik would have three feet having twelve, eight and eight letters. the Paro-uṣṇik would be the next (having eight, eight and twelve syllables). A metre with four feet (having seven syllables is also Uṣṇik).

7b-8a. (The metre) with eight letters in each one of the four feet would be Anuṣṭup. It may have three feet also sometimes. It may have eight, twelve and twelve letters. If the middle and end (of a Jagatī is a Gāyatra it is also Anuṣṭup).

8b-11. Bṛhatī would be one foot Jagatī and three feet Gāyatrī. (If the first Jāgata foot is) third (and others Gāyatrī) it is Pathyā (Bṛhatī). (If the first Jāgata foot is) second (and others Gāyatrī) it is Nyāṅkusāriṇī (Bṛhatī). The same is known as Skandho-grivī according to Krauṣṭuki. The same is known as Urobṛhatī according to Yāska. (If the Jāgatī foot is) at the end (and the rest are Gāyatra) it is Upariṣṭād-bṛhatī. (If the same Jāgatī foot is) at the beginning (and the rest are Gāyatra) it is Purastād-bṛhatī. In some (texts) there would be four feet

---

1. one foot, two feet etc.

with nine syllables each (also known as Bṛhatī). In some places (it would have eight letters. Mahābṛhatī is constituted of three Jāgati feet. The same is Satobṛhatī according to Bhaṇḍila<sup>1</sup>.

12. If the first two of the four feet (are Jagatī and the other two Gāyatrī) it is Paṅkti. (Another variety of Paṅkti) is Sataḥpaṅkti.<sup>2</sup> Even if it is in reverse order (it is Sataḥpaṅkti)<sup>3</sup>. (If the first two feet are Jagatī) it is Prastāra-paṅkti. (If the Jagatī occurs) in the last two feet it is Āstāra-paṅkti.

13. The Akṣarapaṅkti consists of four feet having five letters in each half of each foot. Padapaṅkti consists of five feet (having five letters in each). (If the first foot has) four letters, (the second) six letters and the last three (five letters) (it is also Padapaṅkti).

14. It would be Jagatī-paṅkti if it has six (Gāyatrī) feet (and Pathyā-paṅkti) if it has five feet. It is said to be Jyotiṣmatī Jagatī if it has one foot (Gāyatrī and the other three) Triṣṭubh.

15. The Purastād-Jyotiḥ (triṣṭup) consists of (Gāyatrī) in the first (the remaining three being Triṣṭup). The Madhya-Jyotiḥ consists of (Gāyatrī) in the middle (and Triṣṭup preceding and succeeding). Upariṣṭājjyotiḥ (consists of three Triṣṭups and a Gāyatrī) at the end.

16. It is known as Śaṅkumatī (gāyatrī) (if it has one foot having five letters and three having six letters). Kakudmatī (consists of) six (letters in one foot and the usual number in other feet). (The metre) would be (known as) Pipilikama-dhyamā if it has (eight letters in the first and third and three in the middle) in the three feet.

17. If the case is otherwise (i.e. it has few letters in the first and the third and many in the middle) it is (known as) Yavamadhyā. It is known as Nicṛt if (a Gāyatrī having twenty-four letters) has one letter less. If the same (Gāyatrī) has two letters less it would be Virāṭ.

18-22. If (the Gāyatrī) has two additional letters it would be Svarāṭ. In case of doubt (in the case of metre having twenty-

1. The Chandaḥ Sūtra III. 36 reads as Tāṇḍin.

2. having first and third as Jagatī.

3. i.e., having first and third feet Gāyatrī and the rest Jagatī.

six letters whether it is Gāyatrī Svarāṭ or Uṣṇik Svarāṭ), it should be decided on the basis of the first foot. The deities of the metres are : Fire-god, Sun, Soma, Bṛhaspati (preceptor of the celestials), Varuṇa (lord of ocean and morality), Moon, and Viśvedevas. The musical notes *ṣaḍja*, *ṛṣabha*, *gāndhāra*, *madhyama*, *pañcama*, *dhaivata*, *niṣāda* (should duly be associated with the metres). (The metres beginning with Gāyatrī are) duly white, variegated, tawny, black, blue, red and white. The compositions are of the colour of *gorocanā* (yellow pigment got from a cow). The metre called Jyotiḥ is black (coloured). The *gotras* (of the metres beginning with the Gāyatrī) are said to be Agniveśya, Kāśyapa, Gautama, Āṅgirasa, Bhārgava, Kauśika and Vāsiṣṭha.

## CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND THIRTYONE

### *Metres of different kinds\**

*Fire-god said :*

1. (The metre) Utkṛti consists of one hundred and four letters. One should drop four letters (step by step) (and get other metres). They would respectively be metres *abhi*, *saṁ*, *vi*, *āñi* and *pra* etc. (prefixed) to Kṛti separately.

2. Then (there would be metres) such as Kṛti, Atidhṛti, Dhṛti, Atyaṣṭi, Aṣṭi, Atiśakvarī, Śakvarī, Atijagati and Jagati.

3-4. The metres described hereafter are classical. The Vedic metres beginning with Triṣṭup (in the Vedas) (would be noticed in the same way in the classical). Triṣṭup, Pañkti, Bṛhati, Anuṣṭup, Uṣṇik and Gāyatrī are said (to be the metres). Supratiṣṭhā (twenty letters), Pratiṣṭhā (sixteen letters), Madhyā (twelve letters), Atyuktā (eight letters) and Uktā (four letters): thus each one has lesser (number of) letters.

5. The fourth part (of a Gāyatrī having twentyfour letters) would be a foot. The Gaṇacchandasa<sup>1</sup> is described now.

\*This chapter sums up the fourth chapter of Piṅgala.

1. See ch. 328. vv. 1-3.

The *gaṇas* are made up of four syllables. They may be a *guru* (long syllable) at the beginning, middle or end or two long syllables (or four short syllables).

6. Four syllabic instants and five *gaṇas* (groups) are said to be the characteristics of the Āryā (metre). When there are seven and a half *gaṇas* in one half (of a verse) it is Āryā. The other half also (would be similar). (In the Āryā the odd) are not *jagaṇa* (having long syllable in the middle).

7. The sixth (*gaṇa*) would be a *jagaṇa*. (The sixth) may be having all short syllables. When it has all short syllables the foot begins with the second word. (When it is long syllable in the middle or all short syllables) and the seventh (is all short) (the foot begins with) the first (letter). If in the second (half), the fifth (*gaṇa* be all short) (the foot begins with the first letter of the first half).

8. If in the second half the sixth (*gaṇa*) (be either long in the middle or all short), the short vowel (is introduced). The variety of Āryā is known as Pathyā if it has three *gaṇas* (in a foot) in the last half and first.

9. Vipulā (is the next variety) (having no pause in the three *gaṇas* in the last or first half or both). Capalā is that where the second and the fourth (*gaṇas*) are long in the middle, (the first is long at the end, the third is two long syllables, the fifth long at the beginning and the rest as usual). Mukhapūrvikā has the characteristics of Capalā in the first half.

10. In the Jaghanacapalā, (there are the characteristics of Capalā) in the second half. Mahācapalā (has the characteristics of Capalā) in both (the halves). Gīti is that where the first half is similar.

11. Upagīti is that where the second half is similar. Udgīti is said to have the order reversed. Āryāgīti (has) eight *gaṇas* in the (first) half. The metres regulated by prosodial instants (are described) now.

12. Vaitāliya (metre) has seven (syllabic instants) in the first and the second quarter and sixteen *lakāras* (one *mātrā* syllables) in the second and fourth and there should be *ra*, *la* and

*ga* at the end of both the foot. (If the Vaitāliya) has an additional long syllable (it is known as) Aupacchandasaka<sup>1</sup>.

13-15. The Pāṭalikā<sup>2</sup> has *bhagaṇa* (and two long syllables) at the end in addition to the above (characteristics). (The *lakāra*) that has not been described so far (in the above should not be mixed) with the next. The second and third foot in the above should not be employed separately. Prācyavṛtti is shown (now). When in the second and fourth feet, the first *lakāra* gets mixed up, it is (Prācyavṛtti). If the first *lakāra* gets mixed up with the third in the first and the third feet, it is Udīcyavṛtti.

If the above characteristics are found together in the same it is Pravṛttaka. When all the feet (in the Vaitāliya) have the characteristics of the first and third (letters), it would be Cāruhāsini. When all the four feet possess the characteristics of the second and fourth (letters), it would be Aparāntikā.

16. It is said to be Mātrāsamaka when there are sixteen *lakāras* (one *mātrā* syllable) ending in *guru*. (At the end one of the two is made *guru* and the ninth is a *lakāra*).<sup>3</sup> When there are twelve *lakāras* and the ninth (retains its own form in a quarter) (it is called) Vānavāsikā.

17. (Where in all the four quarters) the fifth and the eighth (are *lakāras* and the rest as laid down) (it is) Viśloka. Where the ninth *lakāra* remains as also the fifth and eighth it is Citrā. If it gets mixed with the next (i.e. the tenth) it is Upacitrā. Pādākulaka is the next (metre).

18-19. (Where there are sixteen *lakāras* in a quarter it is known as) Gītyāryā. (When the two halves of Gītyāryā) are reversed (i.e. one half is all short and the other half is all long) it is Śikhā. When the first half is all short (and second half is all long) it is Jyoti. When the first half is all long (and the second half is all short) it is Saumyā. Cūlikā is said to be having (twenty-nine *lakāras* in the first half and) thirty one (in the second half) and a long syllable at the end. The number of syllables should be deducted from the number of *mātrās* so that the remainder would be *gurus* (long). The number of *gurus*

1. The Purāṇa reading *Gopuccham* is obviously incorrect.

2. The Chandassūtra reads Āpātalikā.

3. The text in the Purāṇa is corrupt.

(long) should be subtracted from the total number of *mātrās* so that the remaining would be *laghu* (short).<sup>1</sup>

## CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND THIRTYTWO\*

*The metres of un-equal characteristics in the four quarters*

*Fire-god said :*

1. I shall describe the equal, half equal and unequal (metres), the three (divisions) of the classical metres. (The equal metres have the same characteristics in all the four quarters, the half-equal in two quarters and the unequal have different characteristics in all the four). The number of half-equal metres are arrived at by multiplying the number of equal metres with the same number.

2. (The number of) unequal metres (is got by multiplying the number of half-equal metres with the same number). (The number of pure half-equal metres is got by) deducting (the number of the equal metres) from the number (of half equal metres). (The metre is known as) Samānī where it ends with a long and short syllable. The Pramānī (metre) ends with a short and long syllable. The Vitānaka is different from the above (two).

3. It would be Vaktra metre (by adding four syllables) at the beginning of a quarter (of an Anuṣṭup). (In it after) the first (syllable) there should not be *sagaṇa* and *nagaṇa*<sup>2</sup> (and *repha* in the second and fourth quarters). (One may use) some other *gaṇas* except the above. The *yagaṇa* should come after the fourth (syllable of a quarter). In the Pathyāvakra (metre), *jagaṇa* (comes after the fourth syllable) in the second and fourth quarters.

4. According to others, it is Pathyā metre when it has the

1. The Purāṇa reading is corrupt here.

\*This chapter corresponds to Piṅgala ch. V. Sūtras 1-31.

2. See ch. 328. vv 1-3 for the *gaṇas*.

characteristics contrary to the above. It is Capalā, if there is *nagaṇa* after the fourth letter in the first and third quarters. It is Vipulā, when *yagaṇa* is everywhere in the second and fourth quarters and the seventh syllable is short. According to Saitava (ācārya)<sup>1</sup>, the seventh syllable should be short in all the quarters.

5. If there is *bhagaṇa* or *nagaṇa* or *tagaṇa* (instead of *yagaṇa* in the first and third quarters after the fourth syllable), it is Vipulā. Many varieties of the Cakra class have been described. When four letters are added to each one of the quarters, the metre is Padacaturūrdhvam.

6. The metre is Āpīḍa, if there are two long syllables at the end (of each one of the quarters). If two long syllables occur at the beginning (of each one of the quarters), it is Prat-yāpīḍa.<sup>2</sup>

7-8. In the Āpīḍa, when the first (*pāda*) is interchanged (with the second) it is Mañjarī, (when interchanged with the third) it is Lavalī<sup>3</sup> and (when interchanged with the fourth) it is Amṛtadhārā. Udgatā is described now.<sup>4</sup> It has (ten syllables)—*sa(gaṇa)*, *ja(gaṇa)*, *sa(gaṇa)* and *la(ghu)* (in the first quarter) (ten syllables)—*na(gaṇa)*, *sa(gaṇa)*, *ja(gaṇa)* and *ga* (long syllable) (in the second quarter) (eleven syllables)—*bha(gaṇa)*, *na(gaṇa)*, *ja(gaṇa)* and *la* (short syllable) (in the third quarter) (thirteen syllables)—*sa(gaṇa)*, *ja(gaṇa)*, *sa(gaṇa)*, *ja(gaṇa)* and *ga* (long syllable). When (in Udgatā), the third (quarter) has (ten syllables)—*ra(gaṇa)*, *na(gaṇa)*, *bha(gaṇa)* and *ga* (long syllable) it is Saurabha. Lalita (consists of) two *na(gaṇas)* and two *sa(gaṇas)* (in the third quarter) (in Udgatā).

9. Upasthitapracupita<sup>5</sup> has *ma, sa, ja* and *bha(gaṇas)* and two *gas* (in the first quarter), *sa, na, ja* and *ra(gaṇas)* and *ga* (in the second quarter), two *na, sa(gaṇas)* (in the third) and three *nas, ja* and two *ya(gaṇas)* (in the fourth).

- 
1. The Purāṇic reading is corrupt.
  2. The text wrongly reads *gaṇādika* instead of *gavāda*.
  3. The text wrongly reads Lavanī.
  4. The text reads wrong.
  5. The text is corrupt.

10. In Upasthitapracupita, when there are two *nas*, *sa*, two *nas*, *na* again and two *sas* in the third quarter, it is Vardhamāna. Śuddhvirāḍārṣabha<sup>1</sup> is said to have *ta*, *ja*, and *ra* (*gaṇas*) (in the third quarter) (in the Upasthitapracupita). Then I shall describe the half-equal metres.

## CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND THIRTYTHREE\*

*Description of metres having equal characteristics in the alternate quarters*

*Fire-god said:*

1. The metre Upacitraka (consists of) three *sas*, *la*, and two *gas* (in the first quarter), three *bhas* and two *gas* (in the second) (and the third and the fourth like the first and second). Drutamadyā is said to have three *bhas* and two *gas* (in the first quarter), *na*, two *jas* and *ya* (in the second quarter) (and the third and fourth like the first and second quarters).

2. Vegavatī has three *sas* and *ga* (in the first quarter), three *bhas* and two *gas* (in the second). Bhadravirāṭ has *ta*, *jas*, *ra* and *gas* (in the first quarter), and *ma*, *sa*, *ja* and two *gas* (in the second quarter).

3. (When the first quarter) has *sa*, *ja*, *sa* and *ga* and (the second quarter) has *bha*, *ra*, *na* and two *gas* it is Ketumatī. Ākhyānikī has two *tas*, *ja* and two *gas* (in the first quarter) and *ja*, *ta*, *ja* and two *gas* (in the second quarter).

4. Viparītākhyānikī has *ja*, *ta*, *ja* and two *gas* (in the first quarter) and *ta*, *ta*, *ja* and two *gas* (in the second quarter). Hariṇaplutā<sup>2</sup> has three *sas*, *la* and *ga* (in the first quarter), *na*, *bha*, *bha* and *ra* (in the second quarter).

5-6. Aparavaktra<sup>3</sup> consists of two *nas*, *ra*, *la* and *ga* (in the

1. The text is corrupt.

\*This chapter corresponds to Piṅgala ch. V, sūtras 32-45.

2. The Purāṇa wrongly gives Hariṇavallabhā.

3. The Purāṇa reads Aparākramam.

first quarter) and *na, ja, ja* and *ra* (in the second quarter). (Puṣpitāgrā<sup>1</sup> has two *nas*, *ra* and *ya* (in the first quarter) and *na, ja, ja, ra* and *ga* (in the second quarter). Yavamati<sup>2</sup> has *ra, ja, ra* and *ja* (in the first quarter) and *ja, ra, ja* and *ra* (in the second quarter). Śikhā consists of twentyeight (short letters) and a long syllable at the end (in the first quarter) and thirty letters and a long syllable at the end in the second quarter. (The third and fourth quarters are also similar.) (The metre) Khañja has got the characteristics reversed. Metres of similar characteristics (in the four quarters) are described now.

### CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND THIRTYFOUR\*

*Description of metres having similar characteristics in all the four quarters:*

*Fire-god said:*

1. Yati (caesura) is said to be the break or pause (at the end of a quarter). (The metre) Tanumadhya (has) *ta* and *ya* (in a quarter). Kumāralalitā<sup>3</sup> has *ja*, two *sas* and *ga* (in a quarter) (the pause occurring at the end of every three and four syllables). Citrapadā is known to have two *bhas* and two *gas* (in a quarter).

2. Vidyumālā has two *mas* and two *gas* (in a quarter). (The pause occurs after every four syllables.) Māṇavakriḍitaka would be had with *pha, ta, la* and *ga*. (The pause occurs after every four syllables.) Halamukhī has *ra, na* and *sa* (in a quarter). (The pause occurs after three and six syllables.)

3. Bhujāṅgaśīsusuta has two *nas* and *ma* (in a quarter). (The pause occurs after seventh and second syllables.) Haṁsaruta<sup>4</sup> consists of *ma, na* and two *gas* (in a quarter). Śuddhavaritā

1. The Purāṇa reads Puṣpitā.

2. The Purāṇa reads Panamati.

\*This corresponds to Piṅgala chs. VI, VII and VIII, Sūtras 1-19.

3. The Purāṇa is corrupt.

4. The text is very corrupt.

has *ma*, *sa*, *ja* and *ga* in every quarter. (The pause occurs at the end of a quarter.)

4. Paṇava has *ma*, *na*, *ya* and *ga* (in every quarter). (The pause occurs after every five syllables.) Mayūrasāriṇī has *ra*, *ja*, *ra* and *ga* (in every quarter). (The pause occurs at the end of a quarter.) Mattā has *ma*, *bha*, *sa* and *ga* (in a quarter). (The pause occurs after fourth and sixth syllables.) Upasthitā<sup>1</sup> has *ta*, *ja*, *ja* and *ga* (in a quarter). (The pause occurs after every second and eighth syllables.)

5. Rukmavati has *bha*, *ma*, *sa* and *ga* (in a quarter). (The pause occurs at the end of a quarter.) Indravajrā has two *tas*, *ja* and two *gas* (in a quarter). (The pause comes at the end of a quarter.) Upendravajrā consists of *ja*, *ta*, *ja* and two *gas*. (The pause occurs at the end of a quarter.) Mixed varieties are formed by (Indravajrā and Upendravajrā) coming alternatively at the beginning and end.

6-7. Dodhaka has three *bhas* and two *gas*. Śālinī consists of *ma*, *ta*, *ta* and two *gas*. The pause occurs after every four and seven syllables. Vātormī consists of *ma*, *bha*, *ta* and two *gas*. (The pause occurs after) every fourth and seventh syllables. Bhramaravilasitā has *ma*, *bha*, *na*, *la* and *ga*. (The pause occurs) after fourth and seventh syllables. Rathoddhatā has *ra*, *na*, *ra*, *la* and *ga*.

8. Svāgatā has *ra*, *na*, *bha* and two *gas*. Vṛntā has two *nas*, *sa* and two *gas*. Śyenī consists of *ra*, *ja*, *ra*, *la* and *ga*. Ramyā<sup>2</sup> has *ja*, *ra*, *ja* and two *gas*.

9. (The metres belonging to) the Jagatī<sup>3</sup> (class are now described). Varṇśasthā consists of *ja*, *ta*, *ja*, and *ra*. Indravarṇśā has two *tas*, *ja* and *ra*. Toṭaka is said to have four *sas*.

10-11. Drutavilambita would be with *na*, *bha*, *bha*, and *ra*. Puṭa has two *nas*, *ma* and *ya*. (The pause occurs after) the eighth and fourth syllables. Jaloddhatagati consists of *ja*, *sa*, *ja* and *sa*. (The pause occurs) after every sixth syllable. (The metre) Tata is said to have two *nas*, *ma* and *ra*. Kusumavicitra has *na*, *ya*, *na* and *ya*. Cañcalākṣikā<sup>4</sup> would have *na*, *na* *ra* and *ra*.

1. The reading in the text is wrong.
2. Piṅgalacchandās VI. 32 reads Vilāsinī.
3. having twelve syllables in a quarter.
4. The Purāṇa reads Calāmbikā.

12. Bhujaṅgaprayāta has four *ya* (*gaṇas*). Sragviṇī has four *ra* (*gaṇas*). Pramitākṣarā has *sa*, *ja* and two *sas*. Kāntot-pīḍā has *bha*, *ma*, *sa* and *ma*.

13. Vaiśvadevī consists of two *mas* and two *yas*. (The pause occurs after the fifth and seventh<sup>1</sup> syllables.) Navamālinī consists of *na*, *ja*, *bha* and *ya* in each quarter. The Atijagatī (metres) are described now.

14. Praharṣiṇī<sup>2</sup> has *ma*, *na*, *ja*, *ra* and *ga*. The pause is after the third and tenth (syllables). Rucirā has *ja*, *bha*, *sa*, *ja* and *ga*. It has pause after the fourth and ninth (syllables).

15-16. Mattamayūra consists of *ma*, *ta*, *ya*, *sa* and *ga*. The pause is after the fourth and ninth (syllables). Gaurī has three *nas*, *sa* and *ga*. Asambādha has *ma*, *ta*, *na*, *sa* and *ga*. It has pause after the fifth and ninth syllables. Aparājitā would have two *nas*, *ra*, *sa*, *la* and *ga*. (It has pause after every seven syllables.)

17. Praharāṇakalitā<sup>3</sup> (has two *nas*, *bha*, *na*, *la* and *ga*). Vasantatilakā contains *ta*, *bha*, two *jas* and two *gas*. It is Siṁhonnatā (according to) the sage (Kaśyapa). It is Uddharṣiṇī according to Saitava.

18-20. Candrāvartā has four *nas* and *sa*. The same is (known as) Mālā, if it has the pause after sixth and ninth letters. The same would be Maṅguṇanikarā (if it has pause after the eighth and seventh syllables). Mālinī has two *nas*, *ma* and two *yas*. The pause is after the eighth and seventh (syllables). Rṣabhagajavilasita<sup>4</sup> has *bha*, *ra*, three *nas* and *ga*. The pause is after seventh and ninth (syllables). Śikhariṇī (has *ya*, *ma*, *na*, *sa*, *bha*, *la* and *ga*). Pṛthvī consists of *ja*, *sa*, *ja*, *sa*, *ya*, *la* and *ga*. It has pause after the eighth and ninth syllables. Thus they have been described by Piṅgala before.

21. It would be Vamśapatrapatita, (if a quarter has) *bha*, *ra*, *na*, *bha*, *na*, *la* and *ga*. The pause occurs after the tenth (and seventh syllables). Hariṇī has *na*, *sa*, *ma*, *ra*, *sa*, *la* and *ga*. It has pause after every sixth, fourth and seventh (syllables).

22-23. Mandākrāntā has *ma*, *bha*, *na*, *ta*, *ta* and two *gas*. It

- 
1. The Purāṇa wrongly reads *aṅga* denoting six.
  2. The Purāṇic text is corrupt.
  3. The Purāṇa has not defined this metre.
  4. The text is corrupt.

has pause after the fourth, sixth and seventh (syllables). Kusu-mitalatāvellitā (has) *ma, ta, na* and three *yas*. It has pause after the fifth, sixth and seventh syllables. (The following is based on the Vedic metre) Atidhṛti. Śārdūlavikrīḍita consists of *ma, sa, ja, sa*, two *tas* and *ga*. The pause comes after the twelfth and seventh (syllables).

24. (The following metres are based on the Vedic metre) Kṛti. Suvadana has *ma, ra, bha, na, ya, bha, la* and *ga*. The pause comes after the seventh, seventh and sixth (syllables). (The metre) Vṛtta has *ga* and *la* in order.

25. (The following metre is based on the Vedic metre Prakṛti.) Sragdharā consists of *ma, ra, bha, na* and three *yas*. The pause comes after seven, seven, seven syllables. Bhadraka<sup>1</sup> has *bha, ra, na, ra, na, ra, na* and *ga*. (The pause occurs after) the tenth and twelfth (syllables).

26. (The following are based on the Vedic metre Vikṛti.) Aśvalalita consists of *na, ja, bha, ja, bha, ja, bha, la* and *ga*. (The pause occurs after) the eleventh (and twelfth syllables). Mattā-kriḍā has two *mas, ta*, four *nas, la* and *ga*. (The pause comes after) the eighth and fifteenth (syllables).

27. (The following is based on the Vedic metre Saṅkṛti.) Tanvī has *bha, ta, na, ma*, two *bhas, na* and *yā*. (The pause comes after) the fifth, seventh and twelfth (syllables). (The following is based on the Vedic metre Abhikṛti.) Krauñcapadā consists of *bha, ma, sa, bha*, four *nas* and *ga*. (The pause comes after) the fifth, fifth, eighth (and seventh syllables).

28-30. (The following metres are based on the Vedic metre Utkṛti.) Bhujaṅgavijṛmbhita<sup>2</sup> has two *mas, ta, na, ra, sa, la* and *ga*. The pause comes after the eighth, twelfth and seventh syllables. (The metre) called Apavāhaka<sup>3</sup> similarly has *ma*, six *nas, sa* and two *gas*. The pause occurs after the ninth, sixth, sixth (and fifth syllables). (The Daṇḍakas are now described.) Daṇḍaka has two *nas* and seven *ras* (in a quarter). (The first variety of Daṇḍaka) is Caṇḍavṛṣṭiprapātaka<sup>4</sup>. (It has twentyseven syllables in

1. The Purāṇa reads Samudraka.

2. The text is corrupt here.

3. The text reads Upahāra.

4. The text reads Caṇḍavṛṣṭipraghātaka.

a quarter). Other varieties (of Daṇḍaka) such as Vyāla, Jīmūta etc., would be had by adding one *ra* (each time) (to the original Daṇḍaka).

The remaining varieties are known as Pracitā. The tabular representation (of long and short vowels) of Gāthā (etc.) are described (now)†

## CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND THIRTYFIVE\*

*The tabular representation of long and short vowels of  
different metres*

*Fire-god said :*

1. That which has not been described in the treatises on metrics is known as Gāthā. All syllables in a quarter would be long. The next one is made one (*mātrā*) less and the rest the same as the previous.

2. If the mark in the middle of (the metre) to be known is equal, the first letter would be short. If it is unequal it is long. If should then be made as half unequal. If it is the reverse the first letter would be short. When two are desired one will be reduced.

## CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND THIRTY SIX

*Description of phonetics*

*Fire-god said :*

1. I shall describe the phonetics. The letters are either sixtythree or sixtyfour. The vowels are twentyone. The consonants are twentyfive.

---

\*The Purāna summarises the first sūtra and the concluding sūtras 24-34 of Piṅgala ch. VIII. The verses are very cryptic. Verses 3 and 4 have not been translated.

2-3. (The letters) *ya* and others (the semi-vowels and sibilants) are known to be eight. The twin sounds are four in number—such as the nasal sound, *visarga*, *ka*; *pa*. The letter *i* is known as (produced) by touching light. It is a protracted sound.

4. (The origin of the letters is described now.) The soul together with the internal organs and those in the abdomen and throat contacts the intellect and joins the mind with a desire to speak.

5. The mind impels the bodily fire, which urges the air to move. The air moving with the chest produces the sound (called) *mandra*.

6. The Gāyatra metre at the time of morning ablution is recited in that (sound). (The air) moving in the throat gives rise to the (sound) *madhyama* that which is associated with Triṣṭubh for the midday ablution.

7-8. The air that reaches the head produces the (sound) *tārā* fit for reciting Jagatī for the third (evening) ablution. The same wind moving upwards strikes against the head, reaches the mouth and produces the letters. These are divided into five (groups) on the basis of the articulation, period (of utterance), place (of articulation), efforts (to utter) and the sense conveyed.

9. Chest, throat, head, root of the tongue, teeth, nose, upper lip and palate are the eight places (of articulation) of the letters.

10. The articulation of the sibilants (*ś*, *ṣ*, *s* and *h*) are of eight kinds such as innate nature, expansion, *śa*, *ṣa*, *ra*, *jihvāmūla* (the *visarga* before *k* and *kh*) and *upadhmāniya* (the *visarga* before *p* and *ph*).

11. The letters *u* and the like are excellent for combining compositions of metrical nature. The vowels at the end should be known to be of similar nature. Whatever else remain are the explicit sibilants.

12-13. A man incurs sin by pronouncing (letters) from wrong places (of articulation), by inauspicious and defective articulation. Similarly a person incurs merits. A person who employs good sounds, well articulated, according to the treatises and acquired from auspicious sources with a clean mouth shines in the (world of) Brahmā.

14. A person should not use harsh and indistinct letters, nasals, labials excessively with stammering and split tongue.

15. The letters should be uttered in such a way that they are not indistinct and are not mutilated. A person rejoices in the world of Brahmā by employing the letters properly.

16. The sounds are (divided into) three classes (such as) *udātta* (accentuated), *anudātta* (grave accent) and *svarita* (intermediate). They are distinguished as short, long and protracted on the basis of the period (of their pronunciation).

17-18. The letters *a* and *ku*<sup>1</sup> are from the throat, *i* and *cu* are from the palate, *u* and *pu* are the labials, the letters *r*, *ṭu*, *ra* and *ṣa* are the cerebrals, and *l*, *tu*, *la* and *sa* are the dentals. The sound *hvaḥ* is said to be from the root of the tongue. Learned men remember *vaḥ* as labio-dental. (The sounds) *e* and *ai* are gutturo-palatials. *O* and *au* are remembered to belong to the gutturo-labials.

19. The gutturals *a*, *ā*, *i*, *e* etc. would have half a *mātrā* value. (The letters) which share the places of articulation are known to be not capable of being combined.

20. The vowels (are known to be) produced not by touch and the letters *ya* etc. by partial touch. These are known to be consonants not produced by touch. The other consonants are produced by touch. I shall explain the important among them. (The letters) *aṁ* and *aḥ* are nasals. (The letters) *ha*, *jha* and *ṣa* are known to have the bellowing sound.

21. The letters *ya* etc. possess partial sound. *Kha*, *pha* etc. are aspirated. The *cara* is known to have little aspiration. This is said to be long.

---

1. The letters *ku*, *cu*, *ṭu*, *tu*, *pu* stand for the four letters in the respective group.

## CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND THIRTYSEVEN

*Description of the characteristics of a kāvya*

*Fire-god said :*

1. I shall describe the embellishments of poetry and drama and the like. The constituents of speech are sound, word, letters and sentence.

2. Whereas the three are obtained in the sentences of the treatises (śāstra) and epics, word is predominant in the treatises and the meaning is dominant in the epics.

3-5a. *Kāvya* is different from these two because the power of denotation is dominant (there). It is difficult to be born as a man in this world and (acquiring) knowledge is more difficult. Being a poet is still difficult. Poetic genius, originality of ideas and power of discrimination are still more difficult. The entire *śāstra* sought by people who are not learned does not materialise.

5b-6. The collection of letters falls into groups such as primary letters, secondary, the aspirated and the fourth. Words (are divided into two) on the basis of distinction as nouns and verbs. Sentence in brief is a series of words possessing a delightful sense.

7. *Kāvya* is that where literary embellishments are displayed and which possesses literary merits and is free from blemishes. The sources of (poetry) are the *Vedas* and the world. A *kāvya* not originated from the above sources could be understood from the import of the words.

8. Saṁskṛta (language) is for the gods and others. There are three varieties of Prākṛta for men. *Kāvya* etc. are known to be of three kinds—prose, poetry and mixed.

9. Prose is (defined as) unmetrical combination of words. It is divided into three: Cūrṇaka, Utkalikā and Gandhivṛtta.

10. What is known as Cūrṇaka has short compounds and does not have very soft words. (The same) with long compounds would be Utkalikā.

11. Gandhivṛtta would have medium arrangement of words and absence of very difficult compounds. (It possesses) semblance of metrical form.

12. The prose *kāvya* is said to be divided into five—Ākhyāyikā, Kathā, Khaṇḍakathā, Parikathā and Kathānikā.

13-15a. It is known to be Ākhyāyikā where there is an eulogistic account of the ancestors of the author, a detailed description of the abduction of maidens, fight, separation and other calamities. It should be replete with *riti* (diction), *vṛtti* (style) and *pravṛtti* (power of words). Its story is divided into Ucchvāsas (chapters). It should contain Cūrṇaka type of prose at the end. It may (employ) Vaktra or Aparavaktra (metre).

15b-17. It is designated as Kathā where the poet briefly praises his ancestors in metrical composition, where there is another episode while introducing the main theme. There would not be any division. Sometimes there would be (divisions called) *lambakas*. Khaṇḍakathā is contained in Kathā in *catuṣpadi* (verses in four lines). Parikathā (is a combination of the characteristics of the two (Kathā and Ākhyāyikā).

18-19. The hero is known to be a minister, merchant or a brahmin. Pathos should be known (to be the sentiment) of the two. Love in separation is of four kinds. The first one is not obtained (here). It follows the story. Parikathā is known so because of its mixed characteristics of Kathā and Ākhyāyikā.

20. Kathānikā (is defined as beginning with) the (sentiment of) terror embodying sentiment of love and (sentiment of) wonder at the end. It is accomplished with good sense and is free from bombastic (expressions).

21-23a. Padya is (a metrical composition) of four lines. It is divided into two—Vṛtta and Jāti. Vṛtta beginning with Ukthā and ending with Utkṛti is regulated by the number of letters. Jāti is that where the syllabic instants are counted according to Kāśyapa. According to Piṅgala Vṛttas (are divided) into three—equal (quarters), half-equal and unequal. It is the ship of knowledge for those desirous of crossing the deep ocean of *Kāvya*.

23b-27. The family of poetry (consists of) Mahākāvya, Kalāpa, Paryābandha, Viśeṣaka, Kulaka, Mukataka, and Kośa. A Mahākāvya is divided into *sargas* (cantos) and is begun with Sanskrit and those of similar nature are not avoided. The equivalent (Prākṛta) does not become a blemish. The theme has its

origin from historical incidents or other real incidents. It may describe council of states, sending of emissaries and marching (of soldiers) in battle-array. It should not be very elaborate. It should be composed in equal (*sama*) (metres) such as Śakvarī, Atijagatī, Atiśakvarī, Triṣṭubh, Puṣpitāgrā and Vaktra. Mukṭā describes different incidents not having short cantos.

28-29a. (One canto may be composed) in the Atiśakvarī and Aṣṭī (metres), another in mixed metres, whereas some other canto (may be composed) in the Mātrā. The last canto (may be employed) for praiseworthy (matter). This optional rule is very much condemned. Hence good people do not respect it especially.

29b-32. (Poetry) should be adorned with description of cities, seas, mountains, seasons, (the rise of) the moon and sun, hermitages, trees, gardens, sports in the water, drinking bouts and amorous dalliances, sending of female emissaries, the accounts of unchaste women, darkness, pleasant breeze and delineation of other *vibhāvas* (condition that produces a state of mind). It should contain all styles, power of words, *bhāvas* (states of mind), dictions, sentiments, qualities and embellishments. That is why (it is called) a Mahākāvya and its composer a great poet.

33. The sentiment is its very life even though verbal ingenuity may be predominant here. (It gains) a body from the sentiments in the eloquent expressions being accomplished with special efforts.

34-36. The fruit of the all-pervading fourfold object of human existence has been explained through the medium of the hero. Kalāpa is composed in the same metre throughout and is soft on account of the Kaiśikī vṛtti (style). Here the sentiment is incipient love and sojourn abroad. It is Viśeṣaka when it contains (mention of) attainment etc. and (is composed) in Sanskrit or any other (language). Kulaka would have many couplets. It (is also known as) chained. Mukṭaka consists of single verses and is capable of gaining the admiration of good people.

37-38. Kośa is full of elegant verses of great poets. It is

divided into (sections called) Vrajyās<sup>1</sup> pleasing to the learned men. Where there is power comparable to splendour and in which there is a difference of the metre in a canto, (it is known as) the mixed. It is known to be (divided into) two—Vapu and Prakirṇaka. Prakirṇaka can be heard (read) and represented on the stage by all kinds of expressions.

## CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND THIRTYEIGHT

### *Description of the different types of drama*

*Fire-god said :*

1-4a. (Drama consists of) twentyseven types—Nāṭaka, Prakaraṇa, Ḍima, Īhāmrga, Samavakāra, Prahāsana, Vyāyoga, Bhāṇa, Vīthi, Aṅka, Troṭaka, Nāṭikā, Saṭṭaka, Śilpaka, Karṇa, Durmallikā, Prasthāna, Bhāṇikā, Bhāṇī, Goṣṭhī, Hallīśaka, Kāvya, Śrīgadita, Nāṭyarāsaka, Rāsaka, Ullāpyaka and Preṅkhana.

4b-7a. The general and particular (are) the two courses for the characteristics (of a drama). The general (relates) to all topics. The other one exists in certain (topics). After the preliminary function (relating to the drama) is finished, the two (come into operation). The general (relates) to both place and time, sentiments, emotions, excitants and ensuants, gesticulations, act and position because they pervade all through. The particular is to be employed as the occasion (arises) and the general is described first.

7b-10a. Drama is said to be the means of attaining the three-fold ends of life. The preliminary function is its instrument and course of action in the proper way. There are thirtytwo components beginning with benediction. Salutation to gods, praise of preceptors, and the blessings etc. of cow, brahmīns, kings and others are sung. The stage-director (is introduced) after the benediction. This is set in (all) the dramas.

---

1. The text wrongly reads Brahmā.

10b-11a. (The poet) should indicate the following five—the successive order of the teachers, the praise of the lineage, the power of the poet, the relation and the purpose of the *kāvya*.

11b-17a. It should be known by learned men as the Prologue (Āmukha) in which an actress or a jester or an attendant converses with the stage-director using charming expressions befitting the purpose with mutual objections or doubts relating to the subject matter. It is also (known as) Prastāvanā. Pravṛttaka, Kathodghāta and Prayogātiśaya are the three divisions of Āmukha arising in the elements of the germ (of the plot). It is known as Pravṛttaka where the stage-director describes the timely entrance of a character with reference to the time that has commenced. It is said to be Kathodghāta (opening of the story) in which the characters enter taking up the remark or the sense of a remark of the stage-director. It is said to be Prayogātiśaya (superseding of a performance) in which the stage-director describes a particular contrivance in the midst of the proceedings and a character enters thereafter.

17b-18. The incident is said to be the body of the dramas and others. 'Established' and 'Fancied' are known to be its two kinds. The 'Established' is found in the scriptures and the 'Fancied' is the creation of the poet.

19-20. The Arthaprakṛtis (the leading sources in a drama) are five—the germ, drop, episode, an intervening episode and denouement. The endeavour is also of five kinds—the beginning, effort, prospect of attainment, certainty of attainment and attainment of fruit in order.

21. The opening, progression, development, pause and conclusion are also the five junctures in order.

22. That which is described only a little spreads in many ways and which ends with the fruit is said to be the germ.

23. That is said to be the opening in which there is the germination of the germ giving rise to various matters and sentiments conforming to the body of the poetic composition.

24-25. The composition of the desired theme, continuity of the narrative, interest in the representation, concealment of that which should be concealed, narration as a wonderful thing and making explicit the thing that is to be made explicit—(These are the objects of the components of the juncture). The

poetic composition (bereft of the divisions of the juncture) is not excellent in the same way as a crippled person.

26-27. Even a little incident does not occur without (reference to) the place and time. Hence the place is described (now) because of the employment of these two (in a drama). Bhārata is among the countries and the three *yugas* beginning with the Kṛtayuga with reference to time. There is no rise of happiness or grief without these two for beings anywhere. And contextual narration of creation and others while (describing) creation does not become a defect.

## CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND THIRTYNINE

*Description of the sentiments, emotions, hero etc.*

*Fire-god said :*

1-2. The Supreme Brahman, who is imperishable, eternal, unborn and mighty is said to be the single consciousness, effulgence and Supreme Being in philosophy. Bliss is natural to him. Sometimes it is manifested. The manifestation of this is called consciousness, charm and sentiment.

3. Its first modification is known as self-consciousness. Conceit (is produced) then and the three worlds get exhausted in that.

4. Pleasure (proceeds) from conceit and this attains gratification on account of (contact with) the transitory (feelings) etc. in general and is declared as the (sentiment of) love.

5-9a. Comic (sentiment) and others which are verily its other varieties, whose characteristics are exhibited by their respective special permanent moods by being expanded by the qualities such as goodness, have their origin from the Supreme Soul. The erotic (sentiment) is produced from attachment. The (sentiment of) wrath is born from fierceness. The heroic (sentiment) is born from haughtiness. (The sentiment of) disgust is said to be originated from revulsion. The comic (sentiment) is

produced from the erotic (sentiment). The sentiment of pathos (is) from fury. (The sentiment of) wonder arises from heroism. (The sentiment of) fright would be from disgust. Among the sentiments of love, humour, pathos, fury, heroism, fright, disgust, wonder and tranquility, four sentiments are self-developed (as described above).

9b-11. The goddess of speech does not shine without sentiment like the goddess of wealth without renunciation. The poet alone is the creator in the boundless course of poetry. The universe changes in the way (he) likes. If the poet is impassioned in his poetry, the world becomes verily full of sentiment. If the poet is detached, indeed it becomes manifested as devoid of sentiment.

12-13a. There is no (poetic) sentiment devoid of emotion. There is no emotion devoid of sentiment. (The poets) bring into being the sentiments and the sentiments are being produced by these (emotions), (namely), the eight permanent emotions beginning with love, stupor and the like and the transient emotions.

13b-15. Love is said to be the feeling of happiness in respect of (the object) agreeable to the mind. Laughter is said to be the expansion of the mind through mirth etc. (People) describe fear as mental affliction (arising) from seeing a picture etc. Disgust is censure of things which bring misfortune. Wonder is the expansion of the mind (arising) from seeing things pre-eminent.

16-22. The eight (transient emotions) such as stupor (are) from goodness, passion and ignorance. Stupor is a resistance of effort (paralysed state) brought about by excessive fear or love. Perspiration is water from the body originating from internal agitation accompanied by fatigue and attachment. The internal horripilation (is) the heaving of the body (caused) by joy etc. Broken speech originates from joy etc. and hoarse voice (is caused) by fear etc. Grief is said to be the distress of the mind (caused) by the destruction of the desired (thing) etc. Anger is the awakening of fierceness resembling contradiction. Enthusiasm is said to be the sense of gaining the desired goal. Trembling is declared as the stupefaction arising from the agitation of the mind. Change of colour is the reverse of splendour arising

from grief etc. Tear is known as the water from the eyes produced by sorrow, happiness etc. Loss of consciousness is the cessation of (the working) of the sense-organs due to fasting etc. The depression of the mind arising from indifference (to worldly things) is said to be despair. Debility (is) physical langour from mental suffering and the like from the body.

23. Indifference arises from dependence on doubt. Envy is jealousy. Intoxication (is) the infatuation of the mind arising from the use of wine etc.

24. Weariness (is) exhaustion arising from the inner body caused by excess of work. Aversion of the mind towards acts such as love etc. is said to be indolence.

25. Miserable state is due to deviation from goodness. Thought is contemplation of objects. Perplexion is said to be not finding the mode of doing (a thing).

26. Recollection would be the reflection of an enjoyed thing. Opinion (is) ascertainment of purpose brought about by knowledge of reality.

27. Bashfulness (is) certain shrinking of the mind arising from passion and the like. Fickleness would be unsteadiness. Joy is the pleasure of the mind.

28. Excitement is the distress of the soul caused by the hope of remedy. The loss of intellect in those to be done is said to be stupidity.

29. Equanimity is the elevation in wealth on the attainment of the desired end. Pride is contempt for others and attitude of supremacy of the self.

30. Impediment caused by fate and the like in respect of the desired object is despondency. An unsteady condition caused by desire when the desired end has not been gained is longing.

31. Absent-mindedness (is) immobile condition causing benumbing of the senses and the mind. Terror (is) repeated surprise in the mind (caused) by opposition and the like in war.

32. Intolerance (is) non-pacification of anger. Awakening (is) the rise of consciousness. Dissimulation (is) the concealment coming under the range of gesture and appearance.

33. Harshness of vehement verbal attack arising from anger is known to be fierceness. Conjecture is examination

and determination. Disease (is) the impediment of the mind and body.

34. Madness (is) incoherent utterances and the like caused by passion and the like. Tranquility (is) the cessation of passion of the mind by means of the knowledge of reality and the like.

35-38. The emotions and sentiments should be employed by poets in poetry and the like in which (the emotions of) love and the like are developed. (The means) by which they are developed is known as excitant. It is of two kinds—supporting and enhancing. The supportive excitant is that on which the group of emotions such as love subsists. It is produced through (the medium of) the hero and the like. The hero is known to be of four types—brave and noble-minded, brave and haughty, brave and sportive and brave and tranquil. (The hero is also classified as) faithful, gallant, sly and saucy (on the basis of his relationship with one heroine or more).

39-40. Comrade (Pīṭhamarda), Companion (Viṭa) and Jester (Vidūṣaka) are the three minor heroes who help the hero in love as pleasure companions. The comrade is without resource. The companion is beautiful and belongs to the same country. The jester is the provider of mirth. The heroes and heroines (are of) eight (types) (as described in verse 37).

41. According to Kauśīka, (the heroine may be) one's own or belonging to another or remarried, and general but not remarried. Thus there are many types.

42. The enhancing excitants are those which excite the feelings in the subsisting excitants by (means of) different kinds of refinement.

43. The sixtyfour (fine) arts are divided into two according as they begin with action or music. Jugglery, memory, and perhaps jester and the aids to jester (are included) in these.

44-45. The ensuant is known to be only the exertion of the mind, speech, intellect and the body arising from recollection, desire, hatred and effort of the learned and caused by the excited and accomplished emotions of the supportive excitant. Moreover this is experienced and certainly arises (after love etc.) and hence defined here.

46. The exertion of mind is said to be characterised by the occupation of the mind. This is also known to be twofold as relating to men or women.

47. Those relating to men are eight—beauty, vivacity, grace, steadiness, equanimity, gallantry, magnanimity and dignity.

48. Beauty (prevails) in contempt for inferiors and emulation of superiors. (It is) heroism. (It is) the cause of dexterity and the like. Beauty occurs in mental virtue in the same way as a house becomes beautiful.

49-50. The excitants of women are said to be (of) twelve (kinds)—(primary indication of) emotion, its manifestation (a little), its decided manifestation, brilliance, loveliness, lustre, sweetness, heroism, boldness, generosity, firmness and gravity. The primary indication of emotion arises from a little of joy and the little manifestation is the sportive indication of emotion.

51-54. The exertion of speech would be the appropriateness of speech. It is indeed (of) twelve (kinds): conversation, excessive utterance, sorrowful speech, repeated speech, question and answer, evasion, sending a message, expounding, pointing out truth, description of something else, instruction and dissimulating (speech). This process is for the understanding. It is said to be the exertion of good intellect. It has three divisions, namely, diction, mode, and perseverance.

## CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND FORTY

### *Description of diction and mode*

*Fire-god said:*

1. Diction (is essential) for a good knowledge of speech. It is of four kinds—Pāñcālī, Gauḍadeśīyā, Vaidarbhī and Lāṭaja (respectively belonging to the regions Pāñcāla, Gauḍa, Vidarbha and Lāṭa).

2-4. The Pāñcālī is endowed with metaphorical expression. (It is) soft (and has) shorter compounds. The Gauḍiyā is a loose composition having long compounds and not having many metaphorical expressions. The Vaidarbhī is not a very soft composition. It is devoid of metaphorical expressions and is free from compounds. The Lāṭiyā (is) a clear composition not having too many compounds. This is also devoid of much metaphorical expressions.

5. The mode is uneven in the actions (of a drama). It has been established as fourfold—Bhāratī, Ārabhaṭī, Kauśikī and Sātvatī.

6. The diction Bhāratī is said to be known so because it was formulated by Bhaṛata. It is predominantly verbal, (consists) generally (of actions) of men but also of women and has expressions in Prākṛta.

7-9. Bhāratī has four components: Vīthī, Prahāsana and Prastāvanā of the drama and the like. The sub-divisions of Vīthī are thirteen: Udghātaka, Lapitā<sup>1</sup>, the second, Asatpralāpa, Vākśreṇī<sup>2</sup>, Nālikā, Vipāṇa, Vyāhāra, Trimata, Chala, Avaskandita<sup>3</sup>, Gaṇḍa, Mṛdava and Añcita<sup>4</sup>, the thirteenth.

10. Prahāsana is the speech ridiculing the ascetics and the like. Ārabhaṭī is known to be abounding in trickery, witchcraft, war and the like. (It is of the varieties) Sañkṣiptaka, Avapāta and Vastūthāpana.

## CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND FORTYONE

### *Description of the actions and movements of the limbs*

*Fire-god said:*

1. The exertion of the body is regarded as the particular gesture relating to the limbs and subordinate limbs and as their action. The former generally relates to women.

1. The amended reading is Avalagita.

2. The amended reading is Vāgveṇī.

3. The amended reading is Avasyandita.

4. The printed text wrongly reads ucita.

2-5a. It is (divided) into twelve<sup>1</sup>—sportiveness, playful gesture, cessation (of care in dress etc.), amorous play or movement, amorous agitation consisting of laughter, weeping, etc., involuntary expression of affection towards the lover, repulse of lover's caresses, indifference towards a beloved object (*bibboka*), that which arises from tenderness (*lalita*), affected by passion or emotion, pleasure-giving pastime and amorous sport. Sportiveness (is) the imitation of the gesture of the beloved person in a hidden abode. Playful gesture is said by good people as exhibiting some peculiarities a little. *Kīlakiñcita* is the combination of laughter, weeping and the like. *Bibboka* is some kind of perturbation. *Lalita* arises from tenderness.

5b-6a. The head, hand, chest, side, loin and foot (are) successively. (known) as the limbs and the creeper-like (tender) eyebrows and the like as the minor limbs.

6b-7a. (There cannot be) the use of the limbs and minor limbs without the exertion born of effort. It is straight and indirect sometimes.

7b-9a. The head is known (to move) in thirteen ways—trembling, shaking, gentle shaking (*dhūta*), violent shaking (*vidhūta*), excessive movement (*parivāhita*), agitated, tossed, graceful, contracted, turned round, raised upwards, bent downwards and rolling.

9b. The movement of the eyebrow should be known as sevenfold (such as) lowering, knitting etc.

10. The glance (is said) to be threefold as being related to the sentiment, the permanent (feeling) and the transitory (feeling). It is divided into thirtysix kinds, among which eight arise from sentiments.

11. The function of the pupil is ninefold—moving, rolling and the like. (The actions of) the nose are known to be six. (Those of) respiration are said to be nine.

12. The actions of the lower lip are of six kinds. The actions of the chin are of seven kinds. Those of the face beginning with perturbation are of six kinds. (The actions of) the neck are known as of nine kinds.

---

1. The text explains only five among these.

13-19a. The hand is employed as unfolded and folded by the character. One banner, three banners, scissor-edge, half-moon, opening up, parrot-beak, fist, pinnacle, wood-apple, club-edged (?), needle-pointed, lotus bud, snake-hood, deer-head, *kāṅgulaka*, *alapadma*, round pillow, bee, swan-mouth, swan-wing, pincers, blossom, spider and cock are the twentyfour of the unfolded hands. Those of the folded hands are thirteen—slightly folded or open pigeon, crab, *svastika*, *kaṭakavardhamāna*<sup>1</sup>, *asaṅga*<sup>2</sup>, *niṣadha*, swing, flower-casket, crocodile, elephant tusk, *bahistambha*<sup>3</sup> and *vardhamāna*.

19b-20. The chest may be of five kinds, such as a little curved and straight<sup>4</sup> etc. The belly is threefold—not very slender, slender<sup>5</sup> and full. The actions of the sides are five. The actions of the shank are also five. The action of the feet in dance and the like in a drama is known to be manifold.

## CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND FORTYTWO

### *Definition of dramatic representation*

*Fire-god said:*

1-2. Dramatic representation should be known by learned men as carrying forward the sense (of the drama). It arises in four ways resting on internal feeling, speech, limbs and bringing out (the feeling). Stupor and the like are the internal (feeling). The speech is the beginning of speech. That relating to the limbs is the exertion of the body. The internal feeling is the operation of the exertion of the intellect.

3. The employment of sentiment and the like arising from

1. The text reads *kaṭaka* and *vardhamāna*. Cf. *NS IX*, 8-10 reading these two as one.

2. *utsaṅga* (lap). Cf. *NS IX*.

3. Cf. *NS IX*, given as *avahittha* (dissemination of internal feeling).

4. The text wrongly reads *nartana*. Cf. *NS IX*.

5. The text reads *khaṇḍa* for *khalla* in *NS X*.

conceit are being described now. Independence of all kinds (of gesticulation) is meaningless without this.

4. The erotic (sentiment) is said to be twofold, namely, love in union and love in separation. Both these are again twofold, namely, concealed and manifest.

5. The erotic (sentiment) known as love in separation is fourfold—incipient love, jealous anger, sojourn abroad and pathos.

6. The other kind is different from these in four ways and has the characteristic of increased enjoyment. But it does not surpass the former.

7. It arises in men and women. Love accomplishes it. All internal emotions except the change of colour and loss of consciousness (are) in it.

8-9a. The erotic (sentiment) thrives (aided) by piety, wealth, pleasure and emancipation on particular supportive (excitants) and (becomes) uninterrupted by their peculiarities. The erotic (sentiment) should be known as twofold consisting (of the mode) of speech and the act of decoration.

9b-11a. The comic (sentiment) is said to be fourfold<sup>1</sup>—*smita*, smile in which the teeth are not visible, *hasita*, in which the tips of the teeth are slightly visible and the eyes are dilated, *vihasita*, that is sonorous, *upahasita*, that is crooked<sup>2</sup>, *apahasita*<sup>3</sup>, that is with sound and *atihāsita*, that is without sound.

11b-12. The sentiment known as pathos is of three kinds—arising from violation of virtue and originating from loss of wealth. While sorrow is the permanent (emotion), pleasure is considered the dominant (emotion) of the former two (sentiments of erotic and comic).

13. The sentiment of wrath is threefold—by means of limbs, dress and speech. Its accomplishing factors are anger, perspiration, horripilation and trembling.

14. The heroic (sentiment) is threefold—heroic in libera-

---

1. The *purāṇa* mentions only four divisions but defines six as in *MS VI*. 51-52.

2. The *purāṇa* wrongly reads *jihva* instead of *jihma*.

3. Wrongly printed as *pāpahasita*.

lity, heroic in virtue and heroic in battle. Enthusiasm is said to be the cause of its accomplishment.

15. The sentiment called terror which arises at the commencement (of an action), follows the heroic (sentiment) only. Fear is its accomplishing factor.

16-17a. (The sentiment of) disgust is said to be twofold—agitating and distressing. The agitating (type) would arise on account of stink<sup>1</sup> and the like and the distressing (type) by means of blood and the like. Aversion gives rise to it and the *sāttvika* element recedes in it.

17b-19a. The elements which add beauty to poetic compositions are said to be the embellishments. These embellishments are threefold—(tending to embellish) word, meaning and both. Rhetoricians declare those which are capable of embellishing word by means of proficiency and the like as embellishments of word.

19b-21. The nine, namely, *chāyā*, *mudrā*, *ukti*, *yukti*, *gumphanā*, *vākovākya*, *anuprāsa*, *citra* and *duṣkara* should be known as the embellishments of words because of the absence of commixture. There, *chāyā* (reflection) is the imitation of the utterance of others. It is again fourfold—imitation of popular saying, clever speech, childish utterance and intoxicated raving<sup>2</sup> (*matta*).

22. The proverb (*ābhāṇaka*) is a popular saying and they are common to all. That which follows the proverb is said to be the *lokoticchāyā* by the wisemen.

23. The clever are the cultured. Expert knowledge of fine arts is culture. That which delineates it is said to be the *Chekotichāyā* by poets.

24. All understand childish speech as the utterance of the ignorant. The imitation of the childish speech hence merely imitates this kind of speech.

25. The vulgar speech of the intoxicated is similarly (composed of) confused letters. That which is similar to this is called *mattoctichāyā* which even surpasses the intoxicated speech.

26. That which exhibits the power of the poet in its particular purpose (is called) *mudrā* because it affords pleasure. This is also (known as) repose in our opinion.

1. Text wrongly reads *pluti* instead of *pūti*.

2. The textual reading is wrong.

27. That is said to be *ukti* (expression) in which some reasonable sense pleases the heart of good people because of some precept relating to the affairs of the world.

28. *Ukti* (expression) is sixfold—injunction and prohibition, restricted and unrestricted, and alternative and exclusive.

29-30. Combination is termed so by the wisemen because of its being made for connecting the two, word and sense, which are mutually unconnected. It is sixfold—inflected word, meaning of inflected word, sentence, meaning of sentence, context and amplification.

31. Stringing is the practice of composition within the scope of a word, meaning and their order. It is threefold based on imitation of word, succession of meaning and regular arrangement.

32-33. *Vākovākya* is a sentence containing question and answer. It is twofold on the basis of the classification as straight speech and crooked speech. The first of these is natural speech. It would be of two kinds according as it is preceded by a question or not. But, crooked speech is intonation or occurs by indirect speech. Hence it is twofold.

## CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND FORTYTHREE

### *Definition of the embellishment of words*

*Fire-god said:*

1-2. Alliteration is the repetition of letters in (inflected) word and sentence. The class of letters of repetition is twofold—single letter and many letters. Five kinds of mode are produced from the repetition of a single letter—sweet, soft, mature, graceful and harsh.

3-4. The consonant letters of the sweet (*madhurāvṛtti*) should occur below the last letters of the (respective) consonant classes: the letters *ra* and *ṛa* should be separated by short vowels, coupled with letter *na* and should be joined with hard aspirates and sibilants. The *varga-varṇas* (letters *ka, ca, ṭa, ta* and *pa*) should

not be repeated in more than five ways. They are not to be followed by short syllables.

5. The soft one abounds in (the use of) *ra*<sup>1</sup> and *la*. In the mature one, (the letters) *pa, ṇa* and (other) consonants are joined with (the letter) *ra* at the head. But neither the cerebral nor the fifth (letters of the consonants are joined).

6-10a. The remaining (letters) would be present in the graceful one. The harsh one is said to be that in which the sibilants are joined with the very same letters. There is abundant repetition of vowels excepting the letter *a*. The *anusvāra* and *visarga* are also constant in harshness. The sibilants are combined with *ra*. (The letters) *a* and *ha* are also abundantly joined for harshness. (They are also joined with) the semi-vowels, *na* and *ma*<sup>2</sup>. Otherwise, if the conjunct is a hindrance, a hard consonant (is used) as the first letter for harshness. But the fifth one is not favoured. The harsh one is employed in censure and imitation of words.

10b-11a. *Karṇāṭi, Kauntali, Kaunti, Vāmanāsikā*<sup>3</sup>, *Drāvāṇi*<sup>4</sup> and *Mādhavi*<sup>5</sup> (are) respectively (characterised) by the semivowels and sibilants.

11b-17. That which has repetition of many letters conveying different meanings is *yamaka*. It is of two kinds—contiguous and non-contiguous. The contiguous one (has the letters) in close succession. The non-contiguous one (has the letters repeated) with intervals. These two become fourfold on account of two kinds of differences in the position (of the letters) and the (metrical) foot. (The first kind is) of seven varieties according (as *yamaka* occurs) in one, two and three at the beginning, beginning of the foot, in the middle and at the end (of the metrical feet). The other kind occurs in six ways when the commencement of one, two or three metrical feet is similar in each successive foot with reference to each preceding one. The third (variety)

1. The printed text reads *va*.

2. The reading *antasthābhinnamābhyāñca* in the printed text has been changed to *antasthābhīrnamābhyāñca*.

3. The correct reading seems to be *Vānavāsikā*.

4. Obviously wrong reading for *Drāvīḍi*.

5. Obviously wrong reading for *Māthuri*.

is threefold (according as *yamaka*) occurs at the beginning, in the middle and at the end of (the metrical) foot. Other *yamakas* are many. The prominent ten are : *ṣādāntayamaka*, *kāñciyamaka*, *saṁsargayamaka*<sup>1</sup>, *vikrāntayamaka*, *ṣādādiyamaka*, *āmreṣṭita*, *caturvyavāsita* and *mālāyamaka*.

18. The repetition of a word is twofold according as it is independent or dependent on others. Thus men know the repetition of words which have different purposes.

19. The compounded (repetition) arises from the compounding of two repeated words. The un-compounded (repetition) arises from the absence of compounding between the two words from dissolving the compounds in one part of the metrical foot.

20. The repetition of a sentence is said to be possible in this way. Alliteration is thus the foremost among the embellishments by virtue of its fitness though being short in the middle.

21. That alliteration, where the similarity of sound is enjoyed by means of any *vṛtti* (mode), having uninterrupted sequence of words, is charming.

22-23a. *Citra* (picturesque *Kāvya*) is said to be a composition of words exciting curiosity in a learned assembly. It is of seven different varieties—*Praśna*, *Praheḷikā*, *Gupta*, *Cyuta*, *Datta*, *Cyuta* and *Datta* combined and *Samasyā* arising from union of different meanings.

23b-24. That is *Praśna* (query) in which a reply is given having similar arrangement of letters. It is twofold according to the difference of reply to the question asked by one or two. The query asked by one, again, is indeed twofold according as it is compounded or un-compounded.

25-26a. *Praheḷikā* (riddle) consists of words having even two meanings concealed. It has two kinds—verbal and meaningful. The meaningful arises from the comprehension of meaning and the verbal from the knowledge of word. *Praheḷikā* is said to be of six kinds.

26b-27a. That is *Gupta* (concealed) in which even a part of a sentence remains concealed and the resultant meaning for which there is expectancy by that part is not wholly true. It (is) also (called) *Gūḍha* (covert).

1. Obviously wrong reading for *samudgayamaka*.

27b-28. Where there is the appearance of a different sense by means of dropping a part of a sentence etc. and there is expectancy raised by that part, it is known as *Cyuta* (dropped). It is fourfold arising from the dropping of the vowel, consonant, *bindu* (*anusvāra*) and *visarga*.

29. That is said to be *Datta* (added) in which a second sense is suggested, even though a part of the sentence is given. Its varieties are considered to be the same as in the previous by means of vowels and the like.

30. It is said to be *Cyutadatta* (dropped and added) in which there arises a different sense even when another letter is inserted in the place of the removed syllable.

31. That is *Samasyā* (union) in which one verse involves good puns and is composed of various verse fragments. (It arises) from the blending of the composition of others and of one's own.

32-33a. *Duṣkara* (difficult) is that (which is) constructed with very great difficulty, indicating poet's ability and producing great delight in clever persons in spite of tastelessness. It is threefold from *niyama* (restraint), *vidarbha*<sup>1</sup> (variation) and *bandha* (structure).

33b-34a. *Niyama* (restraint) is considered to be the fulfilment of promise of the poet, who is delighted for his composition. It is threefold according as it (is regulated) by position, vowel and consonant.

34b-35a. *Vikalpa* (variation) is so called from the reverse and natural order (of letters). The reverse and natural order arises from word as well as sense.

35b-37a. The skillful composition (of different kinds) of the forms of various well-known objects by means of arrangement of letters repeated in many ways is said to be *bandha* (structure). It is (divided into) eight (varieties)—*Gomūtrikā*, *Ardhabhramaṇa*, *Sarvatobhadra*, *Ambuja*, *Cakra*, *Cakrābjaka*, *Daṇḍa* and *Muraja*.

37b-39a. (*Gomūtrikā*) would have similar alternate syllables in each metrical foot in each half (of a verse). *Gomū-*

1. Obviously *vikalpa*. See verse 34b.

*trikā* (zigzagging like the cow's urine) is twofold—the first kind is said to be *Aśvapada* (horse foot) by others. The last kind of *Gomūtrikā* is also called *Dhenu* (cow) and *Jālabandha* (net structure). An arrangement of these is made by two halves and by half metrical feet.

39b-47. That is indeed *Sarvatobhadra* (good in every direction) where (i) the letters (are arranged) one below the other in successive order, (ii) the letters are arranged one below the other up to the fourth feet, and (iii) (the letters are arranged) from the fourth foot onwards the half foot in the reverse order. It is threefold—*Sarasiruha* (lotus), *Catuṣpatra* (four-petalled) and *Vighna*, both of which are four-petalled. The uppermost (letters) of the first foot are the letters of the three feet. They occur indeed at the end of all feet. The last two letters of the preceding foot are at the beginning of the succeeding foot in the reverse order. The last two letters of the last foot (are in the same order) at the beginning of the first foot. This would be in (the lotus of) four petals. But there would be three letters in the lotus of eight petals. On the other hand, it is alternate, if it is a single letter, in (the lotus of) sixteen petals. A series of letters in the form of the petals should be drawn above the pericarp in the lotus of four petals and then made to enter the pericarp. One letter should be written in the pericarp and letters two at a time in the cardinal and intermediate (points) in the lotus of eight petals. The entrance and exit (of letters) should be made in the cardinal (points). The insertion of similar syllables (is done) in the middle of dissimilar letters occurring in the rows of petals on all sides in the lotus of sixteen petals.

48-52. *Cakra* (wheel) is twofold—consisting of four spokes and six spokes. The first one among these has the first and fifth letters in the quarter of the first half as similar. The fourth and eighth letters of the odd and even foot are in order in its northern, eastern, southern and western<sup>1</sup> spokes. The four halves of the (two) feet should be in the nave. Its first letter should be taken as far as the last spoke, the remaining two feet (being)

1. The text is wrong. It has been corrected as *tasyodakprāgavākpratyagareṣu*

in the circumference. It is said to be the *Bṛhat-cakra* (big wheel), if the third letter at the end of the fourth foot and the first two letters are similar, if the tenth letters of the three feet are similar, if there are six letters at its beginning and end and if (a letter) is separated by two letters in the last foot.

53-54. (The two) feet are written one by one gradually in the two front spokes. But the tenth letter should be drawn in the nave and the fourth foot in the circumference. The first, last and tenth letters of the verse are similar. The first and the last (letters) of the two even feet (are also similar). The first, fourth and fifth letters of the first and fourth feet are similar.

55-58. If the third (foot) is produced by reversing the second and the petals are arranged, it is the *Daṇḍa* (staff). (It is known as) *Cakrābyaka* (lotus-wheel), if the second and seventh (letters) are similar in the first petal of a composition, (if) the succeeding two petals are similar by the two second (letters in each), (if) the second, sixth, fourth and fifth letters are similar in the two halves, (if) the first and the last feet, the seventh letters of the extreme halves are also similar. Then one should arrange the fourth and fifth similar (letters) in order. Similarly the two fourth (similar letters) of the *krama* feet at the end of the petals should be arranged.<sup>1</sup>

59-61. The first and the last of the two halves are similar in *Muraja* (drum). The letter occurs in the half-foot according to the natural or reverse (order). *Muraja* (drum) shape is obtained thus. The last is set in such a way that the fourth becomes the first\*

62. The second (variety of) *Cakra* (circle) is accomplished with *Śārdūlavikriḍita*.<sup>2</sup> The *Gomūtrikā* (*bandha*) (is composed) in all the metres. But other *bandhas* (are set) in *Anuṣṭubh*.<sup>3</sup>

63. If the names of the poet and the poetic composition are not found in these, friends become delighted and enemies also do not feel depressed.

64-65. The arrow, bow, sky, sword, club, lance, meeting

1. This line is not intelligible.

\*Verses 60-61 are cryptic and the idea conveyed is not clear.

2. Metre consisting of *ma, sa, ja, sa, ta, ta* (*gaṇas*) and *ga*.

3. Consisting of eight syllables.

place of two, three or four<sup>1</sup> roads, thunderbolt, mace, goad, chariotwheel, food of the elephant, pond and knife are (the different) *bandhas* (patterns in which verses are composed). Others (*bandhas*) should be known by the wisemen similarly.

## CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND FORTYFOUR

### *Description of the embellishment of sense*

*Fire-god said :*

1-2a. The embellishment of sense is said to be the beautifying of senses. Even the beauty of words is not charming without that. The goddess of speech is just like a widow without the embellishment of sense.

2b-3a. It is of eight kinds—*svarūpam* (natural form), *sādṛśyam* (similarity), *utprekṣā* (fancy), *atiśaya* (exaggeration), *vibhāvanā* (imagination), *virodha* (contradiction), *hetu* (cause) and *samam* (evenness).

3b-4. The very nature of things is said to be the natural form. It is said to be twofold such as, innate and adventitious. The innate (is) natural and the adventitious is occasional.

5. Similarity is (the presence of) common attributes. It is indeed fourfold : *Upamā* (simile), *Rūpakam* (metaphor), *Sahokti* (description of the common action of two different objects as coexisting) and *Arthāntaranyāsa* (corroboration).

6-9a. It is named as *Upamā* (simile), in which, there exists a standard of comparison and a subject of comparison. The course of affairs proceeds by taking even a slight identity and the separate entity exists although possessing internal similitude. It is of two kinds—by compounding or not compounding the counter-parts (of comparison). The compounded (arises) from the compounding of the correlated expression and the latter is otherwise. The compounded is threefold—by (the compound

1. The reading *dvicatuṣka* seems to have sense instead of *dvicaturtha* in the text.

ing of) the word indicative of simile, (of) the word (expressive) of the subject of comparison and (of) both of these. The last one is of three kinds.

9b. Eighteen kinds of simile are distinguished.

10. The *Dharma* (attribute) and *Vastu* (object) -*uṣamā* is that where the common attribute is expressed or implied, (depending) on the prominence of *dharma* (attribute) or *vastu* (object).

11-12. Where the two (objects) having the (common) attribute are compared reciprocally, it would be *Paraspara-ṣamā* (mutual simile). When their (comparison) is reversal of what is well known, it would be *Viparitoṣamā* (reversed simile). *Niyamoṣamā* (restrictive simile) is that in which (the resemblance) is restricted (to one excluding others). *Aniyamoṣamā* (unrestrictive simile) would be from (the resemblance found) in others as well.

13-14. *Samuccayoṣamā* (cumulative simile) consists of the mention of multitude of other attributes. When difference is indicated in spite of similarity of many attributes, it is (known as) *Vyatirekoṣamā* (simile of contrast), because distinction is spoken of. It is the *Bahūṣamā* (multiple simile) in which there is comparison with many similar (objects).

15. When the attributes are different for each standard of comparison it is indeed *Māloṣamā* (garland of simile). If comparison is made by modifying the standard of comparison, (it is known as) *Vikriyoṣamā* (simile of modification).

16. That is well known as the *Adbhutoṣamā* (hypothetical simile) in which comparison is made by the poet by superimposing something non-existent in all the three worlds on the standard of comparison.

17. It is *Mohoṣamā* (illusive simile) in which, the subject of comparison is declared as identical with the standard of comparison, after imposing the standard of comparison on the subject of comparison. (It has) a mistaken statement.

18. *Samśayoṣamā* (simile by doubt) (arises) from the uncertainty of the real nature of both the entities having common attributes. *Niścayoṣamā* (determinative simile) (arises) from determining the subject of comparison after having doubted it.

19. *Vākyārthoṇamā* (simile of the sense of the sentence) arises from a comparison of verily the meaning of the sentences. *Asādhāraṇoṇamā* (absolute simile), (which is) extraordinary, (occurs) when there is a comparison of a thing with itself.

20. When a subject of comparison is (a standard of comparison) of another it is considered as *Anyasyoṇamā* (simile of another). It is (known as) *Gamaṇoṇamā*<sup>1</sup> (simile of succession) when the subject of comparison of a, thing becomes the standard of comparison of another in regular succession.

21. *Upamā* (simile) is again known to be of five kinds : praise, censure, fancied, similar and little similar.

22-23a. It is known by the name *Rūpaka* (metaphor), in which the subject of comparison is identified with the standard of comparison after the perception of the similarity of attributes. Or, *Rūpaka* is indeed *Upamā* itself in which the difference (between the standard and subject of comparison) is concealed.

23b. *Sahokti* (connected description) (arises) from the description (of objects) having similar attributes as being simultaneous.

24a. *Arthāntaranyāsa* (corroboration) arises when there is a posterior similarity (of a preceding statement to the succeeding one).

24b-25a. It is said to be *Utprekṣā* (poetic fancy) where the condition of a sentient being or otherwise, which occurs in one way, is conceived (as occurring) differently.

25b-26a. It is named as *Atiśayokti* (hyperbole) wherein the attribute of an object, that has passed beyond ordinary limits, is described. It is twofold on the basis of possibility and impossibility.

26b-27a. That is said to be *Viseṣokti* (special utterance) where the imperfection in the quality, genus, action and the like (of an object) are perceived just for the purpose of showing (its) speciality.

27b-28a. That is *Vibhāvanā* (presumption) where a different cause or naturalness is presumed excluding a well known cause.

---

1. The printe text wrongly reads *Gamaṇoṇamā*.

28b-29a. It is said to be *Virodha* (contradiction) where there is realisation, by adjustment, of congruity between two incongruous things, with a previous contradiction.

29b-32. *Hetu* (cause) is that which accomplishes the object desired to be accomplished. It is produced in two (ways) such as *kāraka* (efficient) and *jñāpaka* (indicative). The efficient cause occurs before and (the other) after the production of an effect. These two kinds known as the precedent and antecedent arise from the controlling relation of cause and effect or identity. There is difference in the indicative one such as the perception of a flooding river. The rule of inseparable connection arises from the perception of inseparable connection.

## CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND FORTYFIVE

### *The embellishments of sound and sense*

*Fire-god said :*

1. An embellishment of both sound and sense adorns the two simultaneously just as a necklace laid in one place (adorns both) the breast and neck of a woman.

2. Six varieties of it are explicitly in existence, namely, *Praśasti*, *Kānti*, *Aucitya*, *Saṅkṣepa*, *Yāvadarthatā* and *Abhivyakti*.

3-4a. *Praśasti* (eulogy) (is) skillful speech (employed) for the act of melting the subtle (heart) as if it is subservient. It is of two kinds on account of the distinction as *Premokti* and *Stuti*. A friendly speech and a panegyric are the synonyms of *Premokti* and *Stuti* (respectively).

4b-5a. *Kānti* (loveliness) (is) the fitness of the expressed (sense) and the expressive (word) agreeable to all the minds. (In that) the diction is befitting the theme and the mode to the sentiment.

5b. The propriety arises from strong and soft compositions.

6. *Saṅkṣepa* (brevity) (is) the comprehension of many meanings by means of few expressive words. *Yāvadarthatā*

(correspondence) is neither deficiency nor excess of the word and the theme respectively.

7-9a. *Abhivyakti* (manifestation) (is) explicitness. It has also two (sub) divisions, *Śruti* and *Ākṣepa*. *Śruti* (direct hearing) is the word that gives up its own meaning. It is of two kinds—*Naimittiki* (occasional) and *Pāribhāsiki* (technical). Technicality is convention. Hence arises the Technical. (The two) are again each divided as *Mukhyā* (primary) and *Aup-acāriki* (metaphorical).

9b-10a. That is Metaphorical by which a word whose function deviates from its own primary sense expresses, for certain reason, a sense which is not primary.

10b-12a. It is Indicatory and Qualitative by association with indication and qualities (respectively). Indication is said to be the apprehension (of a secondary sense) always associated with the expressed sense. Indication is regarded as fivefold arising from connection with the primary sense, proximity, cohesion, contrariety and association through action.

12b-13. The Qualitative (is) endless in view of the endlessness of qualities in accordance with the desire of the speaker. It is known here as *Samādhi* (transference) in which the attribute of one object is transferred to another by a person complying with worldly limits.

14-16. That is *Ākṣepa* (interdiction), on account of which the vital essence not available from direct hearing (of the word) becomes manifest. It is also (known as) *Dhvani* (suggestion), since it is implied by suggestion by means of word and sense, where the (suggested) sense (appears) by subordinating<sup>1</sup> its own (expressed sense). That is said to be *Ākṣepa* (interdiction) where there is an apparent denial of the desired sense in order to convey something special.<sup>2</sup> Again, this (is known as) *Aprastutastotra*<sup>3</sup> (indirect praise) where there is a praise of another object deviating from the object on hand.

17. Because of brevity of expression that is termed by the wise as *Samāsokti* (brevity of speech), where another object

1. The reading is taken as *upasarjanam*: nstead of *upārjanam*.

2. The reading should be *viśeṣa* instead of *viśeṣo*.

3. The textual reading *atra stutam stotram* is obviously incorrect.

having common characteristics is suggested, when one object is described.

18. *Apahnuti* (concealment) (consists of) conveying another sense by concealing something. That is *Paryāyokta* (periphrasis) which is stated in a different way. Hence *Dhvani* (suggestion) is, indeed, *the name* of any one of these.

## CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND FORTYSIX

### *Investigation into poetic excellences*

*Fire-god said :*

1. Poetry, even though embellished, does not produce pleasure, if it is devoid of *guṇas* (excellences). A necklace would only be burdensome to women, if their bodies are not beautiful.

2. It cannot be said that excellence would only be the absence of defect.<sup>1</sup> Excellences such as *Śleṣa* (coalescence) and the like and defects such as *Gūḍhārtha* (obscurity of sense) and the like have been distinguished from one another.

3. An excellence is that which confers great charm to poetry. It exists in two forms such as general and particular.

4. That which is common to all<sup>2</sup> is considered to be the general. The general (excellence) is threefold relating to word, sense and both.

5-6a. The excellence (of word) is that which relates to the word, the body of the poetry<sup>3</sup>. The excellences of the word are sevenfold, namely, *Śleṣa* (coalescence), *Lālitya* (smoothness), *Gāmbhīrya* (depth), *Saukumārya* (softness), *Udāratā* (richness of expression), *Satī* (purity) and *Yaugikī* (derivative).

6b. That is said to be Coalescence in which there is a closely coalesced arrangement of words.

1. The reading *doṣo bhāva* has been corrected as *doṣābhāva*.

2. Probably the Ritis.

3. The reading *kāvyaśarīram* is better than *kāvyaṃ śarīraṃ*.

7. Smoothness is declared as that in which a letter that is already combined in the words by means of (substitution such as) *guṇa*, *ādeśa* and the like is never euphonically combined.

8. The wise name it as Depth which is a composition chiselled by special characteristics and which contains elevated words; others (name) the same as *Suśabdātā* (grammatical correctness).

9. Softness consists of words mostly of unharsh letters. Elevatedness consists of elevated words and is endowed with praiseworthy epithets.

10. Splendidness (*Ojas*) (is) abundance of compounds. It is the life of prose etc.<sup>1</sup> From the Highest Being to a clump of grass, manliness (comes) by *ojas* alone.

11-12. That is said to be the Excellence of Sense<sup>2</sup> which brings out the excellence of a described object by whichsoever word. There are six varieties of it, viz., *Mādhurya* (tranquility), *Sarvīdhāna* (contrivance), *Komalatvaṃ* (softness), *Udāratā* (elegance), *Praudhi* (maturity) and *Sāmayikatva* (being conventional).

13. The gravity of appearance even in anger (and) deep state of composure is Tranquility. Contrivance (consists of) the effort for the accomplishment of an expected object.

14. An arrangement of words free from rigidity appearing after setting aside laxity (of structure) is (known as) Softness.

15. The excessive gracefulness of intention which indicates the characteristic of the disposition of being aimed at explicitly is the Elegance of *Guṇa*.

16. That is declared Maturity in which there are mature reasonings impregnated with logical reasonings bringing about accomplishment of what is intended.

17. The apprehension of the sense in the demonstrated conclusion<sup>3</sup> of something independent or dependent (is known as) 'Being Conventional'.

1. The text wrongly reads as *padya*.

2. *arthaguṇa* seems to be better than the reading *arho guṇa*.

3. The reading *rāddhāntaḥ samayo mataḥ* seems to be better than *bāhyāntaḥ samayogataḥ* of the printed text.

18-19a. That which embellishes both word and sense is known by the name 'the Excellence of Both'. *Prasāda* (lucidity), *Saubhāgya* (loveliness), *Yathāsaṅkhyā* (relative enumeration), *Praśastatā* (praiseworthiness), *Pāka* (ripeness) and *Rāga* (tint) are its six (varieties) divulged in their manifoldness by the wise.

19b-20. Lucidity is glorified as consisting of words possessing very well-known sense. That which, when expressed, suggests some eminent attribute, is declared by the wise as *Saubhāgya* (loveliness) or *Udāratva* (elegance).

21-22a. *Yathāsaṅkhyā* (is) Relative Enumeration extended to similar things. Praiseworthiness is the description of even a terrible object by means of a word not terrible, when there is an occasion.

22b-23. A certain high maturity is said to be Ripeness. It is of four kinds, viz., as the ripeness of grape and that of coconut water etc. That is indeed the ripeness of grape in which there is sweetness both at the beginning and the end.

24-25. It is glorified as Tint which is a special characteristic for the purpose of poetic composition. It excels even the natural grace (when) put to constant practice. It is again of three varieties : yellow, saffron and indigo. That which is within the range of its own characteristics is to be recognised as the particular (Excellence).

## CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND FORTYSEVEN

### *Investigation into poetic blemishes*

*Fire-god said:*

1. Blemish causes distaste in the refined men. It is sevenfold as applied to one, two and three of the speaker, the denoter and the denoted.

2-3. The speaker is certainly the poet therein. He is also known to be fourfold: suspicious, insolent, ignorant and learned. The denoter is that which affects the meaning on the ground

(for employment) and technicality. Its subdivisions are two: word and sentence. The characteristics of both have been stated.

4. Grammatical incorrectness and reconditeness are the only two defects of word. Wisemen know grammatical incorrectness as repugnance to the science of word.

5-6a. Reconditeness is said to be the non-employment by the well-versed. It is fivefold: *Chāndasatva* (Vedic usage), *Aviśpaśatva* (lack of clarity), *Kaśatva* (unpleasantness), *Asāmayikatva* (not being conventional) and *Grāmyatva* (vulgarity).

6b-9. *Chāndasatva* is that which is not found in the spoken language. Lack of clarity arises from lack of understanding. Obscurity of meaning, Perversion of meaning and Ambiguity are varieties of Lack of clarity. It is known as obscurity of meaning in which the sense is understood with difficulty. Perversion of meaning again is wrong perception of the meaning of a word other than that intended. Non-conformity to established meaning and Incapability (of expressing the intended meaning) approach this only. Ambiguity is said to be the doubtful nature of the expressed (meaning).

10-11a. Without causing distress to good people, faultiness attaches to unpleasantness which comprises difficult pronunciation. Not being conventional consists of deviation from convention. The sages named it *Neyā*.

11b-12. Vulgarity is the damaging apprehension of a low meaning. It is threefold: arising from the expression of an intended vulgar sense, recollection (of the same) and from close resemblance (of an expression) with the word expressive (of that sense).

13. Defect of meaning is twofold: general and particular. The blemish that relates to many is said to be the general.

14. The general (impurities) are five, namely, *Kriyābhrāmśa* (dropping of the verb), *Kāraḥbhrāmśa* (dropping of the case-endings), *Viśandhi* (lack of euphonic combination), *Punaruktatā* (tautology) and *Vyastasambandhatā* (confused connection).

15. The dropping of the verb is the absence of the verb. Dropping of the case-endings again is the absence of cases begin-

ning with the subject. Lack of euphonic combination is the deficiency of the same.

16. It is twofold: deficient euphonic combination or repugnant. The repugnance of euphonic combination (arises) from difficulty in reading or from the appearance of a different sense.

17-18. The continued repetition of an expression is Tautology. It is also twofold: repetition of sense and repetition of word. The repetition of sense is also twofold: by making use of a chosen word and by means of a different word. In the repetition of a word, a word is repeated and not the sense.

19-21. The confused connection (is) improper connection that arises from the intervention (of a word). It is, indeed, threefold—arising from the implication of a different connection, from the occurrence of a different connection and in the absence of both of them, from internal intervention. Each one of these is, again, twofold by means of the intervention of a word or a sentence. Of the word and the sentence, the meaning<sup>1</sup> is what is expressed, because it is intended to be conveyed. The expressed is divided into two, viz. already-developed or yet-to-be-developed.

22-23. The incapability of the cause is the state of causing obstacle to the intended. (It occurs in the following forms): inconclusiveness, contrariety, absence of invariable concomitance, being liable for a valid opposite argument, union of untimely reason, non-existence in the subject, non-existence in similar instance and existence in contrary instance.

24. The eleven kinds of meaninglessness do not become painful to those who are competent in poetry. They do not become defects in difficult compositions.

25. Obscurity of meaning does not make the knowers of defects in difficult compositions feel distress. Vulgarity does not annoy by being admitted by people (in general) and in technical works.

26. There is no blemish in the dropping of the verb because (the ellipsis) of the verb could be supplied. The dropping of

---

1. The correct reading is *vācyamartho*.

the case (becomes possible) when the case is supplied by means of implication.

27. Non-occurrence of euphonic combination does not affect in the (case of a) *pragrhya*<sup>1</sup> (vowel). Absence of disagreeable euphonic combination that arises from difficulty in reading does not become unpleasant in harsh utterances and the like.

28-29a. The repetition of a word and confused connection are good in alliteration. It is not a defect in understanding the sense. It is also not tarnished by (the defects) such as the inversion of order and the like of the case ending, number and gender. There is no distress for the wise in these.

29b. There is difference in number between the standard of comparison and the object of comparison there.

30-33. The right practice of the poets is glorified as the (poetic) convention, where there is (comparison) of many with one and many with many, which is good. It is twofold: general and particular, similar to excellence. That which is well known from the absence of dispute among famous knowers of established truth is considered as the general convention of poets. According as all the knowers of truth or only a few agree faultlessly, the general is twofold. The other (namely, the particular), arises from defective doctrine, such as the error of some people.

34-35a. Some sage has the knowledge of reasoning. Some (has) transitory (consciousness) of the created beings. Some (has) self-manifestation<sup>2</sup> of knowledge. Similarly, there is grossness of known objects and uncertainty of words for the Arhats (Jains).

35b-36a. The Śaivas (devotees of Śiva), Vaiṣṇavas (devotees of Viṣṇu), Sauras (devotees of Sun god), who know the established truth, opine that Brahman is the cause of the world. (The cause is associated) with Pradhāna (Primordial) for the Sāṅkhyas.<sup>3</sup>

36b-40. It is said to be the particular, in this world of speech, that people moving together and perceiving mutually,

---

1. That which is not governed by the rules of *sandhi* or euphony and is permitted to be written and pronounced separately.

2. The reading *svaprakāśatā* seems to be better.

3. The followers of the Sāṅkhya philosophy, promulgated by Sage Kapila.

fasten upon. This being divided, is also known as twofold, according as being accepted as unreal and being non-accepted as real. That which gets affected by the means of knowledge such as perception and the like, is known as the unreal. That is to be accepted by the poet as the manifestation of knowledge. That alone which accomplishes an action with purpose, is (taken to be) the highest truth, out of ignorance. Brahman alone is the real, the highest truth, from knowledge. (Lord) Viṣṇu is the cause of creation and the like. He is embodied of words and embellishments. Knowledge is Parā (superior) and Aparā (inferior). One is released from birth by knowing it.

## CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND FORTYEIGHT

### *List of mono-syllabic words*

#### *Fire-god said:*

1-2. I shall describe the mono-syllabic (words) ending with the letters (of the alphabet). (The letter) ‘a’ (denotes) (lord) Viṣṇu and negation. ‘Ā’ (means) Brahmā, a sentence as well as a boundary. ‘Ā’, when used as an interjection would also be (an expression of) anger and affliction. ‘I’ (signifies) (God of) love. ‘Ī’ (denotes) Rati (the wife of God of love) and Lakṣmī (Goddess of wealth and consort of Lord Viṣṇu). ‘U’ (signifies) (lord) Śiva (and) ‘Ū’, the demons and others.

3. ‘Ṛ’ (denotes) a word and ‘Ṝ’, (the deity) Aditi (the mother of Āditya). (The letters) ḷ and ḹ (respectively) (denote) Diti (the mother of the demons) and Guha (son of Śiva and Pārvatī). ‘E’ (denotes) the goddess and ‘ai’ would mean Yoginī (female attendant of the Goddess). ‘O’ (signifies) Brahmā and ‘au’, Maheśvara (Lord Śiva).

4-5. ‘Am̄’ (denotes) the God of love and ‘ah̄’ a commendable thing. ‘Ka’ (stands for) Brahmā and others (and) ‘ku’ contemptible thing. (The letter) ‘kham̄’ signifies void, the senses and a sword. A Gandharva and (lord) Vināyaka (lord of obstacles) (are denoted by the letter) ‘gam̄’. ‘Go’ (signifies) a song

and the singer. 'Gha' stands for a bell, a small bell and the like and beating. (The letter) 'ña' signifies desire and Bhairava (a terrible form of lord Śiva).

6. 'Ca' (stands for) the wicked (and) stainless. 'Cha' (indicates) division and 'ji', conquering. 'Jam' (denotes) a song and 'jha', commendable. (The letter) 'ña' (signifies) strength and 'ṭah', singing.

7. 'Ṭha' (denotes) the orb of Moon, (lord) Śiva and tying. 'Ḍa' is regarded (as signifying) Rudra, sound and fear. 'Ḍha' (denotes) a drum and sound.

8. 'Ṇa' (means) extraction and ascertainment. 'Ta' (signifies) a thief and the inside of the tail. 'Tha' (denotes) eating, 'dah', cutting, sustaining and ornamentation.

9. 'Dhaḥ' (signifies) Brahmā and the *dhuttūra* (flower). 'Na' (stands for) a collection and correct course of action. 'Pa' is known (to denote) a garden. 'Pha' is regarded (as signifying) a squall.

10. 'Pha' (stands for) *phūkāra* (blowing with the mouth) and fruitlessness. 'Bi' (denotes) a bird and 'bham', the asterism. 'Mā, would (mean) Goddess of wealth, measure and mother. 'Ya' (stands for) a sacrifice, traveller and a brave person.

11. (The letter) 'raḥ' (denotes) Fire (god), strength and Indra. (The letter) 'la' is said (to denote) the creator. 'Vi' (signifies) separation and 'Va', Varuṇa. 'Ṣaḥ' (means) lying down and 'sam', happiness.

12. 'Ṣaḥ' (denotes) excellence and 'saḥ', the past. 'Sā' (means) Lakṣmī (the goddess of fortune) and 'sam' is regarded (as representing) locks of hair. 'Ha' (denotes) sustenance and Rudra (a form of Śiva). 'Kṣa' (stands for) the warrior class and regarded as the alphabet (imperishable).

13. (The letter) *kṣo* (denotes) (lord) Nṛsimha, Hari and the guardians of the land (and entrance). A sacred formula of one syllable (should be deemed as) the deity (itself whom it represents) and it confers enjoyment and emancipation.

14. The formula (running as) '*kṣaum* obeisance to Hayaśiras<sup>1</sup>' confers all knowledge. The letter 'a' and the other letters

---

1. The horse-headed form assumed by Lord Viṣṇu to rescue the *Vedas*.

(described above are also) formulae. (They are known as) *māṭṛkāmantras* and are excellent.

15-16. These (deities of the *māṭṛkāmantras*) and the nine Durgās—Bhagavatī, Kātyāyanī, Kauśikī, Caṇḍikā, Pracāṇḍā, Suranāyikā, Ugrā, Pārvatī and Durgā. *Om*, we may know (the Goddess) Caṇḍikā, let us meditate on the goddess and may (Goddess) Durgā lead our mind to that. Then the worship should be done in the proper way together with the six accessories: The *gaṇa* should be an aspirate.

17-18. Then (the goddesses) Ajitā, Aparājitā, Jayā, Vijayā, Kātyāyanī, Bhadrakālī, Maṅgalā, Siddhi and Revatī and the accomplished (deities) Vaṭukas should be worshipped. The nine guardian deities Hetuka, Kāpālika, Ekapāda and Bhīmarūpa (should be worshipped) in the middle.

19-20. *Hriṃ!* O Durgā ! (2) Protector! Oblations for the sake of perfection of the formula. Then (goddess) Gaurī, Dharma and others and the female energies (such as) Skanda should be worshipped. Prajñā, Jñānā, Kriyā, Vācā, Vāgīśī, Jvālīnī, Kāminī, Kāmamālā, the energies of Indra and others should be worshipped.

21-23a. “*Om gaṃ* oblations” (is) the basic formula. “*Gaṃ*, obeisance to Gaṇapati (lord of the *Gaṇas*)” (is) the accessory formula. The six accessory (worship should be done). They are Raktaśukla (red and white), Dantākṣa (having axis like tusk), Paraśūtkaṭa (powerful axe), Samodaka (having the sweet ball cake), Gandhādi (fragrance etc.), and Gandhokāya (to the person having a fragrant stick) in order. The elephant (god), the great lord of the *Gaṇas* (attendants) and having a magnificent incense stick should be worshipped. Oblation to Kūṣmāṇḍa, to the single-tusked one, to the destroyer of the three cities, to the black-teethed one, to one whose dreadful laughter startles (all), to one having elongated nose and face, to one having the lotus in the tusk, to Megholka, to Dhūmolka, to one having curved trunk, to the lord of obstacles, to the fierce and dreadful one, to one having the gait of the elephant of Indra, one having the serpent-lord (Vāsuki) as a necklace, to one bearing the crescent moon, and the lord of the *Gaṇas* (attendants). After having worshipped with these formulae ending with oblations and with

(the performance of) the oblations with sesamum, one would get wealth.

23b-24a. The formulae may, in the alternative, consist of the letters beginning with *ka* and with the subtle syllable and ending with obeisance separately having two *ras* and two faces and two eyes.

24b. I shall describe now the grammar that was imparted by Skanda to Kātyāyana.

### CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND FORTYNINE

#### *The pratyāhāras and fundamental rules in grammar*

*Skanda said :*

1. O Kātyāyana ! I shall describe the essence of grammar that is of the form of perfected words for imparting to the beginners.

2. *Pratyāhāras*<sup>1</sup> etc. are the notations facilitating the function of the treatise, *Aiuṃ ṛḷk, eoñ, aiauc, hayavaraṭ, lan, ñamañāṇanam jhabhañ, ghaḍhadhaṣ, jabagaḍadaṣ, khaphachaṭhathacaṭataṭ, kaṭay, śaṣasar, hal* are (the fourteen) *pratyāhāras*. In the enumeration, the consonant at the end is indicatory. The vowel would be (read with) the nasal. The first letter being taking together with the indicative letter at the end, would become the denotative of the letters which occur in between such as *aṇ, eñ, aṭ, yañ, chav, jham, bhaṣ, ak, ik, aṇ, iṇ, yaṇ*, with the letter *ṇa* coming afterwards. (Similarly we have) *aṃ, yaṃ, ñaṃ, ac, ic, aic, ay, may, jhay, khay, jav, jhav, khav, cav, śav, aś, haś, vaś, jhaś, al, hal, val, ral, jhal* and *al* the *pratyāhāras*.

---

1. Several letters or affixes are comprehended as one syllable by means of combining the first letter of an aphorism with its final indicative letter or if several aphorisms are comprehended, the final letter of the last member is combined with the first such as *aṇ* etc. denoting *aiuṃ* etc.

## CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND FIFTY

*The forms of completed euphonic combinations*

*Skanda said :*

1-5. I shall describe the forms of finished combinations<sup>1</sup> (of vowels and consonants). First (I shall describe) the combination of vowels.

daṇḍa	+	agram	=	daṇḍāgram
sā	+	āgatā	=	sāgatā
dadhi	+	idaṁ	=	dadhīdaṁ
nadī	+	ihate	=	nadīhate
madhu	+	udakaṁ	=	madhūdakaṁ
pitṛ	+	ṛṣabha	=	pitṛṣabha

The letter 'ṛ' also becomes similar.

(hotṛ	+	ḷkāra	=	hotṛkāra)
tava	+	idaṁ	=	tavedaṁ
sakala	+	udakaṁ	=	sakalodakaṁ

The following is a half-vowel :

tava	+	ḷkāra	=	tavalkāra
sā	+	eṣā	=	saiṣā
sā	+	aindrī	=	saindrī
tava	+	odanaṁ	=	tavaudanaṁ
khaṭvā	+	oghaḥ	=	khaṭvaughaḥ

formed

vi	+	asudhiḥ	=	vyasudhiḥ
vasu	+	alaṅkṛtaṁ	=	vasvalaṅkṛtaṁ
pitṛ	+	artha	=	pitṛartha
	+	upavana	=	pitṛarthopavana
nai	+	aka	=	nāyaka
lo	+	aka	=	lāvaka
te	+	iha	=	ta iha, tayiha etc.
te	+	atra	=	te'tra
yaḥ	+	atra	=	yo'tra
jale	+	akajam	=	jale'kajam

1. The text gives only the combined forms. The individual words have also been given here for easy comprehension.

(The following do not undergo any change) :

aho	+	ehi	=	aho ehi
a	+	avehi	=	a avehi
i	+	indrakam̐	=	i indrakam̐
u	+	uttiṣṭha	=	u uttiṣṭha
kavī	+	etau	=	kavī etau
vāyu	+	etau	=	vāyu etau
vane	+	ime	=	vane ime
amī	+	ete	=	amī ete
yajñabhūte	+	ehi	=	yajñabhūte ehi
deva	+	imannaya	=	deva imannaya

6-9. I shall describe now the conjunction of the consonants.

vāk	+	yataḥ	=	vagyataḥ
ac	+	ekamātṛkaḥ	=	ajekamātṛkaḥ
ṣaṭ	+	ete	=	ṣaḍete
tat	+	ime	=	tadime
vā	+	ādi	=	vādi (?)
vāk	+	nītiḥ	=	vānnītiḥ
ṣaṭ	+	mukha	=	ṣaṇmukha etc.
vāk	+	manasaṁ	=	vānmanasaṁ
vāk	+	bhāgādih̐	=	vāgbhāgādih̐
vāk	+	ślakṣṇaṁ	=	vākślakṣṇaṁ
tat	+	śarīrakaṁ	=	taccharīrakaṁ
tat	+	lunāti	=	tallunāti
tat	+	caret	=	taccaret
kun	+	āste	=	kuñāste
sugan	+	iha	=	sugaṇṇiha
bhavān	+	caran	=	bhavānścaran
bhavān	+	chātro	=	bhavānščātro
bhavān	+	ṭikā	=	bhavānṣṭikā
bhavān	+	ṭakaḥ	=	bhavānṣṭakaḥ
bhavān	+	tīrtha	=	bhavānṣtīrtha
bhavān	+	stheyān	=	bhavānṣtheyān
bhavān	+	lekhā	=	bhavānṣlekhā
bhavān	+	jayaḥ	=	bhavānṣjayaḥ
bhavān	+	śete	=	bhavānṣchete
bhavān	+	ca śete	=	bhavānṣcaśete
bhavān	+	śete	=	bhavānṣete

bhavān	+	dīnaḥ	=	bhavāṇḍīnaḥ
tvaṁ	+	bhartā	=	tvambhartā
tvaṁ	+	karisyasi	=	tvaṅkarisyasi etc.

The conjunctions of *visarga* are known (as follows):

10-11.	kaḥ	+	chindyāt	=	kaśchindyāt
	kaḥ	+	caret	=	kaścaret
	kaḥ	+	ṭaḥ	=	kaṣṭaḥ
	kaḥ	+	sthaḥ	=	kaṣṭhaḥ
	kaḥ	+	calet	=	kaścalet

(In the following cases the *visarga* becomes the *upadhmāniya*):

kaḥ	+	khanet	=	kaḥṣkhanet
kaḥ	+	karoti	=	kaḥṣkaroti sma
kaḥ	+	paṭhet	=	kaḥṣpaṭhet or
kaḥ	+	phaleta	=	kaḥṣphaleta

(The following may occur in two forms) :

kaḥ	+	śvaśuraḥ	=	kaśśvaśuraḥ (or)
				kaḥ śvaśuraḥ
kaḥ	+	sāvaraḥ	=	kassāvaraḥ or kaḥ
				sāvaraḥ

(In the following cases there is no change) :

kaḥ	+	phaleta	=	kaḥ phaleta
kaḥ	+	śayitā	=	kaḥ śayitā

(The following is an instance of change) :

kaḥ	+	atra yodhaḥ	=	ko'tra yodhaḥ
-----	---	-------------	---	---------------

(The *visarga* is dropped in the following cases) :

12-13.	kaḥ	+	uttamaḥ	=	ka uttamaḥ
	devāḥ	+	ete	=	devā ete
	bhoḥ	+	iha	=	bho iha
	sodarāḥ	+	yānti	=	sodarā yānti
	bhago	+	vraja	=	bhago vraja

(In the following the *visarga* becomes *repha* (r) :

supūḥ	+	sudūḥ	+	rātriḥ	=	supūḥ sudūrātriḥ
vāyuḥ	+	yāti	=	vāyuryāti		
punaḥ	+	nahi	=	punarnahi		
punaḥ	+	eti	=	punareti		

(The *visarga* is dropped in the following cases) :

sah	+	yāti+iha	=	sa yātiha
eṣah	+	yāti	=	eṣa yāti
kaḥ	+	īśvaraḥ	=	ka īśvaraḥ
jyotiḥ	+	rūpaṃ	=	jyotirūpaṃ

(The following are examples of other kinds of union) :

tava	+	chatram	=	tavacchatram	
mlecchadhīḥ	+	chidraṃ	+	=	mlecchadhīśchidramāc-
		ā	+	chidat	chidat

## CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND FIFTYONE

### *Perfected forms of inflection in the nouns*

*Skanda said :*

1-3. O Kātyāyana ! I shall describe to you the finished forms of inflections. There are two kinds of inflections—*sup* (substantives) and *tiñ* (verbs). The substantives have seven cases. (The inflections) *su, au, śas* (constitute) the first (case) (Nominative). *Am, au, śas* (are the inflections of) the second (case) (Accusative). *Ṭā, bhyām, bhis* (are the terminations of) the third (case) (Instrumental). *Ne, bhyām, bhyas* (constitute) the fourth (case) (Dative). *Nasi, bhyām, bhyas* (are the inflections of) the fifth (case) (Ablative). *Nas, os, ām* (are the terminations for) the sixth (case) (Genitive). *Ni, os, sup* (are for) the seventh (case) (Locative). These would be added after the uninflected substantives.

4. The substantives are twofold—ending in vowels and ending in consonants. Each one of this would again be threefold : masculine, feminine and neuter.

5-7. The models of these are given. Those which are not mentioned here (follow those) on account of their strength. (Those ending in vowels are to be declined as the following examples). *Vṛkṣaḥ* (tree)<sup>1</sup>, *Sarvaḥ* (all), *Pūrvaḥ* (former), *Prathamaḥ* (first), *Dvitiyakaḥ* (second), *Tṛtīyaḥ* (third), *Khaṇḍapā* (protector of a group), *Vahniḥ* (fire), *Sakhā* (friend), *Patīḥ* (husband), *Aharpatīḥ* (Sun), *Paṭuḥ* (clever), *Grāmaṇī* (chief of the village), *Indra* (the lord of the celestials),

1. The text gives only the nominative singular forms of the substantives in this chapter.

Khalapūḥ (one who sweeps), Mitrabhūḥ (being a friend), Svabhūḥ (an epithet of Brahmā), Suśrīḥ (good fortune), Sudhīḥ (a wiseman), Pitā (father), Bhrātā (brother), Nā (a man), Kartā (doer), Kroṣṭu (a jackal), Napṭṛ (grandson), Surā (intoxicating drink), Rā (Rai means wealth), Gauḥ (cow), Dyauḥ (heaven), Glauḥ (Moon) (are) examples for the masculine (nouns) ending in vowels.

8-12a. (Examples for substantives ending with the consonants) : Suvāk (good expression or speech), Tvāk (skin), Pṛṣat (a drop of water or any other liquid), Samrāṭ (a paramount sovereign), Janmabhāk (one who has obtained birth), Surāṭ (a good sovereign), Āpaḥ (water), Marut (Wind), Bhavan (becoming), Dīpyan (shining), Bhavān (you) (polite form), Maghavān (Indra) (prosperous), Piban (drinking), Bhagavān (fortunate, hence denotes the lord), Aghavān (a sinner), Arvān (a horse), Vahnimat (possessing fire), Sarvavit (knower of all things), Supṛt (a good army), Susīmā (good boundary), Kuṇḍī (Kuṇḍin denotes Śiva, holding a bowl), Rājā (king), Śvā (horse), Yuvā (youth), Maghavā (Indra), Pūṣā (Sun), Sukarmā (doer of good deeds), Yajvā (sacrificer), Suvarmā (good armour), Sudharmaṇā (council of gods, court-hall of Indra), Aryamā (Sun), Vṛtrahā (Indra, killer of Vṛtra), Panthāḥ (path), Sukakud (good summit) etc. and Pañca (five), Praśān (one who is tranquil), Sutān (one who spreads well), Pañca (five) etc., Sugauḥ (good cow), Surāḥ (one who is wealthy) and Supūḥ (good city), Candramāḥ (Moon), Suvacāḥ (good speech), Śreyān (excellent), Vidvān (learned), and Uśanas (the preceptor of the demons), Pecivān (one who has cooked), Gauḥ (cow), Anaḍvān (an ox), Godhuṅ (one who milks a cow), Mitradruh (one who is treacherous to a friend), Śvaliṭ (one who licks like a dog).

12b-19. (Substantives) in the feminine (are) : Jāyā (wife), Jarā (old age), Bālā (young girl), Eḍakā (a ewe), Vṛddhā (old woman), Kṣatriyā (a woman of the Kṣatriya class), Bahurājā (land having many rulers), Bahudāmā (having many garlands) and Bālikā (an young girl), Māyā (illusion), Kaumudagandhā (smelling like a lily), Sarvā (all), Pūrvā (the preceding one) and Anyā (someone else), Dvītiyā (second one), Tṛtīyā (third one), Buddhi (intellect), Strī (woman), Śrī (Lakṣmī, goddess

of wealth), Nadī (river), Sudhīḥ (wise), Bhavantī (one who becomes), Dīvyantī (one who shines), Bhātī (one who appears), Bhāntī (one who shines), and Yāntī (one who goes), Śrīvati (one who hears), Tudatī (tormenting), Kartrī (doer), Tudantī (tormenting), Kurvatī (one who is doing), Mahī (earth), Rudhantī (one who is obstructing), Krīḍatī (one who is playing), Dāntī (one who is restrained), Pālayantī (one who is protecting), and Surāṇī (a celestial woman), Gaurī (having white complexion, denotes consort of Śiva), Putravatī (one who is having a son), Nauḥ (ship or boat), Vadhūḥ (bride), Devatā (deity) and Bhūḥ (earth). Tisra (three) and Dve (two) (both denoting feminine), Kati (how many), Varṣābhūḥ (a female frog), Svasā (sister), Mātā (mother), Varā (excellent), Gauḥ (cow), Nauḥ (ship or boat), Vāk (speech), Tvak (skin), Prācī (east), Avācī (south), Tiraścī (the female of an animal or bird), Samīcī (a doe), Udīcī (north), Śarat (autumn), Vidyut (lightning), Sarit (river), Yoṣit (lady in separation), Agnivit (knower of fire), Sampat (wealth), Dṛṣat (stone), Yā (who), Eṣā (this), Vedavit (knower of the Veda), Saṁvit (knowledge), Bahvī (many), Rājñī (queen), Tvayā (by you), Mayā (be me), Sīmā (boundary), Pañca (five) etc., Rājī (line or row), Dhūḥ (shaking), Pūḥ (purifying), Diśā (direction), Girā (speech), Catasraḥ (four), Viduṣī (learned person), Kā (who), Iyaṁ (this), Dik (direction), Dṛk (look), Tādṛśī (that kind). These are chief among (the substantives belonging to) the feminine gender. (I shall describe) the chief among (the substantives belonging to) the neuter.

20-22a. Kuṇḍaṁ (a bowl or pit), Sarvaṁ (all), Somapaṁ Dadhi (curd), Vāri (water), Khalapū (that which sweeps), Madhu (honey), Trapu (tin), Bhartṛ, Atibhartṛ, Payaḥ (milk), Puraḥ (city), Prāk (east), Pratyak (?) (backwards), Tiryak (across), Udaḥ (above or nothward), Jagat (world), Jāgrat (awakening state), Śakṛt (excrement), Susampat (good wealth), Sudaṇḍī (good stick), Ahaḥ (day), Kim (what), Idam (this), Ṣaḥ (six), Sarpīḥ (clarified butter), Śreyaḥ (fortune), Catvāri (four), Adah (that thing). Others are similar to these.

22b-28a. (The inflections of) the first case (Nominative) etc. would come after these uninflected forms. A form of a word which is neither a verbal root (*dhātu*), nor an affix (*pratyaya*) is a nominal base (*prātipadika*). The first case from the nominal

base is employed to denote the subject. The first case (is also employed) in addressing when the agent and the object are mentioned. That which is done (by the agent) is the object (*karma*). Second case (Accusative) is used in the object. That by which something is done is the instrument (*karaṇa*). One who does is the agent (*kartā*). When the object is not specified to be the agent through the verbal affix or suffixes of the *kṛt* and *tad-dhita* type, the third case (Instrumental) is used in (denoting) the instrument and the agent. The fourth case is employed in *sampradāna* (to be given). It is said to be *sampradāna* in which the desire to give is indicated. *Apādāna*, is that from which something moves away or taken away. The fifth case (Ablative) is used (to denote) *apādāna*. The sixth case (Genitive) (is used to denote) one's ownership. The term *adhikarāṇa* is used in the sense of the base (*ādihāra*). The seventh case (Locative) (is used) therein.

28b-29a. Singular is used to denote a single thing. Dual comes in the sense of two things. Plural would occur in the (sense of) many. I shall describe the finished forms (now).

29b-32a. (The following are examples for the Nominative): Vṛkṣaḥ (tree), Sūryaḥ (Sun), Ambuvāhaḥ (cloud), Arkaḥ (Sun). The following are the examples for the Vocative): *He* Ravi (O Sun!), *He* Dvijātayas (O twiceborns!), *Viprau* (O Brahmins!). (Then the example for the Accusative): *Gajān* (the elephants). (Then the examples for the Instrumental): *Mahendreṇa* (by Mahendra, the lord of the celestials), *Yamābhyām* (by two Yamas—by the twins), *Analaiḥ kṛtam* (done by Anala, fire plural). *Rāmāya* (for Rāma), *Munivaryābhyām* (for the two excellent sages), *Kebhyaḥ* (for whom, plural) (are examples for the Dative). *Dharmāt* (from Dharma), *Harau ratiḥ*<sup>1</sup> (?), *Śarābhyām* (from the two arrows), *Pustakebhyaḥ* (from the books) (are illustrations for the Ablative). *Arthasya* (of the sense), *Īśvarayoḥ* (of the two lords), *Gatiḥ bālānām* (the fate of children) (are for the Genitive). *Sajjane prītiḥ* (pleased in good people), *Haṁsayoḥ* (in the two haṁsas), *Kamaleṣu* (in the lotuses) (are examples for the Locative). In the same way, the words

---

1. The reading is obviously wrong.

Kāma (God of love), Maheśa (the great lord) and other (words) should be known like (the word) Vṛkṣa (tree).

32b-36a. Sarve (all), Viśve (all or entire or whole), Sarvasmai (for all), Sarvasmāt (from all) and Katara (who or which of two) are regarded (as similar). Sarveṣām (of all), Svam (one's self), Viśvasmin (in the whole). The other forms are like (the word) Vṛkṣa (tree). Similarly Ubhaya (both), Katara (who or which of the two), Katama (who or which of many), Anyatara (one of two) etc. (should be known). Pūrve (all the former), Pūrvāḥ (all the former, feminine), Pūrvasmai (for the former), Pūrvasmāt (from the former), Pūrve (in the former), Pūrvasmin (in the former). The other forms are like that of Sarva. Para (superior), Avara (inferior) as well as Dakṣiṇa (south), Uttara (north), Antara (in between), Aparāḥ (others), Adharaḥ (below) (are to be known) in the same way. Nemāḥ (parts), Prathamāḥ (the first ones), Prathame (in the first one) are like the word Arka (Sun). In the same way (we would have) Caramāḥ (last), Alpa (little), Ardha (half) and the Nema (part) and others.

36b-41a. Dvitiyasmai (or) Dvitiyāya (for the second), Dvitiyasmāt (or) Dvitiyakāt (from the second), Dvitiyasmin (or) Dvitiye (in the second) and Tṛtīya (third) like (the word) Arka (Sun). Somapāḥ (a drinker of Soma) and Somapau (two drinkers of Soma) should be known. Go to Somapāḥ (drinkers of Soma) (or) Somapām (a drinker of Soma). Kīlālapau (two drinkers of a heavenly drink similar to nectar) and Somapaḥ (drinker of Soma), Somapāḥ (drinkers of Soma), Somape dada (give to a drinker of Soma), Somapābhyām (to two drinkers of Soma), Somapābhyaḥ (to many drinkers of Soma), Somapaḥ (drinker of Soma), Somapau (two drinkers of Soma) (belong to) a group. (The words) such as Kīlālapāḥ (drinkers of a celestial drink) would be similar. Kaviḥ (poet), Agniḥ (fire) and Arayaḥ (enemies), He kave ! (O poet !), Kavim (the poet, accusative), Agnī (two fires, accusative), Tān Harin (those Hari-s), Sātyakinā hṛtaṁ (taken by Sātyaki), Ravibhyaṁ (by two Suns), Ravibhiḥ (by the Suns), Dehi vahnaye yaḥ samāgataḥ (Give to Fire who has come), Agneḥ (of fire), Agnyoḥ (of two fires), Agnīnām (of many fires), Kavau (in the poet), Kavyoḥ (in the two poets) and Kaviṣu (in many poets) (are examples for words ending in 'i'). Similarly Susṛtiḥ (good path), Abhrāntiḥ (not an error),

Sukīrtiḥ (good fame) and Sudhṛtiḥ (firmness) (are to be declined).

41b-43a. (Some more examples for words ending in 'i'): Sakhā (a friend), Sakhāyau (two friends), Sakhāyaḥ (many friends). 'He sakhe ! vraja satpatim' (O Friend ! go to a good master), Sakhāyaṁ (the friend), Sakhāyau (the two friends), Sakhīn (the friends) (are accusative forms). Sakhyā gataḥ (gone with the friend). Dada sakhye (give to the friend). Sakhyuḥ (from a friend), Sakhyuḥ (of the friend), Sakhyoḥ (of the two friends). That rest (are formed like) the forms of Kavi (poet). Patyā (by the master), Patye (for the master), Patyuḥ (from the master), Patyuḥ (of the master), Patyoḥ (of the two masters) are like (the word) Agni (fire).

43b. Dvau (two), Dvau (the two), Dvābhyām (by the two), Dvābhyām (for the two), Dvayoḥ (from the two) and Dvayoḥ (of the two) are in the sense of dual.

44. Trayāḥ (three), Trīn (the three), Tribhiḥ (by the three), Tribhyaḥ (for the three), Trayāṅām (of the three) and Triṣu (in the three) (are) in order. Kati (how many) and Kati (how many). The other plural forms are like Kavi (poet) (in the plural).

45. (The word Nī, leader is declined as follows): Niḥ (a leader), Niyau (two leaders) and Niyaḥ (many leaders). He niḥ (O leader !), Niyam (one leader), Niyau (two leaders), Niyaḥ (many leaders). Niyā (by a leader), Nībhyām (by two leaders), Nibhiḥ (by many leaders). Niye (for a leader), Nibhyaḥ (for many leaders). Niyām (of many leaders), Niyi (in a leader) and Niyōḥ (in two leaders).

46-48a. Suśrīḥ (good fortune), Sudhīḥ (good intellect) etc. Grāmaṇīḥ (a leader), pūjayeddhariṁ (should worship Hari). Grāmaṇyau (the two chiefs), Grāmaṇyaḥ (the many chiefs), Gramaṇyaṁ (the chief, accusative), Grāmaṇyā (by the chief), Grāmaṇibhiḥ (by many chiefs), Grāmaṇyaḥ (of a chief), Grāmaṇyām (in a chief). Words beginning with Senānī (leader of an army) are similarly (declined). Subhūḥ (good land) and Sabhuvau (two good lands). Svayambhuvaḥ (self-born), Svayambhuvaṁ (self-born, accusative), Svayambhuvā (by the self-born), Svayambhuvi (in the self-born). Pratibhuvaḥ (bail or surety) etc. (should be formed) similarly.

48b-49. Khalapūḥ (that which sweeps), Khalapvau (the two which sweep), Śreṣṭhau (that are excellent), Khalapvaṁ (that which sweeps, accusative), and Khalapvi (in a sweeper). (The words) beginning with Śarapūḥ would be in the same way. Kroṣṭhā (a jackal) and Kroṣṭhāraḥ (many jackals), Kroṣṭhūn (the jackals, accusative plural), Kroṣṭhunā or Kroṣṭhrā (by a jackal), Kroṣṭhūnām (of the jackals), Kroṣṭhari (in a jackal) are said to be (formed) thus.

50-52a. Pitā (father), Pitarau (two fathers), Pitarah (many fathers), He pitaḥ (O Father!), Pitarau śubhau (O Auspicious fathers!), Pitṛṇ (the fathers, accusative), Pituḥ (from the father), Pituḥ (of the father), Pitroḥ (of the two fathers), Pitṛṇām (of many fathers), Pitari (in the father) are formed) thus. In the same way Bhrātā (a brother), Jāmāṭṛ (son-in-law) and others (words) (are formed). Then Nṛṇām or Nṛṇām (of the men). Kartā (doer), Kartārau (two doers), Kartṛṇ (many doers, accusative), Kartṛṇām (of many doers) and Kartari (in a doer) are thus (formed). Udgātā (a singer of Vehic hymn), Svasā (sister), Napṭṛ (grandson) are known to be like (the word) Pitṛ (father).

52b. Surāḥ (good fortune), Surāyau (dual), Surāyaḥ (plural), Surāyaṁ (accusative), and Surāyi (locative).

53. Gauḥ (a cow), Gāvau (two cows), Gām (accusative), Gāḥ (accusative, plural), Gavā (instrumental), Goḥ (genitive), Gavoh (genitive, dual), Gavām (genitive, plural) and Gavi (in a cow). In the same way Dyauḥ (heaven) and Glauḥ (Moon) and the chief masculine words ending in vowels.

54-57a. Suvāk (good speech), Suvācī (nominative dual), Suvācā (instrumental), Suvāgbhyām (instrumental, dual), Suvākṣu (locative, plural). Similarly the directions beginning with (east). Prāñ (east), Prāñcī (nominative neuter dual), Prāñcam (to the east) bho vraja (you go). Prāgbhyām (instrumental, dual), Prāgbhiḥ (instrumental, plural), Prācām (genitive), Prācī (locative, singular), Prāñsu and Prāñkṣu (locative, plural). In the same way Udañ or Udicī (north), Samyañ (well), Pratyak (western), Samicī (a doe), Tiryañ (that which moves horizontally), Tiraśca<sup>1</sup>, Sadhryañ (a companion, especially

1. Seems to be Tiraści, denoting a female of any animal.

husband), Viṣvadryaṅ (all-pervading) are known to be like the former. Adadryāṅ, Adamuyaṅ, Amumuyaṅ (all meaning going to that) etc. are similar. Adadryoṅc (one who has gone to that direction) and Amudrīcaḥ (one who has gone to that direction) and Adadryābhyāṅ are as before.

57b-59a. Tattvatṛṣṭ (desirous of truth) (nominative), Tattvatṛṣṭau (dual), Tattvatṛṣṭbhyāṅ (with men desirous of Truth) samāgataḥ (one has come together), Tattvatṛṣṭi (in one desirous of truth), Tattvatṛṣṭsu (among those desirous of truth). In the same way Kāṣṭha (wood), Taḍa (?) etc. (are formed). Bhiṣak (a physician), Bhiṣagbhyāṅ (by two physicians), Bhiṣaji (locative). (The words) such as Jannabhāk (are) then (similarly declined). Marut (wind), Marudbhyāṅ (by two winds), Maruti (in the wind). In the same way (we have) Śatrujit (conqueror of an enemy) etc.

59b-61. Bhavān (you, polite form), Bhavantau (dual), Bhavatāṅ (of you, plural), Bhavan (vocative), Bhavati (in you). Mahān (great), Mahāntau (dual), Mahatāṅ (of great people), Bhagavat (fortunate) etc. In the same way Maghavan (Indra), Maghavantau (dual). Agnicit (one who has kept the sacred fire), Agniciti (locative), Agnicitsu (locative, plural). In the same way Anyat (another), Vedavit (one who knows the scriptures), Tattvavit (knower of truth) etc. (We will have) Vedavidāṅ (in locative singular). In the same way Anyat (some other person). One who knows all is Sarvavit.

62-64. (The word Rājan is declined thus) : Rājā (king), Rājānau (dual), Rājñaḥ (genitive), Rājñi or Rājani (locative), Rājan (vocative). Yajvā (a performer of a sacrifice), Yajvānaḥ (plural) are similar. Karī (an elephant), Daṅḍī (one who holds a stick), Daṅḍinau (dual), Panthāḥ (path), Panthānau (dual), Pathaḥ (plural), Pathibhyāṅ (instrumental, dual) and Pathi (locative) (will be) similar. Manthā (that which churns), R̥bhukṣāḥ (nominative plural) (R̥bhukṣaḥ means Indra) and Pathya (wholesome food) etc. (should be known). Pañca (five), Pañca (accusative), Pañcabhiḥ (instrumental). Pratān (one who spreads well), Pratānau (dual), Pratānbhyāṅ (instrumental, dual), He Pratān (vocative) and Suśarmaṇaḥ (vocative, those who are happy). (The following is always plural) : Āpaḥ (water) (nominative), Apaḥ (accusative), Adbhiḥ (instrumental). In

the same way Prasān (one who is tranquil) and Praśāni (locative) also.

65-67. Kaḥ (who), Kena (by whom) like Sarva (all). Keṣu (among whom), Ayaṁ (this), Ime (dual), Imān (accusative plural), Anena (by this), Ābhyām (instrumental, dual), Ebhiḥ (instrumental, plural), Asmai (dative, singular), Ebhyaḥ (dative plural), Svām (one's own), Asya (genitive), Anayoḥ (genitive, dual), Eṣām (genitive, plural) and Eṣu (locative, plural) would be (formed). Catvāraḥ (four), Caturaḥ (accusative), Caturṇām (genitive), Caturṣu (locative). Sugīḥ (good speech), Sugīṣu (locative, plural), Sudyauḥ (good day), Sudivau (dual), Sudyubhyam (instrumental dual). Viṭ (merchant), Viśau (dual), Viṭsu (locative, plural). Yādṛśaḥ (ablative, singular, from which kind of a thing), Yādṛgbhyām (ablative, dual) Viḍbhyām (dual in the third, fourth and fifth cases). Ṣaṭ (six), Ṣaṭ (accusative) Ṣaṇṇām (genitive plural), Ṣaṭsu (locative, plural).

68-70a. Suvacāḥ (eloquent), Suvacasā (instrumental), Suvacobhyām (instrumental, dual), He Suvaco (vocative), He Uśanan (Uśanas denotes the preceptor of the demons) (vocative), Uśanā (instrumental), Uśanasi (locative), Purudañśā (a goose), Añchā (a stupid person), He Vidvan (O Learned man!), Vidvān (nominative) Viduṣe namaḥ (obeisance to the learned, dative), Vidvadbhyām (instrumental, dative and ablative, dual), Vidvatsu (locative, plural). Babhūvivān (one that has become). (We have) in the same way, Pecivān (one that cooks), Śreyān (excellent), Śreyāṁsau (nominative, dual), Śreyasaḥ (accusative, plural).

70b-73. The following are the forms of Adas (that) : Asau, Amū, Amī (nominative, singular, dual and plural), Amum and Amūn (accusative singular and plural), Amunā, Amībhiḥ (instrumental singular and plural), Amuṣmai (dative), Amuṣmāt (ablative), Amuṣya, Amuyoh, Amiṣām (genitive singular, dual and plural) and Amuṣmin (locative). Similarly (we have) (the forms of Godhuk, one who milks the cow): A person has come with one who milks the cow. Godhukṣu (locative plural). Thus (we have) other (forms). Mitradruhaḥ (one who is treacherous to a friend), Mitradrugbhyām (dual instrumental), Mitradrugbhiḥ (plural) and Cittadruhaḥ (inimic to the mind)

etc. Svaliṭ (one who licks himself) , Svaliḍbhyām (instrumental dual), Svaliḥi (locative). Anaḍvān (nominative of Anaḍuh, a bull), Anaḍutsu (locative plural). These are (the words) ending in the vowels and consonants in the masculine. I shall describe (now) those in the feminine.

## CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND FIFTYTWO

*Narration of the finished forms of the substantives in the feminine*

*Skanda said :*

1-2. (The following are the forms of feminine nouns ending in *ā*) : Ramā (Lakṣmī, consort of Viṣṇu), Rame, Ramāḥ (the three forms in the nominative) are auspicious. Ramām, Rame, Ramāḥ (the three forms in the accusative), Ramayā, Ramābhyām, Ramābhiḥ (the three forms in the instrumental) (by Ramā) it was made imperishable. Ramāyai, Ramābhyām (are the singular, dual dative). Ramāyāḥ, Ramayoḥ, Ramāṅām (are the three forms in the genitive). Ramāyām and Ramāsu (are the singular and plural forms of the locative). Kalā (fine arts) is similar.

3-4. (The following are also feminine) : Jarā (old age), Jarasau or Jare, Jarasaḥ or Jarāḥ (are the forms in the nominative). Jarām or Jarasām (is the form in the accusative singular), Jarāsu (is the locative plural). Similarly (we have) Sarvā and Sarve (all) (in the nominative singular and dual). Sarvasyā (instrumental), give Sarvasyai (dative) (to all). Sarvasyāḥ (ablative), Sarvasyāḥ (and) Sarvayoḥ (genitive singular and dual). The other forms are like that of Rāma. (The following are always plural) : Dve (two in the nominative), Dve (in the accusative) and Tisraḥ (three in the nominative) and Tisṛṅām (in the genitive).

5-8. (The following are examples of substantives of the feminine ending in 'ī') : Buddhiḥ (intellect) (nominative), Buddhyā (instrumental), Buddhaya (dative) and Buddhēḥ (abla-

tive and genitive). (The vocative form of Mati, mind, is) He mate. (The word Muni) will have (the forms) like that of Kavi (poet) : Muninām (genitive) (of the sages). (The following are the forms of the substantives of the feminine ending in *i*) : Nadiḥ, Nadyau (singular and dual in the nominative). Nadiṁ, Nadiḥ (are the singular and plural in the accusative). Nadyā, Nadiḥ (are the singular and plural in the instrumental). Nadyai (is dative singular). Nadyām and Nadiṣu (are the locative singular and plural). Similarly (we have the forms of) Kumārī (a young girl), Jṛmbhaṇī (yawn) etc. Śrīḥ (fortune), Śrīyau, Śrīyaḥ (are the three forms in the nominative). Śrīyā (instrumental), Śrīyai and Śrīye (dative) (are the other forms). The following are the forms of the word Strī (woman) : Strīm and Striyām (in the nominative singular) and Strīḥ or Striyaḥ (in the plural), Striyā (instrumental), Striyai (dative), Striyāḥ and Strīṇām (singular and plural in the genitive) and Striyām (locative singular). (Similarly) Grāmaṇyā (locative singular). (The forms of words ending in 'u' are) : Dhenvā (by a cow) and Dhenave (dative). (The following are examples for those ending in *ū*) : Jambū (the rose apple), Jambvau (nominative singular and plural), Jambuḥ (accusative singular), Drink the fruits of the Jambu (genitive). Varṣābhvau (is the nominative dual of Varṣābhū, a female frog) and Punarbhavau (nominative dual of Punarbhū, a widow remarried). Mātṛḥ (is the accusative plural of Mātṛ, mother ending in *r*). Gauḥ (cow), Nauḥ (boat) (are examples of words ending in *O*).

9-10. (Now we have examples for words ending in consonants) : Vāk (speech) (nominative), Vācā, Vāgbhiḥ (instrumental singular and plural) and Vākṣu (locative plural) and Sragbhyām (instrumental dual) and Sraji, Srajoḥ (locative singular and dual) (for the word Srak (garland). (The forms of the word Vidvat, learned, are) Vidvadbhyām (dual in the instrumental, dative and ablative) and Vidvatsu (locative plural). (The following words ending in *t* take *i*-ending) : Bhavatī (respect form), Bhavantī (one who is becoming), Dīvyantī (shining) Bhātī (shining), Bhāntī (appearing), Tudantī (inflicting pain), Tudatī, Rudatī (crying), Rundhatī (obstructing), the Goddess Gṛhyatī (who is seizing or holding) and Corayantī (one that is stealing).

11-12a. (The following are other examples of nouns ending in *t*) : Dṛṣat (stone), Dṛṣadbhyām (instrumental, dative and ablative dual), Dṛṣadi (locative) are the special models. Samit (twig), Samidbhyām (instrumental, dative and ablative dual), Samidhi (locative) (are other examples). (The following are examples for words ending in *n*): Sīmā (boundary) (nominative), Sīmni or Sīmāni (locative). Dāmanībhyaṁ (instrumental etc. from the word Dāman meaning a line or streak). Kakudbhyaṁ (from Kakud, summit). Kā (who) (is a pronoun), Iyaṁ (this) (demonstrative pronoun) and Āsu (locative plural, in them).

12b-13. (The forms of the word Gīḥ, speech, are as follows) : Gīrbhyaṁ (dual in instrumental, dative and ablative), Gīrā (instrumental) and Gīrṣu (locative plural). (The following are also feminine nouns) : Subhūḥ (good land), Supūḥ (good city), Purā (through a city), Puri (in a city). (The following are the forms of dyo, heaven) : Dyauḥ, Dyubhyaṁ (dual, instrumental etc.), Divi (locative), Dyuṣu (plural). Tādṛśyā (by that kind) (instrumental). That kind of direction etc. Yādṛśyām (in which kind), Yādṛśī (which kind) are similar. Suvacobhyaṁ (with good words), Suvacaḥsu (locative). Asau (that, nominative), Amūm (accusative), Amūḥ (plural), Amūbhīḥ (instrumental plural), Amuyā (instrumental singular) and Amuyoḥ (genitive and locative dual) (are the forms of Adas in the feminine).

## CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND FIFTYTHREE

### *The finished forms of substantives in the neuter*

*Skanda said :*

1. (The forms) in the neuter (are as follows) : Kim, Ke, Kāni (the three forms in nominative, meaning what). Kim, Ke, Kāni (are the forms in the accusative). Then (the word) Jalam (water). Sarvam (all) (nominative), Sarve (nominative, dual), Pūrva and other (words), Sīmapam (protecting the boundary) (accusative), Sīmapāni (accusative, plural).

2. (The words ending in 'i' are as follows) : Grāmaṇi, Grāmaṇinī, Grāmaṇī and Grāmaṇīni (are the forms in the nominative of Grāmaṇi, leader). Vāri, Variṇī, Vāriṇi (in the nominative), Variṇām<sup>1</sup> (in the genitive plural) and Vāriṇi (locative singular) are thus (the forms of Vāri, water).

3. (The word Śuci, pure, has two forms in the dative) : Śucaye and Śucine dehi (give). Similarly (the word Mṛdu, soft, has two forms in the instrumental) : Mṛdune and Mṛdave. (The word Trapu, tin has the forms) : Trapu (nominative), Trapuṇi (locative singular) and Trapūṇām (genitive plural). Khalapūni (nominative plural) and Khalapvi (locative singular, (forms of Khalapū, a sweeper).

4. Kartrā (instrumental), Kartṛṇe or Kartre (dative) (are the forms of Kartṛ, doer). Atirī (nominative) and Atiriṇām (genitive plural) (are the forms Atiriṇ, one who goes beyond). Abhini, Abhininī (are nominative forms of the word denoting performance). Suvacānsi (nominative plural) and Suvākṣu (locative plural) (are from Suvāk, good speech).

5. (The relative pronoun) Yad, yat (who), and pronoun Ime (that), Tat (that) (belong to neuter). Karmāṇi (is the plural of Karma, work). Idam, Ime, Imāni (are the forms of Idam, this). Īdrk (this kind), Adaḥ, Amuni, Amūni (in the nominative), Amunā (in the instrumental) and Amiṣu (in the locative plural) (are the forms of Adas, that).

6-9. (The forms of Asmad, I, are) : Aham, Āvām, Vayaṁ (nominative), Mām, Āvām, Asmān (accusative), Mayā, Āvābhyām, Asmābhiḥ (instrumental) done. Mahyaṁ and Asmābhyam (dative singular and dual), Mat, Āvābhyām, Asmat (ablative). Mama, Āvayoḥ and Asmākaṁ (genitive) ayaṁ putraḥ (This is my, our son). Asmāsu (locative plural). (The forms of Yuṣmad, you, are), : Tvaṁ, Yuvām, Yūyaṁ (nominative) ijire (praise). Tvām, Yuvām, Yusmān (accusative), Tvayā and Yuṣmābhiḥ (instrumental, singular and plural) are stated (to be the forms). Tubhyaṁ, Yuvābhyām, Yuṣmābhyām (dative), Tvat, Yuvābhyām, Yuṣmat (ablative), Tava, Yuva-yoḥ, Yuṣmākaṁ (genitive) and Tvayi, Yuṣmāsu (locative, singular and plural). These are the characteristics of the

1. Obviously a mistake for Vāriṇām.

language. (The substantives) ending in vowels and consonants have been described.

## CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND FIFTYFOUR

*The relation between a noun and a verb in a sentence*

*Skanda said :*

1. I shall describe the *kāraka* ( the relation that exists between a noun and a verb) together with the significance of the inflection (of nouns). (There) is a village. O Great Arka (Sun) ! I salute (lord) Viṣṇu together with Śrī (His consort) here.

2-4. The agent is said to be fivefold : (1) The agent is independent. The composers of the sacred knowledge are respected. (2) The agent gets to that cause when the agent is the doer. The dull headed breaks up himself. The tree cuts itself. (3) The agent expressed is good. The agent not expressed is low. (An example) for the agent not expressed (is) : The dharma is being expounded to the pupil. Listen to me ! (I shall describe) the seven kinds of objects.

5-8a. (The first one is) the desired object such as “An ascetic pays respect to (lord) Hari (Viṣṇu)”. (The second one is) the object that is not desired, such as “A person jumps over a serpent repeatedly.” “After drinking milk, eat dust” (is an example) for neither desired nor not desired (object of the third kind). (The fourth one consists of) not being told (such as) “The cowherd is milking the cow”. (The next one is) the object of the agent such as “Let the preceptor send the disciple to the village”. (An example for the sixth variety, namely), the object that is expressed, (is) “Worship is made to (lord) Hari for prosperity”. “Make an eulogy to (lord) Hari that yields all (things)” (is an example) for the object that is not expressed, (the seventh variety of object).

8b-9a. The instrument is said to be two kinds—external and internal. A person perceives the form by means of the eye

(in an example for the internal). May a person cut that with a sickle (is an instance of) external.

9b-10. The *sampradāna* (giving) is said to be threefold : (1) *preraka* (sending) a cow to a brahmin, (2) *anumantṛka* (with consent) (such as) “A person gives a servant for the king”, (3) *anirākartṛka* (a thing that could not be refused) (such as) “A good person may give flowers to the master.”

11. The *apādāna* (that which is being taken away) is said to be twofold : (1) *calaṁ* (moveable) : (A person) has fallen from a running horse and *acalaṁ* (immoveable) : That devotee of Viṣṇu comes from a village.

12-14a. The *adhikaraṇa* (the base) is fourfold : (1) *vyāpaka* (pervading) just as ghee in curd, (2) *auṣaṣṭika* (juxtaposition) is said (to be the existence of) oil in sesamum for the sake of God, (3) *vaiśayika* (pertaining to an object) is known (to be) like the monkey may remain on a house (or) a tree, (and) (4) *sāmiṇyaka* (proximate) known (to be) like fish in the water and a lion in a forest. (A fifth variety) is known as *auṣacārika* (metaphorical) such as the existence of a hamlet on the (river) Ganges.

14b-17. (Now I shall describe the use of different inflections indicating different senses.) The third or the sixth (case) is known (to be used) when (the intention is) not expressed. (Lord) Viṣṇu is worshipped by people, To be gone by him or of him (are examples). The first case (is used) when the agent is expressed. (Accusative is used to denote) object : May a person make obeisance to Hari. The third case (is used to denote) cause (of an action)<sup>1</sup> : May one live for the sake of another. The fourth case is expressive of the purpose for which anything is done<sup>2</sup> : The water (is) for the three. The fifth case (is indicated) by means of (the words) *pari*, *uṣa* and *āñ* etc.<sup>3</sup> in combination. Outside the village this God was strong before. (Other examples)<sup>4</sup>. ‘To the east of the village’, ‘without (lord) Viṣṇu (there is) no emancipation’ and ‘different from Hari’.

18. There would be either third or fifth case with (the

1. cf. *Pa.* II. 3.

2. See Kale, Higher Skt. Gr. 827.

3. It should be *pari*, *uṣa* and *āñ*. See *Pa.* II. 3. 10.

4. See Kale, ib. 840

words) such as Pṛthak, Vinā etc.<sup>1</sup> : different from the village, without sport (with the word) śri (prosperity) (such as) śriyā (instrumental) and śriyaḥ (ablative).

19. There would be second case when combined with *karmapravacanīyas*.<sup>2</sup> The warriors are inferior to Arjuna (and) near the village are said (to be examples).

20. The fourth case is used with (the particles) *namaḥ* (obeisance), *svāhā* (ablutions), *svadhā*, *svasti* (well-being) and *vaṣaṭ* etc.<sup>3</sup> : Obeisance to the lord and Farewell to thee. (The fourth case) of an abstract noun (formed from a root may be used) to express the sense of the infinitive (of the same root).<sup>4</sup>

21. (The object governed by an infinitive mood not actually used but implied is put in the fourth case such as) (He) goes for cooking (in order to cook) (*pākāya*). The third case (is used) when accompanied by (the word) *saha*. The third case (is also employed) to express the cause or motive<sup>5</sup> (or the object or purpose of an action), (to express) some defect in a limb<sup>6</sup> (of the body) or a characteristic attribute<sup>7</sup> (indicative of the existence of a particular state).

22-23a. (The following are illustrations for the use of the third case) : The father went with the son (*saha putreṇa*); blind of one eye (*kāṇo 'kṣṇā*); He is Hari (apparent) from his club (*gadayā*); The servant may stay on account of the wealth (*arthena*). The seventh case (is used (to denote) the time (of action) and becoming. (The following are the examples) : One would get release (from bondage) when (lord) Viṣṇu is propitiated (*viṣṇau nate*). (He) attained Hari in the spring.

23b-24. (We have the sixth or seventh case in the following instances) : Master of men (or) master among men, lord of men, lord of good people, witness of men (or) witness among

1. See *Pa* II. 3. 32

2. Prepositions used by themselves and governing nouns are known as *Karmapravacanīyas*. See *Pa*. II. 3.8.

3. See *Pa*. II. 3. 16.

4. See *Pa*. II. 3. 15.

5. See *Pa*. II. 3.

6. Cf. *Pa*. II. 3.20.

7. See *Pa*. II. 3. 21.

men, lord among the cows, born among the cows (or) born of the cows, a heir or son of kings.

25. (When the word *hetu*, cause or object is used in a sentence, that which is the object and the word *hetu* are put in the genitive)<sup>1</sup> : (A person) dwells for the sake of food. A word or object expressing remembrance (is put in the genitive) (such as): Remembers the mother (mātuḥ), the guardian always. (The genitive is used) in the sense of the subject or the object (of the action denoted by the primary nominal bases) : The splitter of water, your action. The genitive (is) not used with past participles (*niṣṭhā*)<sup>2</sup>

## CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND FIFTYFIVE

### *Different kinds of compounds*

*Skanda said :*

1. I shall describe the six kinds of compounds. They are again divided into twentyeight kinds. They are twofold being divided as eternal and non-eternal, those which drop (the suffixes) and those which do not drop.

2-3a. (The following are examples of) eternal (compounds) : Kumbhakāraḥ (a potter), hemakāraḥ (goldsmith) etc. Rājñāḥ pumān or rājapumān (a person with royal authority). This also is an eternal compound. Kaṣṭaśritaḥ (kaṣṭena śritaḥ) (joined with difficulty) (is an example of) dropping (the suffix). Kaṇṭhe-kālaḥ etc. (kaṇṭhe+kā'laḥ) (black-necked) (are examples) for not dropping (the suffix).

3b-7. Tatpuruṣa (Determinative compound) is of eight kinds. The first one is that where the words when compounded with substantives are placed first. This is the first (variety) of Tatpuruṣa. Pūrvam Kāyasya when (the compound is) dissolved

1. Cf. *Pa.* II. 3. 27.

2. See *Pa.* II. 3. 69.

(becomes) purvakāyaḥ<sup>1</sup> (the upper part of the body), Aparakāyaḥ (lower part of the body), Adharottara-kāyakaḥ (the lower and higher part of the body). Ardham Kaṇāyāḥ (becomes) Ardhakaṇāḥ (half of a grain). Bhikṣātūryam<sup>2</sup> (begging alms a fourth time) is also of this type (signifying the whole of which they are parts) (optionally placed first). Āpanna-jīvikāḥ<sup>3</sup> (āpanno jīvikām) is similar (in the second case). Adharāśritaḥ (adharam āśritaḥ—one who has resorted to a lower person). Varṣambhogyāḥ (or) Varṣabhogyāḥ (to be enjoyed for a year). (An instance of compounding) with (nouns in) the third case : Dhānyārthaḥ (Dhānyena arthaḥ) (wealth obtained by means grain). (The noun) would be in the fourth case (when compounded with the word *bali*) : Viṣṇubaliḥ (Viṣṇave baliḥ). Vṛkabhītiḥ<sup>4</sup> (Vṛkā bhītiḥ, fear from a wolf) (is an example for compounding with a noun in) the fifth case. (An example for) sixth case (is) Rājñāḥ pumān (an officer of a king) (becoming) Rājapumān. Similarly (we have) Vṛkṣaphalaḥ (the fruit of a tree). The seventh case (is used in the following): This one (is) Akṣaśauṇḍa<sup>5</sup> (Akṣeṣu śauṇḍaḥ) (skilled in dice). Ahitaḥ (not beneficial) (is an example) for Negative Tatpuruṣa.

8-12. Karmadhāraya (appositioned compound) is seven-fold<sup>6</sup>. Nilotpala (*Nilam ca tad utpalam ca*) etc. are known (to be the examples) for compounding the adjective and the noun it qualifies. (1) The qualifying word is placed first or (2) the word that is qualified is placed afterwards. (Words expressive of the persons or things condemned are placed first) : Vaiyākaraṇakhasūciḥ (a bad grammarian) (an example for first kind). Śītoṣṇam (cold and hot) and Dvipadam (two words) (are examples for the second). (3) Expressive of standard of comparison placed as first member : Śaṅkha-pāṇḍara (white as the conch) (*śaṅkhaḥ iva pāṇḍaraḥ*). (4) The standard of comparison

1. See *Pa.* II. 2. 1. They are not strictly Genitive Tatpuruṣa. But called by some as Prathamā Tatpuruṣa.

2. See *Pa.* II. 2.3.

3. See *Pa.* II. 1. 24.

4. See *Vārttika* under *Pa.* II. 1. 37.

5. *Pa.* II. 1. 40.

6. But it is actually six-fold.

placed as the second member : *Puruṣavyāghraḥ* (a man like a tiger) (*puruṣo vyāghraḥ iva*). (5) Words of respect placed first: *Guṇavṛddhiḥ* dissolved as *guṇaḥ iti vṛddhiḥ* (elongation). *Suḥṛd* and *Subandhu* (are examples). (6) The word signifying prominence is placed as the first member (*pāda eva padmaṁ = pāda-padmaṁ*). *Bahuvrīhi* (attributive compound) is sevenfold. (The following are examples) for the *Bahuvrīhi* having two words : *ārūḍhabhavano naraḥ* (A man who has stepped into a house).

13. These brahmins are about ten (ie., nine or eleven). *upadaśāḥ* (= *daśānāṁ samipe ye santi te*) is (an example of *Bahuvrīhi* having the) numeral as the second member. (Examples of *Bahuvrīhi*) having both (the members) as numerals are such as *dvitrā* (two or three), *dyyekatrāya* (two or one or three) men.

14. The particle *saha* (may be compounded) when it becomes the first member. The tree has been pulled out together with its root (*samūla*) (is an example). Those having the characteristic of reciprocity : (a battle in which the warriors fight) seizing each other's hair, (*keśākeśi*) fighting one another with nail (*nakhānakhī*).

15. (A *Bahuvrīhi* compound may be formed) to denote a direction (in between two directions) : *dakṣiṇapūrvā* (the point of direction in between the south and east). A *Dvigu* (having a number as the first member in a compound) is said to be twofold. It becomes singular (when denoting an aggregate), 'having two peaks' 'having five roots'. It is possible in many ways.

16. A *Dvandva* (copulative compound) is twofold *itaretarayoga* and *samāhāra* (the members are treated separately, and an aggregate of the things enumerated constituting a complex (idea). (An example for the first is) *Rudraviṣṇu* (*Rudra* and *Viṣṇu*). (An example for the second is) *Bherīpaṭaha*. (It is always singular.)

17-18. *Avyayībhāva* (compound consisting of two members, the first of which is, mostly, an indeclinable) is said to be of two kinds. An example for one having a noun as the first member (is) : *śākasya mātṛā* (very little vegetable) = *śākaprati*. An example for one with the first member as an indeclinable (is) : *upakumbhaṁ* (near a pot) and *uparathyam* (near a chariot). The compounds are

fourfold on account of the prominence (of one member)—that which has the second member prominent and Dvandva, where both (the members) are prominent. Avyayībhāva has the first member prominent and Bahuvrīhi (in which the importance lies) externally.

## CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND FIFTYSIX

*The rules governing the formation of taddhita  
(secondary nominal bases)*

*Skanda said :*

1-4. I shall describe the three kinds of *taddhita*; the general type (will be formed) by using the following affixes)

<i>lac (la)</i>	—	aṁsalaḥ (having muscular shoulders); vatsalaḥ (compassionate).
<i>ilac (ila)</i>	—	phenila (foamy); picchila (slippery).
<i>śe (śa)</i>	—	lomaśaḥ (hairy, a monkey).
<i>ne (na)</i>	—	pāmanah (sulphur)
<i>aṅ (a)</i>	—	prājña (wise), ārcaka (relating to a worshipper).
<i>urac (ura)</i>	—	forms dantura (having projecting teeth) from danta (tooth).
<i>ra</i>	—	madhura (sweet); suṣira (for a long time). (by adding va) Keśava (having beautiful hair) (is formed) similarly.
<i>ya</i>	—	hiraṇyaṁ (gold)
<i>va</i>	—	Mālava (name of a country)
<i>valaci (vala)</i>	—	rajasvalā (menstruous woman)
<i>ini</i>	—	dhanī (rich); karī and hastī (elephant)
<i>ṭikan (ika)</i>	—	dhanika (rich)
<i>vin</i>	—	payasvī (milky); māyāvī (magician)
<i>yuyuc (yus)</i>	—	Ūrṇāyuh (woolen)
5-8. <i>min (mī)</i>	—	vāgmī (eloquent)
<i>ālac (āla)</i>	—	(vācāla)
and		

<i>āṭac</i>	—	vācāka (eloquent)
<i>ina</i>	—	phalinaḥ (fruitful) ; barhiṇaḥ (a peacock) ; kekī (a peacock)
<i>kan</i>	—	vṛndāraka (venerable or beautiful)
<i>āluc</i>	—	śītālu = śītaṁ na saḥate (unable to endure cold) ; himālu = himaṁ na saḥate (not able to bear snow)

We would have the form *vātula* from *vāta* (by adding) *ulac*.  
*an* (is used to denote) progeny (such as) Vāsiṣṭha, Kaurava.  
so'sya vāsakaḥ—Pāñcālaḥ

tatra vāsaḥ —Māthuraḥ

vetti adhīte cāndravyākaraṇam—Cāndrakaḥ

9-12. *Khañ* (ka) priyaṅgūnām kṣetram praiyaṅgavīnakam

*iñ* (i) — Dākṣiḥ (the son of Dakṣa) ; Dāśarathiḥ  
(the son of Daśaratha).

*kac* — Nārāyana

*phañ* — Āśvāyanaḥ

*yac* — Gārgyaḥ (son of Garga) ; Vātsyakaḥ (of  
the family of Vātsya)

*ḍhak* (eya) — Vainateya (son of Vinatā, ie., Garuḍa)  
etc.

*crak* — Cāṭakerah

*ḍhak* — Gandheraka

*gha* (iya) — kṣatriya (born in the race of a ruler)

*kha* (ina) — kulīnaḥ (born of a good family)

*ṇya* (ya) — Kauravya (a descendant of Kuru)

*yat* — mūrdhanya (being in or on the head) ;  
mukhya (chief) etc.

— sugandhiḥ (good fragrance)

13. *itac* (ita) (will be used) for Tāraka group<sup>1</sup> (of words)  
(in the sense of that is obtained or possessed  
by) such as 'the sky studded with  
stars'.

*anam* (an) — kuṇḍodhnī (a cow with a full udder) ;  
puṣpadhanvan (the god of love) ; sudhan-  
van (having an excellent bow).

1. See Pa. V. 2. 36

14. *cuñcuḥ* (*cuñcu*) — vittacuñcuḥ would be used in the sense of one having wealth.

*caṇaḥ* (*caṇa*) — keśacaṇaḥ (renowned for the hair)

*rūpa* — paṭarūpa (in the form of a cloth).

15-16 *iyas* — it would be paṭīyaṇ (cleverer)

*tarap* (*tara*) — akṣatara (fairly proficient in dice);  
pacatitarām<sup>1</sup> (cooking fairly well)

*tamaḥ* (*tama*) — aṭatitamām<sup>2</sup> (wandering excellently);  
mṛdvitamā (much soft).

*kalpaḥ* (*kalpa*) — Indrakalpaḥ (equal to Indra); ardhakalpaḥ (equal to half)

*deśiya* or *deśya* — rājadeśīyaḥ (almost a king)

17. *jātiya* — Paṭujātiya (belonging to an intelligent group)

*mātrac* (*mātra*) — jānumātram (reaching as far as the knee)

*dvayasa* — ūrudvayasa (reaching  
(*dvayasa*) upto the thigh)

*dadhna* (*dadhna*) — ūrudadhna (reaching upto the thigh)

18. *tayaḥ* (*taya*) — pañcatayaḥ (fivefold)

*ṭhak* (*ika*) — dauvārikaḥ (door-keeper)

The general suffixes have been described. (I shall describe now) these secondary affixes known as indeclinables.

19-20. *tasil* (*tas*) — *yataḥ* is formed (in the sense of) from which.

*tral* is said (to form) *yatra* (where), *tatra* (there), *adhunā* (is used in the sense of) at that time, and *dān* † (is used in) *idānir* (now). *Dā* is used (to form) *sarvadā* (always) together with *sarva*. *hil* (hi) forms *tarhi* in the sense of that time and *karhi*, at which time. *Ha* (is used to form) *iha* (in the sense of) now.

21-24a. *thāl* (*thā*) — *yathā* (when);

*tham* (*tha*) — *katham* (how).

Let one gather in the eastern direction *astāt* (il) for *pūrva* (śabda).

May the leaders move in the front (*purastāt*). (The word) *sadya* is said (to be used) (in the sense of) same day. *Ut* (is used) for the previous year and *Parut* for (the year) preceding

1. See *Pa.* V. 4.11

2. See *ibid.*

that *Parāri* is also (used in the same sense). *Aiṣamo* (is used in the sense of) this year derived from the word *samas*). *Edyavau* and *Paredyavi* would (denote) the next day. *Adya* means today. *Dye* is used in combination as *Pūrvedyuḥ* and *Edyuḥ* (the previous day).

24b-27. Let one dwell in the southern direction. *Dakṣiṇāt* and *Dakṣiṇādi* (in the southern direction). May one dwell in the northern direction: *Uttarāt* and *Uttarādi* (in the northern direction). May one dwell above: *Upariṣṭāt*. *Riṣṭati* and *Ūrdhvakāt* (above) (have similar meaning). By adding suffix *āc* we have *dakṣiṇā*. By adding *āhi* we have *dakṣiṇāhi* (in the south) *vaset* (may one dwell). *Dha* in *dvidhā* denotes two ways. When *dhyamuñ* is added to *eke* it becomes *ekadhyam* (thinking in one form only), Likewise *dhamuñ* is added to *dvi* we have *dvaiddham* (to forms)...<sup>1</sup>

28-30. The particles which are secondary suffixes have been described. (I shall describe) the secondary affixes which are abstract nouns. *Paṭor bhāvaḥ* = *paṭutvaṃ* (cleverness) (using) (suffix) *tva*. *Paṭutā* is said (to be by using) *tālic*. By adding *iman* to *pr̥thu* (we have) *prathimā* (extension). *Saukhyam* (happiness) is said to be from *sukha* (by adding) *yañ*. *Steyam* (theft) (is formed) (by adding) *yat* to *stena* (a thief). The state of being a monkey is *kāpēyam*. *Sainya* (army) and *pathya* (beneficial) are said (to be formed by adding) *yak* (*ya*). *Āśvam* (relating to a horse), *kaumārakam* (relating to boyhood) and *yauvanam* (relating to youth) (are from) *āṇ* (*ā*). *Ācāryakam* relating to the preceptor) (is) from *kan*. The other secondary suffixes are said (to be formed) in the same way.

---

1. The next two words are not clear.

## CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND FIFTYSEVEN

*The formation of the primary nominal bases by adding primary affixes known as uṇādi, beginning with a suffix u*

*Kumāra said :*

1-2a. The Uṇādis (a kind of primary nominal affixes) are spoken as *pratyayas* (suffixes) added to roots. (The word) *Kāru* (denoting) an artisan (is formed by adding the suffix) *u*. (The other examples are) *jāyuh* (medicine or physician), *māyuh* (meaning) bile, *gomāyuh* (biles in the cow). These *uṇādis* are widely used in the Āyurveda (Indian system of medicine) terminology.

2b-4a. (The other examples are) *āyuh* (life), *svādu* (sweet), *hetu* (cause) etc. *Kimśāruḥ* (means) the beard of a corn. *Kyka-vāku* denotes a cock. *Guru* is the master. *Maru* is (a desert). *Śayu* is known as a big serpent. *Saru* is said to be a weapon (sword). *Svaru* (denotes) the thunderbolt. *Traṇu* (means) *sisam*<sup>1</sup>. *Phalgu* is said (to mean) worthless thing.

4b-6. (The following words) are known (to be derived by adding the corresponding suffixes) : *grdhraḥ* (vulture) (from) *kran*, *mandiram* (an abode) and *timiraṁ* (meaning) darkness (from) *kirac*, *salilaṁ* (meaning) water and *bhaṇḍila* (meaning) auspicious (from) *ilac*. *Budhaḥ* (meaning) a learned person (from) *kvasu*. (The word) *śibira* (denotes) a concealed position. *Otuḥ* (denotes) a cat (from the suffix) *tun*. (The words) *karnaḥ* (ear), *kāmi* (a lustful person), *gṛhaṁ* (house), *bhūḥ* (earth), *vāstu* (the site of a house) and *jāivātrkaḥ* (the moon) are known to be *uṇādis* because they denote (objects).

7. (The word) *anaḍvān* (a bull) is from (the root) *vaḥ* (to bear) with *ḍvan*. *Jīva* (life), *aṇava* (ocean) and *auśadha* (herb) convey genus. (The word) *vahni* (fire) is (by adding the suffix) *ni*, *hariṇaḥ* (meaning) a deer (from *inan*) and *kāmi* (one who is lustful) (denotes) a fit person.

8. *Saṅghāta* (a collection); *varūḍa* (mixed caste), *saraṇḍa* (means) an animal, *eraṇḍa* (is a kind of) tree; *sāma* (chant). *nirbhara* (full).

1. But *traṇu* denotes tin and *sisam*, lead.

9. (The word) *sphāraṁ* would mean (plenty)... (The words) *cira* (denoting) a bark garment belongs to the same category. (The word) *kātara* (means) timid. But *ugra* (means) fierce. *Javasa* (denotes) grass.

10. *Jagat* (signifies) the earth and *kṛṣānu*, the lustre of the Sun. *Varvara* (means) curled and *dhūrta* (a wicked person). *Catvaraṁ* (denotes) a junction of four roads.

11. *Civara* (is) the dress of a mendicant. *Āditya* is said to be *Mitra* (the Sun). (The word) *putra* (stands for) a son and *pitā*, for father. (The words) *ṣṛḍāku* (denotes) a tiger and a scorpion. *Garta* (denotes) a hole. *Bharata* (means) an actor. These are the other *uṇādis*.

## CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND FIFTYEIGHT

*The completed forms of the verbs after adding the conjugational signs etc.*

*Kumāra said:*

1. I shall describe the terminations (which are added) to the verbs as well as the substitutes in brief. The verbs occur in three forms such as *bhāve* (impersonal), *karmaṇi* (passive) and *kartari* (active).

2. They are known to be transitive and intransitive in the two *padas* (*Ātmanepada* and *Parasmaipada*) in the Active. In the same way the substitutes in the transitive and intransitive.

3. *Laṭ* is the designation for the present tense. *Liṅ* is said to be in the sense of the potential (mood) etc. *Loṭ* (is) for benediction and conditional etc. *Laṅ* (is the designation) for the past not relating to the present day.

4. *Luṅ* (is the name) for the past (Aorist) and *liṭ* for remote past and *luṭ* for immediate (first) future. *Liṅ* (is used) for benediction and *lṛṭ* in the remaining senses. *Lṛṅ* would denote the (second) future.

5. (*Lṛṅ*, conditional) (is used in the sentences) in which the Potential may be used, when the non-performance of action is

implied. The latter nine (are) Ātmanepada (the result of the action accruing to one's self) and the former nine (are) Parasmaipada (the result of the action accruing to another person). *Tiṣ, tas* and *anti* (are the terminations of) the *prathamapurūṣa*.<sup>1</sup>

6-7a. *Siṣ, thas* and *thā* (are the terminations of) the *madhyamaapurūṣa*<sup>2</sup> and *miṣ, vas* and *mas* (for) the *uttamaapurūṣa*<sup>3</sup>. *Ta, ātām* and *anta* (are) the *prathamapurūṣa* (terminations) in the Ātmanepada, *thās, āthām, dhvam̄* in the *madhyama* and *i, vahī, mahī* in the *uttama* (in the imperfect). *Bhū* (to be) etc. are known to be the roots.

7b-10a. The following are the important roots belonging to the different conjugations<sup>4</sup>. (The roots) *bhū* (to be), *edh* (to prosper), *pac* (to cook), *nand* (to rejoice), *dhvam̄s* (to perish), *śams* (to praise) (belong to the first conjugation). *Pad* (to go) (fourth), *ad* (to eat) (second), *śiñ* (to lie down, second), *kriḍ* (to buy) (first), *juhōti* (*hū* to offer in a sacrifice) (third), *jahāti* (*hā* to abandon, third), *dadhāti* (*dhā* to bear, third), *divyati* (*di* to play or to shine, fourth), *svapiti* (*svap* to sleep, second), *nah* (to tie, fourth), *sunōti* (*su*, to press out juice, fifth), *vas* (to dwell), *tud* (to strike, wound, sixth), *mṛśati* (*mṛś* to touch, sixth), *muñcati* (*muñc* to lose, sixth), *rudh* (to hold up, seventh), *bhuj* (to enjoy, seventh), *tyaj* (to abandon, first), and *tan* (to spread, eighth). (The roots) *man* (to think), *karōti* (*kṛ*, to do), *kriḍati* (*kriḍ*, to play), *vṛñ* (to choose), *grah* (to seize), *cor* (*cur*, to steal), *pā* (to drink and protect), *nī* (to carry) and *arc* (to worship) are the important in the *śap*<sup>5</sup> and other modifications.

10b-13a. In (the root) *bhū* (by adding *tiñ*, we would have *saḥ bhavati* (he becomes), *tau bhavataḥ* (they two become) and *te bhavanti* (they all become). (Similarly we have) you become, you two become and you all become and I become, we two become and we all become. (Similarly in the Ātmanepada), the

1. corresponding to the third person.
2. corresponding to the second person.
3. corresponding to the first person.
4. The roots are divided into ten conjugations known as *bhvādi*, *adādi*, *juhōtyādi*, *divādi*, *svādi*, *tudādi*, *rudhādi*, *tanādi*, *kryādi* and *curādi*.
5. *śap* is the designation of the termination added to the first conjugation.

family prospers, two prosper and (many) prosper. You grow with intellect, (you two) prosper and you all prosper. We two grow with intellect. We all prosper with devotion to (lord) Hari. (He) cooks etc. are as before.

13b-15. One becomes and one enjoys (are examples) for the impersonal forms. The passive (is formed by adding) *yak*. The desiderative form (of root *bhū* is) *bubhūṣati*. Thus in the causal (one) meditates on the lord. In the frequentative (we have the form) *bobhūyate* (Ātmanepada) or *bobhoti* when *yoñ* is dropped (is the form) in the Parasmaipada frequentative. *Putriyati* (treats like a son) on account of desire for children and thus *paṭapaṭāyate* (utters the sound *paṭpaṭ*), *ghaṭayati* (brings about) (are examples) of the desiderative. He causes the figure to be adorned (*bubhūṣayati*) (is the form) in the causal.

16. Bhavet (may become), bhavetāṁ, bhaveyuḥ, bhaveḥ bhavetaṁ, bhaveta, bhaveyaṁ, bhaveva, bhavema are (the forms in the three persons in the singular, dual and plural) in the Potential (mood) (in the Parasmaipada).

17. Edheta, edheyātāṁ, edheran (grow or prosper) with the mind and prosperity, edhetāḥ, edheyāthāṁ, edhedhvaṁ, edheya, edhevahi, edhemahi (are the forms of the Potential moon in the Ātmanepada).

18-19a. Let it be. Bhavatāṁ, bhavantu, bhavatād or bhava, bhavataṁ, bhavata, bhavāni, bhavāva, bhavāma (are the forms) in the Imperative mood. Edhatāṁ (may one prosper), edhetāṁ, edhantāṁ (in the third person), edhai (in the first person singular) (are the forms of Ātmanepada Imperative). Pacāvahai, pacāmahai (are the forms of Ātmanepada Imperative dual and plural from *pac* to cook).

19b-20. Abhyanandat (felicitated), apacatāṁ (cooked), apacan (they cooked), apacaḥ (you cooked), abhavataṁ (you two became), abhavata (you all became), apacaṁ (I cooked), apacāva (we two cooked), apacāma (we all cooked) (are the examples for the past (imperfect) in the Parasmaipada). Aidhata, aidhetāṁ (third person singular and dual), aidhadhvaṁ (second person plural), aidhe, aidhāmahi (first person singular and plural) are said to be (the forms in the past tense, Ātmanepada).

21. Abhūt, abhūtām, abhūvan, abhūḥ and abhūvaṁ (are the forms of the root *bhū* to be or become) in the Aorist. Aidhiṣṭa, Aidhiṣātām (Men prospered), aidhiṣṭhāḥ, aidhiṣī (are) thus (the forms of the Aorist Ātmanepada).

22. (The root *bhū* becomes) babhūva, babhūvatuḥ, babhūvuḥ, babhūvitha, babhūvathuḥ, babhūva, (babhūva), babhūviva and babhūvima (are the forms) in the Perfect tense (in the Parasmaipada).

23. Pece, pecāte, pecire (cooked) and edhāñcakṛṣe tvaṁ (you prospered), edhāñcakrāthe, pecidhve, pece, pecimahe (are the forms in the Perfect in the Ātmanepada and Periphrastic perfect).

24-25. In the first future (the root *bhū* has the forms) bhavitā, bhavitārau, bhavitāraḥ (will become) Hara and others. Bhavitāsi, bhavitāsthaḥ; bhavitāasmaḥ vayam (we) (are the other forms). Paktā, paktārau, paktāraḥ (are the forms of the root *pac* in the first future third person). You will cook (paktāse) good food. Paktādihve, I will cook (paktāhe), paktāasmahe (we will cook) the porridge for lord Hari (are examples for some of the forms of the root *pac* in the first future Ātmanepada).

26-30. In the benedictive: May there be (bhūyāt) happiness, Hari and Saṅkara bhūyāstām (be benevolent), bhūyāsuḥ they, you bhūyāḥ, you two gods bhūyāstaṁ, you all bhūyāsta, ahaṁ bhūyāsaṁ (May I be), bhūyāasma (we all may be) always (happy). Yakṣiṣṭa, edhiṣiyāstām, yakṣīraṁ, edhiṣīya, yakṣivahi, edhiṣīmahi (are some of the forms of the roots *yaj*, to sacrifice and *edh* to prosper in the Ātmanepada) in the Benedictive. Ayakṣyata, ayakṣeyātām, ayakṣyanta, ayakṣye, ayakṣyethām you two, ayakṣyadhvaṁ, aidhiṣyāvahi, aidhiṣyāmahi we all (are the forms) in the Conditional mood in the Parasmaipada, Ātmanepada. *Bhaviṣyati* would be (the form) in the second future. Edhiṣyāmahe is similar. In the same way vibhāvayiṣyanti, bobhaviṣyati (frequentative second future) (will become again and again). Ghaṭayet, paṭayet, putriyati, kāmyati (are other forms of nominal verbs and frequentatives).

## CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND FIFTYNINE

*The finished forms after adding the kṛt affixes (primary affixes added to verbs)*

*Kumāra said:*

1-3. The *kṛts* are to be known in all the three forms (such as) the impersonal, passive and active. *Ac*, *lyuṭ* (to form neuter abstract nouns by adding *na*), *ktin* (*ti*) (to form feminine abstract nouns), *ghañ* (added to roots ending in consonants), and *yuc* in the impersonal (are the affixes). (Their examples are) in the *ac*: *vinaya* (modesty), *utkaraḥ* (heap, multitude), *prakaraḥ* (collection, heap), *devaḥ* (lord), *bhadraḥ* (good), *śrikaraḥ* (conferer of prosperity). The form in *lyuṭ* (is) *śobhanaṁ* (auspicious), in *ktin* (*ti*) (the forms are) *vṛddhi* (increase), *stuti* (praise) and *mati* (intellect). (The form) in *ghañ* is *bhāva* (feeling or state), in *yuñ*—*kāraṇā* (doing action), *bhāvanā* (bringing into existence) etc. and in the syllable *a*—(represented) by *cikitsā* (remedy).

4. Then (the affixes) *tavya* and *anīya* (forming the words) *kartavyaṁ*, *karaṇīyakaṁ* (fit to be done), (the affix) *yat* (to form) *deyaṁ* (ought to be given) and *dhyeyaṁ* (ought to be meditated), in *nyat* (to form) *kāryaṁ* (a work or task) and *kṛtyakāḥ* (work to be done).

5. *Kta* and other (affixes) are to be known in the active, and some in the impersonal and passive. (A person) has gone to the village. The village has been reached. The preceptor has been embraced by you.

6. *Śatṛñ* (present participle in the Parasmaipada) and *śānac* (present participle in the Ātmanepada) are *bhavan* (becoming) and *edhamāna* (being prosperous). *Nvuh* and *tṛc* (are) added to all the roots (to form agents such as) (*bhāvakaḥ* and *bhavitā* (feeling or manifestation and that which is about to become).

7. (An example) for ending in *kvip* (is) *Svayambhūḥ* (self-originated). *Kvas* (*vas*) and *Kānac* (*āna*) (are the affixes) (of the participles) of the perfect (Parasmaipada and Ātmanepada). *Babhūvivat* and *peçivat* (in the Parasmaipada) and *peçānaḥ* and *śraddadhānakaḥ* (in the Ātmanepada) (are the examples).

8. *Kumbhakāra* (a potter) etc. would be (formed by adding the affix) *an*. The *uṇādis* are known to be in the past. *Vāyuḥ* (wind), *pāyuh* (the anus) and *kāru* (artisan) would be (formed from them). These are said to be widely used in the Vedas.

## CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND SIXTY

*The synonyms of group of words denoting the celestial region  
and the nether world\**

*Fire-god said:*

1. I shall describe to you (the synonyms) of heaven etc. of which lord Hari is the indication. *Svaḥ*, *svargaḥ*, *nākaḥ*, *tridivaḥ*, *dyauḥ*, *triviṣṭapa* are synonyms (denoting heaven).

2-3a. *Devas*, *Vṛndārakas* and *Lekhas* (are the names for the celestials). *Rudra* and others (are) the chief of group of gods. *Vidyādharas*, *Apsaras*, *Yakṣas*, *Rakṣas*, *Gandharvas*, *Kinnaras*, *Piśācas*, *Guhyakas*, *Siddhas* and *Bhūtas* had celestial origin.

3b. The enemies of the *Devas*, *Asuras* and *Daityas* (born of *Diti*) (are the names of the demons). *Sugataḥ* and *Tathāgataḥ* (denote Buddha).<sup>1</sup>

4. *Brahmā*, *Ātmabhūḥ* (self-born), *Surajyeṣṭha* (chief of the *Devas*) (are the synonyms of *Brahmā*). *Viṣṇu*, *Nārāyaṇa* and *Hari* (are the names of *Viṣṇu*). *Revatiśa* (husband of *Revati*), *Halirāma* (*Rāma* with with plough) (are the words denoting *Balarāma*) (elder brother of *Kṛṣṇa*). *Kāma*, *Pañcaśara* (having five shafts) and *Smara* (are the names of God of love).

5. *Lakṣmī*, *Padmālayā* (having the lotus as abode), and *Padmā* (are the names of Goddess *Lakṣmī*). *Sarva* (all things), *Sarveśvara* (lord of all beings), and *Śiva* (auspicious) (are the

---

\*The Purāna summarises the *Amarakośa* in eight chapters. This chapter is an abridgement of the *Kāṇḍa* I, *Svargavarga* 6-79 verses and *Pātālavarga* 239-347 verses.

1. The founder of Buddhism.

names of Śiva). Kaparda is his matted hair. Pināka is the bow (of lord Śiva) also known as Ajagava.

6. His attendants are (known as) Pramathas. Mrḍānī (compassionate), Caṇḍikā (fierce) and Ambikā (mother) (are the names of Goddess Pārvatī). Dvaimātura<sup>1</sup> (having two mothers) and Gajāśya (having an elephant face) (are the names of lord Gaṇeśa). Senānī (leader of an army), Agnibhū (fire-born) and Guha (reared in a secret place) (are the names of Skanda).

7. Ākhaṇḍala (breaker), Sunāsīra (favourable for the growth of grain), Sūtrāman (guarding well) and Divaspati (lord of the heaven) (are the names of Indra). Pulomajā (daughter of Puloman, a demon), Śacī (powerful) and Indrāṇī are the names of wife (of Indra).

8. His (Indra's) mansion (is known as) Vaijayanta. Jayanta (victorious) (is the name of) Pākaśāsani (son of Pākaśāsana, Indra). Airāvata, Abhramātaṅga (elephantine cloud), Airāvaṇa and Abhramuvallabha (mate of the female elephant of the east) (are the names of the elephant of Indra).

9. Hlādinī (that which delights), Vajra, that it not a feminine (word), Kuliśa, Bhidura (neuter words) and Pavi (masculine) (are the words denoting Indra's club). Indra's chariot is called) Vyomayāna and Vimāna (the vehicle of the sky). (The latter word is) not feminine. Pīyūṣa, Amṛta and Sudhā (denote ambrosia).

10. Sudharmā is the council of gods. Svargaṅgā and Surādīrghikā (denote the celestial Ganges). The celestial women such as Urvaśī and others (are denoted by the words) Svarveśyā and Apsarasaḥ. (Here the latter word is always) feminine and plural.

11-12. Hāhā and Hūhū (are the names of) Gandharvas (semi-divine beings). Agni, Vahni, Dhanañjaya (conqueror of wealth), Jātavedas (knower of all things), Kṛṣṇavartman (whose way is black), Āśrayāśa (consuming everything with which it comes into contact), Pāvaka (purifier), Hiraṇyaretas (having golden seed), Saptārcis (having seven rays), Śukra (white). Āśuśukṣaṇi (shining forth), Śuci (pure) and Appittam (bile of

1. having a natural mother and a step-mother.

water) (are the words denoting fire). Aurva, Vāḍava and Vaḍa-vānala (denote the submarine fire).

13-14. Among the words denoting the flames of fire, Jvāla and Kīla (are masculine and feminine), Arcis (feminine and neuter) and Heti and Śikhā (are) feminine. Sphuliṅga and Agnikāṇa (denote a spark of fire). (These words are used) in all the three (genders). Dharmarāja (lord of virtue), Paretarāṭ (master of the dead), Kāla (the Time), Antaka (Destroyer), Daṇḍadhara (Wielder of a staff) and Srāddhadeva (lord of the ancestral rite) (are the synonymns of God of Death). Rākṣasa, Kauṇapa (coming from a corpse), Asrapa (blood drinker), Kravyāda (flesh eater), Yātudhāna and Nairṛti (are the words denoting a demon).

15. Pracetas, Varuṇa and Pāśī (having a noose) (denote Varuṇa, the upholder of moral laws). Śvasana (who breathes), Sparśana (who touches), Anila, Sadāgati (always moving), Mātariśvan, Prāṇa (life breath), Marut and Samīraṇa (denote wind).

16. *Java*, *raṁha* and *tara* (denote speed). *Laghu*, *kṣīpam*, *aram*, *drutam*, *satvaram*, *capalam*, *tūrṇam*, *avilambitam* and *āśu* (denote haste).

17-18. *Satatam*, *anāratam*, *aśrāntam*, *santatam*, *aviratam*, *aniśam*, *nityam*, *anavaratam* and *ajasram* (mean eternally). *Atiśaya*, *bhara*, *ativelam*, *bhṛśam*, *atyartham*, *atimātram*, *udgāḍham*, *nirbharam*, *tivram*, *ekāntam*, *nitāntam*, *gāḍham*, *bāḍham*, and *dṛḍham* (denote excess).

19. Guhyakeśa, Yakṣarāja (chief of Yakṣas), Rājarāja and Dhanādhipa (lord of riches) (denote Kubera). Kinnara, Kimpuruṣa, Turaṅgavadana (horse-faced) and Mayu (denote the Kinnaras, a class of semidivine beings).

20. *Nidhi* and *śevadhi* (mean treasure). (Both the words are) masculine. *Vyoma*, *abhram*, *puṣkaram*, *ambaram*, *dyo*, *divam*, *antarikṣam* and *kham* (denote the sky).

21-22a. *Kāṣṭhā*, *āsā* and *kakubha* (denote) the direction. *Abhyantara* and *antarāla* mean the interspace (between the heaven and earth). *Cakravāla* and *maṇḍala* (mean a range or orb of things). *Taḍitvān* (having lightning), *vārīda* (giver of water), *megha*, *stanayitnu* (that which makes sound) and *balāhaka* (stand for cloud). *Kādambini* and *meghamālā* (denote a row of clouds). *Stanita* and *garjita* (mean the rumbling of thunder clouds).

22b-23. *Śampā*, *Śatahradā*, *hrādīni*, *airāvati*, *kṣaṇaprabhā*, *taḍit*, *saudāmini*, *vidyut*, *cañcalā* and *caṣalā* (denote lightning).

23b-24. *Sphūrjāthuḥ* and *vajranirghoṣa* (mean the peel of thunder). The cessation of rain (is denoted by the word) *avagraha*. *Dhārāsampāta* and *āsāra* (denote incessant rain). *Śīkara* (is known to be) drops of water (carried by wind). *Varṣopala* and *karakāḥ* (are the first rain drops falling like a stone). A cloudy day (is known as) *durdinam* (a bad day).

25. *Antardhā*, *vyavadhā* (feminine), *antardhi* (masculine), *apavāraṇam*, *apīdhānam*, *tirodhānam*, *pidhānam*, and *ācchādanam* (mean concealing or covering).

26-27. (The words) *Abja*, *Jaivatṛka*, *Soma*, *Glauh*, *Mṛgāṅka*, *Kalānidhi*, *Vidhu* and *Kumudabandhu* (denote the Moon). *Bimba* and *maṇḍala* (are the words denoting the orb of the moon, the former is) feminine (and the latter is used in) all (the genders). A sixteenth digit (of the moon) is *kalā*. *Bhitta*, *śakala* and *khaṇḍaka* (denote a part). *Candrikā*, *kaumudī* and *jyotsnā* (denote the lustre of the moon). *Prasāda* and *prasannatā* (denote clear lustre).

28-29a. *Lakṣaṇam*, *lakṣmakam* and *cihnam* (stand for a mark). *Śobhā*, *kānti*, *dyuti* and *chavi* (denote lustre). *Suśamā* (denotes) exquisite lustre. *Tuṣāra*, *tuhīnam*, *himam*, *avaśyāya*, *nīhāra*, *prāleyam*, *śīśira* and *himam* (denote snow).

29b. *Nakṣatram*, *ṛkṣam*, *bham*, *tārā*, *tārakā* and *uḍu* (denote an asterism). There the last word may also be feminine.

30. *Guru*, *Jīva* and *Āṅgīrasa* (are the words standing for Jupiter). *Uśanaś*, *Bhārgava* and *Kavi* (denote Venus). *Vidhūntuda* (afflicting Moon) and *Tama* (denote) Rāhu. The rise of the constellations is known to be *lagna*.

31. Sages such as Marīci, Atri and others<sup>1</sup> are the seven sages. (They are known collectively as) *Citraśikhaṇḍins*. *Hari-daśva*, *Bradhna*, *Pūṣā*, *Dyūmaṇi*, *Mihira* and *Ravi* (denote the Sun).

32-34a. (The halo around the Sun is known as) *pariveśa*, *paridhi*, *uḥasūryakam* and *maṇḍalam*. (The ray of the Sun is denoted by the words) *kiraṇa*, *uśra*, *mayūkha*, *aṁśu*, *gabhastī*, *ghṛmī*, *dhr̥ṣṇī*<sup>2</sup>,

1. Āṅgīras, Pulastya, Pulaha, Kratu and Vasiṣṭha are the remaining five.

2. the Amara 210 reads *pr̥ṣṇī*.

*bhānu*, *kara*, *marici*, and *didhiti* where *marici* is feminine and masculine (while) *didhiti* is feminine. (The lustre is denoted by the words) *prabhā*, *ruk*, *ruci*, *twiṣ*, *bhā*, *bhāḥ*, *chavi*, *dyuti*, *dīpti*, *roci* and *soci*, where the last two are neuter, (while the other words are feminine). (The lustre of the Sun is denoted by the words) *prakāśa*, *dyota* and *ātaṣa*.

34b-38a. (The words) *koṣṇam*, *kavoṣṇam*, *mandoṣṇam* and *kaduṣṇam* (denote little heat). They take neuter when referring to a quality and take all genders as attributes. Similarly (the words) *tigmam*, *tikṣṇam* and *kharam* (denoting excessive heat) take neuter or all the genders. (The words) *diṣṭa*, *anehā* and *kālaka* (denote time). (The words) *ghasra*, *dinam* and *ahas* (denote day). *Sāyam*, *sandhyā* and *pitṛprasūh* (denote the evening). *Pratyūṣas*, *aharmukham*, *kalyam*, *uśas* and *pratyūṣas* (denote dawn). The three twilights (are known as) *prāhṇa* (morning), *aḥarāhṇa* (evening) are *madhyāhna* (midday). Night is denoted by the words) *śarvari*, *yāmi* and *tamī*. (The night endowed with darkness is) *tamisrā* and (that with moonlight is) *jyotsnī*. The night together with the preceding and succeeding days (is known as) *pakṣiṇī*. The two (words) *ardharātri* and *niśītha* (denote) midnight. *Pradoṣa* and *rajanimukham* (is the period preceding the night).

38b-40. The intervening period between the pratipat (first lunar day) and the fifteenth (lunar day) is *parvan*. There are two fifteenth (days) at the end of each one of the fortnights. *Paurṇamāsi* and *pūrṇimā* (denote the last days of the bright lunar fortnight). (If that full moon) is a digit less (it is known as) *anumati*. If it is full, (it is) *rākā*. *Amāvāsyā*, is being near; *darśa* and *sūryendu-saṅgama* (union of Sun and Moon) (denote the last days of the dark lunar fortnight). If the moon is perceived (on the new moon day), (it is) *sinivāli* and if the same (is seen) a digit less, (it is) *kuhū*.

41-42a. *Saṁvarta*, *pralaya*, *kalpa*, *kṣaya* and *kalpānta* (denote deluge). (The words) *kaluṣam*, *vṛjinam*, *enaḥ*, *agham*, *aṁhaḥ*, *duritam* and *duṣkṛtam* (denote sin). (The words) *dharmam*, *puṇyam*, *śreyas*, *sukṛtam* and *vṛṣa* (denote good deeds). The word *dharmam* (is used) in the masculine and neuter.

42b-43a. (The words) *mut*, *pṛiti*, *pramada*, *harṣa*, *pramoda*, *āmoda*, *sammada*, *ānandathuḥ*, *ānanda*, *śarma*, *sātam* and *sukham* (denote rejoice).

43b-44a. (The words) *svaḥśreyasam*, *śivam*, *bhadram*, *kalyāṇam*, *maṅgalam*, *śubham*, *bhāvukam*, *bhavikam*, *bhavyam*, *kuśalam* and *kṣemam* (denote only welfare). (There) *kṣemam* is used in masculine and neuter.

44b. *Daivam*, *diṣṭam*, *bhāgadheyam*, *bhāgyam*, *niyati* and *vidhi* relate to (fruits of) previous birth. (The latter two) are feminine.

45a. *Kṣetrajñā*, *ātman* and *puṛuṣa* relate to the soul in the body. *Pradhānam* and *prakṛti* (relate to the state in which the three qualities are in the same proportion). (The latter is used) in the feminine.

45b-46a. *Hetu*, *kāraṇam* and *bijam* (denote) cause. But *nidāna* is the primary cause. *Cittam*, *cetas*, *hṛdayam*, *svāntam*, *hṛt*, *mānasam* and *manas* (denote mind).

46b-47a. *Buddhi*, *manīṣā*, *dhiṣaṇā*, *dhiḥ*, *prajñā*, *śemuṣi*, *matī*, *prekṣā*, *uḥpalabdhi*, *cit*, *saṃvit*, *pratīpat*, *jñāpti* and *cetanā* (denote intellect).

47b-48. The intellect (*dhi*) which possesses retentive power (is known as) *medhā*. *Saṅkalpa* (resolve) is an activity of mind. *Carcā* (discussion), *Saṅkhyā* (deliberation) and *vicāraṇā* (inquiry) (relate to examination of an object by means of knowledge). *Vicikitsā* and *saṃśaya* (relate to doubtful knowledge). *Adhyāhāra* (inference), *tarka* (logical reasoning) and *ūha* (conjecture) (relate to logic), *Nirṇaya* and *niścaya* mean conclusive knowledge.

49. (The words) *mithyādrṣṭi* and *nāstikatā* (are used to denote knowledge arising from the argument that the other world does not exist). *Bhrānti*, *mithyāmatī* and *bhrama* (mean false (knowledge)). *Aṅgikāra*, *abhyuḥpagama*, *pratiśraya* and *saṃāśraya* (denote acceptance).

50-51a. Knowledge relating to liberation from mundane existence (is) *jñānam*. (When it is used with reference to) architecture and scientific literature, (it is) *viññānam*. *Mukti*, *kaivalyam*, *nirvāṇam*, *śreyas*, *niḥśreyasam*, *amṛtam*, *mokṣa* and *aḥpavarga* (denote liberation from mundane existence). (The words) *ajñānam*, *avidyā* and *aḥammati* (stand for ignorance). (Among these, the last two words are used) in the feminine.

51b-52a. (The word) *parimala* (is used to denote) fragrance arising from pounding or rubbing which attracts men. That which attracts very much (is known as) *āmoda*. (The words)

*surabhi* and *ghrāṇatarpaṇa* (denote an object possessing good fragrance).

52b-53. (The words) *sukla*, *śubhra*, *śuci*, *śveta*, *viśada*, *śyeta*, *pāṇḍara*, *avadāta*, *sita*, *gaura*, *valakṣa*, *dhavala*, *arjuna*, *hariṇa*, *pāṇḍura* and *pāṇḍu* (denote white). That which is little white (is denoted by the word) *dhūsara*.

54. (The words) *nila*, *asita*, *śyāma*, *kāla*, *syāmala* and *mecaka* (denote) black. (The words) *pīta*, *gaura* and *haridrābha* (denote yellow). (The words) *pālāśa*, *harita* and *harit* (mean) the green colour.

55. (The words) *rohita*, *lohita* and *rakta* (denote red colour). (The word) *śoṇa* (denotes) the colour resembling red lotus. Little redness (is denoted by the word) *aruṇa*. (The word) *pāṭala* (stands for) red mixed with white.

56-57a. *Śyāva* and *kapīśa* (denote whitish red). *Dhūmra* and *dhūmala* (denote) red and black mixed. *Kaḍāra*, *kapīla*, *piṅga*, *piśaṅga*, *kadru* and *piṅgala* (denote reddish brown). *Citram*, *kirmīra*, *kalmāṣa*, *saḅala*, *eta* and *karbura* (denote variegated colours).

57b. (The words) *vyāhāra*, *ukti* and *lapitam* (denote speech). *Apabhraṁśa* (means) a corrupted word.

58. A collection of *tiñ* (verb) and *subanta* (noun) is a sentence. Or it may be an activity together with the case relation between a noun and a verb. *Itihāsa* is that which has happened in the past. *Purāṇa* has five characteristics.<sup>1</sup>

59. *Ākhyāyikā* is a narrative of a past event. *Prabandha* is an imaginary story. *Samāhāra* and *saṅgraha* (denote a collection of stories). *Pravahlikā* and *prahelikā* (are involving conjecture).

60. *Samasyā* is a puzzle that has to be completed. *Smṛti* is a collection of texts (composed for propagating) religious and moral duties. *Ākhyā*, *āhvā* and *abhidhāna* (denote name). *Vārtā* and *vṛttānta* are said (to denote) narration of worldly course of events.

61. (The words) *hūti*, *ākāraṇā* and *āhvānam* (denote calling). *Upānyāsa* and *vāṇmukha* (mean beginning of a speech). *Vivāda* and *vyavahāra* (are used in the sense of disputes relating debts,

1. These are: creation, secondary creation, royal genealogies, Manu periods and genealogy of gods and sages.

gifts etc.). (The words) *prativākya* and *uttaram* (are used in the sense of reply).

62. *Upodghāta* and *udāhāra* (are used to denote the thought relating to accomplishment of a contextual object). *Mithyā-bhīṣaṃsanam* and *abhiśāpa* (mean insult or abuse). (The words) *yaśas* and *kīrti* (denote fame). (The words) *praśna*, *ṛcchā* and *anuyogaka* (mean a query).

63. (The word) *āmreḍitam* (means) repetition two or three (times). (The words) *kutsā*, *nindā* and *garhaṇam* (denote censure). (The words) *ābhāṣaṇam* and *ālāpa* would (mean conversation preceded by mutual call). *Pralāpa* is meaningless utterance.

64. *Anulāpa* and *muhurbhāṣa* (mean repeated conversation). *Vilāpa* and *paridevana* denote speech preceded by weeping. *Vipralāpa* and *virodhokti* (denote mutually contradictory utterances). *Samlāpa* is conversation between one another.

65. *Suṣpralāpa* and *suvacanam* (mean good utterance). *Apalāpa* and *nīhnava* (mean veiled statement). *Ruṣati*<sup>1</sup> means inauspicious utterance. *Saṅgātam* and *hṛdayaṅgamam* (would denote well-constructed sentence).

66. That which is exceedingly sweet is *sāntvam*. *Abaddham* and *anarthakam* would (mean absurd). *Niṣthuram*<sup>2</sup> and *paraṣam* (mean harsh utterance). *Aślīlam* and *grāmyam* (mean unrefined utterance). The statement which is pleasing and true (is) *sūnṛtam*.

67-69. *Satyam*, *tathyam*, *ṛtam* and *samyak* (would mean truth). (The words) *nāda*, *nīsvāna*, *nīsvāna*, *ārava*, *ārāva*, *saṃrāva* and *virāva* (denote ordinary sound). *Marmara* (denotes) the sound made by cloth and leaves. (The sound made) by the ornaments (is) *śiṅḡitam*. *Nikvaṇa* and *kvāṇa* (denote the sound) of a lute. The sound made by birds (is) *vāsitam*. *Kolāhala* and *kalakala* (mean the clear sound made by many). The two (words) *gitam* and *gānam* mean the same (namely, a song). *Pratiśrut* and *pratidhvāna* (mean echo), where the former is feminine. (The sounds such as) *niṣāda* (and the like) arise from stringed instruments and throats (of singers).

1. The printed text wrongly reads *uṣati*.

2. The Purāṇic text mixes this term and the next. This has been corrected on the basis of *Amara*.

70-71. A subtle (sound) is *kākali*. That which is sweet and not explicit is *kala*. *Mandara* is a lofty sound. *Tāra* is a very loud sound. Where there is a resonance and well blending of the (last) three sounds it is said to be *ekatāla*. *Viṇā*, *vallaki* and *vipaṅci* (denote lute). That which is known to have seven strings is *parivādinī*.

72. *Viṇā* and other instruments are spread out. *Muraja* and the like are bound. *Varṁśa* (flute) and others have holes. An instrument made of bell-metal and the like is *ghanam*.

73. Thus there are four kinds of musical instruments having the appellation *vādītram* and *ātodyam*. *Mṛdaṅga* and *Muraja* (are synonyms). *Aṅkyāḥ*, *āliṅgyaḥ* and *ūrdhvaka* are different kinds of *Mṛdaṅgas*.

74-75a. The drum that is sounded (at first) for the sake of fame (is known as) *Dhakkā*. *Bherī* and *Dundubhi* (are synonyms), the former is feminine and the latter masculine.<sup>1</sup> *Ānaka* and *Paṭaha* (are synonyms). *Jharjhari*, *Ḍiṅḍima*, *Mardala* and *Paṇava* (are different kinds of percussion instruments).<sup>2</sup> *Tāla* is the measure of time relating to the performance.

75b. *Laya* is the equal proportion of the performance and time (relating to music, dance etc.) *Tāṇḍavam*, *nāṭyam*, *lāsyam* and *nartanam* (are synonyms).

76. *Nṛtyam* (dance), *gītam* (singing) and *vādyam* (instrumental), the three (are known collectively as) *tauryatrikam*. The king is known as *Bhaṭṭāraka* and *Deva*. (The queen) who had been anointed is *Devi*.

77-81a. *Śṛṅgāra* (erotic), *vīra* (heroic), *karuṇa* (pathos), *adbhuta* (wonder), *hāsyā* (mirth), *bhayānaka* (frightening), *bibhatsa* (disgust) and *raudra* (wrath) are the sentiments. The erotic (is also denoted by the words) *śuci* and *ujjala*. The heroic sentiment (is also known as) *utsāhavaradhana*. *Kāruṇyam*, *karuṇā*, *ghṛṇā*, *kṛpā*, *dayā*, *anukampā* and *anukrośa* (denote the sentiment of pathos). *Hasa*, *hāsa* and *hāsyam* (mean the same). *Bibhatsa* (is also known as) *vikṛta*. These two are masculine (when denoting the sentiment). *Vismaya*, *adbhutam*, *āścaryam* and *cītram* (denote wonder). *Bhairavam*, *dāruṇam*, *bhīṣaṇam*, *bhīṣmam*, *ghoram*, *bhīmam*, *bhayānakam*,

1. The textual reading is wrong.

2. The reading *tulye* in the text is not correct; *anye* would be better.

*bhayaṅkaram* and *pratibhayam* (denote frightening). *Raudra* is *ugra* (terrible). (These fourteen beginning with *adbhuta* are masculine relating to a sentiment.) (Otherwise they take) the three (genders). *Dara*, *trāsa*, *bhitiḥ*, *bhiḥ*, *sādhvasam* and *bhayam* (mean fear).

81b. The change relating to mind is *bhāva*. *Anubhāva* is the expression of the mental change.

82. (The words) *garva*, *abhimāna* and *ahamkāra* (denote pride). *Māna* is elevated thinking. *Anādara*, *paribhava*, *paribhāva* and *tiraskriyā* (mean disrespect).

83. (The words) *vriḍā*, *lajjā*, *trapā* and *hri* (would mean shyness). The desire for wealth (is) *abhidhyānam*<sup>1</sup>. (The words) *kautūhalam*, *kautukam*, *kutukam* and *kutūhalam* (denote curiosity).

84. (The words) *vilāsa*, *bibboka*, *vibhrama*, *lalitam*, *helā* and *lilā* denoting the behaviour of women are known as *hāva* produced from erotic state.

85. (The words) *drava*, *keli*, *parihāsa*, *kriḍā* and *lilā* (denote only erotic sport). *Kūrdanam* (means child's play). A burst of laughter with a motive (is) *ācchuritakam*. The same, if little, (is known as) *smītam*.

86. *Adhobhuvanam* and *pātālam* (denote the nether world). (The words) *chidram*, *śvabhram*, *vaṇṇa* and *śuṣi* (denote a hole in general). *Garta* and *avaṣṭa* (denote) a hole or pit in the earth. (The words) *tamisram*, *timīram* and *tama* (denote darkness).

87. (The words) *sarpa*, *prḍākuḥ*, *bhujaga*, *dantaśūka* and *bileṣaya* (denote a serpent). (The words) *viṣam*, *kṣveḍa* and *garalam* (mean poison). (The words) *niraya* and *durgati* (mean hell). The latter is feminine.

88. (The words) *payah*, *kilālam*, *amṛtam*, *udakam*, *bhuvanam* and *vanam* (are used in the sense of water). *Bhaṅga*, *taraṅga* and *ūrmi* denote waves. *Kallola* and *ullola* (denote mighty waves).

89. (The words) *prṣanti*, *bindavaḥ* and *prṣataḥ* (stand for drops of water). (The words) *kūlam*, *rodhas* and *tira(kam)* (denote banks). That which rises from water is *puḷinam* (sand). (The words) *jambāla*, *paṅka* and *kardama* (mean mire).

90-91. The overflow of floods is (denoted by the words)

1. Amara 409 reads 'abhidhyā' meaning desire to covet another's property.

*jalocchvāsāḥ* and *parivāhāḥ*. (The words) *kūpakāḥ* and *vidārakāḥ* (are pits made in the dry bed of rivers). *Ātara* and *tarāṇyam* (are used in the sense of ferry charges). The wooden water-carrier is *droṇi*. *Kaluṣa* and *āvila* are (used to mean) impure and *accha*, pure. (The word) *gabhirakam* (denotes deep). *Agādham* (means very deep). (The words) *dāsa* and *kaivarta* (denote a fisherman). *Jambūkas* (bivalve shells) are oysters in the water.

92. *Saugandhika* and *kalhāra* (denote white lotus blossoming in the evening). *Indivara* is a blue lotus. *Uṭpala* and *kuvalaya* denote blue lotus. *Kumuda* and *kairava* (are used to denote) white (lotus).

93. The root of these lotuses (is) *śālūka*. (The words) *padmam* and *tāmarasam* (denote a lotus). *Nilotpalam* and *kuvalayam* (denote a lily). The red lotus is known as *kokanadam*.

94-95. *Karahāṭa* and *śiphākandam* (denote the root of a lotus). *Kiñjalka* and *kesara* mean the filament, not in feminine.<sup>1</sup> (The words) *khani* and *ākara* (denote the place from where the gems are produced). The former is feminine. *Pāda* and *pratyan-taparvata* (denote) smaller hills. That which is still nearer to the hill, (is said to be) *uṣṭyakā*. The earth above the hill (is known as) *adhityakā*. The groups of words belonging to the heaven and hell have been described. Listen to me ! I shall describe words having different meaning.

## CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND SIXTYONE\*

### *The indeclinables*

*Fire-god said :*

1. (The indeclinable) *āñ* is used in the (following) in the sense of a little, pervading, limit and in combination with verbs. (The particle) *ā* known as *praṅghya* is used in sentences to denote remembrance. (The same with a *visarga*) (denotes) anger and affliction.

1. After summarising the first *Kāṇḍa* of *Amara*, the *Purāṇa* jumps to the middle of the second *Kāṇḍa*.

\*The *Purāṇa* summarises in this chapter, from *Amara* III. paṅkti 2814.

2. (The particle) *ku* (is used) in the sense of sin, condemnation and little. *Dhik* (is used in the sense of) disgust and censure. *Ca* (is used) to connect with another, as a collection, union with one another, for connecting mutually independent words with a common word.

3. *Svasti* (is used in the sense of) benediction, well-being and meritorious act. *Ati* (has the sense of) excess and crossing. *Svit* (is used in the sense of) interrogation and doubt. *Tu* (is used to denote) division and limitation.

4. *Sakṛt* (is used in the sense of) together with and once. *Ārāt* (has the sense of) near and far off. (The word) *paścāt* (is used in the sense of) western direction and the end. *Api* (has the sense of collection). *Uta* has the sense of option.

5. *Śaśvat* (is used in the sense of) repetition and together with. *Sākṣāt* (denotes) perception and identity. *Bata* (is used in the following senses) : grief, pity, pleasure, surprise and invitation.

6. *Hanta* (is used to express) rejoice, pity, beginning of a sentence and grief. *Prati* is used according to tradition in (the sense) of a representative both as repetition and as indicative etc.

7. *Iti* (is used in the sense of) cause, context, making explicit etc. and conclusion. *Purastāt* (is used to denote) in the east, at first, before and in front of. *Api* is also (used in the same sense).

8. *Yāvat* and *tāvat* (are used in the sense of) whole, end, measure and determination. *Atha* (is used to express) auspiciousness, continuity, beginning, query and whole.

9. *Vṛthā* (is used to convey) uselessness and devoid of injunction. *Nānā* (conveys) many and both. *Nu* (expresses) query and option. *Anu* (expresses) succession and resemblance.

10. *Nanu* (is used to indicate) query, determination, permission, pacification and invitation. *Api* (is used to denote) censure, collection, query, doubt and conjecture.

11. *Vā* (expresses) comparison and option. *Sāmi* (conveys) half and disgust. *Amā* (denote) togetherness and proximity. *Kam* (means) water and head.

12. *Evam* (is used to convey) similarity and such and such a manner. *Nūnam* (is used) in logic and determination. *Joṣam*

(is used to mean) silence and happiness. *Kim* (is used to convey) query and disgust.

13. *Nāma* (is used to mean) making explicit, conjecture, anger, approximation and censure. *Alam* conveys (the sense of) ornament, satiety, ability and prevention.

14. *Hūm* (is used to convey) doubt and inquiry. *Samayā* (denotes) proximity and middle. *Punaḥ* (conveys) not being the first and difference. *Niḥ* (expresses) certainty and prohibition.

15. *Purā* would (be used to indicate) continuity, long past, nearness and the future. The three (words) *ūrari*, *ūri* and *urari* (are used in the sense of) expansion and that which is agreed upon.

16. *Svaḥ* (is used in the sense of) heaven and other world. *Kīla* (is used in the sense of) tidings and conjecture. (The word) *khalu* (is used to denote) prohibition, verbal embellishment, desire to know and pacification.<sup>1</sup>

17. (The word) *abhitaḥ* (is used in the sense of) proximity, both ways, quickness, whole and facing. *Prāduḥ* (is used to convey) name and explicitness. *Mithaḥ* (denotes) between one another and in secrecy.

18. (The word) *tiraḥ* (is used to denote) disappearance and horizontal. (The particle) *hā* (is used to express) pain, anger and grief. *Ahaha* (is used to denote) surprise and grief. (The particle) *hi* (is used to denote) cause and determination.

19. (The words) *cirāya*, *cirārātrāya*, *cirasya* and others (are used) in the sense of long time. *Muhuh*, *punaḥ punaḥ*, *śaśvat*, *abhikṣṇam* and *asakṛt* (again and again) have the same (sense).

20. (The words) *śrāk*, *jhaṭiti*, *añjasā*, *ahnāya*, *śapadi*, *drāk* and *manḥsu* are (used in the sense of) quickness. (The words) *bala-  
vat*, *suṣṭhu* and *kimuta* (denote) excessive. *Kim*, *kimu* and *uta* (are used in the sense of) option.

21. (The particles) *tu*, *hi*, *ca*, *sma*, *ha* and *vai* (are used) for completing a quarter of a verse. *Su* and *ati* (are used to denote) worship (reverence). *Divā* (is used to denote) at day. *Doṣā* and *naktam* (are used in the sense of) night.

22. *Sāci* and *tiraḥ* (are used) in the sense of horizontally. (The words) *pyāṭ*, *pāṭ*, *aṅga*, *he*, *hai* and *bhoḥ* (are used) in the

1. The *Purāṇa* reads wrongly *avasara*:

sense of calling a person. *Samayā*, *nikaṣā* and *hiruk* (have the sense of proximity).

23. *Sahasā* (is used in the sense of) unexpected. *Puraḥ*, *purataḥ* and *agrataḥ* (mean) in front of. *Svāhā*, *śrauṣaṭ*, *vauṣaṭ*, *vaṣaṭ* and *svadhā* (are used) in offering made to the gods.

24. (The words) *kīñcit*, *iṣat* and *manāk* (are used in the sense of) a little. *Pretya* and *amutra* (are used in the sense of) the other world. *Yathā* and *tathā* (convey) similarity. *Aho* and *ho* (indicate) surprise.

25-26. (The words) *tūṣṇim* and *tūṣṇikam* (are used in the sense of) silence. *Sadyaḥ* and *sapadi* (denote) the present moment. *Diṣṭyā* and *sanuḥpaḥṣam* (convey) rejoice. (The words) *antare*, *antarā* and *antareṇa* (denote) 'in the middle'. *Prasahya* means 'by force'. The two (words) *sāmpratam* and *sthāne* (convey the sense) appropriate. *Abhikṣṇam* and *śaśvat* (mean) eternally.

27. (The words) *nahi*, *a*, *no* and *na* (indicate) non-existence. (The words) *māsmā*, *mā* and *alam* (are used in the sense of) restraining. *Cet* and *yadi* (are used to denote) alternative. The two (words) *addhā* and *añjasā* (are employed to convey) truth.

28. *Prāduḥ* and *āvih* indicate explicitness. *Om*, *evam* and *paramam* (convey) opinion. (The words) *samantataḥ*, *paritaḥ*, *sarvataḥ* and *viśvak* (convey) all around.

29. *Kāmam* (is used to convey) permission unwillingly granted. An acceptance preceded by jealousy (is indicated by the word) *astu*. (The word *kāmam* is) also (used in the same sense). *Nanu* (indicates) a contrary opinion. *Kaccit* (indicates) affectionate enquiry.

30. (The words) *niḥ samam* and *duḥ samam* (are used to convey) condemned. *Yathāsvam* and *yathāyatham* (convey the sense) of appropriate or befitting. *Mṛṣā* and *mithyā* (indicate) false. *Yathārtham* and *yathātatham* denote truth.

31. (The words) *evam*, *tu*, *punaḥ*, *vai* and *vā* are expressions (indicating) conclusion. *Prāk* (conveys) the thing that has taken place already. The two (words) *nūnam* and *avaśyam* (are used to indicate) certainty.

32. *Samvat* (is used to mean) the year. *Arvāk* (means) below. *Ām* and *evam* (convey) approval. *Svayam* (means) by the

self. *Nicaiḥ* (means) low. *Uccaiḥ* (means) great. *Prāyaḥ* (denotes) a great quantity. *Śanaiḥ* (is used in the sense of) slowly.

33. The word *sanā* (denotes) eternal. *Bahiḥ* (conveys the meaning) outside. *Sma* (indicates) the past. *Astam* (denotes) invisible. *Asti* (conveys the sense) of reality. *U* is an expression of anger. *Ūm* (indicates) a query. *Ayi* (is an expression of) pacification.

34. *Hūm* (is used in) discussion. (The word) *uṣā* (has the sense of) end of the night. *Namaḥ* (conveys) obeisance. *Aṅga* (is used) in the sense of again. *Duṣṭu* (is an expression of) censure and *suṣṭu*, of praise.

35. *Sāyam* (conveys the sense) in the evening. (The words) *prage* and *prātaḥ* (convey the sense) 'in the morning'. *Nikaṣā* (conveys the meaning) nearby. (The word) *parut* (denotes) the last year and *parāri*, the year before the last. *Yati* (denotes the current year).

36. *Adya* (denotes) the present day. (The words) *pūrvedyuh* etc. (convey the sense of) the previous day etc. Similarly one should know that (the words *uttaredyuh*, *aparedyuh*, *adharedyuh*, *anyedyuh*, *anyataredyuh* and *itaredyuh* are formed) from *uttara* (tomorrow), *apara* (some other), *adhāra* (the previous), *anya* (some other), *anyatara* (some other next) and *itara* (some other).

37. *Ubhayadyuh* and *ubhayedyuh* (convey the sense of) both the days. *Paredyavi* (means) on the next day. *Hyaḥ* (denotes) yesterday and *śvaḥ*, the day yet to come next. *Paraśvaḥ* (denotes) the day after tomorrow.

38. (The words) *tadā* and *tadānim* (denote at that time). *Yugapat* (means) once. *Sarvadā* and *sadā* (mean) always. *Etarhi*, *samprati*, *idānim*, *adhunā* and *sāmpratam* (mean) the present moment.

## CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND SIXTYTWO

*Words having many meanings*

*Fire-god said :*

1. (The word) *nāka* (is used to denote) the sky and heaven. (The word) *loka* (means) the world and people. *Śloka* (is used to mean) a verse and fame. *Sāyaka* (has the meaning) an arrow and sword.

2. *Ānaka* (denotes) a *bheri* as well as *paṭaha* (two kinds of drums). *Kalaṅka* is a mark as well as a scandal. (The letter) *ka* in the masculine (is used to denote) wind, Brahmā and the Sun and *kaṁ* in the neuter (is used to denote) head and water.

3. (The word) *pulāka* (denotes) empty or bad grain, abridgement and rice-water. (The word) *kauśika* (is used in the sense of) Mahendra, *guggulu* (resin got from cow), owl, serpent and alligator.

4. A monkey and a dog (are denoted by the word) *śālāvṛka*. *Mānam* is a means of measure. *Sarga* (is used in the sense of) one's nature, natural state, relinquishment, decision, chapter and creation.

5. (The word) *yoga* (is used in the sense of) an armour, means (expedience), contemplation and union. (The word) *bhoga* (has the meaning of) happiness and enjoying the company of a harlot. The word *abja* (is used to denote) conch and moon.

6. *Karaṭa* (denotes) a crow and the cheek of an elephant. *Śipiviṣṭa* (denotes) a leprous person. (The word) *riṣṭa* (is used in the sense of) prosperity, good and bad luck and *ariṣṭa*, good and bad luck.

7. (The word) *vyuṣṭi* (is used in the sense of) a fruit and plenty. (The word) *drṣṭi* (is used to denote) knowledge, eye and perception. (The word) *niṣṭah* (has the sense of) accomplishing, non-existence and destruction. (The word) *kāṣṭhā* (is used to denote) excellence, state and direction.

8. (The words) *iḍā* and *ilā* (convey the sense of) a cow, earth and speech. *Pragāḍham* (denotes) much and difficult. The word *dr̥ḍha* (means) capable of and stout.

9. *Vyūḍha* (has the meaning) placed in order and firmness. (The word) *Kṛṣṇa* (denotes) Vyāsa, Arjuna and Hari<sup>1</sup>. *Paṇa* (is used to denote) the stake in gambling etc., wages, price and a particular coin.

10. (The word) *guṇa* (is used in the sense of) the bow-string, quality of a substance, (qualities like) *sattva* (goodness), bravery<sup>2</sup> and treaty etc. (The word) *grāmaṇi* (is used to denote) excellent (person) and leader (in a village).

11. *Tṛṣṇā* (is used to convey) desire and desire to drink. (The word) *viṇaṇi* (is used to denote) a merchant's shop. *Tikṣṇam* (is used to mean) poison, battle and iron in the neuter, but in all the three (genders) when (denoting) sharp-edged.<sup>3</sup>

12. (The word) *pramāṇa* (is used to mean) cause, limit in the *sāstra*, extent and the knower. *Karaṇa* is the excellent means. It is also (used to denote) the sense-organs. (The word) *iriṇam* (is used to convey) a barren land and a desert.

13. (The word) *yantr* (is used in the sense of) a mahout and a charioteer. (The word) *heti* (denotes) flame<sup>4</sup>. (The word) *śrutam* (is used to convey) scriptures and accurate knowledge. *Kṛtam* (is used to mean) the (first) *yuga* and enough.

14. *Pratita* (is used to mean) well-known and delight. *Abhijāta* (is used to denote) born in a good family and wise. (The word) *vivikta* (means) pure and devoid of men. *Mūrchita* (means) stupefied and elevated (prosperous).

15. *Artha* (conveys the sense) 'to be expressed', riches, an object, use and end. *Tīrtham* (expresses the sense of) water tank, scriptures, water courses honoured by sages and preceptor.

16. *Kakudaḥ* (is used in the sense of) importance, the insignia of a king and a limb of a bull (hump on the shoulder) in the masculine and neuter. The feminine (word) *saṁvit* (conveys the sense of) knowledge, conversation, a disciplined action, battle and name.

17. (The word) *upaniṣat* (is used in the sense of) *dharma* and secret doctrine (such as) philosophy. (The word) *sarat* (has the

1. This line is not in the *Amara*.

2. The text wrongly reads *sukla* instead of *saurya*.

3. The printed text wrongly reads *svara* instead of *khara*.

4. Vide *Amara* pañkti 2476. The *Purāṇa* has omitted the other senses: ray of the Sun and weapon.

meaning of) a season and a year. (The word) *padam* (is used in the sense of) endeavour, protection, position, mark, foot and object.

18. (These are used) in all the three (genders): (The word) *svādū* (denotes) favourite and sweet. *Mṛdū* (denotes) not sharp and soft. *Sat* (is used to convey) truth, good people, existence, praiseworthy and respectable.

19. (The word) *vidhi* (is used to denote) an injunction and Brahmā. *Praṇidhi* (conveys the meaning of) request and a spy. *Vadhūḥ* (means) wife, son's wife and woman in general. *Sudhā* (denotes) plaster (used in temples etc.), nectar and the milk-hedge plant.

20. (The word) *śraddhā* (denotes) respect and desire. *Paṇḍi-tammanyah* is one who thinks himself as learned and proud as well. *Brahmabandhu* (is used in the sense of) censure. *Bhānu* means ray as well as Sun.

21. *Grāvan* (is used to denote) a hill and a stone. (The word) *pṛthakjana* (denotes) a fool and also a low class man. (The word) *sikharin* (denotes) a tree as well as a mountain. *Tanu* (denotes) the skin and the body.

22. (The word) *yatna* (denotes) soul, firmness, intellect, nature and path of Brahman. *Uttānam* (denotes) effort and remedial act for family. *Vyutthānam* (denotes) rejection.

23. (The word) *niryātana* (is used to denote) revenge, gift and restitution of a deposit. *Vyasanam* (has the sense of) grief, fall and crime due to passion or wrath.

24. Hunting, dice-play, dreaming during the day, accusation, women, intoxication, the triple symphony (dance, music and instrumental music) and strolling about idly are the group of crime arising from passion.

25. Slandering, bravery, offence, hatred, jealousy, extravagance, reprimand and harshness are the eight crimes arising from wrath.

26. *Kaupinam* (is used to denote) a wrong deed, secret and organ of generation. *Maithunam* (is employed in the sense of) relating to union with wife and sexual union. *Pradhānam* (denotes) the supreme spirit and intellect. *Prajñānam* (is used to mean) intellect and mark.

27. *Krandanam* (means) crying and calling. *Varṣma* (denotes) body and extent. *Ārāadhanam* (means) accomplishing, attainment and satisfaction.

28. *Ratnam* (is used to mean) that which is excellent among its own class. *Lakṣma* (is used to denote) a mark and chief. *Kalāpa* (denotes) an ornament, peacock's plumes, quiver and a collection.

29. (The word) *talpaṃ* (is used to denote) bed, an apartment on the roof and woman. *Dimba* (is used the mean) a child and a fool. (The word) *stambha* (is used to denote) a pillar of a building and dull. (The word) *sabhā* (is used to convey the meaning of) an assembly and member of a house.

30. *Rāsmi* (is) a ray (of light) as well as rein (of horses etc.). (The word) *dharma* (is used to denote) merit and self-control etc. (The word) *lalāma* (conveys the meaning of) tail, mark (on the forehead of horses etc.), horse, ornament, prominence and banner.

31. (The word) *pratyaya* (is employed in the sense of) subject to control, oath, knowledge, faith and cause. (The word) *samaya* (is used to convey) an agreement, practice, time, a dogma and knowledge.

32. (The word) *atyaya* (is used to mean) transgression and crime. *Satyam* (means) an oath and truth. (The word) *viryam* (is used in the sense of) strength, and greatness. *Rūpyam* (is used to mean) praiseworthy form.

33. *Durodara* (is employed to denote) a gambler and *durodaram* (to denote) the stake in gambling. (The word) *kāntāra* (is used to mean) a great forest or a difficult path, in the masculine and neuter.

34. (The word) *hari* (is used to denote) *Yama* (god of death), *Anila* (wind), *Indra* (ruler of the celestials), *Candra* (Moon), *Arka* (Sun), *Viṣṇu* and a lion etc. (The word) *dara* (is employed to mean) a hole and fear, in the masculine and neuter. (The word) *jaṭhara* (means) hard (besides stomach).

35. *Udāra* (is used to denote) giver and great. *Itara* (means) different as well as low. *Cūḍā* (denotes) crown and hair. The lock of hair (is called) *mauli*.

36. (The word) *bali* (is used to mean) tax, offering etc. (The word) *balam* (is used to denote) an army and firmness.

(The word) *nivi* (is employed to mean) the knot on the waist garment of a women and ransom (against the prince etc. held as captive).

37-38a. (The word) *vr̥ṣa* (is used in the following senses) : the scrotum (that discharges semen), rat, excellence, good deed and a bull. (The word) *ākaraṣa* (is used to denote) dice-play, the die and the board for dice-play. (The word) *akṣam* (means) an organ, and in the masculine, the dice, difference in the measure, dispute and the *vibhitaka* (one of the three myrobalans).

38b. (The word) *uṣṇīṣa* (is used to mean) crown etc.<sup>1</sup> *Karṣū* conveys the sense of a small river.

39. (The word) *adhyakṣa* (means) visible and one who presides over. (The word) *vibhāvasu* denotes the Sun and Fire. (The word) *rasa* (is employed to denote) (the sentiments) such as erotic and others, poison, splendour, qualities (such as sweet, sour etc.), passion and juice.

40. (The word) *varcas* (denotes) feces as well as splendour. (The word) *āga* (denotes) sin and crime. (The word) *chandas* (means) poetry and desire. *Sādhiyān* (is used to denote) good as well as strong. *Vyūha* (means) a collection as well as (strength). (The word) *ahiḥ* (denotes) Vṛtra as well as a serpent<sup>2</sup>. Fire, Moon and Sun (are referred to as) *tamonudāḥ* (destroyers of darkness).

## CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND SIXTYTHREE

*The words denoting earth, city, forest and herbs\**

*Fire-god said:*

1. I shall describe the words denoting earth, city, forest, herbs and lion etc. (The following words denote the earth) : *bhūḥ*, *anantā*, *kṣamā*, *dhātri*, *kṣmā*, *jyā*, *kuḥ* and *dharitri*.

1. The crown and the turban. Cf. *Amara* Pañkti 2776.

2. The *Purāṇa* omits this word. Cf. *Amara* pañkti 2812.

\*The *Purāṇa* summarises *Amara* kāṇḍas II. 2, II. 3 and II. 5

2. (The words) *mṛt* and *mṛttikā* (denote a piece of earth). Commendable earth (is denoted by the words) *mṛtsā* and *mṛtsnā*. (The land space on the earth is denoted by the words) *jagat*, *viṣṭapam*, *loka*, *bhuvanam* and *jagati*.

3. (The words), *ayanam*, *varitma*, *mārga*, *adhwa*, *panthā*, *pa-davi*, *sṛti*, *saraṇi*, *padhhati*, *padyā*, *vartani* and *ekaṣadi* (denote a path).

4-6a. (The words) *pūḥ*, *puri*, *nagari*, *pattanam* and *puṭabhe-danam* (denote a town). *Sthānīyam* is a big city surrounding big pathways. *Śākhānagaram* is a suburb of a principal city. The suburb where the harlots dwell is *veśa*. *Āṣaṇa* and *niṣadyā* (denote) the place for selling goods. *Vīṣaṇi* and *panyavithikā* (denote) the market street. *Rathyā*, *pratoli* and *viśikhā* (denote) the pathways in the interior of a village. *Caya* and *vapram* (mean the earth dug up from a moat) in the masculine and neuter.

6b. *Prākāra*, *varaṇa* and *sāla* (denote the surrounding fence set up with poles, thorns etc.). A surrounding fence made up at the border (with bamboo, thorns etc.) (is called) *prācinam*.

7-8. *Bhitti* and *kuḍyam* (denote a wall). That wall set with bone etc. inside (is known as) *eḍukaṁ*. (The words) *vāsa*, *kuṭi*, *śālā* and *sabhā* (denote the assembly hall). *Sañjavanam* and *catu-ḥśālām* (is a group of four houses forming a court). *Parnaśālā* and *uṭaja* (not feminine) denote a hermitage. *Caityam* and *āyatanam* (denote a sacrificial hall). *Vājiśālā* and *mandurā* (denote a stable).

9. The dwelling place of the rich (is) *harmyādi*. The place of the gods and kings (is called) *prāsāda*. (The words) *dvāḥ*, *dvāram* and *pratihāra* (denote a door), where the word *dvāḥ* is feminine. *Vitardi* and *vedikā* (mean a fence).

10-11a. (The words) *kaṣotaṣālikā* and *viṭāṅkam*, respectively masculine and neuter (denote a pigeonhouse made of wood etc.). *Kaṣāṭa* and *arara* are synonyms (meaning a door). *Niḥsreṇi* and *adhirohīṇi* (denote steps made with wood etc. for ascending). *Sammārjani* and *Śodhani* (mean broom-stick). *Saṅkara* and *avakara* (denote sweepings).

11b-12. (The words) *adri*, *gotra*, *giri* and *grāvā* (denote mountains in general). (The words) *gahanam*, *kānanam* and *vanam* (denote a forest). (The words) *ārāma* and *uṣavanam* (denote) an

artificial garden (that has been accomplished). The same that is fit for harem (is called) *pramadavanam*.

13. (The words) *vithi*, *āliḥ*, *āvaliḥ*, *paṅktiḥ* and *śreṇi* (denote a row). (The words) *lekhāḥ* and *rājayaḥ* (denote lines). A tree (that is seen) with fruits (produced) from flowers (is) *vānaspatyaḥ*. A tree (that is seen) with fruits not (produced) from flowers (is) *vanaspatiḥ*.

14. Those which end with fruit-bearing (are known as) *oṣadhi-s*. (The words) *palāśi*, *druḥ*, *druma* and *agama* (denote a tree). (The words) *sthāṇu*, *dhrūva* and *śaṅku* (denote a cut tree). (The word) *sthāṇu* is optionally masculine. (The words) *pra-phulla*, *utphulla* and *saṃphulla* (mean a flower that has blossomed).

15-16a. (The words) *palāśam*, *chadanam* and *parṇam* (denote a leaf). (The words) *idhmam*, *edhaḥ* and *samit*, feminine (denote dry wood and grass). *Bodhidruma* and *caladala* (denote the holy fig tree). *Dadhūttha*, *grāhi*, *manmatha*, *dadhīphala*, *puṣṭaphala* and *dantaśaṭha* (denote the woodapple tree).

16b-17. (The words) *udumbara*, *hemadugdha*, *kovidāra* and *dvīpatraka* (denote *udumbara*). The *saptaparṇa* (tree) (is also known as) *viśālatvak*. The *kṛtamāla* (tree is also known as) *suvarṇaka*, *ārevata*, *vyādhihāta*, *śaṃpāka* and *cuturaṅgala*.

18. The *Jambira* (tree is also called) *dantaśaṭha*. The *Varuṇa* (tree is also called) *tiktaśāka*. *Punnāga* (tree is also called) *puruṣa*, *tuṅga*, *kesara* and *devavallabha*.

19-20a. *Nimbataru*, *mandāra* and *pārijātaka* (are the other names of) *pāribhadra* (tree). *Vañjula* and *citrakṛt* (are the other names of) *tinīśa* (tree). *Pitana* and *kapitana* (denote) the *āmṛataka* (tree). (The other names) of *madhūka* (are) *guḍapuṣpa* and *madhudruma*.

20b. *Guḍaphala* and *sraṃsi* (are the other names of) *pilu*. *Nādeyi* is the other name of *ambhuvetas*.

21. *Śigruḥ*, *tikṣṇagandhaka*, *akṣiva* and *mocaka* (are the other names of) *śobhāñjana*. If this (*śobhāñjana*) is red (it is called) *madhuśigruḥ*. *Ariṣṭa* and *phenila* are synonyms.

22. *Lodhra* (is also called) *gālava*, *śābara*, *tiriṣṭa*, *tilva* and *mārjana*. *Uddālaka* (is also known as) *śeluh*, *śleṣmātaka*, *śita* and *bahuvāraka*.

23. (The other names of) *vikaṅkata* (are) *sruvāvṛkṣa*, *granthila*

and *vyāghraṣāt*. *Tinduka* (is also called) *sphūrjaka* and *kāla* (*skandha*)<sup>1</sup>. (The terms) *nādeyi* and *bhūmijambuka* (denote *nāgarāga*)<sup>2</sup>.

24. *Kākatindu* and (*kāka*) *piluka* are synonyms. *Kramuka* and *paṭṭikākhyā* would (denote *lohitalodhra*)<sup>3</sup>. *Kumbhi* (is also known as) *kaiḍarya* and *kaṭphala*.

25-26a. *Viravṛkṣa*, *aruṣkara* and *agnimukhi* (are the synonyms of) *bhallātaki* in (all the three genders). *Sarjaka*, *pitāsāraka*<sup>4</sup> and *asana* (are synonyms of) *jiva* (*ka*). *Sarja* and *āsvakarṇa* (are synonyms of) *sāla*.<sup>5</sup> *Arjuna* (tree) (is also called) *virataru*<sup>6</sup>, *indrardruḥ*, and *kakubhaḥ*.

26b-27. *Īngudi* (is also known as) *tāpasataru*. *Śālmali* (is also known as) *moḥā*. *Cirabilva*, *naktamāla* and *karaja* (are the other names of) *karañjaka*. (*Pūtika* is also known as) *prakīrya* and *pūti-karaja*. *Markaṭi* and *aṅgāravallari* (are varieties of *karañja*)<sup>7</sup>.

28. *Rohi*, *plīhaśatru* and *dāḍimaṣuṣpaka* (are synonyms of) *rohītaka*. *Khadira* (is also known as) *gāyatri*, *bālatanaya* and *danta-dhāvana*.

29. *Arimeda* and *viṭkhadira* (denote varieties of bad smelling *khadira*). *Kadara* (denotes) the white *khadira*. (*Eraṇḍa* is also called) *pañcāṅgula*, *vardhamāna*, *cañcu* and *gandharvahastaka*.

30-31a. *Piṅḍitaka* and *maruwaka* (are synonyms of *madana*). *Devadāru* (is also called) *pitadāru*, *dāru* and *pūtikāṣṭham*. *Priyaṅgu* (is also known as) *śyāmā*, *mahilāhvayā*, *latā*, *govandani*, *gundrā*, *phalini* and *phali*.

31b-32a. *Soṇaka* (is also known as) *maṇḍūkapaṛṇa*, *paṭrorṇa*, *naṣa*, *kaṭvaṅga*, *tuṅtuka*, *syonāka*, *sukanāsa*, *ṛkṣa*, *dirghavṛnta* and *kuṭannaṣa*.

32b. *Pitadru* and *sarala* (are synonyms). *Nicula*, *ambuja* and *hijjala* (are the synonyms of a kind of reed).

1. Cf. *Amara pañkti* 725.

2. Cf. *ibid. pañkti* 724.

3. Cf. *ibid. pañkti* 730.

4. The *Purāna* wrongly reads *pitāsāla*. Cf. *Amara pañkti* 735.

5. Cf. *Amara pañkti* 737. The purāṇic reading is wrong.

6. Cf. *Amara pañkti* 738.

7. Cf. *Amara pañkti* 745.

33. *Kākodumbarikā* and *phalguh* (are the synonyms of *malayū*. *Ariṣṭa*, *picumardaka*<sup>1</sup>, *sarvatobhadra* (are synonyms of) *nimba*. *Śīriṣa* (is also known as) *kapitana*.

34-35a. *Va (ba)kula* (is said to be *vañjula*. (*Kapilā*<sup>2</sup> is also called as) *picchilā* and *aguruśimśapā*. *Jayā*, *jayanti* and *tarkāri* (are synonyms of *vaijayantikā*<sup>3</sup>. *Kaṇikā* (is also known as) *gaṇikārikā*, *śriparṇam* and *agnimantha*. *Vatsaka* and *girimallikā* (are synonyms of *kuṭaja*)<sup>4</sup>.

35b-36. *Kālaskandha* (is a synonym of) *tamāla*. *Taṇḍuliya* (is known as) *alpamāriṣa*. *Sinduwāra* (is also known as) *nirgunḍi*. The same (*mallikā*) grown in the forest (is known as) *āṣphoṭā*<sup>5</sup>. *Yūthikā* (is also known as) *gaṇikā* and *ambaṣṭhā*. *Navamālikā* (is also known as) *saptalā*.

37. *Atimukta* and *puṇḍraka* (are different varieties of *kunda*)<sup>6</sup>. *Kumāri* (is also known as) *sahā* and *tarāṇi*. Therein<sup>7</sup>, the red variety is *kurabaka* and the yellow variety is *kurunṭaka*.

38. The blue *jhiṅṭi* (is also known as) *bāṇā*. (It is also known as *dāsi* and *artagalā*<sup>8</sup>.) *Jhiṅṭi* (in general is known as) *saireyaka*. If it is red, it is known as *kurabaka*. If it is yellow, it is known as *sahacari* (and also as *sahacara*).

39. *Kitava* and *dhūrta* (are the other names of) *dhattūra*. *Rucaka* (is the other name of) *mātuluṅgaka*. *Samiraṇa*, *maruwaka*, *prasthapuṣpa* and *phaṇijjaka* (are the synonyms of *jambira*)<sup>9</sup>.

40-42a. *Kuṭheraka* (is the other name of) *parṇāsa*. *Vasuka* and *āṣphoṭa* (are the synonyms of) *arka*. *Śivamalli* and *pāśuṣpata* (are synonyms). *Vṛndā*, *vṛkṣādani*, *jivantikā* and *vṛkṣaruhā* (are the synonyms of the plant that clings to a tree and grows). *Guḍūci* (has the other names) *tantrikā*, *amṛtā*, *somavalli* and *madhuṣarṇi*. *Mūrvā* (is also called) *moraṭā*, *madhūlikā*, *madhuśreṇi*, *gokarṇi* and *piluparṇi*.

1. Cf. *Amara paṅkti* 773-*picumanda*.

2. Cf. *ibid.* *paṅkti* 773.

3. Cf. *ibid.* *paṅkti*. 779.

4. Cf. *ibid.* *paṅkti*. 781.

5. The *Purāṇa* mixes with the previous. Cf. *Amara paṅktis* 785 and 788.

6. Cf. *Amara.* *paṅkti* 792.

7. Refers to *amlāna*. Cf. *Amara.* *paṅkti* 796.

8. Cf. *Amara paṅkti* 797.

9. Cf. *ibid.* *paṅkti* 806-807.

42b-43. *Pāṭhā* (is also known as) *āmbaṣṭhā*, *viddhakarṇi*, *pracinā* and *vanatiktikā*. *Kaṭuḥ*, *kaṭumbharā*, *cakrāṅgi* and *śakulādani* (are the names of *kaṭurohinī*<sup>1</sup>). *Ātmaguptā*, *prāvṛṣāyī*<sup>2</sup> and *kapikacchu* (are the other names of) *markaṭi*.

44. *Apāmārga* (is also known as) *śaikharika*, *pratyakparṇi* and *mayūraka*. *Phañjikā*<sup>3</sup> and *brāhmaṇi* (are the other names of) *bhārgi*. *Dravanti*, *śambari* and *vṛṣā* (are synonyms).

45. *Maṇḍūkaparṇi*, *bhaṇḍiri*, *samaṅgā* and *kālameṣikā* (are synonyms of *mañjiṣṭhā*). *Rodani*, *kacchurā*, *anantā*, *samudrāntā* and *durālabhā* (are synonyms of *dhanvayāsa*)<sup>4</sup>.

46. *Pṛśnūparṇi*, *prthakparṇi*, *kalāsi*, *dhāvani* and *guhā* (are synonyms). *Nidigdihikā*, *sṛṣi*, *vyāghri*, *kṣudrā* and *dussparśā* (are synonyms).

47. *Avalguja*, *somarāji*, *suwalli*, *somavallikā*, *kālameṣi*, *kṛṣṇaphalā* and *pūtiphalā* (are synonyms of) *vākuci*.

48. *Kaṇā*, *uṣaṇā* and *upakulyā* (are synonyms). *Śreyasi* and *gajapiṅgalī*<sup>5</sup> (are synonyms). *Cavyaṃ* and *cavikā* (are synonyms). *Kākaciñci*, *guñja* and *kṛṣṇalā* (are synonyms).

49-50. *Viśvā*, *viṣā* and *prativiṣā* (are synonyms). *Vanaśṛṅgāṭā* and *gokṣura* (are synonyms). *Nārāyaṇi* and *śatamūli* (are synonyms). *Kāliyaka*, *haridruḥ*, *dārvī*, *pacampacā*, *dāruśuklā*<sup>6</sup> and *haimavati*<sup>7</sup> (are synonyms of *parjani*). *Uragandhā*, *śaḍgranthā*, *golomi* and *śataparvikā* (are the synonyms of) *vacā*.

51. *Āsphoṭā* and *girikarṇi* (are synonyms). *Simhāsya*, *vāsaka* and *vṛṣa* (are synonyms). *Madhurikā* (is also called) *miṣi* and *chatrā*. *Kokilākṣa* (is also known as) *ikṣura* and *kṣura*.

52. *Vidaṅga* is known as *kṛmighna* (and is used) in the masculine and neuter. *Vajradru* (is also known as) *snuk*, *snuhi* and *sudhā*.<sup>8</sup> *Mṛdvikā* and *gostani* (are the other names of) *drākṣā*. *Balā* and *vāṭyālakā* (are synonyms).

1. Cf. *Amara paṅkti* 819.

2. *prāvṛṣāyaṇi*. cf. *Amara paṅkti* 821.

3. *Amara paṅkti* 827 reads *hañjikā*.

4. Cf. *Amara paṅkti* 831-832.

5. *karipiṅgalī*. Cf. *Amara paṅkti* 842.

6. *Amara paṅkti* 852 reads *dāru haridrā*.

7. *ibid.* reads *parjani*.

8. *Amara paṅkti* 839 reads *guḍā*.

53. *Kālā* and *masūravidalā* (are synonyms of black *trivṛt*) *Trivṛt* (is also known as) *tripuṭā* and *trivṛtā*. *Madhukam*, *klitakam*, *yaṣṭimadhukam* and *madhuyaṣṭikā* (are synonyms).

54. *Ikṣugandhā* (is also known as) *vidāri*, *kṣiraśukla* and *kroṣṭri*. *Gopī*, *śyāmā*, *śārivā* and *anantā* (are the other names of) *utpalaśārivā*.

55. *Mocā* and *rambhā* (are synonyms of) *kadali*. *Bhaṅṭāki* and *duṣṭpradharṣiṇi* (are synonyms). *Sālaparṇi* (is also called) *sthirā* and *dhruvā*. *Śṛṅgi* and *vṛṣa* (are the synonyms of the herb) *vṛṣabha*.

56. *Gāṅgeruki* (is also called) *nāgabalā*. *Muṣa(sa)li* and *tālamūlikā* (are synonyms). *Paṭolikā* (is also known as) (*jyotsni* and *jāla*). *Ajaśṛṅgi* and *viṣāṇikā* (are synonyms).

57. *Lāṅgali* (is also known as) *agniśikhā*. *Tāmbūli* and *nāgavalli* (are synonyms). (The fragrant) *reṇukā* (is also called) *hareṇu* and *kaunti*. *Hribera* (is also known as) *divyanāgaram*.<sup>1</sup>

58. (The other names of) *śaileya* (are) *kālānūsāri*, *vṛddhā*, *aśmaṭpāṣṭam* and *śitaśivam*. *Murā* (is also known as) *tālaparṇi*, *daiṭya* and *gandhakuṭi*.

59. *Śukam* and *barham* (are other names of) *granthiparṇam* (as well as) *balā*<sup>2</sup>. *Tripuṭā* and *truṭi* (are the synonyms of *sūkṣmailā*)<sup>3</sup>. *Śivā* and *tāmalaki* (are synonyms of *bhūmyāmalaki*). *Hanu* and *haṭṭavilāsini* (are synonyms).

60. *Kuṭannaṭam*, *dāśapuram*, *vāneyam* and *paripelavam* (are synonyms). *Jaṭāmāmsi* (is also known as) *tapasvini*. *Sṛṅkā* (is also called) *devi*, *latā* and *laghu*.<sup>4</sup>

61. *Karcūraka* and *drāviḍaka* (are synonyms). *Gandhamūli* is also known as *śaṭhi*. *Vṛddhadāraka* (is also known as) *ṛkṣagandhā*, *chagalāntrā* and *vegi*.

62. *Raktaṭhalā*, *bimbikā* and *ṭiluparṇi* (are the other names of) *tuṅḍikeri*. *Cāṅgeri*, *cakrikā*<sup>5</sup> and *ambaṣṭhā* (are synonyms). *Svarṇakṣiri* (is also known as) *himāvati*.

1. This name is not found in *Amara paṅkti* 892.

2. This term is not found in *Amara paṅkti* 913.

3. Cf. *Amara paṅkti* 899.

4. The purāṇic reading *laśūh* is obviously wrong.

5. *Amara paṅkti* 929 reads *cukrikā*.

63. *Sahasravedhi*, *cukra* and *śatavedhi* (are the other names of) *amlavetas*. *Jivanti* (is also known as) *jivani* and *jivā*. *Bhū(mī)-nimba* (is also called) *kirātaka*.<sup>1</sup>

64. *Kūrcaśirṣa* and *madhuraka* (are synonyms). *Candra*, *kaṭi-vṛka*,<sup>2</sup> *dadrughna* and *eḍagaja* are synonyms. Probably *varṣābhū* and *sobahāriṇi* are also synonyms (?).

65. *Kunandati*, *nikumbhastrā*, *yamāni* and *vārṣikā* (are synonyms).<sup>3</sup> *Laśunam* (is also known as) *gr̥ñjanam*, *aṛiṣṭa*, *mahākanda* and *rasonaka*.

66-67. *Badarā* and *gr̥ṣṭi* (are synonyms of) *vārāhi*. *Vāyasi* (is also known as) *kākamāci*. *Madhurā* (is also known as) *śataḥṣpā*, *sitacchatrā*, *aticchatrā*, *misi*, *avākṣuṣpi* and *kāravi*. *Saraṇā*, *prasāraṇi*, *kaṭambharā* and *bhadrabalā* (are synonyms). *Kārcūra* and *śaṭi* (are synonyms).

68. *Paṭola* is (also known as) *kulaka* and *tiktaka*. *Kāravella* (is also known as) *kaṭhillaka*. *Kūsmāṇḍaka* (is otherwise called) *karkāru*. *Karkaṭi* (is known as) *urvāruḥ* and (used) in the feminine.

69. *Kaṭutumbi* (is also called) *iḥṣvāku*. *Indravāruṇi* (is also known as) *viśālā*. (The other names of) *sūraṇa* (are) *arśoghna* and *kanda*. *Mustaka* and *kuruvindaka* (are synonyms).

70. *Veṇu* (is also called) *vaṁśa*, *tvaksāra*, *karmāra*, *maskara* and *tejana*. *Chatra*, *aticchatra*, *pālaghna*, *mālātṛṇaka* and *bhūsiṛṇa* (denote different kinds of *jalatṛṇa*).

71a. *Tāla* is also called *tṇarāja*. *Pūga* (is also called) *ghoṇṭā* and *kramuka*.

71b. *Śārdūla*<sup>4</sup> and *dviṭi* (are synonyms of) *vyāghra* (tiger). *Haryakṣa*, *kesari* and *hari* (denote a lion).

72. (The words) *kola*, *potri* and *varāha* would (denote a boar). (The words) *koka*, *iḥāmṛga* and *vṛka* (denote a wolf). *Lūtā*, *ūrnanābha*, *tantuwāya* and *markaṭa* (denote a spider).

73. *Vṛścika* and *śūkakiṭa* (scorpion) (are synonyms). *Sāraṅga*<sup>5</sup> and *tokaka* are synonyms (denoting a *cātaka* bird). *Kṛkavāku* and

1. *kirātatikta*. cf. *Amara pañkti* 934.

2. Corrupt reading for *kāmpilya* and *karkaśa*. cf. *Amara pañkti* 941-2.

3. The Purāṇic reading is corrupt. Cf. *Amara pañkti* 937-38.

4. The section on animals begins here.

5. From here begins the listing of synonyms of birds.

*tāmracūḍa* (are synonyms denoting a cock). *Pika* and *kokila* (are synonyms denoting a cuckoo).

74. *Karaṭa* and *ariṣṭa* (denote) a crow. *Baka* and *kahva* denote a crane. *Cakravāka* is also known as *koka* and *cakra*. *Kādamba* and *kalahaṃsaka* (are synonyms).

75. *Pataṅgikā* and *puttikā* (are synonyms denoting different kinds of honey-bees). *Dvirepha*, *puṣpalit*, *bhṛṅga*, *ṣaṭpada*, *bhramara* and *ali* (denote a bee).

76. *Keki* (denotes a peacock). *Kekā* (denotes) the sound made by a peacock. (The words) *śakunti*, *śakuni* and *dvija* (denote a bird). *Pakṣati* is the base of the wing. It is in the feminine. *Cañcu* and *troṭi* (denote the beak). Both (the words) are feminine.

77-78. (The words) *uḍḍinam* and *saṅḍinam* (denote) the gait (of birds). *Kulāya* and *niḍam* (denote a nest). They are (used) in the masculine and neuter. *Peṣi*, *koṣa* and *aṇḍa* (denote an egg). If less than two, *aṇḍa* is used in the neuter. (The young one of a bird is denoted by the words) *pṛthuka*, *śāvaka*, *śiśu*, *ṣota*, *pāka*, *arbhaka* and *ḍimbha*. (The following words denote a collection) : *sandoha*, *vṛūhaka*, *gaṇa*, *stoma*, *ogha*, *nikara*, *vrāta*, *nikurambam*, *kadamvakam*, *saṅghātaḥ*, *sañcayaḥ* and *vṛndam*. *Puñja*, *rāsi* and *kūṭakam* (are used to denote heap of grains).

## CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND SIXTYFOUR

### *Words denoting men and the four classes of men*

*Fire-god said:*

1. I shall describe the class of men, brahmins, *kṣatriya-s*, *vaiśya-s* and *sūdra-s*. (The words) *naraḥ*, *pañcajanāḥ*, *martyāḥ* (denote men). (The words) *yoṣit*, *yoṣā*, *abalā* and *vadhūḥ* (denote a woman).

2. A person seeking a lover, going to the place indicated (by the lover) (is called) *abhisārikā*. (The words) *kulaṭā*, *puṃścali* and *asati* (mean a wanton woman). A nude woman (is called) *koṭavi*.

3. *Kātyāyani* is middle-aged, (wears ochre garment and is without husband)<sup>1</sup>. One who lives in other's house (is called) *sairindhri*. (She is independent and proficient in hair dressing etc.)<sup>2</sup> *Asikni* is not old (and serves the harem). *Mālini* is a woman in her monthly course.

4. *Vārastrī*, *gaṇikā* and *veśyā* (mean a courtesan). Brothers' wives are (mutually known as) *yātara*-s. Husband's sister (is known as) *nanānda*. (The descendants for seven generations are known as) *sapiṇḍa*-s and *sanābhi*-s.

5. (Sisters born of the same womb are called) *samānodaryaḥ*, *sodaryaḥ*, *sagarbhyaḥ* and *sahajāḥ*. (The words) *sagotra*, *bāndhava*, *jñāti*, *bandhu*, *svaḥ* and *svajana* are synonyms (denoting relatives belonging to the same clan).

6. (The words) *damṣṭi*, *jamṣṭi*, *bhāryāṣṭi* and *jāyāṣṭi* (denote the husband and wife). (The outer skin of the embryo is known as) *garbhāśaya*, *jarāyu* and *ulbam*. (The foetus is called) *kalala*, in the neuter.

7. (The words) *garbha* and *bhrūṇa* are synonyms denoting (the young one in the womb). (The words) *kliba*, *saṇḍha* (are used to denote) a eunuch. *Uttānaśayā* and *ḍimbā* would (mean a child that sucks milk from the mother's breasts). *Bāla* (boy) (is known to be) *māṇavaka*:

8. (The words) *picaṇḍila* and *bṛhatkukṣi* (mean a person having a big belly). (The word) *abhraṭa* (is used to mean) a *natanā-sika* (one having a flat nose). (A naturally deformed person is denoted by the words) *vikalāṅga* and *apogonḍa*. (The words) *ārogyam* (free from illness) would (also be known as) *anāmayaṃ*.

9. (A deaf person is denoted by the words) *eḍa* and *badhira*. (The word) *gaḍula* (is used to denote) a hunch-back. (The word) *kuni* (is used to denote) a person having a maimed hand. (The words) *kṣaya*, *śoṣa* and *yakṣmā* (mean consumption). *Pratiś-yāya* and *pinasa* (catarrh) (are synonyms).

10. *Kṣut*, *kṣutam* and *kṣava* (sneezing) (are synonyms). (The word) *kṣut* is feminine. (The words) *kāsa* and *kṣavathu* (meaning cough) are both masculine. *Śoṭha* (swelling) is also known as

1. The purāṇa omits the other characteristics. See *Amara paṅkti* 1108.

2. Cf. *Amara paṅkti* 1109.

*svayathu* and *śopha*. *Pādasphoṭa* (sore on the foot) (is also known as) *vipādikā*.

11. *Kilāsam* and *sidhmam* (scab) are synonyms. *Pāma*, *pāmā* and *vicarcikā* (are used to mean) *kacchū* (scab). (The words) *koṭha*, *maṇḍalakam*, *kuṣṭham* and *śvitram* (white leprosy) (are synonyms). *Arśas* (piles) (is also known as) *durnāmakam*.

12. (The words) *ānāha* and *nibandha* (denote suppression of urine and feces). *Grahaṇīruk* and *pravāhikā* (denote diarrhoea). (The words) *bijam*, *viryam*, *indriyam* and *śuklam* (mean semen). (The words) *palalam*, *kravyam* and *āmiṣam* (denote flesh).

13. *Bukkā* and *agramāmsam* (denote the lotus-shaped flesh in the heart). *Hṛdayam* and *hṛt* (heart) are synonyms. *Vaṭā* and *vasā* (denote the marrow of the flesh). The artery on the back of the neck (is known as) *manyā*. (The words) *nāḍī*, *dhamani* and *śirā* (artery) (are synonyms).

14-15. *Tilakam* and *kloma* (denote lump of flesh). *Mastiṣkam* (is the fluid on the fore-head). *Dūṣikā* (denotes) the rheum of the eyes. *Antra* (intestine) (is also known as) *puritat*. *Plihā* and *gulma* (spleen) (are synonyms). (The words) *vasnasā* (in the masculine) and *snāyu* (in the feminine) (denote tendon). *Kālakhaṇḍam* and *yakṛt* are synonyms (denoting liver). *Karṣara* and *kapāla* (denotes skull), *kapālam* in the neuter. Bones (are in general denoted by the words) *kikasam*, *kulyam* and *asthi*.

16. (The word) *kaṅkāla* (denotes) skeleton in the body. (The word) *kaśeruka* (denotes) back-bone. The skull-bone (is called) *karoti*, in the feminine. (The word) *parśukā* denotes the bones on the sides (of the body).

17. The limbs of the body (are denoted by the words) *aṅgam*, *pratika* and *avayava*. (The words) *śariram*, *varṣma* and *vigraha* (denote a body). *Śroṇi-phalakam* (buttocks) (is also called) *kaṭa* (and that word is) masculine. *Kaṭi*, *śroṇi* and *kakudmatī* (hip) (are synonyms).

18. The hinder part of the waist of women (is known as) *nīṭamba*, in the neuter. The frontal part is *jaghanam*. The *kūpakas* (hollows below the loins) are in the *nīṭamba*. (The word is used) in the neuter. (The hollows above the loins are called) *kukundara-s*.

19. The fleshy portions in the hip are called) *sphicau* (*sphic*) and *kaṭiprophau*. (The organ of generation of woman is called)

*upastha* (because that is near) the two which are to be described now. In the case of women it is (called) *bhagam* and *yoni*. *Śiśna*, *medhra*, *mehanam* and *śepha* (denote penis).

20. (The words) *ṭicaṇḍa*, *kukṣi*, *jaṭharam*, *udaram* and *tundam* (denote belly). *Stana* and *kuca* (mean breast). *Cūcuka* is the tip of breast. (The words) *kroḍam* and *bhujāntaram* denote chest. The word *kroḍam* is not masculine.

21. *Skandha*, *bhujaśiras* and *aṃsa* denote shoulder. (The junction of shoulder is known as) *jatru*. (Nail is denoted by the words) *ṭunarbhava*, *kararuha*, *nakhara* and *nakha* (used) not in feminine.

22. *Prādesika* is the span of the thumb and the forefinger. *Tālā* is the span of the thumb and the middle finger. *Gokarṇa* is the span of the thumb and the ring finger. The span of the thumb and the little finger is *vitasti* measuring twelve finger breadths.

23. The open hand with the fingers extended (is called) *capeta*, *ṭratala* and *ṭrahasṭa*. *Ratni* (is the distance) from elbow to the end of closed fist. *Aratni* (is the distance) from elbow to the end of little finger.

24. Neck with threelines (is called) *kambugrivā*. (The words) *avaṭu*, *ghāṭā* and *vrkātīkā* (denote the backside of the union of head and neck). *Cibuka* (chin) is below the lips, then the two *gaṇḍa-s* (cheeks), the throat and chin.

25-26. The outer ends of eyes are (called) *apāṅga-s*. *Kaṭākṣa* (is used to denote) the look with *apāṅga*. (The words) *cikura*, *kuntala* and *vāla* (denote hair). (The words) *ṭratikarma*, *ṭrasādhanam*, *ākalya*, *veṣa* and *neṭhthyam* (denote) beautification. It is perceivable and is produced by union with a play. *Cūḍāmaṇi* is the crest-jewel. The central gem in a necklace (is called) *tarala*.

27. (The ear-ornament is called) *karnīkā* and *tālapatra*. *Lambanam* or *lalantikā* (denote) a long necklace. (The words) *mañjira* and *nūpura* (denote the anklet) on the foot. *Kiṅkiṇi* and *kṣudraghaṅṭīkā* (denote a small bell).

28. (The words) *dairghyam*, *āyāma* and *āroha* (are used to denote the length of a cloth etc.). (The words) *ṭariṅḍha* and *viśālatā* (denote the width). *Paṭaccaram* (denotes) a rag. *Samvyanam* (is the cloth worn) on the shoulder.

29. (The words) *racanā* and *parisyanda* (denote the arrangement of flowers etc.). (The words) *ābhoga* and *paripūrṇatā* (denote the fulfilling of all services). *Samudgaka* and *samputaka* (mean a casket). (The words) *pratigraha* and *patadgraha* (mean a spittoon).

## CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND SIXTYFIVE

### *Words relating to the class of brahmins*

*Fire-god said :*

1-3. (Words denoting genealogy are) *vaṁśa*, *anuvāya*, *gotram*, *kulam*, *abhijana* and *anvaya*. *Ācārya* is that person who expounds the scriptures. The person who instructs the priests in the sacrifice (is called) *vratī*, *yaṣṭa* and *yajamāna*. *Upakrama* (denotes) the beginning after having known (the course of action). Those having the same preceptors (are called) *satirthyāḥ*. The members of an assembly (are called) *sabhya-s*, *sāmājika-s*, *sabhāsada* and *sabhāstāra-s*. (The priests who officiate in a sacrifices are known as) *ṛtvija-s* and *yājaka-s*. *Adhvaryu* is the priest associated with the *Yajurveda*. *Udgātṛ* is the priest proficient in the *Sāmaveda* and *Hotṛ* in the *Rgveda*.

4. *Caṣāla* is the wooden ring on the top of a sacrificial post. *Sthaṇḍilam* and *catvaram* are synonyms (denoting the ground made ready for a sacrifice). The transformation that occurs in milk by the addition of curd is known as *āmikṣā*.

5. Ghee together with curd (is called) *pr̥ṣadājya*. (The words) *paramānnam* and *pāyasam* (denote cooked rice mixed with milk). The animal that is killed in a sacrifice after being sanctified with formulae (is called) *upākṛta*.

6. (The words) *paramparākam*, *samanam* and *prokṣaṇam* (convey) the sense of killing. (The words) *pūjā*, *namasyā*, *apaciti*, *saparyā*, *arcā* and *arhaṇā* are synonyms (denoting worship).

7. *Varivasyā*, *śuśrūṣā*, *paricaryā* and *upāsana* (are synonyms meaning mode of worship). (The words) *niyama* and *vratam* (signify religious observance). (They are) not feminine. It consists of the meritorious deeds such as fasting and the like.

8. The first injunction is called *mukhya*. That which in inferior (subordinate) to that (is known as) *anukalpa*. *Kalpa* (the texts laying down injunctions) is known as *vidhi* and *krama*. *Viveka* is the power to distinguish between the world and the spirit.

9. The receiving of instruction in the scriptures after purification is known as *upākaraṇam*. (An ascetic is denoted by the words) *bhikṣu*, *parivrāṭ*, *karmandi*, *pārāśari* and *maskari*.

10. (The sages are in general denoted by the words) *ṛṣi-s* and *satyavacāḥ*. A student who has had the ceremonial bath (is called) *snātaka*. Those who have conquered the sense-organs (are known as) *yatinah* and *yatayah*.

11. The daily rite which depends on the body as means (is known as) *yama*. But *niyama* is that which depends on external conditions (and is voluntary). The state of *brahman* (is denoted by the words) *brahmabhūyam*, *brahmatvam* and *brahmasūryyam*.

## CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND SIXTYSIX

*Words relating to kṣatriyas, vaiśyas and other classes*

*Fire-god said :*

1. (The words denoting the warrior caste are) *mūrdhābhiṣikta*, *rājanya*, *bāhuja*, *kṣatriya* and *virāṭ*. A king who is respected by the vassals is known as *adhiśvara*.

2. (A king who holds sway over the entire earth is known as) *cakravarti* and *sārvabhauma*. A king who is different from the above is a *maṇḍaleśvara*. (Minister or counsel is known as) *mantri*, *dhisaciva* and *amātya*. (The chief counsel is known as) *mahāmātra* and *pradhānaka*.

3. A person who attends to disputes (is called) *prāḍvivāka* and *akṣadarśaka*. The man in charge of gold in a royal treasury (is called) *bhaurika*. (The words) *adhyakṣa* and *adhikṛta* are synonyms (denoting a superintendent). The person invested with the charge of the harem (is called) *antarvaṁśika*. (The words) *sauvidalla-s*, *kañcukin-s*, *sthāpatya-s* and *sauvida-s* (also denote the same).

4-6a. The words *śa* (*śa*) *ṇḍa* and *varṣavara* (denote the servants in the harem, who are eunuchs). (The words) *sevaka*, *arṭhi* and *anujivi* (denote a servant). A ruler of the region other than one's own is a *śatru* (enemy). One who is beyond that region is a *mitram* (friend). A person beyond that is *udāsina* (neutral). A king who is in the rear (of a kingdom) is *pārṣṇigrāha*.

6b-7. (A spy is denoted by the words) *cara*, *spaśa* and *praṇidhi*. The time that is to come is *āyati*. The present time is known as *tatkāla* and *tadātvam*. The fruit accruing in future (is called) *udarka*. (The fear that is caused) by such factors as excessive rains and fire (is) *adṛṣṭam*. (The fear that is caused) by one's own kingdom or other (is) *drṣṭam*.

8. (The words) *bhadrakumbha* and *pūrṇakumbha* (are synonyms meaning a pitcher that is full). (A vessel made of gold is called) *bhṛṅgāra* and *kanakākūka*. (A rutting elephant is called) *prabhinna*, *garjita* and *matta*. (A particle of water splashed by the trunk of an elephant is called) *vamathu* and *kaśikara*.

9. A goad is known as *ṣṇi*, in the feminine and *aṅkuśa*, in the masculine. (The words) *paristoma* and *kutha* (denote) the carpet on the back of an elephant in both (the genders). (A vehicle used by ladies for transport is called) *karnīratha* and *pravahaṇam*. The words *dolā* (palanquin) and *preṅkhā* (swing) etc. (are used) in the feminine.

10. (The words) *ādhoraṇāḥ*, *hastipakāḥ*, *hastyārohāḥ* and *niṣādinaḥ* (denote mahouts). (Warriors are denoted by the words) *bhāṭāḥ*, *yodhāḥ* and *yoddhāraḥ*. (The words) *kañcuka* and *vāraṇa*<sup>1</sup> (mean armour). They are not feminine.

11. *Śiṛṣaṇya* (is used to denote) *śirastra* (helmet). (The words) *tanutram*, *varma* and *daṁśanam* (are used to mean armour). (The words) *āmukta*, *pratimukta*, *pinaddha* and *apinaddha* (are used to mean a person covered by armour).

12-14. An arrangement of army (for the sake of battle) is *vyūha*. (The words) *cakram* and *anikam* (denote an army). It is not feminine. The *patti* (consists of) an elephant, a chariot, three cavalrymen and five infantry. Three times the constituents of a *patti* and subsequently in the same way in order would be

1. *Amara pañkti*. 15 93 reads *vāravāṇa*.

*senāmukham*, *gulma*, *gaṇa*, *vāhīni*, *ṣṛtanā*, *camūḥ* *anikini*, *daśānikini* and *akṣauhiṇi*. A bow (is also known as) *kodaṇḍa*, and *iṣvāsa*. The tip (*koṭi*) (of a bow) is known as *aṭani*.

15. The middle of a bow (is called) *lastaka*. (The bowstring is called) *maurvi*, *ṃyā*, *śiṅḡini* and *guṇa*. (The words) *ṣṛṣatka*, *bāṇa*, *viśikha*, *ajihmaga*, *khaga* and *āsuga* (denote an arrow).

16. (The words) *tūṇa*, *uṣāsaṅga*, *tūṇira* and *niṣaṅga* (denote a quiver) both in the masculine and feminine. (The words) *asi*, *riṣṭi*, *nistrimśa*, *karavāla* and *kṛpāṇa* (mean a sword).

17. *Tsaru* is the handle of a sword. *Īli* and *karavālikā* (denote a short sword). The words *kuṭhāra* and *svadhiti* (denote an axe). (The word *kuṭhāra* is used in) both (masculine and feminine). (The words) *churikā* and *asiṣutrikā* (denote a knife).

18. *Prāsa* is known to be *kunta* (meaning a spear). *Sarvalā* and *tomara* (mean an iron club) (used) in the masculine and neuter. (Bards who sing praises and wake up in the morning are called *vaitālika-s* and *bodhakara-s*. *Māgadha-s* (are bards in general). *Vandin-s* and *stuti* (*ṣṛṭhaka-s*) (are bards singing in praise of the kings).

19. *Samśaptaka-s* are those who do not turn back from battle. (The words) *ṣatākā*, *vaijayanti*, *ketanam* and *dhvajam* (denote a banner). (The word) *dhvajam* (is used) in the masculine and neuter.

20. (A fight with enthusiasm) I first, I first, (is known as) *ahamṣūrvikā*, in the feminine. Where mutual ego is shown (I am capable) it is known as *ahamahamikā*.

21. (The words) *śakti*, *ṣarākrama*, *ṣrāṇa*, *śauryam*, *sthāma*, *saha* and *balam* (denote valour). *Mūrcchā*, *kaśmalam* and *moha* (denote stupefaction). *Avamardana* and *ṣiḍanam* (mean devastation of grains etc. by the invading forces).

22. (The words) *abhyavaskandanam* and *abhyāsādanam* (mean encountering an enemy by trick), *Vijaya* and *jaya* (are synonyms meaning conquest). (The words) *nirvāsanam*, *saṃjñāṣanam*, *māraṇam* and *ṣratighātanam* (mean killing).

23. (The words) *ṣaṅcatā*, *kāladharma*,<sup>1</sup> *diṣṭānta*, *ṣralaya* and *atyaya* would (mean death). (The words) *vit*, *bhūmiṣṣṛk* and *vaiśya* (denote a tradesman and agriculturist). (The words) *vṛtti*, *vartanam* and *jivanam* (mean livelihood in general).

24. *Kṛṣi* (agriculture) etc. are to be known (as the means of livelihood of a *vaiśya*). (The words) *kusidam* and *vṛddhijivikā* mean existing on interest by lending money). *Uddhāra* (means debt). (The word) *arthaprayoga*<sup>1</sup> (also means *kusida*). *Kaṇiśa* (denotes) the ear of a corn.

25. *Kimśāru* (denotes) the beard of a corn. *Stamba* (means) a bunch of grass etc. (Paddy etc. are denoted by the words) *dhānyam*, *vrihi* and *stambakari*. (The minute particles of straw) are known as *kaḍaṅgara* and *busam*.

26. Blackgram etc. are grains in the form of pods. Barley and other grains are in the form of beards. (Grains such as) *nivāra* are wild grains (*trṇadhānya*). A winnowing basket is also known *prasphoṭanam*.

27. (A sack made of cloth to carry grains is known as) *syūta* and *praseva*. *Kaṇḍola* and *piṭa* (denote a cotainer made of bamboo etc). *Kaṭa* and *kiliṅjaka* (relate to different varieties of reeds). These are similar. *Rasavati*, *pākasthānam* and *mahānasa* (denote a kitchen).

28. The kitchen superintendent (is called) *paurogava*. (Cooks are denoted by the words) *sūpakāra-s*, *vallava-s*, *ārālika-s*, *āndhasika-s* *sūda-s*, *audanika-s* and *guṇa-s*.

29. (A frying pan is denoted by the word) *ambariṣam*, in the neuter and *bhrāṣṭra*, in the masculine. (The words) *karkarī*, *ālu* and *galantikā* (denote a small pitcher). (A big pitcher is called) *aliṅjara* and *maṇika*. *Suṣavi* (is the name of) black cumin seed.

30. (The words) *āranāla* and *kulmāṣam* (denote a kind of gruel). The words *vāhlika*, *hiṅgu* and *rāmaṭham* (denote asafoetida). (The words) *niśā*, *haridrā* and *pitā*, feminine (denote turmeric). (The words) *matsyaṇḍī* and *phāṇitam* (mean molasses).

31. Transformed milk (is called) *kūrcikā*. (The words) *cikkaṇam*, *masṛṇam* and *snigdham* (denote bland). (Rice parched and flattened is denoted by the words) *pṛthuka* and *cipiṭaka*. Fried and powdered barley (is called) *dhānā*, in the feminine.

32. (The words) *jemanam*, *leha* and *āhāra* (denote food). (The words) *māheyi* and *saurabhī* denote a cow. Those which are yoked (are called) *yugyaḥ*, *prāsāṅgyaḥ* and *sākaṭaḥ*.

1. Cf. *Amara paṅkti* 1714. The *Purāṇa* while making an extract mixes the two terms

33. (A cow) that has delivered a calf long time back (is called) *vaṣkayaṇi*, and (one) that has delivered recently (is called) *dhenu*. (The cow) that is attacked by a bull (for mating) (is called) *sondhini*. A barren cow (is called) *vehat*.

34-35. (A person sustaining himself by buying and selling is called) *paṇyājīva* and *āpaṇika*. A thing left as trust (is called) *uṣanidhi* and the word is masculine. The words *viṣaṇa* and *vikraya* (mean sale). The numerals one to eighteen (are to be used) in all the three (genders) and the numerals twenty onwards take only singular always. While counting number two takes the plural. Among them (the numerals) upto ninety are feminine.

36-37. (A unit measuring ten is called a *paṅkti*). Successive multiples of a *paṅkti* would be hundred, thousand etc. They are measured by *tulāṅguliprastha*<sup>1</sup>-s. Five *guñja*-s (make) one *ādyamāṣaka*. Sixteen (*māṣa*-s) (make) one *akṣa* (otherwise called) *karṣa*. The word is not feminine. Four *karṣa*-s (would make) one *palam*. An *akṣa* (measure) of gold (is known as) *swarṇa* and *bista*. A *pala* (measure) of the same (is called) *kuruvista*.

38. One hundred *pala*-s (make) one *tulā*. That (word) is feminine. Twenty *tulā*-s would make one *bhāra*. (A *karṣa* measure of silver) is called *kārṣāpaṇa* or *kārṣika*. A *karṣa* (measure) of copper (is known as) *paṇa*.

39-40a. (The words) *dravyam*, *vittam*, *svāpatayam*, *riktham*, *ṛktham*, *dhanam* and *vasu* (denote wealth). (The words) *riti* and *ārakūṭa* (denote brass). It is not in the feminine. (The words) *śulbam* and *audumbaram* (are synonyms of) *tāmraṅgam* (brass). *Kālāyasam* and *aya* (are synonyms of) *loha* (iron).

40b. (The words) *kṣāra* and *kāca* (alkali) (are synonyms). (The words) *capala*, *rasa*, *sūta* and *pārada* (are synonyms denoting mercury).

41. The horn of the wild buffalo (is called) *gavalam*. *Trapu* and *piccaṭam*<sup>2</sup> (tin) (are synonyms). *Sisakam*<sup>3</sup> (denotes lead). (The words) *hiṅḍira*, *abdhiḥkapha* (sea-foam) and *phena* (are

1. *tulā* is explained below; *aṅguli* is fingerbreadth and one *prastha* is equal to thirtytwo *pala*-s explained below.

2. The other equivalents are given in the next vers e.

3. The *Purāṇa* wrongly mixes this word with the previous.

synonyms). (The words) *madhūcchiṣṭam* and *sikthakam* (bee-wax) are synonyms.

42. (The words) *raṅgam* and *vaṅgam*<sup>1</sup> (denote tin). (The words) *picu* and *tūla* (mean cotton). *Kunaṭi* (dentoes) *manaḥsilā* (arsenic) (especially the Nepalese variety). *Yavakṣāra* (nitre) would be (known as) *pākya*. (The words) *tvakkṣiri* and *vaṁśaro-canā* (denote a medicinal substance got from the bamboo).

43. *Vṛṣalāḥ*, *jaghanyajāḥ* and *sūdrāḥ* (are synonyms) (denoting the fourth class of men). *Caṇḍāla*-s and other low caste men (are known as) mixed (castes). *Kāru* and *śilpi* (denote the artisan). Their union (with those) of their own caste (is called) *śreṇi*, both in (the feminine and masculine).

44. (A painter is denoted by the words) *raṅgā-jiva* and *citrakāra*. (A carpenter is denoted by the words) *takṣā*, *vardhaki* and *tvastā*. (The words) *nāḍindama* and *svaṛṇakāra* (denote a goldsmith). (The words) *nāḍita* and *antāvasāyi* (denote a barber).

45. (A shepherd is denoted by the words) *jābāla* and *ajājiva*. (A person living by serving the god is called) *devājiva* and *devala*. (Actors are denoted by the words) *jāyājiva*-s and *sailūṣa*-s. (The words) *bhṛtaka* and *bhṛtibhuk* (denote a person living on wages).

46. (A low person is denoted by the words) *vivarna*, *pāmara*, *nica*, *prākṛta*, *prthagjana*, *nihina*, *apasada* and *jālma*. (The words) *dāsera* and *ceṭaka* (are used to denote) a servant.

47. (The words) *paṭu*, *peśala* and *dakṣa* (mean a clever person). *Mṛgayu* is known to be *lubdhaka* (hunter). *Cāṇḍāla* (low class man) (is also known as) *divākirti*. (The word) *pustam* (is used) in (the sense of) plastering.

48. A puppet (made of cloth etc.) is *pāñcālikā*. Any young animal (is known as) *varkara*. (The words) *mañjūṣā*, *peṭaka* and *peṭā* (denote a box). (The words) *tulya*, *sādhāraṇa* and *sama* (mean equal or similar). (The word) *pratimā* would (mean) *pratikṛti* (an image or statue). The *brahma* and other classes have been described so far.

1. Cf. the previous verse.

## CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND SIXTYSEVEN\*

*The class of words dependent on the substantives  
for their genders*

*Fire-god said :*

1. Listen to me ! I shall describe the genders of the substantives in general. (The words) *sukṛti*, *punyaṅvān* and *dhanya* (denote a fortunate person). (A generous person is denoted by the words) *mahecccha* and *mahāśaya*.

2. (The words) *pravīṇa*, *nīpūṇa*, *abhijña*, *viñña*, *niṣṇāta* and *sikṣita*<sup>1</sup> (a proficient person) (are synonyms). (A very liberal person is denoted by the words) *vadānya*, *sthūlalakṣya*, *dānaśauṇḍa* and *bahuprada*.

3. The words *kṛti*,<sup>2</sup> *kṛtajña*<sup>3</sup> and *kuśala* (mean a clever person). (The word) *āsakta* (means one drawn towards something). (The words) *udyukta* and *utsuka* (mean being drawn towards something by one's own desire). (The words) *ibhya*, *ādhyā* and *parivṛḍha* (denote a rich man). *Adhibhūh*, *nāyaka* and *adhīpa* (mean a master).

4. (A person endowed with fortune is denoted by the words) *lakṣmivān*, *lakṣmaṇa* and *śrīla*. (The words) *svatantra*, *apāvṛta* and *svairi* (denote an independent person). *Khalapū* would (mean) *bahukara* (a sweeper). (The words) *dirghasūtra* and *cirakriya* (denote a lazy person).

5. *Jālma* and *asamikṣyakāri* (mean a person acting without discriminating good and bad). One who is slow in doing things is known as *kuṅṭha*. (One who is proficient in doing things is) *karmaśūra* or *karmaṭha*. (The words) *bhakṣaka*, *ghasmara* and *admara* (denote a gluttonous person).

6. *Loluṣa* (denotes a person having ardent desire). (The words) *gardhana* and *grdhnuḥ* (denote a greedy person). (A modest person is denoted by the words) *vinita* and *praśrita*. (The

---

\*This chapter summarises *Amara*, *kāṇḍa* III, *pañktis* 2030 ff.

1. Other words having the same meaning have been wrongly put in the next verse in the *Purāna*.

2. These words should be read with those in verse 2.

3. This word means a grateful person. Probably a mistake for *kṛtamukha*. Cf. *Amara*, *pañkti*, 2033.

words) *dhr̥ṣṇuk* and *viyāta* (are synonyms of) *dhr̥ṣṭa* (immodest). *Nibhṛta*<sup>1</sup> and *pratibhānvita* (denote a person having imagination).

7. (The word) *adhira* (means a person afflicted by fear, hunger, thirst etc.). (A cowardly or timid person is denoted by the words) *bhiruka* and *bhiru*. (The words) *vandāru* and *abhivā-daka* (denote a polite or respectful person). (The words) *bhūṣṇu*, *bhaviṣṇu* and *bhavitā* (mean a person desiring to become rich). A knower (is denoted by the words) *vidura* and *vinduka*.

8-9a. (The words) *matta*, *ṣauṇḍa*, *utkaṭa* and *kṣiba* (denote an intoxicated person). *Caṇḍa* (means) *atyantakoṣana* (extremely short-tempered). *Devadrayaṅ* is a person adoring a deity. A person serving the world is *viśvadrayaṅ*. A companion, especially the husband (is denoted by the word) *sadhryaṅ*. A person serving crookedly (is called) *tiryaṅ*.

9b-10a. (The two words) *vācoyuktiṭaṣu* and *vāgmī* (denote a logician). A garrulous person (is denoted by the word) *vāvadūka*. (A person indulging in unrefined talks is denoted by the words) *jalpāka*, *vācāla*, *vācāṭa* and *bahugarhyavāk*.

10b-11. (One who is censured is called) *apadhvasta* and *dhikkṛta*. (The words) *kilita* and *samyata* (denote a person) bound (with rope etc.). (The words) *ravaṇa*<sup>2</sup> and *śabdana* (denote a person making sound). (The words) *nāndivādi* and *nāndikara* are synonyms (denoting laudatory singer). (The words) *vyasanārta* and *uparakta* (denote a person afflicted by misfortune)<sup>3</sup>.

12. (The words) *vihasta* and *vyākula* are synonyms (meaning a person who does not know what to do on account of grief). (The words) *nṛśaṃsa*, *krūra*, *ghātuka* and *pāpa* (mean a person bent on harming others). *Dhūrta* and *vañcaka* (mean a cheat). (The words) *mūrkhā*, *vaidheya* and *vāliṣa* (denote a fool).

13. (A miser is denoted by the words) *kadarya*, *kṛpaṇa* and *kṣudra*. (The words) *mārgaṇa*, *yācaka* and *arthī* (mean a beggar). (The word) *ahaṃyu* (means) an egoistic person. A person endowed with good fortune (is called) *śubhaṃyuh*.

14-15a. (The words) *kāntam*, *manoramam* and *rucyam* (are used in the sense of a beautiful thing). A thing that is desired

1. *Amara*, *paṅkti* 2075 reads *pragalbha*.

2. The *Purāṇa* wrongly reads *carāṇa*.

3. The next two words repeated from verse 10—obviously a mistake.

(is denoted by the words) *hr̥dyam* and *abhiṣṭam*. (The words) *aśāram* and *phalgu* (mean a worthless thing). (The word) *sūnyam* (means void). (An important thing or person is denoted by the words) *mukhya*, *varya* and *varenya*.<sup>1</sup> (The words) *śreyān*, *śreṣṭha* and *puṣkala* would (mean the outstanding). (The words) *prāgrya*, *agrya*, *agriya* and *agriya* (also mean an important person).

15b-16. (The words) *vaḍram*, *uru* and *vipulam* (mean wide). (The words) *pinam*, *piva*, *sthūlam* and *pivaram* (mean) stout. (The words) *stoka*, *alpa* and *kṣullaka* (are used in the sense of a little). (A minute thing is denoted by the words) *sūkṣmam*, *ślakṣnam*, *debhram*, *kṛṣam* and *tanu*. (The words) *mātrā* and *kuṭi* (in the feminine) and *lava* and *kaṇa* (in the masculine) (have the same sense). (The words) *bhūyiṣṭham*, *puruha* and *puru* (mean plenty).

17. (The words) *akhaṇḍam*, *pūrṇam* and *sakalam* (denote the whole). (The words) *upakaṇṭha*, *antika*, *abhita*, *samiṭa*, *savidha*<sup>2</sup> and *abhyāsa* (mean near). (The word) *nediṣṭham* (means) very near.

18. (The word) *daviṣṭham* would (mean) very far. (The words) *nistala* and *vartula* (would mean) circular. (The words) *ucca*, *prāmsu*, *unnata* and *udagra* (mean high). (An eternal thing is denoted by the words) *dhr̥wa*, *nitya* and *sanātana*.

19. (The words) *āviddham*, *kuṭilam*, *bhugnam*, *vellitam* and *vakram* (denote the crooked). (An unsteady thing is denoted by the words) *cañcalam* and *taralam*. (The words) *kaṭhoram*, *jaṭharam*<sup>3</sup> and *dṛḍham* (mean hard).

20. (The words) *pratyaḡra*, *abhinava*, *navya*, *navina*, *nūtana* and *nava* (mean fresh or new). (The word) *ekatāna* (means) concentrated on a single object. (The word) *uccaṇḍam* (means) quickly.

21. (The words) *uccāvacam* and *naikabhedam* (mean manifold ways). (The word) *sambādha* (means a narrow way). *Kalilam* (means a difficult path). (The words) *timitam*, *stimitam* and *klinnam* (mean wet). (The word) *abhiyoga* (means) *abhiḡraha* (an attack).

1. Some of the other words having the same meaning have been given in the *Purāṇa* in the next verse after a break.

2. The ptd. text of the *Purāṇa* reads *sannidha*.

3. Also spelt as *jaratham*.

22. (The word) *sphāti* (is used to mean) increase. (The word) *prathā* (is used to denote) fame. (The word) *samāhāra* (means) a collection. (The word) *apahāra* (means) *apacaya* (removal). (The words) *vihāra* and *ṣarikrama* (mean movement on foot).

23. (The words) *pratyāhāra* and *upādānam* (are used in the sense of restraining the sense-organs). (The extraction of extraneous objects from the body is denoted by the words) *nirhāra* and *abhyavakarṣaṇam*. (The words) *vighna*, *antarāya* and *pratyūha* would (mean an obstacle). (The words) *āsyā*, *āsyānā* and *sthiti* (are used in the sense of a seat).

24. (The words) *sannidhi* and *sannikarṣa* (would (mean proximity). (A difficult path is indicated by the words) *saṅkrama* and *durgasañcara*. (The words) *upalambha* and *anubhava* (convey the meaning of experience). (The words) *pratyādeśa* and *nirākṛti* (are used in the sense of rejection).

25. (The words) *parirambha*, *pariṣvaṅga*, *saṁśleṣa* and *upagūhanam* (denote embrace). An inference (is that which is gained) by means of *pakṣa* (subject of a syllogism), *hetu* (reason) and the like<sup>1</sup>. The words *ḍamara*<sup>2</sup> and *viplava* (are used) in (the sense of) frightening an enemy by shouts.

26. The knowledge about an object, that is not perceived, (arising) from the statement is said to be *śābdam*.<sup>3</sup> *Upamāna* (*ka*) (comparison) would be the cognition arising from seeing the resemblance in a similar (object).

27. *Arthāpatti* (presumption) would be the knowledge about a different thing which would not exist without (the thing seen) *Abhāva* (non-existence) is the cognition "it is not there" when the counter-correlative is not apprehended on the ground. Thus ends the genders of substantives told by Hari (Viṣṇu) for the sake of knowledge of men.

1. This is not found in *Amara*.

2. The printed text wrongly reads *bhramara*.

3. This and other terms of *Nyāya* given here are not found in *Amara*.

## CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND SIXTYEIGHT

*Constant dissolution, occasional and total dissolution*

*Fire-god said :*

1-2. The dissolution of beings is of four kinds, such as constant dissolution of all beings (that takes place daily), the dissolution (known as) *Brāhma*, (otherwise known as) *naimittika* (*pralaya*), the *prākṛta pralaya*, occurring at the end of a thousand of four *yuga*<sup>1</sup> periods and the absolute dissolution (of all beings) by the union of all souls in the supreme soul by means of knowledge.

3-5. I shall describe to you the nature of the *naimittika* dissolution that occurs at the end of a *kalpa*<sup>2</sup> period. When the earth (has become) almost depleted at the end of a thousand of four *yuga* cycles, there would be a severe drought for hundred years. Then (all) the beings would perish. Then (lord) Viṣṇu, the lord of the universe, remaining in the seven rays of the Sun, drinks the waters. The water in the oceans, the earth and the nether world and the like gets dried up.

6-8. Then by the divine power (of lord Viṣṇu), the very same seven rays (of the Sun), nourished by the water, become seven Suns. O Twice-born ! They burn the three worlds completely together with the nether world. (The surface of) the earth would (appear) like the back of a tortoise. Then the terrible fire (of dissolution), a manifestation of (lord) Rudra, burns the nether worlds below in association with the breath of the serpent Śeṣa<sup>3</sup>. Then the all-pervading (fire) burns the (region) from the nether worlds to the surface of the earth and from there to the heaven.

9-11. Then all the three worlds appear like one blazing mass. Then the inhabitants of the two worlds, oppressed by the terrible heat, ascend to the Maharloka and to the Janaloka from

---

1. The four *yugas*—*kṛta*, *tretā*, *dvāpara* and *kali* are reckoned as equivalent to 1,728,000, 1,296,000, 864,000 and 432,000 years respectively.

2. One *kalpa* is equivalent to a day of Brahmā consisting of one thousand *yugas*.

3. The serpent having thousand hoods on whose body reclines (lord) Viṣṇu.

Maharloka. After the world is burnt (by the God) (assuming) the form of Rudra, there arise clouds of different shapes together with lightning from the breath of (lord) Hari (Viṣṇu). They rain for a hundred years and put down the fire that has arisen.

12-13. When the water rises upto the region of the seven sages (Great Bear), a hundred storms issue from the breath of (the lord) Viṣṇu and disperse those clouds. Then after having drunk the wind lord Hari lies down on that mass of water, having assumed the form of Brahmā, extolled by sea-dwelling persons who have gained supernatural powers and by sages.

14. (Lord) Madhusūdana (slayer of demon Madhu; i.e. Viṣṇu) lies down (on that mass of water) resting in the yogic sleep, which is his divine illusory form, contemplating His own form known as Vāsudeva.

15. He then lies down (in sleep) for a *kalpa*<sup>1</sup> (period) and after waking up, in the form of Brahmā, He creates. O Twice-born! Then (the universe) lies in an unmanifest state in the Prakṛti for two *parārdha*<sup>2</sup>-s.

16-19. One place is ten times the other place when expansion is made from one place. Then the eighteenth place would be said to be *parārdha*. The *prākṛta* dissolution is known to be twice the *parārdha*. O Twice-born! When everything is burnt by contact with fire and on account of drought, (it is *prākṛta* dissolution). The modifications of *mahat* (one of the principles), (get merged into one) losing their separate existence, and get re-absorbed (into *prakṛti*) on account of the will of (lord) Kṛṣṇa. Water first swallows the qualities of earth such as smell and the like. Then earth (divested of) its characteristic of smell tends towards dissolution.

20. Then water having the characteristic of taste remains. It is drunk by light. When it is lost, fire glows on.

21. Then wind swallows light together with its characteristic of colour and form. When fire is lost, strong wind blows on.

22. The characteristic of wind, namely touch, is then consumed by ether. O Twice-born! When wind is also lost, ether remains without any sound.

1. See p. 1028 fn. 1 above.

2. equal to 100,000,000,000,000 years.

23. (The characteristic) of ether is sound. Ether (together with its characteristic) is swallowed by *Bhūtādi* ( i.e. *Ahaṅkāra* or Ego Principle in which the element of Tamas dominates). Ether born of Ego and *Bhūtādi* are swallowed by *Mahat* i.e. *Buddhi tattva* (the first evolute of *Prakṛti* in Sāṅkhya).

24-25. Earth gets merged in water, water in light, light in wind, wind in ether and ether in ego. O Twice-born ! that (ego) (gets merged) in the principle of *mahat* and (the principle of) *mahat* is swallowed by *prakṛti* (nature). The *prakṛti* (consists of two parts) such as manifest and unmanifest. The manifest (part of *prakṛti*) gets merged in the unmanifest.

26. The *puruṣa* (primordial being) is pure and is one undecaying (entity). He is also a part of the Supreme Soul. These *prakṛti* and *puruṣa* get merged in the Supreme Soul. There is no determination such as name, species and the like in that lord of all. (That Supreme Soul) is composed only of existence. He is to be known and (is of the form of) knowledge. (All) other souls (are merged) in (such Supreme Soul).

## CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND SIXTYNINE

### *The description of absolute dissolution and the process of creation*

*Fire-god said :*

1. I shall describe absolute dissolution. Absolute dissolution arises from knowledge after having known the sufferings caused by the mind etc. from one's disinclination.

2. The sufferings are of two kinds : physical and mental. The physical sufferings are manifold. O Twice-born ! Listen to me ! I shall describe them.

3-5. The (individual) 'soul after having discarded the sensual body enters the womb as a result of (the past) deeds. O Twice-born ! this body known as *ātivāhika* (that is carried forward) is peculiar to men alone. O Twice-born ! when the time for death comes the bodies of men are carried away by the

servants of Yama (God of Death) along the path of Yama. O Sage! this is not the case with the other beings. Such a person would wander in heaven and hell like the *ghaṭayantra*<sup>1</sup>.

6-7. O Brahmin ! This is a land of deeds and is known to bear fruits (of one's actions). Yama (God of Death) is the cause of one's birth. He determines the hell (to which one has to go) on account of the deed. Being awaited by them (men), Yama, makes them get their befitting places (dependent) on their (deeds). The beings which have got ethereal (bodies) reach the (befitting) wombs.

8-9a. A man is led by the messengers of Yama and he sees him (Yama). A pious man is honoured by him and a sinner is beaten. Citragupta<sup>2</sup> informs him the good or bad deed (done) in (every) house.

9b-12a. (The departed soul) dwells in the *Ātivāhika* (provisional) body and partakes the funeral oblations offered by the relatives. O Knower of virtue ! (After the funeral is over) (the soul) rejects that *preta* body (attained after death) and ascends to another region from that of the *preta*-s. It dwells (there) experiencing hunger and thirst and partakes the raw offerings (made to it by the relatives). A person does not get release from this newly acquired body without (eating) the funeral oblations. He partakes the ball-offerings there itself.

12b-13a. When the *sapīṇḍikaraṇa*<sup>3</sup> has been done, a (dead) man discards the *preta* body and gets a sensuous body after one year.

13b-14. Both the bodies are said to be sensuous and designated as inauspicious and auspicious. After having enjoyed by means of the sensuous body, one gets released from the bondage of deeds. Demons devour that body after that.

15. O Twice-born! A person who does sinful deeds, would enjoy (the fruits of good deeds at first) in the heaven. Then he takes a second body of sinners to experience (the fruits of sin).

---

1. A mechanism for drawing water from a well.

2. One of the assistants of Yama who records the virtuous and vicious deeds of men.

3. The rite performed at the end of one year or on the twelfth day after the death of a person to unite the dead with the departed ancestors.

16. After experiencing the fruits of sin one that has enjoyed heaven, is thereafter born in a pure and prosperous family.

17. A person doing pious deeds having (a little of) sin would first experience (the fruits of) the sin and when that body is dissolved would attain a beautiful body.

18. A person gets freed from hell even if a little of past deed still remains. There is no doubt that he would be born as an animal after getting liberated from hell.

19-20. The soul after having entered the womb dwells in the foetus. It gets hard in the second (month). The limbs (grow) in the third (month). Bones, skin and flesh (are formed) in the fourth (month). Hair grows in the fifth (month). Heart (is formed) in the sixth. The soul feels pain in the seventh.

21. Thus (the child) remains in the womb being covered with the placenta and having hands folded above the head. A eunuch stays in the middle (of the abdomen), a female (child) on the left side and a male (child) on the right side.

22. The child stays in the womb facing the back (of the mother). There is no doubt that it (the child) recognises the person in whose (womb) it stays.

23. It knows fully all the incidents of previous life from birth onwards. A person finds a great darkness and (experiences) suffering.

24. In the seventh month it partakes the food eaten by the mother. It becomes extremely restive in the eighth and ninth months.

25. It suffers when there is coition and physical exercise on the part of the mother. It becomes sick when (the mother is) sick, a moment (of agony) appearing as if lasting for a hundred years.

26. It is tormented by the (past) deeds and makes resolutions : "O Brahman ! After getting out from the womb I will gain knowledge relating to liberation (from this bondage)".

27. Being pressed down by the wind inside (mother's) womb, it gets out through the vagina. It gets afflicted in the first month (after birth) and feels pain when touched with the hand.

28. The auditory organs, minor organs and the state of being separate (are produced) in the body from the ether with

(its attribute of) sound. The process of breathing, movement and the feeling of touch are due to the wind.

29. Personality, sense of seeing, heat, celebrity, biles, intellect, colour, strength, shade, splendour and valour arise in the body from fire.

30. Sweat, the organ of taste, moisture, marrow, taste, blood, semen, urine and phlegm and the like are produced in the body from water.

31-33. The sense of smell, hair, nail, weight and firmness of the bones (are) from earth. The delicate organs, skin, flesh, heart, navel, marrow, ordure, fat, moisture and the upper part of the belly are got from the mother. Veins, arteries and semen are got from the father. Lust, anger, fear, joy, the states of being pious and not pious, form, voice, colour and the discharge of urine and the like are due to one's own (state).

34. Ignorance, negligence, idleness, thirst, hunger, infatuation, jealousy, defectiveness, grief, weariness and fear are qualities of *tamas* (temperament).

35. O Great sage ! Lust, anger, valour, desire to do sacrifice, garrulousness, ego and contempt for others are qualities of *rājasa* (temperament).

36. Desire to be righteous, desire for emancipation, extreme devotion to (lord) Keśava (Viṣṇu), compassion and diligence should be termed as arising from *sāttvika* (temperament).

37. A person in whom wind predominates would be fickle, irritable, cowardly, garrulous, yielding to vices of *kali* (*yuga*) and dreams of flying in the air.

38. A person in whom bile predominates would be prematurely grey-haired, irritable, very learned, fond of battle and one who sees conflagrations in dream.

39. A person in whom phlegm abounds would be a steadfast friend, constantly enthusiastic, having firm limbs, endowed with wealth and one who perceives water and white colour in dream.

40-41. Serum is the life force in the body of beings. Blood (serves as) the anointment. Flesh causes urination and perspiration. Bones make (the body) firm. Marrow would fill up and increase potency. Semen gives potency. *Ojas* (virility) is the sustainer of life.

42. Virility is subtler and lesser yellow than semen and flows in the vicinity of heart. There are six parts of the body, viz, two thighs (legs), two hands, head and belly.

43-45. The six external layers of skin are the epidermis, (the layer) that contains blood, the next one that contains features of grace, the fourth one that bears the sacs (storing fluids), the fifth one that is the seat of abscesses and the sixth one that supports life. There are seven sheaths (namely) that which supports flesh, the second one, blood, that which is the prop for liver and spleen, the next one that holds fat and that which supports bone, that which holds marrow, phlegm and feces, situated in the abdomen. The sixth is that which holds bile and (the next one) that holds semen in the region of that sac.

## CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND SEVENTY

### *The constituent parts of a body*

*Fire-god said :*

1-2. The auditory organ, skin, the two eyes, tongue, nose, intellect, the five elements and their qualities (such as) sound, touch, colour, taste and smell, the anus, the organ of generation, the two hands, the two feet are the embodiments of sky. Their functions are emission, exhilaration, taking, movement and speech and the like.

3. Five among these are organs of action, five are organs of sense. The five great elements are objects of senses having the mind as that which governs.

4. The soul is unmanifest. The principles are twentyfour. The *ṣuṣa* is the supreme. (The soul exists) just like the fish in the water attached and detached.

5. The qualities *sattva*, *rajas* and *tamas* dwell in the unmanifest (*Prakṛti*). The inner being is the *ṣuṣa*. It is the Supreme brahman, the cause.

6-7. One who knows this Supreme *puruṣa*, attains the supreme position. There are seven sacs in the body. The first one is the sac of blood. (The other sacs) are those of phlegm, of undigested food and of bile. The fifth one is that of digestion. The receptacles for wind and urine (are the sixth) and seventh. The uterus is the eighth one in women.

8-9. The sac of digestion gets dilated by bile and the vagina by internal fire. The uterus would resemble lotus and expand during the menstrual period. There it holds semen together with blood. O Sage ! semen deposited in the vagina is led to the uterus in course of time.

10. Even during the menstruous period, the vagina would be surrounded by wind, bile and phlegm. It would not get dilated then.

11-12. O Fortunate one ! heart, lungs, liver and spleen are formed in due succession. O Knower of virtue ! spleen and liver of men are formed from the essence of the serum that gets condensed. Lungs (are formed) from the froth of blood.

13. Blood is then converted into bile and it is then known as *tanḍaka*. Heart is formed from the spreading of fat and blood.

14. Intestines of mortals are formed from the spreading of blood and flesh. They should be known as three and a half *vyāma-s*<sup>1</sup> (long) in men.

15. They are three *vyāma-s* (long) in women according to those learned in scriptures. Its rise in passion is said to be from the union of blood and wind.

16. Heart assumes the shape of a lotus from the expansion of phlegm. That cavity hangs down and the soul remains therein.

17. All the feelings which accompany consciousness remain there. Spleen is to its left and liver is on the right.

18-19a. Lungs are on the right side of the (above) lotus. The sense organs are formed from the veins and arteries in the body which carry the phlegm and blood. They are the means to cognise objects.

---

1. A *vyāma* is a measure of length equal to the space between the tips of the fingers of either hand, when the arms are extended.

19b-20. The orb of the eyes is white. It is a paternal element and it owes its origin to the phlegm. The orb is black arising from wind and it is a maternal element. The entire skin is formed from the bile and it is formed from the father as well as the mother.

21-24. The tongue is formed out of flesh, blood and phlegm. The testes are from the marrow, blood, phlegm and fat. One has to know the ten vital places of life in the body (namely) head, heart, navel, throat, tongue, semen, blood, anus, pelvis and ankles. Sinews are said to be sixteen in the two hands, two feet, including four on the back and the neck. The membranes are sixteen from head to foot in the body. Flesh, sinews, arteries and bones are firmly placed around the wrist and ankles separately.

25. There are six brush (-like formations) in the hands, feet, neck and anus as pointed out by men.

26. There are four thread-like flesh formations in the region of the spinal column. There are ninety muscles, which bind them (in their places).

27-28a. There are seven *sivani-s* (a kind of thin muscles), among which five are on the head, one each in the penis and the tongue. There are sixtythree bones. Together with the minute ones there are sixtyfour in all. The teeth and nails are twenty.

28b-30. Hands, legs and the tips of these are the four places (of bones). Bones are sixty in the fingers, two on the heels, four at the ankles, four at the elbows, the same number on the shanks, two each at the knee, cheek and thighs which arise from the hip and shoulder. One has to know in the same way at the *akṣasthāna*, shoulder and hip.

31. There are one at the penis, forty-five on the back, and similar number of bones at the neck, collar bones and cheek.

32. The base of these which are two, have their places at the neck, eye, throat, nose and feet. The ribs together with the palate and lumps of flesh are seventytwo.

33. (There are) two temporal bones. There are four (bones) on the skull and the head. There are seventeen bones on the chest. There are two hundred and ten (bones) of the joints.

34. Among the sixty-eight in the arms sixty-one remain distributed. In the neighbourhood are eighty-three (bones). The sinews are nine hundred.

35. (There are) two hundred and thirty (bones) and seventy in the interior. Six hundred go upwards. (The bones) of the arm have been described.

36. The muscles are five hundred. Forty (among them) go upwards. There are four hundred in the arms and sixty in the interval.

37-39. There will be twenty-five more, ten more on the breast, thirteen in the organ of generation and four in the uterus in the case of women. There are thirty lakh veins in the bodies of men. There are also others numbering nine (thousand) and fifty-six thousand. They carry the (vital) fluid, the moisture and the fat inside the body just as the channels (carry water) to the basins (around plants).

40-43. O Great sage! There are seventytwo crores of hair. O Twice-born! Thea *ñjali*<sup>1</sup> measure of marrow, fat, urine, bile and phlegm, feces, blood and fluids are in order one and a half times more than the preceding one respectively. The semen is half *añjali*. The *ojas* is half of that. Wisemen point out that the menstrual fluid (in women) is four times. Knowing that the body is a mass of dirt and impurity, one should discard and (take interest) in the soul.

## CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND SEVENTYONE

### *The description of hells*

*Fire-god said:*

1-2. I will describe to you the path (leading) to *Yama* (i.e. the world of God of Death) which have been pointed out (by the learned). The bodily heat getting intense and diffused by the deranged wind, obstructs the body as well as all the defects. Moreover it breaks the subtle places of life (in the body).

---

1. A measure of corn.

3-4. The wind excited by cold seeks an aperture (for its movement). The seven apertures are—two eyes, two ears, two nostrils and head. The eighth one is the mouth. Generally the lives of pious men escape through these holes.

5. (The lives) of doers of bad deeds (escape) through the anus and the organ of generation in the lower (region). The lives of yogins get out breaking the head by own will.

6-7. When the time for death has come, when the life force has approached the *apāna*<sup>1</sup>, when knowledge has been engulfed by darkness and when the vulnerable spots (in the body) have been surrounded, the life is moved by the wind from the umbilicus. Being affected thus it draws the eight fundamental attributes of vitality (life) within.

8-10. The accomplished beings and celestials witness with their spiritual vision, the exit (of life), the birth and the entry into the uterus. As soon as the life leaves the body it assumes a light body by means of *yoga*. When one is dead, the ether, wind and lustre go upwards from the body, the water and earth (go downwards) (and get merged in their respective elements). The messengers of Yama lead this light body.

11. The path to the place of God of Death is much dreadful. It extends over (a space of) eighty-six thousand (*krośas*). Being led thus, it partakes the food and water given by the kinsmen.

12. After having seen the God of Death, being directed by him on the words of Citragupta (the personal assistant of God of Death), a person is taken to the dreadful hells. A virtuous person is lead to the heaven by auspicious path.

13-14a. I shall describe the hells in which the sinners are placed and the sufferings (therein). There are twenty-eight important hells below the earth at the end of the seventh layer of the region covered by dreadful darkness.

14b-18. Ghorā is the name of the first hell. Sughorā is below that. The others are Atighorā, Mahāghorā, Ghorarūpā, the fifth, the sixth known as Taralatārā, the seventh one Bhayānakā, Bhayotkaṭā, Kālarātrī, Mahācaṇḍā, Caṇḍā, Kolāhalā, the one known as Pracaṇḍā, Padmā, Narakanāyikā, Padmāvati, Bhīṣaṇā, Bhīmā, Karālikā, Vikarālā, Mahāvajrā, Trikoṇā,

1. One of the five winds in the body.

Pañcakoṇikā, Sudīrghā, Vartulā, Saptabhūmā, Subhūmikā and Dīptamāyā. The wicked suffer in these.

19. There are five foremost (divisions) among each one of the twenty-eight hells known as Raurava and others numbering one-hundred and forty.

20-22. Tāmiṣra, Andhatāmiṣra, Mahāraurava and Raurava, Aṣipatravana (forest of sword-like leaves), Lohabhāra, Kālasūtra, Mahānaraka, Sañjivana, Mahāvici, Tapanā, Sampratāpana, Saṅghāta, Sakākola, Kuḍamala, Pūtimṛttika, Lohaśaṅku and Rjīṣa (are the sub-divisions). Śālmālī is the main river.

23. One should know that the hells are governed by dreadful looking serpents. They put the sinners in each one of the hells as well as in many of them.

24. Having their faces resembling cats, owls, frogs and vultures etc., they throw the man in caldrons of oil and then light the fire.

25-28. Some (are put) in frying pans, some in copper vessels, some others in iron caldrons and others among sparks of fire. Some are placed on the tip of pointed pikes. Some are pierced in the hell. Some are thrashed with whips. Some are made to eat molten iron. The men are made to consume dust, excreta, blood, phlegm etc. and made to drink hot wine by the messengers of God of Death. The men are again pierced. They are tortured by mechanical devices and (the bodies are) eaten by crows etc. Hot oil is sprinkled over them and the head is pierced repeatedly.

29-30. Wailing aloud 'Oh ! father!', (the men) denounce their (past) deeds. After having reached dreadful hells as a result of censurable great sins, the great sinners are reborn here when the (fruits) of the (past) deeds are exhausted. A killer of a brahmin is born in the womb of a deer, dog, pig and camel.

31. A drunkard (is born in the womb) of a Pukkaśa<sup>1</sup> or Mleccha<sup>2</sup>. A person stealing gold (gets) the state of an insect, worm or locust. A person defiling the bed of his preceptor (attains) the state of a clump of grass.

1. A mixed caste, an offspring of a hunter male and a *śūdra* woman.

2. A non-Aryan.

32. A killer of a brahmin would get consumption. A drunkard (would have) dark brown teeth (a dental disease). One who steals gold (would) have bad nails. A person violating the teacher's bed (would have) a skin disease.

33. A person committing a sin by a particular limb would get that limb affected. A person stealing food would become dyspeptic. A person harming the articulation (of a man) (would be born) dumb.

34. A person stealing grains would have abnormal limbs. A miser (would be born as) having a fetid nose. A person stealing oil would become a bird. An informer would have an offensive breath.

35. A person abducting the wife of another and defiling a brahmin would be born as a *brahmarākṣasa* (a kind of ghost) in an uninhabited forest.

36. A person stealing gems (attains birth) in a low caste. (One who steals) perfumes (would be born) as the female of the muskrat. One who steals leaves, vegetables (would become) a peacock and one who steals grain (would become) a crow.

37-38a. (A person stealing) a domestic animal, milk, vehicle, fruit, honey, flesh, condiment, clothe or lotus and salt (would respectively be born as) a goat, crow, camel, monkey, fly, vulture, *grhakāka* (domestic crow), one afflicted by psoriasis and as cricket.

38b-39. Afflictions in mundane existence are said to be of three varieties namely, *ādhyātmika* (affecting mind and its faculties), *ādhibhautika* (caused by weapons etc.), and *ādhidivika*, due to the planets, fire and gods. Men should nullify them by knowledge, by atonements, vows, making gifts and worship of (lord) Viṣṇu etc.

## CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND SEVENTYTWO

*The major and minor religious observances (yama-s and niyama-s)*

*Fire-god said:*

1-2a. I shall describe to you the *yoga* having eight constituents in order to get free from the sufferings due to mundane existence. Knowledge makes Brahman manifest. There, *yoga* is the concentration of mind and the withdrawal of the mind (from all other objects). (It is) the highest (union) of the individual soul and the Supreme Brahman.

2b-3. O Brahmin ! Non-injury, truthfulness, non-stealing, celibacy and rejection of gifts are known to be the five major observances. These together with the minor observances yield enjoyment and emancipation. Purity, contentment, penance, study of one's own scriptures, worship of God are minor observances.

4-5a. Non-injury means not causing injury to the beings. Non-injury is the foremost virtue. Just as the footsteps of the travellers on foot could be contained in the footstep of an elephant, so also all the virtuous acts are said (to be included) in non-injury.

5b-7a. Injury (would) create anxiety, cause suffering, mental and physical pain (spilling of blood), slandering, great obstruction to beneficial thing, opening of vulnerable parts, denial of happiness, obstruction and killing. Thus it is of ten kinds.

7b-8. Truthfulness is defined as speech that would be extremely beneficial to beings. Speak the truth. Speak what is pleasing. But do not speak the truth that is not pleasing. Do not also tell a lie that would be pleasing. This is the eternal virtue.

9-10. Celibacy is the shunning of sexual enjoyment. It is eightfold. Men declare that sexual enjoyment is eightfold such as remembrance, praise, sport, seeing, talking in secret, resolve, endeavours and the final consummation.

11-12a. Celibacy is at the root of action and an action becomes fruitless otherwise. Even the elders in age and wisdom, such as Vasiṣṭha, Candramas, Śukra, the preceptor of gods (Bṛhaspati), and Pitāmaha (Brahmā) were captivated by women.

12b-14a. The three kinds of wine are known as *gauḍi* (from molasses), *paiṣṭi* (from flour) and *mādhvi* (from honey). The fourth sort of wine is known as woman by which the world has been deluded. One gets intoxicated just after seeing a woman, but one gets intoxicated by wine only after drinking. Since a woman is like wine by being looked at, one should not look at her.

14b-15a. A person who forcibly takes away another's possession, whatever it may be, would certainly attain the state of lower animals. (Similar would be the result) for eating (stealthily) the butter offered as oblation.

15b-17a. (A mendicant) may accept a loin-cloth as covering, clothing, wallet that prevents cold and a pair of sandals. But one should not covet anything beyond these. Dress etc. are put on (the body) for the sustenance of the body. Body is associated with virtue. Hence it should be protected with care.

17b-18. Purity is said to be twofold—external and internal. External purity is to be maintained by means of earth and water and the internal by cleaning the feelings. One who is pure in both these respects is said to be pure, and not otherwise.

19-20a. Contentment is said to be the feeling of satisfaction with whatever one gets. Penance is the concentration of the mind and senses on a single object. The conquest of senses and mind is said to be the foremost among all virtues. Penance which fulfils all desires is threefold, namely, oral consisting of repetition of sacred formulae etc., mental (consisting of) eschewing desires, and physical (consisting of) the worship of gods etc.

20b-31. The *Vedas* begin with *praṇava* (the syllable *om*) and also end with the *praṇava*. *Praṇava* is the entire collection of words. Hence one has to repeat *praṇava*. (It is composed of) the syllables *a*, *u* and *m*, (the latter) being half a syllabic instant. The three syllabic instants (represent) the three *Vedas*. The three worlds *Bhū* etc. are its qualities. (It also represents) the three states such as waking, dreaming and deep sleep. (It is also equated with) the gods *Brahmā*, *Viṣṇu* and *Maheśvara*. (The divine forms) such as *Pradyumna*, *Śrīvāsudeva* etc. (have all come) duly from the syllable *om*. (The *praṇava*) to which a syllabic instant is not added or that which is bereft of a syllabic

instant or more is not auspicious. One who has learnt the syllable *om* is a sage and none else. The fourth syllabic instant is endowed with the *gāndhāri* (accent) and is indicated on the head. It is the fourth one, the Supreme Brahman, like the lamp in a pot. One has to contemplate always (that Brahman) resting in the lotus of the heart. *Praṇava* is the bow, the (individual) soul is the arrow and Brahman is said to be its target. It should be known with all assiduity and one should become united like the arrow. This single syllable is Brahman. It is the supreme entity. A person who knows this syllable would get what he wishes (to get). The goddess Gāyatrī is its metre. The lord within is known to be its sage. The Supreme Soul is its deity. This application would yield enjoyment and prosperity. 'Bhūh, to the soul of fire' is (the formula of) the heart. 'Bhuvah, to the soul of Prajāpati' is (the formula of) the head. 'Svah, to the soul of Sun' is said to be the armour of the tuft. 'Om bhūr bhuvah svah' is the armour. 'To the soul of truth' (is) the weapon. After having placed (lord) Viṣṇu, one should repeat (this formula) for the sake of enjoyment and emancipation.

32-33. One should offer oblations of sesamum and clarified butter etc. One would obtain all things. A person who repeats the syllable twelve thousand times everyday would have the manifestation of the Supreme Brahman (in front of him) in twelve months. By the repetition (of the syllable) one crore times (one would gain perfections) such as *añimā* (subtlety) etc. One would gain the grace of the (goddess of) learning (by repeating this) a lakh times.

34. Sacrificial rites for (lord) Viṣṇu are of three kinds, Vedic, Tāntric and mixed. One should worship (lord) Hari (Viṣṇu), by one of these three methods that is desired.

35. The position which one gains by prostrating flat on the ground like a stick and worshipping (lord Viṣṇu), (he would) not (gain) by means of (performing) hundreds of sacrificial rites.

36. The import of these explained here would become manifest to those great men who have extreme devotion for the god and also for the preceptor as for the god.

## CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND SEVENTYTHREE

*Description of āsanas (different physical postures)  
and control of breath*

*Fire-god said :*

1-3a. (The term) *āsana* denotes postures such as the 'lotus'<sup>1</sup> etc. Sitting in that posture one should contemplate the Supreme (Being). After having established oneself firmly in that posture in a pure place which is neither too much raised nor too much lowered, on the skin of an antelope and the *kuśa* (grass), one should concentrate after controlling the mind and the senses. Seated in that posture one should practise *yoga* for the sake of the purification of the self.

3b-6. The body, head and neck should be held erect and firm without movement and one should look at the tip of the nose. One should not look in any other direction. One should protect the testicles and the penis with the heels, and place (the heels) on the thighs, keep the hands across with effort and place the back of the right palm on the left (palm). After raising the face slowly and holding the mouth forward (one should practise the control of breath). *Prāṇa* is the wind in one's body and its *āyāma* is its retention.

7. (Holding and) closing (one of) the nostrils with the finger (exhale and) empty the air from the chest with the other nostril. Because of emptying it is known as *recaka* (exhalation).

8. Fill the inside with external air like a leather bag till it gets fully filled and remains steady. It is known as *pūraka* (filling) because of filling to the full.

9. When one neither lets off the air inside nor inhales the air but remains steady like a completely filled pot, (it is called) *kumbhaka*.

10-11. (Again *prāṇāyāma* is divided into three classes) : *Kanyasa* (the shortest one) is inhaling once for a duration of twelve *mātrā*-s (moments). *Madhyama* (the middle one) is inhaling twice lasting for a duration of twenty-four moments. *Uttama* (the longest) is inhaling thrice lasting for a period of thirty-six

---

1. See verses 3b ff below.

moments. *Uttamottama* (the foremost one) is that which produces sweat, shivering and stiffness.

12-13. One should not tread on untrodden ground. (By doing so) (one would be liable to get) hiccough, breathing (trouble) etc. When the vital air is conquered there would be little defect in the feces, urine etc. (One would gain) health, quick gait, enthusiasm, clarity of voice, grace in strength and colour and the loss of all defects.

14. That (*prāṇāyāma*) which is not accompanied by, muttering (of prayer, divine name etc.) and contemplation (is known as) not impregnated. That which is accompanied (by muttering of 'om' etc. is known as) impregnated. An impregnated (*prāṇāyāma*) should be practised foremost for the subjugation of the senses.

15. When the senses are conquered along with the acquisition of knowledge and detachment and one has acquired mastery in *prāṇāyāma*, everything else would then become conquered.

16. The senses are really everything (which leads) to heaven or hell. By controlling them or leaving them unbridled (one would go) to heaven or hell.

17-18. The body is said to be like a chariot and the senses (are) its horses. The mind is said to be the charioteer. *Prāṇāyāma* is known to be the whip. With the reins of knowledge and detachment and by getting rid of illusion, the mind attains steadiness by means of *prāṇāyāma* alone.

19. (The practice of) *prāṇāyāma* (gives) the same benefit that would accrue to a person who drinks drops of water through the tip of a *kuśa* (grass) month after month for whole period of one hundred years.

20. *Pratyāhāra* is said to consist in the withdrawal and restraining of the senses which are ordinarily immersed in the ocean of objects.

21. One should pull up the self by one's own effort just as a man sinking in the water (is pulled out). (One should cross) the rapid current of the river of enjoyment of objects by resorting to the tree of knowledge.

## CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND SEVENTYFOUR

*Contemplation*

*Fire-god said :*

1. The root *dhyai* is known (to be used) in (the sense of) contemplation. A constant meditation on (lord) Viṣṇu without digression of mind is said to be contemplation.

2. Contemplation is said to be that power of the soul equal to the thought of the (Supreme) Brahman by means of one's own will unconditioned by any category.

3. (In other words) contemplation is said to be that thought found to be together with a similar thought resting on an object to be contemplated and which is free from the thought of any other kind.

4. It is said to be contemplation when the mind thinks constantly of a thing that is to be contemplated at any fixed place.

5. A person who discards his body (with his mind) endowed with such contemplation would elevate his family, kinsmen and friends and would become (lord) Hari (Viṣṇu).

6. The position which one attains by contemplating (lord) Hari with faith for a moment or half in this manner, could not be got by (performing) all great sacrificial rites.

7. A person who knows the truth should apply himself to (the practice of) *yoga*, after having known the four (things) such as the contemplator, contemplation, the thing to be contemplated and that which is the benefit of the contemplation.

8-9a. A person would obtain release (from bondage of mundane existence) by practising *yoga* (and would also gain) eight (kinds of) great powers<sup>1</sup>. (A person who is) endowed with knowledge and detachment, earnestness, forbearance, devotion to (lord) Viṣṇu and is always enthusiastic is deemed to be the Supreme Soul after such contemplation.

9b.-10a. The Supreme Brahman is both embodied and not embodied. Contemplation is (the constant) thought about that

---

1. These are the eight miraculous powers such as *aṅīmā* (becoming minute as an atom) etc.

(lord) Hari. (Lord) Hari, the omniscient and supreme should be known as endowed with parts and without parts.

10b. The benefit of contemplation is the gain of powers such as *aṇimā* (ability to become minute like an atom) and the like (as well as) emancipation.

11-12a. (Lord) Viṣṇu associates (us) with the fruit and hence one should contemplate the Supreme Lord. One should always think of the lord while moving, standing, sleeping, waking, opening and closing the eyes, whether one is clean or not clean.

12b-14a. After having established (lord) Keśava (Viṣṇu) in the mind residing inside the body one should worship Him as seated on the pedestal of one's lotus-like heart, by means of the *yoga* (union) of contemplation. This sacrifice (in the form) of contemplation is supreme, pure and is devoid of all defects. By worshipping thus one gets released (from bondage of existence) and not by external cleanliness and sacrificial rites.

14b. (Because contemplation) is free from the defect of violence, it is the means of purifying the mind.

15-16a. Hence the sacrifice in the form of contemplation is the highest as it yields final beatitude. Hence after having discarded the temporal impure external means such as the sacrificial rite etc., one should intensively practice *yoga*.

16b-17. First of all one should contemplate in the heart the three qualities, unmanifest, free from any modification and endowed with the objects of enjoyment and (the feeling of) pleasure after having covered (the quality) *tamas* by means of *rajas* and then *rajas* by means of *sattva*.

18-19a. Then one should first contemplate the three spheres such as black, red and white in order. The Supreme Soul, the twenty fifth principle, that is beyond the limiting adjunct of *sattva* (quality), should be contemplated. After having discarded the impure thing, pure thing should be thought of.

19b-21. A glorious divine lotus exists above the Supreme Being. It measures twelve inches wide. It is pure, blossomed and white. Its stalk is eight finger-breadths (long). It had its origin from the bulbous root of the navel. The eight petals of the lotus should be known as the eight qualities such as *aṇimā*. Its pericarp, filament and stalk are knowledge and detachment.

22. Its root is the *dharma* (characteristic) of (lord) Viṣṇu. Such a lotus should be meditated upon. Its characteristic, namely, knowledge and detachment, is wholly composed of the foremost glory of (lord) Śiva.

23-24a. After having known the lotus posture completely, one would have the end of all miseries. One should meditate on the lord (in the form of) the syllable *Om*, that is spotless, of the size of a thumb and of the form of the wick of a pure lamp.

24b-25a. Otherwise one should contemplate (the lord) as resembling the form of an asterism, as having the form of a cluster of *kadamba* (flowers) and illumined by a cluster of rays.

25b-26a. One should contemplate and repeat the syllable *Om* that is supreme, undecaying (symbolizing) the lord, the principal entity, that transcends the *puruṣa* and dwells in the lotus (of the heart).

26b-28. (Yogins) want to contemplate on gross things first for making the mind firm. One would be able to get steadiness in (contemplating on) minute things also after gaining firmness (in the above). A stalk ten finger-breadths long is at the root of the navel. A lotus of twelve finger-breadths and having eight petals (is supported) by the stalk. Orbs of sun, moon and fire (are situated) in the pericarp and the filament.

29-32a. (Lord) Viṣṇu having four arms bearing conch, disc, mace and lotus and stationed at the centre of an orb of fire, or (lord) Hari having eight arms bearing a bow, rosary, bracelet, noose and goad etc., and of a golden complexion, white complexion, wearing the *śrivatsa*<sup>1</sup> (mark on the chest), the *kaustubha* (gem), a garland of wild flowers and a gold necklace, and shining with ear-ring (in the shape) of a fish (should be contemplated). (He should also be imagined) as wearing a sparkling gem (studded) crown and silk robes and endowed with all kinds of ornaments. Otherwise (one may contemplate a form) of the size of twelve finger-breadths as one would like.

32b. (One should also repeat the formula) ‘I am Brahman, light, soul, Vāsudeva (name of Viṣṇu, as manifested in the form of Kṛṣṇa), the liberated, *Om*’.

---

1. The curling hair on the chest.

33. When one has become tired of contemplation, one may repeat the formula. When one has got tired of repetition one may meditate. (Lord) Viṣṇu gets pleased quickly with a person engaged in the repetition (of a formula), contemplation and the like.

34. The merits of (performing) sacrificial rites are not worth even a sixteenth part of the merits of the rites of repeating (a formula). Diseases, calamities and (evil influences of) planets do not approach a person repeating (a formula). One would get the benefit of devotion, liberation and conquest over death by means of the repetition of a formula.

## CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND SEVENTYFIVE

### *Fixing-up of the mind in the object of contemplation*

*Fire-god said :*

1. *Dhāraṇā* is the fixing-up of the mind firmly on (the object) to be meditated upon. Like *dhyāna* (contemplation), it is also twofold according as the object is an embodied or an unembodied form of (lord) Hari.

2. The mind does not get shaken from the object that lies outside. That period for which the mind remains in a state of absorption in a particular place without being distracted (is known as) *dhāraṇā*.

3. *Dhāraṇā* is said to be that period for which the mind remains absorbed (in the contemplation) of god, without deviating from its object.

4. *Dhāraṇā* has a duration of twelve *yāma*<sup>1</sup>-s. Twelve *dhāraṇā*-s (are equal to) *dhyāna*. It is said to be *samādhi* which consists of twelve (such) *dhyāna*-s.

5. If a person practising *dhāraṇā* discards his life, he attains supreme position in the heaven after elevating twenty-one (generations of his) family.

---

1. One *yāma* is equal to three hours.

6. When a particular part of the body of a *yagin* gets affected by disease, (the yogin) should fix up the mind on that particular part as though pervaded by the mind.

7-10. (*Dhāraṇā* is fourfold namely) *āgneyi*, *vāruṇi*, *aiśāni* and *amṛtātmikā* (respectively) belonging to Agni, Varuṇa and Īśāna and (the fourth) of the nature of ambrosia. O Foremost among the twice-born ! (In the *āgneyi*), the *sikhā* (formula of the tuft) of (lord) Viṣṇu ending with *phaṭ* should be repeated. The glorious tip of the spear that is cleaved by the *nāḍi*-s (arteries) should be pierced with that. O Great sage ! The votary should think of all those from the big toe to the skull as surrounded by orbs of rays spread across lower and upper parts (of the body) by excessive lustre. One's own body that has been (conceived mentally as) burnt to ashes should be withdrawn into one's self. O Twice-born ! The cold, phlegm etc. and sin get destroyed thereby.

11-15a. (The *vāruṇi dhāraṇā* is explained now). One should think of the head, neck, *dhīra* (?) and *kāra* (?) (as existing) in the face bent downwards. Then after conceiving the mind as unbroken and concentrated, the entire earth should be thought as being filled with showers of snow produced by glittering spray. (The mind) should be brought down from the *Brahmarandhra*<sup>1</sup> to the *Mūlādhāra*<sup>2</sup> through the path of *suṣumnā*<sup>3</sup> by means of shaking and as remaining in the orb of the full moon should be flooded with nectar-like water (produced) by contact with snow. A votary who is afflicted by sufferings such as hunger, thirst and the like should bear this *vāruṇi (dhāraṇā)* vigilantly for the sake of pleasure.

15b-20. I have described to you the *vāruṇi dhāraṇā*. Listen to me ! (I shall now describe) the *aiśāni dhāraṇā*. One should contemplate the grace of (lord) Viṣṇu, after having nullified the (airs) *prāṇa* and *apāna*<sup>4</sup> in the lotus, that is verily Brahman, in the sky, until one's thoughts cease. Then one has to repeat the great truth. The lord (should also be contemplated) as pervading

1. An aperture in the crown of the head through which the soul is said to escape after the death of a person.

2. A mystical circle above the organs of generation.

3. One of the arteries in the human body.

4. The printed text wrongly reads *apṛāṇa*. •

everything, as half moon, supreme, tranquil, without any semblance and unstained. Until a person knows one's real form through the words of his preceptor the entire unreal world (movable and immovable) appears as real. When that Supreme Principle is realised all the entities from the world to the *brahman*, the knower, the means of knowledge and the things to be known, the shaking of the lotus in the heart by means of contemplation, repetition, offering oblation, worship etc. and everything, (would appear) like the sweet cakes given by the mother. (The whole thing) may also be done with the formula of (lord) Viṣṇu. I shall describe to you the *amṛta-dhāraṇā* (now).

21-22. (In the *amṛta-dhāraṇā* the votary) should contemplate a lotus resembling the full moon held in the clenched hand of the votary. (Then the votary) should contemplate with effort a region of the full-moon having the splendour of a lakh moons filled with the waves (of bliss) of (lord) Śiva as situated on the head. (Then he should think of the same as filling) in the lotus of the heart. (Then the votary) should think of his body at its centre. The votary would become free from distress by means of the *dhāraṇā*-s and the like.

## CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND SEVENTYSIX

### *Deep meditation (samādhi)*

*Fire-god said :*

1. The deep meditation is said to be that contemplation in which the consciousness alone appearing in its spiritual aspect, remains like the ocean of coagulated milk made immobile and ceases to be operative.

2. A *yogin* is said to be in deep meditation if he remains steady in contemplation with the mind deeply absorbed, like fire (kept) in a windless (place).

3-4. He does not hear or smell or see or spit out. Moreover, he does not feel the touch. His mind does not make any

resolve. He does not think and remains like a log of wood without knowing anything. A person who is absorbed in the lord thus is stated to be in deep meditation.

5-10. Just as a lamp remaining in a windless (place) does not shake, this is said to be similar. For a *yogin* who is in deep meditation, contemplating himself as (lord) Viṣṇu, divine portents occur indicating success. The essential ingredient of the ear gets fallen. There would be pain in the teeth and the limbs. The celestials beseech that *yogin* with divine pleasures. The kings (approach) him with gift of land. The rich offer wealth. The *Veda*-s and all other *śāstra*-s become manifest themselves. He gains mastery over the metres as well as poetry in abundance. Excellent medical recipes, medicinal herbs and all sculpture and other arts become known to him. The virgins of the world of Indra and qualities such as imagination (also come to him). (Lord) Viṣṇu gets pleased with one who discards these as grass.

11-12a. (Such a *yogin*) endowed with the wealth of powers such as *aṇimā* (becoming subtle like an atom) etc., after having imparted knowledge to the pupil and after having enjoyed the pleasures as much as desired and after having discarded the body, should abide in his self that is of the form of knowledge, bliss and Brahman.

12b-13. Just as a dirty mirror is not capable of knowing the self (i.e., the reflection of the self), so also the soul experiences pain in the body because it is connected with all (things). A person united with *yoga* does not experience the pain of all.

14. Just as the single *ākāśa* (space) becomes distinct in the pot etc., so also the single soul (remains) in many as the Sun (is reflected) in the reservoirs.

15. The Brahman, sky (ether), air, lustre, water and earth, the materials on earth, these worlds, this soul and the movable and immovable (objects) have all (come) from Him.

16-18a. Just as a potter (makes) a pot by the conjunction of clay, rod and the wheel and just as a person building a house makes a house with grass, earth and wood, so also the soul creates itself (its body) in different wombs making use of the materials (five elements) and combining them. (The

soul) gets fettered by its (past) deeds, faults and ignorance by its own will.

18b-21. The (individual) soul is released (from bondage) by means of knowledge. A *yogin* does not fall sick because of his virtue. Just as a lamp is maintained (to burn) by the combination of the wick, base and oil, (so) (the body) also undergoes changes. The life goes away premature. Like a lamp the soul that is inside the heart, has many rays—white, black, tawny, blue, red, yellow and brown. A person who remains (firm) above all these, pierces the region of the Sun, crosses the world of Brahmā and attains the highest state.

22-23. One reaches the abodes of the celestials by means of the other hundred rays which are situated above. Those rays of different forms which are below have soft lustre. He moves around here by means of them for enjoying (the fruits) of (his past) deeds.

24-25. All the organs of sense, mind, organs of action, ego, the earth etc. (are known as) the *kṣetra* ('field'). The unmanifest soul is said to be the knower of the *kṣetra*. The lord who is in all the beings is existent, non-existent, as well as both existent and non-existent.

26-27a. The intellect has its origin from the unmanifest. Then the ego and the (five elements) sky etc. come into being. They have twenty-one qualities. Sound, touch, colour, taste and smell are their characteristics.

27b-28. That (quality) which rests on a particular thing gets absorbed in that particular thing. *Sattva*, *rajas* and *tamas* are also stated to be its qualities. He wanders like a wheel being possessed by *rajas* and *tamas*.

29. The one who is without a beginning and the first is (said to be) the Supreme Being. That which is knowable by means (of knowledge) and the senses is said to be a modification (of that self).

30. The *Vēda*-s, *Purāṇa*-s, learning, *Upaniṣad*-s, verses, aphorisms, expositions and all other words are from Him.

31. Those who perform the *agnihotra*<sup>1</sup> rite for progeny,

---

1. A short rite invoking Fire-god.

pass through the path of the manes, the *upavithi* and that of (sage) Agastya towards the heaven.

32-35a. Those who are given to charity and are endowed with eight qualities, the eighty-eight thousand sages, who kindle the household fire are born again as the upholders of virtue. They reach the celestial world by the path of the seven sages and the serpents. Only so many sages devoid of all beginnings remain in each one of the places endowed with penance, celibacy, discarding association and learning till all the beings get destroyed.

35b-36a. The study of the *Veda*-s, sacrificial rites, celibacy, penance, restraint, earnestness, fasting and truth are the causes for (gaining) knowledge of the soul.

36b-40a. All those who adhere to truth have to practise profound meditation in this way only. It should be seen, thought about and heard by the twice-born. Those twice-borns who thus find (the truth) by resorting to the forest and meditation and are endowed with truth and extreme earnestness, will become united with pure white lustre in course of time. Then those people reach the celestial world, the Sun, lightning (and attain) the world of Brahmā. They are not reborn here.

40b-42a. Those men, who gain heaven by means of sacrificial rites, penance and gifts, reach the world of manes, the moon, the sky, air, water and earth through smoke, night, dark fortnight and the *dakṣiṇāyana* (the period when the Sun moves towards the south). They are again born here and again return.

42b-44. Those who do not know the two courses of the soul would become a serpent or a cricket, or a worm or an insect. The individual soul would become immortal by contemplating the Brahman resembling a lamp in the heart. Even a householder who accepts wealth acquired in the right way, remaining steady in knowledge about the truth, getting delighted in (seeing) guests, who performs ancestral rites and speaks truth, would get release (from bondage).

## CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND SEVENTYSEVEN

*Knowledge of Brahman*

*Fire-god said :*

1. I shall describe the knowledge about Brahman for the sake of getting released from the ignorance of mundane existence. A person gets released (by constantly thinking), "I, this soul, is verily the Supreme Brahman."

2. The body is not the soul because that is perceived like a pot etc. It is known certainly while sleeping and at the time of death that the soul is different from the body.

3. If the body is the soul it should behave like one which does not undergo any change etc. The organs such as the eye and the like are only instruments (of knowledge) and hence are not the soul.

4. The mind and the intellect also are not the soul. They are only instruments like a lamp (for supplying light). The life-breath is also not the soul as (no ?) consciousness manifests during deep sleep.

5-6a. The consciousness is not experienced during waking and dreaming (states) because it is mixed up. Since the life-breath devoid of consciousness is known during deep sleep, the soul is not the same as the organs which belong to the soul (as instruments) (and so are not identical with it).

6b-7. The ego is also not the soul because of its non-constancy like the body. This soul which is distinct from the above-mentioned categories remains in the heart of all (beings). (The self) is the seer and enjoyer of all things like a glowing lamp in the night.

8-10a. A sage should contemplate thus at the time of commencing deep meditation : Sky (came) from Brahman, air from sky, fire from air, water from fire, earth from water and the subtle body from that (earth). The quintuplated forms of the five elements came from the free forms of the five elements. After having meditated upon the gross body, one should think of getting absorbed in Brahman.

10b-13. The elements have been quintuplated and the Virāṭ (the first creation of Brahman) is known to be their

effect. This gross body is the product of the ignorance of the soul. Wise men know knowledge through the senses as the waking state. The world has attachment for it. These three are not creation. The effect of the elements which are not quintuplated is said to be the *liṅga*. The union of the seventeen (categories) is known as the 'golden egg.' The body is stated to be the subtle mark of the soul.

14. Dream is the recollection of experience occurring in the waking state. The soul also would resemble it. (The soul that has not been fettered) with the universe (is known as) *taijasa*.

15. There is one single cause of the two known as the gross and subtle body. The soul, that is knowledge and possessing lustre, is said to be inferred from that.

16-17. It is not *sat* (existence), not *asat* (non-existence), not *sadasat* (existence as well as non-existence). It is neither composed of components, nor devoid of components. It is neither separated, nor not separated. It is both separated and not separated. It is inexplicable and is the creator of bondage and mundane existence. That single Brahman (is obtained) by means of knowledge and is never obtained by means of actions.

18. (The means of the knowledge of the soul) by all means is to control the senses which are the cause of the bondage of the soul. The place of the intellect is deep sleep. It affects the two.

19. This wise soul is known to be the *praṇava* composed of the three syllables. The syllables *a*, *u* and *m* combined (is the *praṇava*).

20. It is the witness of all things as 'I'. It is of the form of consciousness alone in the waking, dreaming and other states. Ignorance and bondage in mundane existence etc. are not its work.

21. It is eternal, pure, free from bondage, truth, bliss and without a second. I am Brahman. I am Brahman. I am the supreme splendour and the ever free *Om*.

22. I am Brahman, the supreme knowledge—this contemplation destroys the bondage. Brahman is eternal, bliss, truth, knowledge and endless.

23. This soul is the Supreme Brahman. “You are that Brahman.” This individual soul is instructed by the preceptor, (to identify himself with Brahman) as “I am Brahman.”

24. That Brahman is the Sun. I am that partless being. *Om*. The knower of Brahman gets freedom from the worthless mundane existence. He would become Brahman.

## CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND SEVENTYEIGHT

### *Knowledge of Brahman*

*Fire-god said :*

1. I am Brahman, the Supreme Light devoid of earth, water and fire. I am Brahman, the Supreme Light devoid of wind and sky.

2. I am Brahman, the Supreme Light devoid of the primary undertaking. I am Brahman, the Supreme Light bereft of the first creation and the soul.

3. I am Brahman, the Supreme Effulgence devoid of waking place. I am Brahman, the Supreme Lustre devoid of the feeling of universality.

4. I am Brahman, the Supreme Light devoid of the syllable ‘a’. I am Brahman, the Supreme Effulgence devoid of speech, hands and feet.

5. I am Brahman, the Supreme Lustre devoid of anus and penis. I am Brahman, the Supreme Light devoid of ears, skin and eyes.

6. I am Brahman, the Supreme Effulgence bereft of taste and form. I am Brahman, the Supreme Lustre devoid of all smells.

7. I am Brahman, the Supreme Light without tongue and nose. I am Brahman, the Supreme Effulgence bereft of touch and sound.

8. I am Brahman, the Supreme Effulgence bereft of mind and intellect. I am Brahman, the Supreme Lustre devoid of consciousness and ego.

9. I am Brahman, the Supreme Effulgence free from (the vital winds) *prāṇa* and *apāna* (in the body). I am Brahman, the Supreme Lustre bereft of (the vital winds) *vyāna* and *udāna* (in the body).

10. I am Brahman, the Supreme Light devoid of (the vital wind) *śamāna* (in the body). I am Brahman, the Supreme Effulgence devoid of old age and death.

11. I am Brahman, the Supreme Effulgence bereft of grief and ignorance. I am Brahman, the Supreme Light free from hunger and thirst.

12. I am Brahman, the Supreme Lustre devoid of all modifications of sound. I am Brahman, the Supreme Effulgence bereft of the golden egg.

13. I am Brahman, the Supreme Light devoid of the dreaming state. I am Brahman, the Supreme Effulgence devoid of luminosity etc.

14. I am Brahman, the Supreme Light free from harm etc. I am Brahman, the Supreme Lustre devoid of knowledge relating to an assembly.

15. I am Brahman, the Supreme Lustre bereft of inference. I am Brahman, the Supreme Light devoid of the qualities such as *sattva* (goodness) and the like.

16. I am Brahman, the Supreme Effulgence devoid of the feeling of *sat* and *asat* (existence and non-existence). I am Brahman, the Supreme Light, bereft of all components.

17. I am Brahman, the Supreme Lustre devoid of difference and non-difference. I am Brahman, the Supreme Light devoid of the location of deep sleep.

18. I am Brahman, the Supreme Effulgence free from the feeling of being learned. I am Brahman, the Supreme Light free from the syllables such as 'ma'.

19. I am Brahman, the Supreme Lustre free from the means and objects knowledge. I am Brahman, the Supreme Light free from knowledge and knower.

20. I am Brahman, the Supreme Effulgence devoid of being a witness etc. I am Brahman, the Supreme Light devoid of effect and cause.

21. I am Brahman devoid of body, organs, mind, intellect,

life-breath and ego. I am Brahman, the fourth state that is free from (the states of) waking, dreaming and deep sleep.

22. (I am) eternal, pure, wise and free, truth, bliss and without a second. I am Brahman. (I am) Brahman endowed with knowledge and absolutely free. *Om*. I am Brahman, the Supreme Effulgence, deep meditation and the supreme being that confers emancipation.

## CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND SEVENTYNINE

### *Knowledge of Brahman again*

*Fire-god said :*

1. (The votary) reaches the region of the gods by (performing) sacrificial rites and the region of *Virāṭ* by (doing) penance. By renouncing actions (one would gain the place) of *Brahmā*. By detachment (one would get) absorbed in nature.

2. Liberation is got by means of knowledge. These are known to be the five courses. Detachment is turning away from the feelings of happiness, torment, grief etc.

3. Renunciation is giving up all actions already performed together with those yet to be performed. (By such means) one would get free from the difference of change beginning with the unmanifest and ending with discrimination.

4. Knowledge is said to arise from knowing (the soul) as different from the animate and inanimate things. The Supreme Soul, the Supreme Lord is the sustainer of all things.

5. He is glorified in the *Veda*-s and the philosophical treatises by the name of (lord) Viṣṇu. That lord of the sacrificial rites (known as) *Yajñapurūṣa* is worshipped by those who are engaged in that.

6. That embodiment of knowledge is perceived by those who have abstained from (doing actions) by means of association with knowledge. That Supreme Being (is referred to) as speech (consisting of the sounds) short, long and protracted etc.

7. O Great sage ! The action that is the means of attaining Him is said to be knowledge. The knowledge is said to be two-fold : that which is explained in the *Āgama*<sup>1</sup>-s and (that which is obtained) from discrimination.

8. The Śabdabrahman (Brahman composed of sound) is an embodiment of the *Āgama*-s and the Supreme Brahman is the knowledge arising from discrimination. One should know the two Brahmans—the Śabdabrahman and the Supreme Brahman.

9. Learning in the form of the *Veda*-s and the like (is known as) *aṣaram* (not the supreme). The imperishable Brahman is the supreme (learning). This (Brahman) is denoted by the term “*Bhagavān*” (prosperous) in service, worship and other acts. (The letters of the word mean as follows :)

10. The syllable ‘*bha*’ has two senses—*bhartā* (protector) and *sambhartā* (one who collects or hoards). O Great sage ! The letter ‘*ga*’ (means) the leader, the conveyer and the creator.

11. The word ‘*bhaga*’ (which is the combination of the letters *bha* and *ga*) means the six : the entire wealth, valour, fame, fortune, knowledge and detachment.

12. All the things exist in (lord) Viṣṇu. That Supreme Spirit is threefold. In the same way (the word) *Bhagavān* (is used) in the case of (lord) Hari and elsewhere as a courtesy.

13. He knows the creation, destruction, the coming and going of the beings, true knowledge and nescience and hence is designated ‘*Bhagavān*’.

14. The term ‘*Bhagavān*’ connotes knowledge, power, supreme opulence, strength and splendour in entirety without the bad qualities fit to be avoided.

15-16a. In olden time, Khāṇḍikya Keśidhvaja imparted to (King) Janaka<sup>2</sup>, the *yoga* (as follows) : The seed of the origin through ignorance is twofold : the notion of self in things which are not the self and the notion that self and body are identical.

16b-20. The soul enshrined in the body made of five

---

1. The sacred texts explaining the nature of Śiva or Viṣṇu and the methods of worshipping them.

2. The famous king of Mithilā; known for his knowledge; became an anchorite in later days.

elements and engulfed in illusion and darkness entertains the bad thought 'I am this'. In the same way a person (entertains the thought) in the sons, grandsons etc. and their progeny. The learned (entertain) similar notion with respect to the physical bodies of others. A man does work for the welfare of all the bodies (men). But a person (begins to think) that those bodies are different; it becomes a cause for the bondage. This spotless soul is verily of the form of liberation and knowledge. Impiety of the form of painful experience belongs to the *prakṛti* and not to the soul. Just as water cannot be united with fire and a union is brought about by means of the intervening vessel, (pain and illusion though they do not belong to the soul, appear as though associated with the soul).

21. O Great sage ! The sounds such as 'ka' etc. (are said to be) the result of its action. In the same way, the soul uniting with *prakṛti*, is endowed with the feeling of the self.

22. (The self seems) to enjoy all the bodily attributes. But it is different from them and it is without any modification. The contact (of the mind) with the things is for bondage and one should withdraw his mind from the things of the senses.

23. After having withdrawn it from the things, one should think of (lord) Hari, the one identical with Brahman. O Sage ! It leads a person meditating on Brahman to gain the state of Brahman.

24-25a. After due thought (one should strive) by means of one's own effort. (The attraction of Brahman) would be like the magnet (drawing) the iron. It is said to be *yoga* which is the union of the distinct mental path with Brahman dependent on one's effort.

25b-27a. (The mind) steady in a state of deep meditation, attains the Supreme Brahman. By means of self-control, by withholding the senses from the objects, conquering the winds by doing retention of breath, regulation of breath and subjugating the senses by means of withdrawal of breath, one should make the mind steady in the auspicious repose.

27b-28. Brahman, that is to be resorted to by the mind, is twofold, namely, embodied and not embodied. (The sages) Sanandana and others were endowed with the thought of

being Brahman, while the gods and other created beings (gained elevation) by means of action.

29-32. In the case of the golden egg etc., it is twofold such as due to knowledge and action. The mental activity is said to be threefold. The whole universe is contemplated as Brahman. That knowledge which is of the form of pure existence, beyond the reach of expression, that which does not possess the sense of being different and which could be known by the soul is designated as Brahman. That is the Supreme Form of (lord) Viṣṇu, devoid of form, unborn and indestructible. It is difficult to contemplate at first (the formless). Hence one has to meditate on the embodied form (at first). Such a person would become indistinct from the Supreme Soul by attaining the state of absence of the attitude of possession. (The feeling of) his difference would be due to his ignorance.

## CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY

### *Knowledge of non-dual Brahman*

*Fire-god said :*

1-5. I shall impart the knowledge of the non-dual Brahman which was expounded by Bharata. He (Bharata) performed penance at Śālagrāma (name of a place) worshipping Vāsudeva (Kṛṣṇa, a manifestation of Viṣṇu) etc. Because of the company of a deer, (the sage) thinking of the deer at the end of his life, became a deer (in the next birth). But because he carried the memories of his past birth even after being born as a deer, (he) discarded his life by means of *yoga* and regained his self. Having attained identity with the non-dual Brahman, he wandered in the world like an inert thing. An attendant of king Sauvīra advised (him) to serve (the king) for wages and led him to the camp. Being prompted by the words of the servant, the wise-man accepted to serve and carried the palanquin in order to destroy (the past deed) of the self. While others (carrying the

palanquin) moved fast, he was lagging behind. Seeing the others moving fast and himself (moving) slow the king said to him :

*The king said :*

6. Are you tired ? you have borne my palanquin only for a short distance. You seem to be stout. Are you not able to stand the fatigue ?

*The brahmin said :*

7. I am not stout. I have not borne your palanquin. I am neither tired nor fatigued. O King ! You are a person to be borne.

8-10. The pair of feet rest on the earth, the two shanks on the pair of feet, the two thighs on the pair of shanks, which in turn are the support for the belly. Then the region of the chest, the two arms and the pair of shoulders are resting on the belly. This palanquin is on the shoulder. What has the feeling of 'mine' done here. This body remaining on the palanquin is beheld as yourself. There (the terms) 'you' and 'I' (are worldly conventions). This may be described in another way.

11-14. O King ! I, you and others are being borne by the elements. This conglomeration of *guṇas* ('qualities') fallen in the stream of *guṇas* goes on. O Ruler of earth ! These 'qualities' of goodness etc. are bound by the (past) deeds. The *karma* (past deed) is acquired by ignorance in all the creations without any exception. The soul is pure, imperishable, calm, devoid of *guṇas* and superior to *parkṛti*. Among all the creations, this alone does not have growth or decay. O King ! Just as it does not have growth, so it does not also have decay. Hence how is it that you have said 'you are stout' !

15-18. This palanquin is resting on the earth, shank, feet, hip, thigh and belly etc. and similarly on the shoulder. Hence (my) feeling is same as yours. O King ! By means of bearing the palanquin (I have become similar) to the other beings. Whether originated from a mountain, other materials or a house or originated from the earth, as the *puruṣa* (soul) is different from the physical causes. How can there be a big burden to be borne by me ? O King ! With what material the palanquin has been made, the other worldly things have been made with the

same material. In this respect, yourself, myself and all others have been made similar.

19. After having heard these words, the king held his feet, beseeched him to forgive (and said) : “Be pleased. Lay off this palanquin and speak to me who is listening to you. Who are you? For what reason have you come here ?”

*The brahmin said :*

20-21. Listen to me. It is not at all possible to tell you who I am. Everywhere the act of coming is for the sake of enjoying ( the fruits of past deeds ). Every being reaches a place etc. to enjoy the pleasure or pain arising from (the past) pious or impious (deeds) resting on place etc.

*The king said :*

22. O Brahmin ! How is it not possible to say that I am that person who is here. O Twice-born ! It is not wrong (to apply) this word ‘I’ to mean the self.

*The brahmin said :*

23-28. It is not wrong to use the word ‘I’ to denote the self. But it is fallacious to think and say that a thing that is not the self is the self. When there is a single soul enshrined in all the bodies, it is meaningless to ask who you are and who I am. O King ! You, this palanquin, these palanquin bearers going in front, and this world of yours are not said to be existence. Wood (the material for making the palanquin) is got from a tree. O King ! Is this palanquin on which you are placed designated as a tree or as wood ? A sensible man does not say that the great king is seated on a tree. So also (seeing) you on a log of wood, all do not say that you are on a palanquin. (In reality) the palanquin is a combination of wood in a particular design. O Excellent king ! Look at the palanquin in its distinctive feature.

29. A man, a woman, cow, horse, elephant, bird, tree should be known as worldly convention to denote the bodies due to the effect of (the past) deeds.

30. O King ! the tongue, teeth, lips and palate say ‘I’.

They are not 'I' because all these are means of making an utterance.

31. For what reasons does speech itself says 'I' ? Even then it is false and not proper to say speech is not I.

32. O King ! because (limbs such as) the head, anus etc. of men are different from the body, how can I denote them as 'I' ?

33. O Excellent king ! Only if something different from me exists, it is possible to say 'This is I and that is another'.

34. In fact, there is no difference such as immobile, animal, tree and different bodies etc. These are all the effects of past deeds.

35. O King ! A person (designated) as a king and those (designated) as the soldiers of the king, that and other appellations are not real.

36. You are a king to the world, a son to (your) father, a foe to an enemy, husband to (your) wife, father of a son. O King ! How shall I call you ?

37. O Lord of the earth ! Are you this head ? Do not the head and belly belong to you ? Are not the feet etc. yourself ? Or do they not belong to you ?

38. You are different from all the constituent parts. O King ! Think seriously as to who you are.

After having heard that, the king said to that anchorite brahmin (who was a manifestation of lord) Hari (as follows) :

*The king said :*

39. O Twice-born ! Once I endeavoured to ask sage Kapila (to explain to me) what was beneficial (to a man). You are a part of that sage Kapila. You are giver of knowledge on earth for my sake. (Release) the wave of knowledge from the ocean (of knowledge). Impart to me whatever is beneficial to me.

*The brahmin said :*

40-44. You are again asking (me) what is beneficial. You are not asking about the reality. O King ! All those things which are beneficial are unreal. After having propitiated the gods, (men) desire for abundant wealth, desire for sons and for kingdom. O King ! What is the benefit ? The wise (hold) that the communion with the Supreme Being is the only good. Acts such

as the (performance of) sacrificial rites (would not confer this union). One would not get wealth (by such union). The union of the self with the Supreme Being is said to be the foremost thing. The (Supreme) Soul, which is one, is all-pervading, even, pure, without characteristics, superior to nature, devoid of birth, growth etc., omnipresent and undecaying. It is wholly of the form of supreme knowledge and that lord is not associated with qualities, kinds etc.

45-47. O King ! Listen to me ! I shall describe to you the dialogue between Nidāgha and Ṛtu<sup>1</sup>. Ṛtu was the son of Brahmā and was a wiseman. Nidāgha, the son of Pulastya, was his disciple. After gaining knowledge from him, (Nidāgha) came to the city and was living there. Once Ṛtu, while walking along the banks of (river) Devikā, thought of him. After one thousand celestial years had passed, (Ṛtu) had gone to see Nidāgha. After doing Vaiśvadeva<sup>2</sup> (worship) Nidāgha took food and asked him “You have eaten. Have you been satisfied? Is that satisfaction eternal?”

*Ṛtu said:*

48-55. O Brahmin ! A person feeling hungry would get satisfied after eating food. I had no hunger. Why do you ask me about getting satisfied? O Twice-born ! Hunger and thirst are said to be the properties of the body and hence do not belong to me. Because you have asked me I shall say that I am always satisfied since I am the (Supreme) Spirit, omnipresent and all-pervasive like the sky. Hence I am the inner self of all the beings. How then can I be restricted to this? I neither go, nor come, nor am confined to a particular place. You are not different from me, nor am I different from yourself. Just as a mud house is strengthened by plastering with mud, so also this body made of earthly (element) (is held fast) by infinitesimal particles of earthly (materials). O Twice-born ! I am Ṛtu, your preceptor, come to impart to you wisdom. I have come here and I shall go now as soon as you know the highest truth. You know that there is only one and there is no difference in the entire

1. The text consistently reads Ṛtu; probably a mistake for Ṛbhu.

2. A daily rite to please all gods performed before taking food.

universe. (All the things) are the manifestation of the Supreme Being known as Vāsudeva (name of Kṛṣṇa, manifestation of Viṣṇu).

Ṛtu went again to that city after one thousand years. He said to Nidāgha staying at a lonely place on the outskirts of the city, “Why do you stay at a lonely place?”

*Nidāgha said:*

56. O Brahmin! There is a strong rumour that the king would go round (the city) to see the beauty of the city. Hence I am staying here.

*Ṛtu said:*

57-60. Who is a king here and who are the other subjects? O Excellent Twice-born! Tell me this. You are conversant (with these)! O Foremost among twice-borns!”

(Nidāgha said): “He is the king who rides that elephant in rut rising from the peak of the mountain and others are (those) moving around him. O Brahman! That which is under is the elephant and one who is above is the king.” Ṛtu asked (again): “Who is the elephant and who is the king?”

Nidāgha said (the same thing again). Ṛtu made Nidāgha to lie crawling on fours and rode him (and said), “I am above like the king and you are below like the elephant.”

61-62. Ṛtu said to Nidāgha, “How shall I name you then?” Being told thus Nidāgha prostrated and said, “You are certainly my preceptor. My mind has not been (made free from the dualistic bias by anyone else”. Ṛtu said to Nidāgha, “I had come here to impart to (you) knowledge relating to Brahman. I have shown to you the highest truth, verily the essence, that is one without a second.”

*The Brahmin said :*

63-65. Nidāgha also became converted to non-dualism by the counsel (of Ṛtu). He then perceived all beings without any difference in his own self. He attained liberation by means of knowledge. You will also similarly obtain liberation. You and I and all other beings are (lord) Viṣṇu from whom all has come. Just as the single sky is perceived variedly as yellow, blue etc.,

so also the single soul (is perceived) as separate on account of erroneous perception.

*Fire-god said:*

66. The king gained liberation by means of the knowledge imparted by Bharata. Contemplate that the knowledge of Brahman is the enemy of the tree of ignorance of mundane existence.

### CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND EIGHTYONE

*The essence of the Bhagavadgītā*

*Fire-god said:*

1. I shall describe the essence of the (*Bhagavad*) *gītā*, that is foremost among all the *gītā*-s and which Kṛṣṇa imparted to Arjuna in olden days and which yields enjoyment and emancipation.

*The Lord said:*

2. One should not feel grief-stricken by the thought that the life is extinct or not extinct. The soul within the body is birthless. The soul neither gets old nor dies. It cannot be differentiated. Hence one should discard (the feeling of) grief etc.

3-5a. Brooding on the objects (of senses), man gets attachment for them. From attachment (arises) desire, then (comes) anger and delusion (proceeds) from anger. Confused memory (arises) from delusion and one gets ruined on account of the confusion. Association with bad elements is destroyed by means of association with good elements. The desire for gaining liberation destroys the desire (to enjoy pleasures). By discarding desire one gets firm on his own self. He is said to be a man of steady wisdom.

5b-7a. That which is night to all beings, in that the disciplined man wakes; that in which all beings wake, is night to the sage cognizing (the soul). There is nothing to be done by

him who feels happy in his (own) soul. For him there is no object to acquire by doing (an action) ; nor is there any (loss) by not doing (an action).

7b-8a. O Mighty-armed ! The knower of the truth relating to the nature of *guṇas* and action knows that *guṇas* (as senses) merely abide with the *guṇas* (as objects) and does not get entangled.

8b-9a. By the raft in the form of knowledge one goes beyond all pain. O Arjuna ! The fire of knowledge burns all the deeds to ashes.

9b-10a. One who dedicates his deeds to Brahman discarding all attachment, is not stained by sins just as a lotus by water.

10b-12a. A person united to *yoga* would perceive himself in others and others in his self and would view all as equal. A person fallen from *yoga* would be born in the house of prosperous and pious persons. O Son ! A person doing auspicious things does not suffer.

12b-13a. Verily this divine illusion of mine, consisting of the qualities, is difficult to surmount. Only those who resort to me cross over this illusion.

13b-14a. O Foremost among the Bharatas ! Four types of men worship, namely, a man in distress, a man seeking knowledge, a man seeking wealth and a man imbued with wisdom. (Among them) the wiseman (is) ever steadfast.

14b-18. The imperishable is the Supreme Brahman. Its dwelling in the individual body is said to be *adhyātman*. The offering which causes the origin of beings is called *karma*. The perishable nature is *adhibhūta*. The *puruṣa* (the being) is *adhi-daivata*. I alone am the *adhiyajña* here in this body, O Best among the embodied ! Whoever, at the time of death, remembers me alone, attains oneness with my state without any doubt. A man would attain the same state which he thinks of at the end after discarding the body. Fixing the life-energy in the middle of the eye-brows (a person) reaches me uttering the one-syllabled 'Om', the Brahman, and then discarding the life, (and knowing that) (the things) beginning with Brahṁā and ending with a tuft of grass are all my magnificence.

19. All glorious and noble beings are known to be a part

of Myself. One who knows that the universe is a manifestation of me, gets released.

20. One who knows the body as the field is said to be *kṣetrajñā* (knower of the field). The knowledge about the field and the knower of the field is deemed by Me (lord) as knowledge.

21-22. The great elements, egoism, intellect, unmanifest (principle), the ten (organs of) senses, one (mind) and the five objects of senses, desire, hatred, pleasure, pain, the aggregate, consciousness and firmness—all these have been described briefly as the *kṣetra* (field) with its modifications.

23-27. Humility, modesty, non-injury, forbearance, uprightness, serving the preceptor, purity, steadfastness, self-control, not having desire for the objects of senses, absence of egoism, cognizing the evil in birth, death, old age, sickness and pain, non-attachment, non-identification (of the self) with son, wife, home and the like, constant equanimity towards desirable and undesirable happenings, exclusive unswerving devotion to Me (god), resorting to solitary places, distaste for an assembly of men, constancy in knowledge about self, viewing things in accordance with the knowledge of truth—these are declared as knowledge. Ignorance is the opposite of these.

28. I shall describe that which has to be known, by knowing which one enjoys immortality. The Supreme Brahman is without a beginning. It is said to be neither existence, nor non-existence<sup>1</sup>.

29-31. With hands and feet everywhere, with eyes, heads and mouths everywhere and with ears everywhere<sup>2</sup>—(He) remains enveloping all. Shining by the functions of all the senses, (He) is without all the senses. (Although) unattached, (He) is the supporter of all (beings). (Although) devoid of qualities, (He) is the person experiencing them. He is outside and within (all) the beings. He is movable as well as immovable. He is incomprehensible because of his subtlety. He is far and near.

1. The textual reading is wrong. It has been corrected as in BG XIII.12.

2. The textual reading has been corrected on the basis of BG XIII.13.

32-33. He is undivided and yet He seems to be existing in beings as divided. He should be known as the supporter of beings. He devours and is mighty (generator). The light of all lights, He is said to be beyond darkness. (He is) the knowledge, the knowable and the goal of knowledge, remaining in the hearts of all (the beings).

34-35. By means of meditation some behold the self in the self by the self. Others (see the self) by *sāṅkhya-yoga* (deliberation) and yet others by *karma-yoga* (action). Still others, not knowing thus, worship (Him) as they have heard from others. They too cross death quickly by their devotion to what they have heard.

36. Knowledge arises from *sattva* (goodness), greed from *rajas* and error, delusion and ignorance from *tamas*.

37. One who simply stands composed (thinking) that the *guṇas* exist in him and is not shaken (by them) and remains equanimous towards respect and insult, friend and foe, (is said to be) free from *guṇas*.

38. The imperishable *aśvattha* (holy fig tree) is said to be having its roots above and branches below. Its leaves are the *Veda*-s. One who knows it is the knower of the *Veda*-s.

39. There are two (types of) beings in this world, the divine and the demoniacal. Non-injury etc.<sup>1</sup> and forbearance belong to one born for a divine state.

40. Neither purity, nor (right) conduct belong to one born for a demoniacal state. As anger, greed and sex lead to hell, one should reject the three.

41-42. Sacrificial rites, penance and charity are known to be of three varieties due to the (three) qualities, *sattva* etc. The food that augments life, purity, strength, health and pleasure (is known to be) *sāttvika*. The food that is pungent and dry and productive of pain, grief and disease (is) *rājasa*. The food that is impure, rejected, putrid and tasteless (is said to be) *tāmasa*.

43. The sacrificial rite is said to be *sāttvika* if it is performed as laid down without desiring reward. (A sacrifice is) *rājasa*,

---

1. See BG XVI. 2-3 for other characteristics.

if it is (done) for the sake of gaining a fruit. If it is for vanity it is *tāmasa*.

44. Physical penance is said to be that which is accompanied by faith, sacred formula and the like. Worship of the gods etc. and non-injury etc. are said to be verbal penance.

45. A speech that does not cause excitement, truthfulness, practice of the study of the scriptures of one's own school and sacred repetition (are said to be austerity of speech). Mental (austerity) consists of purity of disposition, silence and self-control<sup>1</sup>.

46-47. The *sāttvik* austerity (is done) with no desire (for any fruit), the *rājasa*, with the intention of gaining an object and the *tāmasa* for harming others. The *sāttvika* charity is that which is performed at the right place etc. with a sense of duty. *Rājasa* (charity) is that (performed) with a view to receive in return. It is said to be *tāmasa* (when performed) at a wrong place and insultingly.

48. “*Om tat sat* (*Om*, that and real)” has been declared to be the triple designation of Brahman. Sacrificial rites, charity and such other deeds confer enjoyment and emancipation to men.

49. The threefold fruit of action—disagreeable, agreeable and mixed—accrues after death to a person who does not relinquish (karma) but never to those who renounce.

50-51. The *tāmasika* action (arises) from an action associated with delusion, the *rājasa* action from pain, fear etc., and the *sāttvika* from non-desire. These (following) five are the five causes of an action—the body, the agent, the various instruments such as the senses, the different<sup>2</sup> functions of various sorts and the presiding deity, the fifth.

52-53a. The knowledge that (everything is) one is *sāttvika*. The knowledge that it is separate is *rājasa*. That which is contrary to reality is *tāmasa*. The *sāttvika* action is without any

1. The text has carelessly abridged BG XVII.15-16.

2. The printed text wrongly reads *trividhāḥ* for *vividhāḥ*. Cf. BG XVIII.14.

desire. The *rājasa* action is with desire. The *tāmāsa* (action) is from ignorance.

53b-54. A *sāttvika* agent would be equanimous towards success and failure. A *rājasa* (doer) (would be) deceitful. A *tāmāsa* (doer would be) languid. The understanding at the beginning of an action is *sāttviki*. That which is only at the time of an action would be *rājasi*. The contrary (would be) *tāmāsi*.

55-56a. The firmness of mind (towards pleasure and pain etc.) would be *sāttviki*. The desire (of the mind) for satisfaction is *rājasi*. Grief etc. is *tāmāsi*. There would be pleasure at the beginning from *sattva*. The pleasure that comes at the end is *rājasa*. Pain at the beginning and end is *tāmāsa*.

56b-58. All the beings had their origin from that by which this (universe) has been pervaded. One finds success by worshipping (lord) Viṣṇu by one's action. A person who knows the world from *Brahmā* to a tuft of grass as (lord) Viṣṇu by means of his action, mind and speech in all the states gains success always. The devotee of the lord (would) certainly (be) a *bhāgavata*.

## CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND EIGHTYTWO

### *The Yamagitā*

*Fire-god said:*

1. I shall describe to you the *Yamagitā* expounded to Naciketās. It would confer enjoyment and emancipation to the pious desiring emancipation who read and listen to this.

*Yama said:*

2. Alas! man himself being non-eternal, desires for eternal seats, beds, vehicles, clothes, houses etc. on account of ignorance.

3. It has been said by (the sage) Kapila (in olden days) that always having non-attachment for pleasures and viewing one's own self (critically) are most excellent for men.

4. (The sage) Pañcaśikha has said that impartiality to

wards all, attitude of non-possession, not being attached (to worldly pleasures) are most excellent for men.

5. Gaṅgāviṣṇu has declared that a true knowledge (of the miseries) of the stages (of life) beginning with that of embryo and including birth, childhood and old age etc. is most excellent for men.

6. Janaka has stated that remedying the pains such as the *ādhyātmika* (bodily and mental) and the like from the beginning to the end is most excellent for men.

7. Brahmā holds that the most excellent thing for men is to perceive the oneness of the Supreme Being appearing as different (in different beings).

8. Jaigīṣavya has said that the highest good lies in discharging one's duties as laid down in the *Ṛg*, *Yajur* or *Sāma* (*veda*) without attachment and with a sense that they have to be done.

9. Devala is said to hold the view that the most excellent thing for men would be to abandon all actions for the sake of the happiness of the self.

10. (Sage) Sanaka has declared that the knowledge (gained) from renunciation of desires leads one to Brahman, the supreme place, and that those who entertain desires (do not get) this knowledge.

11. (Lord) Hari has said that the foremost among the excellent is to transform the actions done with attachment into those of non-attachment. This is verily non-action, the Brahman.

12. The elevated person who has gained knowledge does not become different from Brahman, known as (lord) Viṣṇu, the supreme and indestructible.

13. A person would gain by (doing) austerities whatever he mentally desires such as knowledge of Brahman, knowledge of worldly existence, faith in god, good fortune and a beautiful form.

14. There is nothing to be contemplated equal to (lord) Viṣṇu. There is no austerity superior to fasting. There is no fortune equal to health. There is no river equal to the (river) Gaṅgā.

15-16. There is no kinsman other than (lord) Viṣṇu, the lord of the universe. A person who meditates on (lord) Hari

as (existing) below, above, in front and in the body, senses, mind etc. and passes away would become (lord) Hari. That which is the Brahman, from that all the things (have emanated) and in that all the things exist.

17. (Lord) Viṣṇu dwells in the hearts of all in the form of higher and lower, as un-understandable, indefinable and well-established.

18. Some (people) invoke that lord Viṣṇu as the lord of sacrifices. Some (invoke) Him as (lord) Hari, some as (lord) Hara (Śiva) and some others as Brahmā.

19. Some (invoke) Him by the names of Indra etc. and others as Sun, Moon and as the eternal time. People state that the whole earth, from Brahmā to a tuft of grass, is Viṣṇu.

20-21a. A person who has attained (lord) Viṣṇu, the Supreme Brahman, never returns (to worldly existence). A man may acquire such a state by making great gifts such as gold, bathing in sacred waters, meditation, austerities, worship, wealth and listening to sacred texts.

21b-22. Know the soul as traveller, the body as chariot, intellect as charioteer and mind as reins. The senses are said to be horses and the objects the pasture ground for them.

23-24a. People name the soul united with the mind and senses as the enjoyer. He who is not wise and whose mind is not always associated (with the soul), does not reach the Supreme Brahman and is born in the world.

24b-25a. He who is wise and whose mind is united (with the soul) always, attains the place (of Brahman) and is not born in this world again.

25b-26a. A person who has knowledge as the charioteer and mind as the reins, reaches the end of his journey and (gets) the highest region of (lord) Viṣṇu.

26b-28a. The objects (of senses) are higher than the respective organs; the mind is higher than the objects; the intellect is higher than the mind; the self (is higher) than the intellect and (the principle of) *mahat* is higher than the self. The unmanifest is higher than the *mahat*. The *Puruṣa* (the spirit) is higher than the unmanifest. There is nothing higher than the Supreme Spirit. It is the ultimate end and course.

28b-30. This self hidden in all the bodies does not reveal itself. The subtle one is perceived by men having sharp intellect and subtle vision. A wiseman should restrain his speech in the mind, that knowledge in the self, that knowledge in the great self and place it at the end in the self. After having known the union of Brahman and the self by means of moral duties etc., one would become Brahman.

31-32. Non-injury, truthfulness, non-stealing, celibacy, refraining from receiving gifts (are known) as the *yama-s* (moral abstentions). The *niyamas* (absternances) (are) five—purity, happiness, austerity, study of the *Veda* (of one's school) and worship of God. The (physical) postures are such as the *padmaka* etc. *Prāṇāyāma* (is) conquest of wind. *Pratyāhāra* is the restraining of the mind in the self.

33. *Dhāraṇā* consists of fixing of the mind on an auspicious object. O Twice-born ! It is said to be the *dhāraṇā* by the wise because the mind is steady.

34. The continuous fixing-up of the mind in the same place is known as *dhyāna* (contemplation). *Samādhi* is the state of (having the attitude) "I am Brahman".

35. Just as the space enclosed by a pitcher becomes one with the sky when the pitcher is destroyed, in the same way the liberated soul becomes Brahman.

36. The individual soul deems itself as Brahman by (means of) knowledge (alone) and not by any other (means). The individual soul gets released from ignorance and its effect and becomes undecaying and immortal.

*Fire-god said:*

37. O Vasiṣṭha ! I have expounded (to you) the *Yamagītā* which yields enjoyment and emancipation to the readers. The eternal union is stated to be the total occupation of the intellect by Brahman (as outlined) in the philosophical thought.

## CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND EIGHTYTHREE

*The Glorification of the Agnipurāṇā*

*Fire-god said:*

1-4. I have expounded to you the *Āgneyapurāṇa* of the form of Brahman. It with extension and without extension consists of the two *vidyā*<sup>1</sup>-s. The learning consists of the *R̥g*, *Yajur*, *Sāma* and *Atharva* (*veda*). Viṣṇu is the creator of the world. Prosody, phonetics, grammar, lexicon, astronomy, etymology, *dharmasāstra* (treatises on religious duties), *mīmāṃsā* (inquiry), *nyāya* (logic), science of medicine, archery, science of music and science of statecraft are all (known as *parā*) *vidyā*. The other one beyond the *Veda*-s is lord Hari known as *aparā vidyā* (that which has nothing superior to it). Highest knowledge is the supreme undecaying thing.

5-6. One who has the feeling that all the things are (the manifestations of lord) Viṣṇu, is not affected by the *Kali* (era). One would not incur any sin by not performing the great sacrificial rites or not offering the obsequial rites to the manes if he worships (lord) Kṛṣṇa with devotion. One does not get ruined by intensive contemplation of (lord) Viṣṇu, who is the cause of all things.

7. A person whose mind has been drawn towards the objects arising from defects due to other rituals, gets released from sins, even after doing a sin, by contemplating (lord) Govinda (Kṛṣṇa).

8. It is contemplation where there is Govinda. It is a narrative where there is Keśava. That is an action which is devoted to Him. What is the use of others which are repeatedly spoken about.

9. He is not a father who fails to describe this supreme knowledge spoken by me to the son and he is not a preceptor who fails to impart (this) to his pupil.

10. O Twice-born ! One could get a son, wife, wealth, prosperity, friends and other things by wandering in this world, but not this knowledge.

---

1. explained below.

11. What is the use of son and wife? What (comes out of) friend, land and relatives? Such knowledge is the supreme relative, which liberates a person.

12. There are two courses for the beings—divine and demoniac. Constant devotion to (lord) Viṣṇu is divine and the contrary is demoniac.

13. This, which has been expounded to you, is sacred, healthy, praise-worthy, capable of destroying bad dreams, giving pleasure and satisfaction and liberation to men.

14. In whatever houses transcripts of the *Āgneyapurāṇa* are kept, disturbances never approach them.

15. What is the good of pilgrimages, or making gifts of cows, or sacrificial rites or fasting, when people hear the *Āgneya (purāṇa)* daily?

16. A person who gives a *prastha* (measure) of sesamum or a *māṣa* (weight) of gold, would obtain equal (merit) by listening to one verse of the *Agni (Purāṇa)*.

17. The reading of a chapter of this (*Purāṇa*) is more commendable than making a gift of a cow. A sin done in the course of a day and night by a person is destroyed by his desire to listen to this (*Purāṇa*).

18. (The benefit) that would accrue by making a gift of hundred tawny cows at Puṣkara<sup>1</sup> in (the month of) *Jyeṣṭha* (June-July), that benefit would be obtained by reading the *Āgneyapurāṇa*.

19. The piety of two kinds—being engaged and being withdrawn—does not become equal to this sacred text of *Agnipurāṇa*.

20. O Vasiṣṭha ! A devoted man would get liberated from all sins by either reading the *Agnipurāṇa* daily or listening to it.

21-22. Where there is a copy of the *Agnipurāṇa*, in that house there would not be any difficulty, mishap or fear of theft, or fear of miscarriage of foetus, or possession of children by the spirits. There would not be the fear of the evil spirits and the like, where there is (a copy of) the *Agnipurāṇa*.

23. By listening to this (*purāṇa*), a brahmin would become learned in the *Veda*-s, a *kṣatriya* (would be) a monarch, a *vaiśya* would gain wealth and a *śūdra* would get health.

---

1. A holy place of pilgrimage in Rajasthan.

24-25. O Brahmin ! A devotee of Viṣṇu, having equanimity would get all his afflictions destroyed by reading or listening to the *Agnipurāṇa*. (Lord) Keśava would destroy all the misfortunes that would be celestial, terrestrial or earthly such as bad dreams, evil incantations and other mishaps (of such a person).

26-28. The reading or listening to the text is more meritorious for a man than performing a sacrificial rite. A person who listens to the sacred *Agnipurāṇa* in the *Hemanta* (early winter) after offering worship with perfumes and flowers would get the benefit of (performing) *Agniṣṭoma* (rite). (A person would get the benefit of performing) the *Puṇḍarīka* (rite) in *Śisīra* (advanced winter), *Aśvamedha* (rite) in the spring, *Vājapeya* (rite) in the summer and *Rājasūya* in the rainy season. (One would get) the benefit (of making a gift) of thousand cows in the autumn by reading this (*Purāṇa*).

29. O Vasiṣṭha ! He who devoutly recites the *Agnipurāṇa* in front of (lord) Hari, would be deemed as worshipping (lord) Keśava with the rite of knowledge.

30. He who has a book of the *Agnipurāṇa* in his house would be victorious. In whose house the transcribed (*Purāṇa*) is worshipped, (that person) has enjoyment and emancipation on his hand.

31. Thus (lord) Hari (Viṣṇu) has expounded to me in days of yore in the form of the destructive fire at the end of the world. The *Āgneyapurāṇa* consists of two sorts of knowledge. O Vasiṣṭha! You would impart to the devotees these two kinds of knowledge.

*Vasiṣṭha said :*

32-33a. O Vyāsa ! I have narrated to you the *Āgneyapurāṇa*, consisting of two sorts of knowledge, obtained from (lord) Viṣṇu, the Supreme Brahman, and as expounded to me by Agni (Fire-god) in the presence of the celestials and sages. It makes everything known.

33b-35a. O Vyāsa ! He who reads or listens to or writes or causes to write or causes to listen to or causes to read or worships or carries this *Agnipurāṇa*, known as the Brahman and expounded by Agni (Fire-god) in days of yore, would be liberated from all sins and would attain heaven after obtaining the desires.

35b-36. After having caused the excellent *Purāṇa* to be copied, he who gives (the copies) to brahmins, would attain the world of Brahmā and elevate hundreds of his family. He who reads a verse (from this *Purāṇa*) would become free from the mire of sin.

37-38. Hence, O Vyāsa ! This *Purāṇa* making everything explicit should always be read to the disciples in the company of the sages such as Śuka and others who are desirous of hearing. *The Āgneya (purāṇa)* read and contemplated would be auspicious and confer enjoyment and emancipation. Obeisance to that Fire-god who has sung the *Purāṇa*.

*Vyāsa said :*

39-44a. O Sūta (redactor) : This *Āgneya (purāṇa)* which is of the form of *parā* and *aparā vidyā* and the supreme position was sung by (sage) Vasiṣṭha in days of yore and it has been expounded to you by me. The fortunate ones would attain a form difficult to get. Those who meditate upon this *Āgneyapurāṇa*, the Brahman, would reach (lord) Hari. Those who seek knowledge (would get) knowledge. Those who wish for kingdom would obtain kingdom. Those without progeny get children. Those without resort would reach a resort. Those who seek fortune and those who desire for liberation get them. Those who transcribe and those who cause it to be transcribed become sinless and gain fortune. O Sūta ! Think of the form of the *Āgneyapurāṇa* (expounded) by Śuka, Paila and others. There is no doubt that you would gain enjoyment and emancipation. You recite the *Purāṇa* to the disciples and devotees.

*Sūta said :*

44b-47a. I have heard the *Āgneyapurāṇa* with respect by the favour of Vyāsa. The *Agni (purāṇa)* is a manifestation of the Supreme Brahman. You and other sages such as Śaunaka and others had worshipped lord Hari in the Naimiṣa forest. They were steadfast. The *Agnipurāṇa* is spoken by Agni and conforms to the *Vedas*. This (*Purāṇa*) endowed with the two (sorts of) *brahmavidyā* confers enjoyment and emancipation.

47b-51. There is nothing richer in substance than this. Nothing is a better friend than this. There is no greater work

than this. There is no better course than this. There is no greater treatise than this. There is no greater scripture than this. There is no superior knowledge than this. There is no *smṛti* (textbook of piety) than this. No *āgama* (texts dealing with worship) is superior to this. No knowledge is greater than this. No exposition excels this. There is nothing extremely auspicious excelling this. No philosophic exposition is greater than this. This is the foremost *Purāṇa*. There is no object more difficult to obtain than this on the earth. All the lores have been expounded in this *Purāṇa*.

52. All the manifestations (of lord Viṣṇu) such as the fish and the like, *Gītā*, *Rāmāyāna* ((epic story of *Rāma*), *Harivaṃśa* (Account of the successors of lord Kṛṣṇa), *Bhārata* (the legend of the patricidal war between the Kauravas and Pāṇḍavas) and fresh creation have been described.

53-55. The *vaiṣṇava āgama* (mode of worship relating to Viṣṇu) such as worship, initiation and installation (of the idol), investiture with the sacred thread, the characteristic of the idols and temples etc. and formulae yielding enjoyment and emancipation, texts dealing with worship relating to Śaivite gods and their substance, (the worship) of the goddess and Sun, different circles, *vāstu* (relating to the ground), different types of formulae and secondary creation of the primordial egg and the like have been sung.

56. The geography of the world with the continents, mountain ranges and rivers and the greatness of the sacred places of pilgrimage such as Gayā, Gaṅgā, Prayāga etc. have been told.

57. The galaxy of stars, astronomy and prognostication for victory in battle have been described. The different periods of Manu and the duties of different classes of men have been explained.

58. Pollutions, purification of things and expiations have been explained. The duties of kings, the making of gifts and different kinds of austerities have been described.

59-60. Disputes, appeasing rites, the application (of the formulae) of the *Ṛgveda* etc., the Solar and Lunar dynasties,

archery, medical science, science of music, statecraft, *mimāṃsā* (inquiry), *nyāya* (logic), the greatness and number of *Purāṇa-s*, prosody and grammar have been explained.

61. Poetics, lexicography, phonetics and rules relating to performance of rites have been described. The casual, natural, and absolute destructions have been explained.

62. *Vedānta* is said to be the knowledge about Brahman and *yoga* as having eight constituents. The eulogy, greatness of the *Purāṇas* and the eighteen lores have been expounded.

63. The *Ṛgveda* etc. (are known to be) the *parāvidyā* (that which has something superior to it) and the *aṅgāvidyā* (that which has nothing superior to it) is the undecaying Supreme Brahman. The form of Brahman is said to be cosmic and acosmic.

64. This *Purāṇa* (having an extent) of fifteen thousand (verses)<sup>1</sup> is always read by the celestials in the celestial world as having one hundred crore (verses).

65. Fire-god has sung it here after shortening it for the sake of the welfare of the world. O Sages, Śaunaka and others ! You know that all the things (are manifestations of) Brahman.

66. One may listen to, cause to be heard, read, cause to be read, transcribe, cause to be transcribed, worship or sing (its glory).

67-68. The king should take effort to honour the reader of this *Purāṇa*. After having honoured him by (making) gifts of cows, land and gold and the satiating gifts of clothes and ornaments, one would get the fruits of listening | to (the recitation of) the *Purāṇa*. At the end of (the reading of) the *Purāṇa*, the twice-born must be fed.

69-71. (He who does as above) would become spotless, gain all the riches and attain heaven along with his ancestors. He who gives leaves (paper) for (copying) the book, thread for stitching together the leaves and the cloth for binding would attain heaven. He who gives (the book as a gift) would

---

1. But this *Purāṇa* here contains about 8000 verses only.

reach the world of Brahmā. He who has the book in his house does not have the fear due to portents. (Such a person) would get enjoyment and emancipation. You all remember the *Āgneya purāṇa* as a form of the lord. After having been honoured by them (Śaunaka and others) Sūta went away and Śaunaka and others reached (lord) Hari.



# INDEX

- Abala, a deity, installation of, 172  
 abdhi, refers to a herb, 407  
 abdominal disorder, remedy for, 767  
 abduction, of captives, punishment for, 681  
 ābhāṅaka, a popular saying, 932  
 abhāva, explanation of the term, 1027  
 abhaya, one of the postures of the hand, 857  
 abhayā, one of the Praṇita-mudrās, 857  
 Abhijit, an asterism, 385, 388  
 abhijit, a muhūrta, division of a day, 371  
 Abhikṛti, classical metre based on, 914  
 Abhimanyu, son of Arjuna and Subhadrā, 751; birth of, 33  
 Abhimanyu, one of the ten sons of Manu and Naḍvalā, 42  
 Abhivyakti, an embellishment of sound and sense, 942  
 two divisions of, Śruti and Ākṣepa, 943  
 further divisions of; sub-divisions of, 943  
 abscess, commendable remedy to ripen, 756  
 remedy to open and heal, 756  
 remedy for, 767  
 type of food commended when one suffers, 756  
 abuses, punishment for different kinds of, 675-76  
 acala, an array; optionally formed, 635  
 ācamana, sipping of water, 69, 69fn.  
 ācārya, explanation of the term, 1017  
 acceptance, words for, 991  
 actions, need for abandoning, 1074  
 Acyuta, denoting lord Viṣṇu; propitiation of, 50  
 Acyuta, form of Viṣṇu on Mahendra hill, 842  
 Acyuta, a sālagrāma, 125  
 Adbhuta, Indra, during the period of ninth Manu, 428  
 Adbhutopamā, explanation of, 940  
 adhaḥpuṣpā, herb, 406  
 āḍhaka, a measure, 265  
 (agni) ādhāna, a haviryajña, 86  
 Adharma, married Himśā, a daughter of Dakṣa, 49  
 adhibhūta, explanation of the term, 1069  
 adhidaivata, explanation of the term, 1069  
 adhikaraṇa, four kinds of; explanation of, 971  
 a fifth variety of, 971  
 adhiśvara, significance of the term, 1018  
 adhiyajña, explanation of the term, 1069  
 adhvaryu, priest for Yajurveda, 429  
 adhyagni, a division of property of women, 541  
 adhyātma, explanation of the term, 1069  
 adhyāvāhanika, a division of property of women, 541  
 Ādigadādhara, name of Viṣṇu, 334  
 Ādigadādhara, on the worship of, 343, 344  
 Ādināthas, eight, 412  
 Aditi, wife of Kāśyapa, 8, 85  
 Aditi, manifested as Devaki, 744  
 Aditi, worship of, 274, 317  
 Ādityas, (twelve) 45  
 images of, 314  
 consecration of, 180  
 on the worship of, 343  
 ride the chariot of Sun, 356  
 adṛṣṭa, fear known as, 1019  
 Adṛṣṭanāma, a form of Rudra, 252  
 Adṛṣṭarūpa, a form of Rudra, 252  
 adytum, measure of, 313  
 Agastya, sage, 15, 24  
 reason for being called as 'born of pitcher', 536  
 mode of offering libation to, 535-7  
 should be worshipful, 339  
 at Gayā, 341  
 agent, five kinds of, 970  
 Aghamarṣaṇa, sage of aghamarṣaṇa hymn, 437  
 aghamarṣaṇa (sūkta), 53, 437  
 efficacy of the repetition of, 482  
 Aghāsi, worshipped, 414  
 Aghaora, the mantra of the weapons of; six constituents of, 887-91  
 collection of formulae of; precedes

- the appeasing rite for Śiva, 891-92  
 weapon of; the efficacy of repeating the mantra relating to, 885  
 weapon of; as an excellent formula, 892  
 aghoraśāstra, accessory rites relating to, 885  
 Aghoramukhi, synonym of Kubjikā, 413  
 aging, tonic for, 769  
 āgneya, kṛttikā; commended for copulation, 434  
 Āgneyakalpa, a kalpa period, 733  
 āgneyakṛcchra, expiation of eating sesame for twelve nights, 483  
 āgneyamantras, characteristics of and effects of, 802-3  
 Āgneya (Agni)purāna, spoken by Agni, 2  
 extent of, 733  
 consists of two kinds of knowledge, 1079  
 as a form of the lord, 1083  
 as a form of parā and aparā vidyā, 1080  
 as the essence of Vedas, 731  
 the greatness of, 731  
 greatness of hearing and reading, 491, 492, 1078  
 merits of having transcripts of, 1078  
 should be copied and given as a gift in Mārgaśiṣa, 733  
 merits of making a copy and giving as a gift, 1079  
 merits of meditating on, 1080  
 (See also Agnipurāna)  
 Āgneyī, wife of Ūru, 42  
 āgneyī, one of the dhāraṇas; explanation of, 1050  
 Agni (fire), synonyms of, 987-8  
 Agni, progeny of Dhiṣaṇā of the family of, 43  
 Agni, birth of Kumāra to, 44  
 and Svāhā, sons of, 49  
 direction presided over by, 55  
 propitiation of, 176  
 worshipped, 51  
 image of, 106, 137, 314  
 agni (three), herb denoted by, 408  
 Agnibāhu, son of King Priyavrata, 322  
 Agnibāhu, sage, 428  
 Agnidhārā, at Gayā, 344  
 Agnidhra, ruler of Jambūdvīpa, 322  
 Agnidhṛk, a goddess, 133  
 agnihotra, a haviryajña, 86, 466  
 included under iṣṭa, 539  
 Agnipurāna, Vasiṣṭha's request to the Fish to narrate, 3  
 extent given as fifteen thousand verses, 1082  
 abridgement of that in the, celestial region having one hundred crore verses, 1082  
 as a manifestation of Viṣṇu, 731  
 as a manifestation of the Supreme Brahman, 1080  
 the matters described in, 1081-1082  
 is more meritorious than piety, 1078  
 nothing greater than, 1080-1  
 merits of reciting the, 1079  
 the merits of listening to in different seasons, 1078, 1079  
 (See also Āgneyapurāna)  
 Agniṣṭoma, a somasamsthā, 86, 466, 1079  
 description of, 64  
 worshipped, 79  
 Agniṣṭu, a son of Manu and Nāḍvalā, 42  
 Agniṣvāttāh, birth of the manes, 49  
 prayer to, 336  
 Agnivarca, a disciple of Lomaharṣaṇa, 730  
 Agnivratī, explanation of, 524  
 agnyādheya, a haviryajña, 466  
 agrahāyaṇī, a sacrifice, 466  
 āgrahāyanyeṣṭi, a haviryajña, 466  
 āgrayaṇī, a pākayajña, 86  
 Ayodhyā, city of, 15  
 Ahalyā, was married by Śaradvata, 750  
 Ahankāra, origin of, 40  
 āhavanīyapada, at Gayā, 339  
 Ahi, a karaṇa (Nāga), 369  
 ahi, a variety of serpent; remedy for poison due to, 818  
 Ahirbudhnya, born to Sati, 45  
 ahisañcāri, an array; a variation of the array bhoga, 634  
 Ahināśva, son of Devānika; son of, 738  
 Āhuka, son of Punarvasu; son of, 742  
 Āhuki, wife of Punarvasu, 742  
 Aila, Purūravas; born to Budha, 31  
 aindava, a kind of fire, 205  
 Aindri, image of, 133  
 prayer to, 399  
 Airāvata, Indra's elephant made ruler of elephants, 47  
 worshipped, 91  
 aiśāni, one of the dhāraṇas; explanation of, 1050-1  
 Aiśvara, a Pāñcarātratrantra spoken by Satya, 106

- aja, denotes Brahmā, 49  
 Aja, son of Dilipa; son of, 737  
 Aja, son of Raghu, 9  
 Ajaikapād, born to Sati, 45  
 Ajakāśva, son of Jahnu; son of, 749  
 Ajamiḍha, one of the sons of Bṛhat, 749  
 Ajamiḍha, had Nilini as wife; son of, 749  
 Ajamiḍha, father of Rkṣa; Dhūmini was the wife of, 750  
 ajapā, gāyatri known as; greatness of, 557-8  
 Ajāpāla, son of Kāla, 737  
 Ajina, son of Havirdhāna and Dhiṣ-  
 anā, 43  
 Ajita, a manifestation of Viṣṇu, 428  
 form of Viṣṇu at Viśākhayūpa, 841  
 Ajitā, goddess, 375  
 ajitā, a stone, 269  
 Ājñārūpa, a deity; worship of, 414  
 Ājyapāh, class of manes; prayer to, 336  
 Akampana, a demon killed by Nila, 22  
 ākarṣaṇa, one of the acts, 403  
 Ākāśagaṅgā, at Gayā, 341  
 Ākāśamātr̥s, goddesses, 375  
 Ākāśarevati, prayer to goddess, 399  
 akhaṇḍadvādaśī, mode of practising the vow of, 514-5  
 Ākhyānikī, characteristics of the metre, 910  
 Ākhyāyikā, narrative 992  
 a division of the prose kāvya; characteristics of, 919  
 Akṛśāśva, one of the two sons of Sarmhatāśva, 737  
 Akrūra, son of Śvaphalkaka; son of, 744  
 the syamantaka was entrusted by Kṛṣṇa to, 743  
 praised Kṛṣṇa, 27  
 akṣa, herb denoted by, 407  
 Akṣa, demon prince, 20  
 Akṣarapaṅkti, a variety of Paṅkti; composition of, 904  
 Akṣararadā, a goddess, 133  
 akṣauhīnī, a unit of army, 33  
 Akṣaya, a year of the Hindu almanac, 405  
 Akṣaya, a form of Rudra, 252  
 Akṣayā, image of, 138  
 Ākṣepa, a division of Abhivyakti; explanation of; also known as Dhvani, 943  
 akṣi, herb, 407  
 Akṣobhyā, image of, 138  
 Alaghu, a sage born to Vasiṣṭha and Urjā, 49  
 Alakanandā, a river, 325  
 alambuṣā, a vein; carries the wind kṛkara, 556  
 āliḍha, a posture relating to archery, 133, 645  
 alliteration, when conceived as charming, 935  
 Amara, a form of Rudra, 253  
 amara, an array; reverse of śakaṭa, certain features same as maṇḍala, 635  
 Amarakantaka, 331  
 Amariśa, letter denoting, 418  
 Amariśeśvara, a siddha; worship of, 415  
 amāvāsyā, means near 990  
 Ambālikā, a daughter of Kāśirāja, 31  
 Ambariṣa, son of Nābhāga, 736  
 a son of Vaivasvata Manu; son of, 737  
 was a devotee of Viṣṇu, 736  
 ambariṣa, a hell, 532  
 Ambikā, denotes goddess Durgā, 26, 215  
 letter denoting, 417  
 Ambikā, daughter of Kāśirāja 31,  
 Āmbikeya, a boundary mountain, 352  
 ambrosia, rise of Dhanvantari with, 6  
 Ambuja, one of the bandhas, 936  
 Ambujeśvara, a Rudra, 255  
 āmikṣā, explanation of, 1017  
 Amogha, a female divinity, 51  
 Amoghapada, at Gayā, 341  
 Āmrātakeśvara, place at Vārāṇasi, 330  
 āmreḍita, one of the yamakas, 935  
 amṛta (ambrosia), synonyms of, 987  
 amṛtā, one of the Praṇitamudrās, 857  
 Amṛtā, a female energy, 136  
 Amṛtadhārā, characteristics of the metre, 909  
 amṛtāmudrā, 200  
 amṛtātmikā, one of the dhāraṇas; explanation of, 1051  
 amṛtividya, description of, 870  
 Amṛśu, one of the twelve Ādityas, 45  
 Amśumān, son of Asamañjasa; son of, 737  
 Āmukha (prologue), explanation of; also called Prastāvanā, 922  
 three divisions of, 922  
 amulet, protective, 395  
 Anādivimāla, one of the gods to be worshipped, 412, 415  
 Ānadra, one of the foremost sons of Viduṣa, 747  
 Anagha, different reading for Alaghu, 49fn.

- Anala, one of the Vasus, 44  
 Anala, a boundary mountain, 352  
 Anamitra, descendant of Dhr̥ṣṭa;  
 Sini as born from, 743  
 Anamitra, son of Nighna; son of, 737  
 (wrongly given as son of Anaraṇya)  
 Ānanda, a guard of the doors to be  
 worshipped, 93  
 a deity to be worshipped, 414  
 one of the Pāñcarātra tantras, 106  
 one of the sons of Medhātithi, 351  
 anāṅgatrāyodaśī, on the practice of  
 the vow of; for god of love, 515-6  
 Ananta, serpent, 50, 55, 63  
 image of, 137  
 propitiation of, 176  
 worshipped, 414  
 letter denoting, 418  
 Balabhadra was a form of, 37  
 a Rudra, 263  
 form of Viṣṇu at Saindhava, 842  
 name of a śālagrāma, 125, 126  
 son of Vitihoṭra; son of, 741  
 anantadvādaśī, on the practice of, 513  
 Anaraṇya, son of Kalmāṣapāda; son  
 of, 737  
 Anarka, son of Vatsa; son of, 749  
 Ānarta, a son of Śaryāti; Kuśasthali  
 as the domain of, 736  
 son of Vibhu; son of, 749  
 anāśrita, a perfection, 257  
 Anasūyā, wife of sage Atri, 8, 15, 49  
 anātha, a perfection, 257  
 ancestral rites, at Gayā, mode of  
 performing, 345-50  
 anchorite, duties of, 452  
 Añcita, a division of Vithi, 928  
 Andhaka, a demon, reference to his  
 attack on Śiva, 746  
 killed by Viṣṇu, 745  
 one of the sons of Sātвата, 742  
 Andhakāraka, a son of Dyutimat 352;  
 mountain named after, 352  
 Andhakas, a division of Yādavas, 736  
 Andhatāmisra, sub-division of a hell,  
 1039  
 Āndhra, a country, 387  
 Aṅga, one of the sons of Ūru and  
 Āgneyi, 42  
 one of the sons of Bali, 747  
 lineage of, 746-7  
 son of, 748  
 a country, 640  
 Aṅgada, son of Vālin, 19, 20, 21  
 aṅgamāntas, details relating to use  
 of, 806  
 Aṅgāraka, a planet; worship of, 52  
 Aṅgārakeśvara, at Gayā, 343  
 Aṅgirā (Aṅgīrasa), a year of the  
 Hindu almanac, 404  
 Aṅgīras, sage, 41, 42fn, 112  
 married two daughters of Dakṣa, 44  
 Aṅgīras, progeny of, 49  
 Aṅgīras, excellence of progeny of, 45  
 a law-giver, 455  
 one of the sons of Ūru and Āgneyi,  
 42  
 aṅgula, a measure, 107, 119, 140, 261  
 Anila, one of the Vasus, 44  
 animals, words denoting different  
 species of, 1012  
 life periods of certain, 465  
 Aniruddha, a form of Vāsudeva, 62-  
 91  
 image of, 130  
 installation of image of, 172  
 worship with the mantra of, 68  
 a śālagrāma, 125, 126  
 son of Pradyumna, fond of war, 29  
 fight with Bāna, 30  
 father of Vajra, 37  
 the Yādavas, Vajra and others as  
 sons of, 745  
 Aniyamopamā, explanation of, 940  
 Añjali, a posture of the hand, 66  
 a measure, 1037  
 Añka, a type of drama, 921  
 aṅka, a unit relating to elephant-  
 force in the army, 632  
 aṅkuśa, one of the postures of the  
 hand, 246, 258, 857  
 annaprāśana, rite of, 59  
 anointment, for the preceptor, mode  
 of doing, 74  
 disciple, 263-4  
 Antardhāna, a son of Pṛṥthu; progeny  
 of, 43  
 Antikā, a divine mother, 412  
 Anṛta, born to Adharma and Hirṣā,  
 49  
 Anu, one of the sons of Yayāti and  
 Śarmiṣṭhā, 25, 740  
 anudātta, a division of the sound, 917  
 anugraha, the eighth creation, 48  
 Anugraha, an energy, 112  
 anugraha-cakra, a mystic diagram  
 conferring grace, 869-70  
 Anugrahiṣa, letter denoting, 418  
 Anuhrāda, one of the sons of Hiraṇya-  
 kaśipu, 45  
 anukalpa, that which is inferior to  
 mukhya, 1018  
 Anumati, one of the sons of Aṅgīras  
 and Smṛti, 49  
 anumati, a digit less than the full  
 moon, 990  
 anuprāsa, an embellishment of word,  
 932

- anurādhā, an asterism, 360, 361, 363, 381, 382, 385, 388, 400
- Anuṣṭubh, a metre, 562, 902  
tawny coloured; belongs to Gau-  
tamagotra, 905  
the number of letters in each pāda  
of, 903
- Anyasyopamā, explanation of, 941
- Āpa, one of the Vasus, 44
- apādāna, two kinds of, calam and  
acalam; explanation of, 971
- Apahnuti, concealment of something  
conveying another sense, 944
- apāna, functions of, 556  
equated with the night, 557
- Aparājita, one of the Rudras, 45
- Aparājitā, a goddess, 375  
a herb, 410  
a stone, 269  
characteristics of the metre, 913
- Aparāntikā, characteristics of the  
metre, 907
- Aparavakra, characteristics of the  
metre, 910
- Aparāvidyā, explanation of, 2-3, 1082
- Āpastamba, a law-giver, 455
- Apavāhaka, characteristics of the  
metre, 914
- Apavatsa, one of the deities to be  
worshipped, 108, 317
- Āpīḍa, characteristics of the metre,  
909
- appetite, loss of, remedy for, 773
- application, that breaks the army of  
others, 394
- Aprastuta-stotra, explanation of, 943
- apsaras, celestial maiden, 356
- Aptoryāma, a sacrificial rite, 64, 79,  
86
- Aquarius—a zodiacal sign, 384, 392
- Ārabhaṭi, one of the modes; abounds  
in trickery, witchcraft, war etc.;  
three varieties of, 928
- āraṇyaka, section of Sāmaveda, 730
- Arbuda, a sacred place, 327
- archers, the units of army needed to  
protect, 653
- archery, description of the sciences  
of, 645-7  
five different kinds of, 645  
different postures relating to, 645-7  
instructions relating to the use of  
bow and arrow, 646-7  
details relating to science of, 647-8  
preceptor in, 645  
time for imparting, 359
- Ardhabhramāṇa, one of the bandhas,  
936
- ardhacandraka, an array; formed  
from divisions of vajra, 634
- Ardhajāleśvara, letter denoting, 419
- Ardhāmśaka, letter denoting, 418
- Ardhanārīśvara, installation of image  
of, 172
- ārdrā, an asterism, 359, 360, 363, 376,  
381, 382, 385, 400
- arghakāṇḍa, section on storing grains,  
387
- Ārhata (Jaina), reference to Viṣṇu be-  
coming an, 38
- ari, relating to the letters in the name  
of the votary, 390, 391, 895
- Aries, a constellation, 378, 384, 385,  
392
- Arimejaya, one of the sons of Kuru,  
750
- Ariṣṭa, demon killed by Kṛṣṇa, 27
- Ariṣṭā, mother of Gandharvas, 47
- Ariṣṭanemin, married the four daugh-  
ters of Dakṣa, 44  
progeny of, 45
- Arjuna, born to Kuntī from god  
Indra, 744  
birth of, 32  
son of, 751  
conquest of Kurus by, 33  
fought on the words of Kṛṣṇa, 34  
commanded the Pāṇḍava forces, 35  
fall of, 37
- Arjuna: See Kārtavīryārjuna
- Arjuna, a tree, 27  
a flower, 529
- Arka denotes Sun; worship of, 215,  
316
- arka, denotes a herb, 406
- arka (white), a herb; used in charm,  
406  
a flower for worshipping lord Hara,  
529
- armoured men, duties of, 613
- armours, different kinds of, 649
- army, the composition of, 621  
words denoting the arrangement  
of, 1019  
six divisions of, 629  
six other divisions of, 630  
array for a marching 630  
different kinds of arrangement of,  
612  
defects of, 626-7  
number of vulnerable points of an,  
633  
the mode of attacking an, 634
- array(s), different kinds of, 612, 633;  
other kinds of, 635  
five parts of, 612  
seven parts of, 633  
three divisions of, 633

- of army; different types of, 630  
the king should never be in, 612  
king should arrange the army in an, 632  
of other kinds of different shapes, 634  
structures may be modified by omitting one or two wings, 634  
arrow, excellent kind of, 647  
characteristic features of, 639  
the materials for making, 639  
ārṣa, a type of marriage, 434  
artha, homa that confers, 53  
Arthāntaranyāsa, one of the similarities, 939  
explanation of, 941  
arthāpatti, explanation of the term, 1027  
arthaprakṛtis, five divisions of, 922  
Arthaśāstra, science of, 3  
artisans, words denoting different, 1023  
Aruṇa, born to Vinatā, 46  
younger brother of Sun, 51  
a Pāñcarātra text, 106  
brahmins in Kuśadvīpa, 352  
Arundhati, progeny of, 44  
Aruṇoda, a lake, 325  
arvāgbijas, mantras having more than ten letters and less than twelve, yield result in old age, 802  
arvāksrotas, creation known as, 48  
Āryā, metre; characteristics of, 906  
Ārya, a name of Durgā, 26  
Āryāgiti, characteristics of the metre, 906  
Āryakas, a class of men in Plakṣadvīpa, 351  
Aryaman, one of the Suns, 45, 136  
offering made to, 275  
requested to accept offering, 336  
Asādhāraṇopamā, explanation of, 941  
Āśāḍha, an asterism, 382  
Āśāḍha, the four asterisms, 385  
Āśāḍha, a month, 386  
Āśāḍhi, letter denoting, 419  
asahya, a modification of the array called danḍa, 633  
array formed by adding two flanks, 634  
Asamañjasa, born to Sagara and Bhānumatī by the grace of sage Aurva, son of, 737  
Asamaujas, son of Kambalabarhis, sons of, 743  
Asāmayikatva, a defect of word, 947  
Asambādha, characteristics of the metre, 913  
asaṁhata, an array; description of, 633  
āsana, explanation of the term, 1044  
asaṅghāta, an array; six units taken from and combined (for a battle), 634  
Asatpralāpa, a division of Vithi, 928  
ascetic, words denoting, 1018  
duties of, 452-5  
Asī, a river, 330  
Asidhanya, one of the sixteen sidhas, 414  
asipatravana, a forest in hell, 531  
subdivision of a hell, 1039  
asitā, a lightning, 45fn.  
Āśleṣā, an asterism, 359, 360, 363, 376, 381, 382, 385, 388, 400  
Aśoka, grove at Laṅkā, 16  
Sītā found by Hanūmat at, 19  
Aśoka, a minister of King Daśaratha, 11  
aśoka, a flower, 529  
aśokapūrṇimā, vow on a full-moon day, 518-9  
ass and other animals, mantra for the removal of poison due to, 819  
assault, explanation of the term, 655  
assembly, words signifying member of, 1017  
Aṣṭaka, name of Śunaḥśeṣa, 749  
aṣṭakā, a sacrifice 86, 466  
Āstārapaṅkti, a variety of Paṅkti; composition of, 904  
Aṣṭāvakra, a brahmin, 37  
curse on the nymphs made by, 37 fn.  
asterisms, letters denoting, 400  
words denoting, 989  
actions appropriate to, 381  
adverse for serving the employer, 360  
auspicious for entering a new house, 360  
beneficial for undertaking a pilgrimage, 360  
causing adversity, 360  
causing profit, 360  
commendable for marriage, 357  
commended for copulation, 434  
commended for taking harvest grains inside the house, 361  
commended for harvesting grains, 361  
diagram of; relating to beginning a journey, 400  
down faced, 381  
evil, 381  
favourable for a person to return, 382  
favourable for seeing a sovereign, 360  
fixed, movable and commendable, 381  
for constructing a house, 360

- forbidden for entering the cow-pen, 361  
 for hoisting and lowering of banner of Indra, 362  
 friendly etc., 362  
 good for agriculture, 361  
 good for sowing seeds, 361  
 good for gathering hay, 360  
 good or bad; combinations of, 380-2  
 good for taking out the grains, 361  
 increasing the heap of grains, 361  
 lateral faced, 381  
 malignant relating to snake-bite, 808  
 new purchases prohibited under certain, 359  
 not commended for grazing the cows, 360  
 suited for giving or taking or depositing, 360  
 to be avoided for wearing new clothes, 359  
 vows relating to different, 520  
 the names of the presiding deities of, 805  
 āsthāpana, explanation of, 267  
 asthma, food for a patient suffering from, 753  
 Aṣṭi, name of a metre, 905  
 Asti, daughter of Jarāsandha and wife of Karṇa, 28  
 astrology, essence of 372-74; as the lord Hari, 492  
 aśūnyaśayana, a vow, 498-99  
 āsura, a type of marriage, 435  
 asuras, 34, 35, 38  
 Aśvalalita, characteristics of the metre, 914  
 Aśvamedha, a sacrifice, 23, 36, 86, 327, 330, 474, 1079  
 Aśvapada, one of the varieties of Gomūtrikābandha, 937  
 aśvattha, tree, 92  
 Aśvatthāman, killed the Pāṇḍava soldiers, 35  
 survived the Bhārata war, 36  
 āśvayujī, a sacrificial rite, 86, 466  
 Aśvāyus, a son of Purūravas, 739  
 Āśvina, month of, 360  
 Aśvini, an asterism, 358, 359, 360, 362, 363, 381, 382, 385, 386, 387, 400  
 is of the shape of a horse, 384  
 Aśvini Kumāra, birth of Nakula and Sahadeva through, 32  
 Aśvins, worship of, 180  
 Atala, a nether world, 353  
 Ataladevī, goddess to be invoked, 413  
 atarūṣabhava, a flower, 529  
 Ātharvaṇīśruti (Muṇḍakopaniṣad), 1  
 Atharvaṇāyani, a branch of sāma-veda, 730  
 Atharvaveda, an Aparāvidyā, 2  
 sacred for Soma, 93  
 use of the hymns of, 707-710  
 hymns to be recited by the follower of, 287  
 branches of, 730  
 assigned on the palms, 64  
 atibalā, a herb, 371, 378  
 Aticaṇḍikā, a goddess, 132  
 Atidhṛti, name of a metre, 905  
 metre based on, 914  
 atigaṇḍa, an impediment, 383  
 Atighorā, a hell, 1038  
 Atijagati, name of a metre, 905  
 a metre to be employed in composing a Mahākāvya, 920  
 metres belonging to the class of, 913  
 Atikāya, demon, 22  
 atikṛcchra, an expiation, 479, 486, 487  
 explanation of, 494  
 to be observed three fortnights after death, 488  
 atilohitā, one of the four kinds of lightning, 45fn.  
 atimukta, a flower, 529  
 Atimuktaka, one of the siddhas, 414  
 Atiraktā, a goddess, 230  
 Atirātra, a sacrifice, 42, 64, 79, 86, 466  
 Atiśakvari, name of a metre, 905  
 used in the Mahākāvya, 920  
 atisāntapana, an expiation, explanation of, 483  
 atīśaya (exaggeration), an embellishment of sense, 939  
 Atīśayokti, explanation of, 941  
 Atithi, son of Kuśa; son of, 738  
 ātodyam, a kind of musical instrument, 994  
 atonements, different kinds of, 474-78,  
 for ascetics, 455  
 for minor sins, 474-5  
 (See also expiations)  
 Ātreya, a Pāncarātra tantra 106  
 Ātreya, the infallible composition propounded by, 778  
 Atri, sage born from Brahmā, 25, 31, 41 42 fn, 738  
 Atri, a law-giver, 455  
 progeny of, 31, 49  
 Dattātreya as son of, 8  
 bowed to by Rāma, 15  
 protected the celestials, 746  
 attachment, actions done with; to be transformed as those of non-attachment, 1074  
 attendants, the king should choose what type of, 619  
 Atyagniṣṭoma, a sacrifice, 79, 86, 466  
 Atyaṣṭi, name of a metre, 905

- Atyuktā, a metre; number of letters in, 905
- Aucitya, an embellishment of sound and sense  
explanation of, 942
- audārya, a kind of fire, 205
- audgātra, priest for Sāmans, 429
- audumbara, a tree, 92
- auguries, auspicious and inauspicious, 597  
good and bad; known from sounds of animals and birds, 598-600
- Apacāriki, a division of Abhivyakti, explanation of, 943
- Apacchandāsaka, characteristics of the metre, 907
- Aurva, a sage; was pleased by King Sagara, 737
- austerities, the gains of doing, 1074
- āvāhani, a posture made with the hands, 898
- Avalagita, a division of Vithi, 928
- Āvantayas, one of the five branches of Haihayas, 741
- Avanti, a country, 387
- Avantikā, a sacred place, 328, 491
- Avapāta, a variety of Ārabhaṭi, 928
- āvasthya, fire, 339
- avastika-khaḍga, a type of temple, 315
- Avasyandita, a division of Vithi, 928
- avighnācaturthi, a vow; details relating to, 503
- Avijñāta, son of Anala, a Vasu, 44
- Avimukta, name of Vārāṇaṣi, 330  
greatness of, 327
- Aviṣpaṣṭatva, a defect of word, 947
- Avyayibhāva (compound), two kinds of; examples of, 975
- Āyā, a deity, 317
- Ayodhyā, city, decoration of, 11  
return of the people to, 13  
Rāma's return to, 23  
greatness of, 328, 491  
destruction of, 387
- āyogava, caste, 430  
duty of, 431
- Āyurveda, science of, 6
- Āyus, son of Viśvagāśva, 736
- Āyus, born from Purūravas, 25, 31  
sons of, 739
- Āyusmat, a son of Hrada, 46
- Babru, a form of Rudra, 252  
was born from Devavṛdha; glory of; four sons of, 742
- Babhrusetu, son of Gāndhāra; son of, 747
- Badarikāśrama, a place, 1
- Bāhu, son of Vṛka; son of, 737
- Bahudāna, a year of the Hindu almanac, 404
- Bāhyāśva, son of Purujāti; progeny of, 749
- Bahūpamā, explanation of, 940
- Bahuputra, married two daughters of Dakṣa, 44  
lightnings, as four daughters of, 45
- Bahurūpa, one of the Rudras, 45
- Bahurūpā, a goddess, 230
- Bahuvidha, son of Śundhu; son of, 748
- Bahuvrihi (compound), formation of, 975
- Bāhya, one of the four sons of, 742
- Baka, demon, 32, 32fn  
letter denoting, 419  
a variety of beads belonging to Jyoti class, 894
- Bala, one of the seven sons of Suhotra and Girikā, 750
- balā, a herb, 371, 378, 407
- bālā, a formula consisting of twenty letters, 895  
installation of image denoting, 172
- Balabhadra, denotes Balarāma; progeny of, 29, 30  
a form of Ananta; returned to original place, 37  
merits of worshipping, 343
- Baladeva (Balarāma), married Revati, daughter of Raivata, 736  
Kṛṣṇa entrusted the gem to Akṛūra in the presence of, 743
- bālagra, a measure, 107
- Balāhaka, a boundary mountain, 352
- Balākāśva, son of Ajakāśva; son of, 749
- Balākeṣi, image of goddess, 138
- Bālakhilyas, 60000 in number of the size of a thumb; born to Kratu and Sannati, 49
- Balapramathini, a goddess, 51, 201
- Balarāma, one of the sons of Vasudeva and Rohiṇi, 744  
origin of; reasons for being known as Saṅkarṣaṇa, 26fn  
was entrusted to the custody of Nanda, 27  
reached Gomantaka from Māthurā 28  
killed the demon Pralamba, 30, 30fn  
figure of, 130  
assigned and worshipped, 56  
synonyms of, 986
- bālava, a karaṇa, 362, 369fn
- Balavikariṇi, a goddess, 51, 201
- Bālhika, one of the sons of Śantanu; sons of, 751
- Bali, Indra at the time of eighth Manu, 428
- Bali a demon, the story relating to Viṣṇu's manifestation as a dwarf to

- subdue, 8, 745  
 son of Virocana, 8fn;  
 reference to subdual of, 82  
 father of Bāṇa, 29  
 had hundred sons, 46  
 to be paid obeisance at Gayā, 341  
 son of Sutapā; sons of, 747  
 the name of a temple, 318  
**Balikā**, the spirit possessing the child  
 in the twelfth year; symptoms of the  
 child possessed by; offering and  
 smearing when the child is possessed  
 by, 825  
**Balotkaṭā**, a female deity, 292  
**Bāṇa**, demon, 29, 30  
 foremost among the sons of Bali, 46  
 worshipped, 414  
 symbol denoting a herb, 406, 407,  
 408  
 a flower, 529  
**bāṇalinga**, 300, 301  
**bandha**, relating to a kind of Yamaka,  
 936  
**bandhas**, eight kinds of; description  
 of, 936  
 Anuṣṭubh as a metre for most of  
 the, 938  
**banks**, words signifying, 995  
**banner**, words denoting, 1020  
 erection of, 167-69  
 length of, 309  
 presiding deities of,  
 worship of, 284  
**barbara**, a flower, 529  
**Barhiṣadaḥ**, manes, origin of, 49  
 requested to come, 336  
**Bāṣkala**, saṁhitā given to, 429  
 one of the sons of Hrada, 46  
**bath**, ingredients for ceremonial, 717  
**bathing**, six kinds of, 436  
 after illness, asterism for, 358  
 mantras for, 436-7  
 procedure for, 53-54  
 to ward off obstacles, 718-19  
 known as Maheśvara; promoting  
 the victory of a king, 719-22  
 benefits of, 764  
 merits of; with different materials,  
 552  
**bathing of deities**, mode of, 190-195  
 different kinds of, 192  
 to accomplish one's desires, 716  
**bathing festival**, mode of conducting,  
 186-88  
**battle**, worship for success in, 425  
 things to be done after gaining vic-  
 tory in; merits of endurance of pain  
 in; the demerits of deserting a, 614  
**battles**, success in; means for gaining,  
 372  
 between celestials and demons; twelve  
 in number; details about, 745  
**battle-axe**, different uses of, 651-2  
**Bauddhas**, reference to demons be-  
 coming, 38  
**Baudhāyana** (tantra), 106  
**Bauddhya**, Vedas given to, 429  
**Bava**, a karaṇa, 369fn  
**beads**, made of different materials,  
 merits of, 899-900  
**bees and honey-bees**, words denoting,  
 1013  
**begging**, five kinds of, 453  
**beings**, two kinds of; their characteris-  
 tics, 1071  
**bell**, used in worship; greatness of, 900  
**belly**, three-fold division of, 930  
**betel**, time suitable for rite of chewing,  
 358  
**Bevācakra**, to find friendship between  
 two people, 392  
**bhadra**, a variety of horses, 789  
**Bhadra**, a type of temple, 314  
 characteristics of, 318  
**bhadrā**, a stone, 269  
**Bhadrā**, a female divinity, 51  
 a river, 325  
**Bhādra**, name of a month, 360  
**Bhadrabhimā**, a goddess, 376  
**Bhadradeha**, one of the sons of Vasu-  
 deva and Devaki, was killed by  
 Kaṁsa, 744  
**Bhadrakālī**, a goddess, 26, 376  
**Bhadrakarṇahrada**, a sacred place, 327  
**Bhadra**, one of the four sons of Śibi,  
 747  
 characteristics of the metre, 914  
**bhādrapada**, an asterism, 363, 388  
**Bhadraratha**, son of Haryaṅgaka; son  
 of, 748  
**Bhadrasena**, one of the sons of Vasu-  
 deva and Devaki, was killed by  
 Kaṁsa, 744  
**Bhadrasenaka**, son of Mahimā; son  
 of, 740  
**Bhadraśva**, son of Rahovādi; ten sons  
 of, 325, 748  
 country, 322, 325  
 Viṣṇu as Hayagriva in, 326  
 a mountain, 325  
**bhadrātithi**, certain days of lunar  
 fortnight, 362  
**Bhadravirāt**, characteristics of the  
 metre, 910  
**Bhaga**, one of the Ādityas, 45  
**Bhagavadgitā**, essence of, 1068-1073

- bhagavān**, the significance of the term, 1060  
**Bhāgavatapurāṇa**, containing explanation of virtues; to be given as a gift in Proṣṭhapadi, 732  
**Bhagiratha**, son of Dilipa; brought down Ganges from heaven; son of, 737  
**Bhairava**, image of, 138, 314  
   **installation of image of**, 172  
   to be contemplated, 404  
   located on the body, 414  
   mantra having the word, 411  
**Bhairavi**, goddess; mantra sacred to, 404  
   image of, 135  
   cloth bearing the figure of, 402  
**Bhājamāna**, one of the four sons of Sātvata, 742  
   four sons of, 742  
**Bhājamāna**, one of the sons of Babhru, 742  
   father of Vidūratha, 743  
**Bhallāta**, (a superhuman being) 108  
   worship of, 317  
**Bhāṇa**, a type of drama, 921  
**Bhāṇḍila**, an authority in prosody; given as Tāṇḍin in Chandaḥ Sūtra, 904  
**bhāṅgavidyā**, relating to goddess, 395  
**Bhāṇi**, a type of drama, 921  
**Bhāṇikā**, a type of drama, 921  
**Bhānu**, mother of Bhānus, 44  
**Bhānumati**, second wife of Sagara, son of, 737  
**Bhānuratha**, son of Candragiri; son of, 738  
**Bhānus**, progeny of Bhānu, 44  
**bhāra**, one of the postures of the hand, 857  
**Bharadvāja**, son of Bṛhaspati; was brought to Bharata by Marut gods, performed rituals, 749  
   saluted by Rāma, 13, 23  
   saluted by Bharata, 14  
**Bharaṇi**, an asterism, 359, 360, 361, 363, 376, 377, 381, 382, 385, 387, 400  
**Bharata**, reference to penance at Śālagrāma performed by, 1062  
   birth of, 10  
   married Māṇḍavi, 11  
   Kaikeyi's request to make heir apparent, 12  
   Daśaratha's words about, 13  
   brought to Ayodhyā, 14  
   was urged by Rāma to return to Ayodhyā, 15  
   revered Rāma after his return from Lankā, 23  
   killed three crores sons of Śailūṣa and returned to Rāghava, 24  
**Bharata**, born in the race of Pūru, 31  
   country called Bhārata after, 323  
   loss of the sons of, 749  
**Bhārata**, denotes Mahābhārata, 31  
   story of, 38  
**Bhārata**, country, named after Bharata, 323, 325  
   Viṣṇu as Kūrma in, 326  
**Bhārata**, a mountain, 324  
**Bharatāśrama**, at Gayā, 344  
**Bhāratavarṣa**, extent of, 350-51  
   divided into nine parts, 351  
**Bhāratas**, the mighty descendants of Bharata, 749  
**Bhārati**, one of the modes; formulated by Bharata; characteristics of; four components of, 928  
**Bharga**, son of Prataradana, 749  
**Bhārgava**, denotes Paraśurāma, manifestation of Viṣṇu, 8  
   goddess earth addressed as related to, 112  
**Bhārgavi**, daughter of Śukra, 112  
**Bhāsakarna**, demon, 22  
**Bhāsi**, a daughter of Tāmra, 46  
**bhāskara**, signifies a herb, 408  
**Bhauma** (Mars), 115  
   worshipped, 316  
**bhauta**, a kind of fire, 205  
**bhautiki** (rite), 86  
**Bhautya**, fourteenth Manu, 428  
**Bhava**, a name of Rudra, 50  
   a divinity, 292, 412  
   worship of, 290  
**Bhava**, a muhūrta, 371  
**Bhāva** (Bhava) a year of Hindu almanac, 404  
**bhāva**, change relating to the mind, 995  
**Bhāvabhūti**, letter denoting, 418  
**bhavana**, a type of temple, 314  
**Bhāvavṛtta**, deity of aghamarṣaṇa hymn; identified with Viṣṇu, 437  
**Bhāveśvara**, letter denoting, 254  
**Bhāvins**, a class of people in Puṣkara, 351  
**Bhaviṣyapurāṇa**, had its origin from the Sun; narrated by Śiva to Manu; extent of; should be given as a gift in Pauṣya, 733  
**Bhavya**, son of Dhruva, 42  
**Bhavya**, ruled Śāka, 322  
**Bhaya**, son of Adharma, 49  
**Bhayānakā**, a hell, 1038

- Bhayanikari, image of, 138  
 Bhayotkatā, a hell, 1038  
 bhedani, a mudrā, 857  
 Bhelaki, a divinity, 411  
 Bhelakhī, sacred syllable known as, 396  
 Bhida, letter denoting, 419  
 Bhima, born from Vāta, 32, 32fn  
 stayed as a cook at Virāta, 33  
 Yudhiṣṭhira pacified women in the company of, 36  
 fall of, 37  
 (See also Bhimasena)  
 Bhima, one of the sons of Kṛṣṇa and Satyabhāmā, 744  
 Bhima, a Rudra, 50  
 a guardian deity, 284  
 worship of, 290  
 propitiation of, 176  
 Bhimā, a hell, 1038  
 bhimadvādaśī, details relating to the practice of, 512  
 Bhimaratha, son of Jimūta; son of, 742  
 Bhimarathi, a river, flows from Sahya, 351  
 Bhimasena, born of Kunti from god Vāyu, 755  
 son of Pāṇḍu and Kunti; son of; through his wife Hiḍimbā, had Ghaṭotkaca as the son, 751  
 killed Duryodhana, 35  
 Bhimasena, son of Rkṣa the second; son of, 751  
 Bhimasena, one of the four sons of Jahnu, 750  
 bhindipāla, uses of, 652  
 bhiru, a herb, 378  
 Bhīṣaṇa, one of the ten sons of Hṛdika, 743  
 Bhīṣaṇā, a hell, 1038  
 Bhīṣaṇī, goddess, 375, 417  
 Bhīṣaṇī, an evil spirit which possesses the child on the second night after birth; symptoms of the child possessed by; offering to appease; unguent for the child possessed by, 821  
 Bhīṣma, son of Śantanu and Gaṅgā, 751  
 as ruling the kingdom after Śantanu's death, 31  
 killed the soldiers of Pāṇḍavas, 34  
 resolve not to fight against eunuchs, 34fn  
 Bhīṣmapañcaka, mode of practising the vow of, 534-35  
 explanation of, 534fn, 535  
 merits of practising, 532  
 bhoga, an array; description, of, 633  
 an array; variations of; five units taken from and combined (for a battle), 634  
 modifications of, 635  
 Bhogavati, a place, 329, 330  
 Bhoja, region of; portent affecting, 387  
 Bhoja, one of the siddhas, 414  
 Bhojaka, son of Pratikṣetra; son of, 743  
 Bhojas, one of the five branches of Haihayas (Yādavas), 736, 741  
 bhrāmara, auspiciousness of a stone called, 641  
 Bhramaravilasitā, characteristics of the metre, 912  
 Bhṛgu, married Khyāti, daughter of Dakṣa, 48  
 progeny of, 49  
 a holy spot, 330  
 letter denoting, 419  
 Bhṛgutuṅga, a holy place, 327  
 Bhṛgvānanda, a divinity to be worshipped, 414  
 bhṛṅga, herb, 407  
 Bhṛṅga, worship of, 273, 316  
 bhṛṅgarāja, a flower, 529  
 bhṛṅgarāja, a herb, 378, 405, 406  
 Bhṛṅgin, image of, 135  
 Bhṛṣa, personified, 316  
 worship of, 273  
 Bhū, one of the worlds, 79  
 bhūdhara, a type of temple, 315  
 bhujaga, herb symbolised by, 406, 407  
 Bhujāṅga, worshipped, 414  
 Bhujāṅgaprayāta, characteristics of the metre, 913  
 Bhujāṅgaśīsusuta, characteristics of the metre, 911  
 Bhujāṅgavijṛmbhita, characteristics of the metre, 914  
 Bhujāṅgeśa, letter denoting, 419  
 Bhūloka, (earth) 354  
 Bhūmitirtha, a sacred place, 327  
 Bhūri, one of the sons of Bālhika, 751  
 Bhūriśravas, one of the sons of Bālhika, 751  
 bhūṣaṇa, a type of temple, 315  
 Bhūtasantāpāna, a son of Hiranyākṣa, 46fn  
 bhūtasarga, creation known as, 48  
 Bhūtiśa, letter denoting, 418  
 Bhuva, one of the worlds, 79  
 Bhuva, son of Pratihastā, 323  
 Bhuvanloka, location of, 354  
 bibboka, a kind of gesture, 929  
 bijamantras, on the practice of, 804  
 bile, remedy for forty diseases due to deranged, 774  
 remedy to remove excess of, 773  
 bilva, herb, 407

- bilva, flower, 529  
 bilvamudrā, a posture with hands, 196  
 bimbamudrā, a posture with hands, 196  
 Bindukoṭīśā, a sacred place, 414  
 bindulā, an outcaste, 465  
 birds, and their gaits; words signifying, 1012-3  
 birth, previous; words denoting, 991  
 birth and death, description of the process of, 1031  
 black, words denoting, 992  
 bladder, remedy to remove stone in, 768  
 Blemishes, relating to poetry; seven kinds of—relating to speaker, denoter and denoted; further divisions of, 946  
 blindness, excellent remedy for, 778  
 blood and semen, discharge of; remedy for, 834  
 blue vitriol, auspiciousness of, 641  
 Boar, manifestation of Viṣṇu as, 7 ff, 9, 129  
     the killing of Hiranyākṣa by, 745  
 body, description of the names and formation of constituent parts of, 1034-36  
     three functions of; to be paid equal attention, 763  
     as the chariot, 1075  
 bondage, way to get release from, 464  
 bones, words signifying the different, 1015  
     in the body, the description of their number, 1036-37  
 bow, material for; measure of, 638, 639  
     the different characteristics relating to, 639  
     made of bamboo as the most excellent one, 639  
     excellent kind of, 647  
     mantra for worshipping, 639  
 bow-men, task of, 613  
 bows, should be worshipped before an expedition is begun, 639  
 bow-string, material for, 638  
 brahma, a flower that pleases lord Hari, 529  
 Brahmā, 1, 3 etc.  
     born from the navel lotus of Viṣṇu, 9, 735, 738  
     self-originated, 40, 40fn  
     synonyms of, 986  
     as the charioteer of the earth, 746  
     stopped the celestial war, 739  
     mind-born sons of; divided into two halves, 41  
     presiding deity of a n element, 271  
     image of, 130  
     worship of, 274  
     worship of golden image of, 498  
     worshipped by people of Kuśa, 352  
     worshipped by residents of Puṣkara, 353  
 brāhma, a type of marriage, 434  
 Brahmakṣvara, one of the lingas at Gayā, 343  
 brahmakūrca, expiation of eating handful of fired grain for fifteen days, 483  
 Brahmajñānā, a female divinity, 413  
 Brahmāloka, name of Satyaloka, 354  
 brahmamandira, a type of temple, 314  
 brāhma muhūrta, one should get up in, 436  
 brahman, unknowable, 464  
     two kinds of, 1, 1060  
     identity of soul and Supreme, 34  
     as the cause of the world as held by Śaivas etc., 949  
     words denoting state of, 1018  
     description of the nature of, 1056-7  
     knowledge relating to, 1057-9  
 brahman, knowledge relating to mystic; expounded by Bharata, 1063-8  
 brahmāṇḍa, a great gift, 544  
 Brahmāṇḍapurāṇa, in which Brahmā describes the greatness of the universe; extent of; should be given as a gift, 734  
     version followed, 44fn  
 Brahmāṇi, one of the eight goddesses, 411, 415  
 Brahmāpada, at Gayā, 339  
 brahmapañcaka, mantras known as, 874  
 Brahmapurāṇa, one of the eighteen Purāṇas; narrated by Brahmā to Marīci; extent of; to be given as a gift on full-moon day in Vaiśākha 732  
     as destroying sins, 492  
 Brahmasaras, at Gayā, 338  
 Brahmasāvārṇi, tenth Manu, 428  
 brahmasilā, relating to liṅga, 266  
 Brahmāstra, weapon, 23, 32  
 Brahmatuṅga, a holy place, 327  
 brahmatva, related to Atharvan, 429  
 Brahmavaivartapurāṇa, narrated by Sāvārṇi Manu to sage Nārada; extent of; deals with the history of Rathantara and Boar manifestation of lord Viṣṇu; should be given as a gift in Māgha, 733  
 Brahmāvarta, a sacred place, 327  
 Brahmavetāli, a goddess, 424  
 Brahmavidyā, the formula presided over by Brahmā, 895

- Brāhmi, a mother goddess, 139fn  
image of, 133  
brahmin, code of conduct for, 431  
breathing, remedy for trouble in, 830  
Brhadāśva, son of Śrāvanta, 736  
Brhadbhānu, son of Brhatkarman;  
son of, 748  
Brhadiṣu, one of the five born from  
Bāhyāśva, 749  
Brhadratha, son of Jayadratha; son  
of, 748  
one of the seven sons of Suhotra  
and Girikā; son of, 750  
Brhannalā, Arjuna at Virāta as, 33  
Brhaspati, a law-giver, 455  
Brhaspati, a rite to appease the planets  
performed by, 740  
Brhat, son of Suhotra; son of, 749  
Brhatcakra, a kind of bandha, 938  
Brhati, a son of Śiṣṭi and Succhāyā, 42  
Brhati, a metre; characteristics of, 902  
is made up of one pāda Jagati and  
three pāda Gāyatri, 903  
black coloured; belongs to Āngirasa  
gotra, 905  
sages and gods associated with, 562  
different kinds of, 903-4  
Brhatkalpa, a kalpa period, 732  
Brhatkarman, son of Bhadraratha; son  
of, 748  
Brhatkuṣi, goddess ruling over north,  
138  
Brhātmavat, son of Brhadbhānu; son  
of, 748  
bride, rules relating to choosing of, 434  
Buddha, manifestation of Viṣṇu as, 38  
figures of, 130  
Budha, story relating to his birth to  
Soma; 739, son of; saluted, 31, 52  
buildings, of different people; parts of;  
words denoting, 1006  
building sites for different castes; cha-  
racteristics of, 642  
worship of different gods in, 642-3  
burst of laughter, word for, 995
- Caidyas, name of the descendants of  
Cidi, 741  
Caitra, month of, 360, 386, 388  
Caitraratha, a forest, 325  
caitri, a sacrifice, 86, 466  
Cakra, a lake, 325  
a type of temple, 315  
a posture, 857  
an array; a variation of maṇḍala,  
635  
one of the bandhas; two kinds of;  
explanation of, 936, 937  
accomplished with the metre, 938
- Śārdūlavikriḍita class of metres, 909  
Cakrājaka, one of the bandhas; ex-  
planation of, 936, 937  
Cakrapāṇi, form of Viṣṇu at Kāśmira,  
841  
cakrarūpa, efficacy of the herb, 378-9  
Cakriśānātha, a siddha, 415  
Caṅṅu, a river, 325  
Cākṣuṣa, the sixth Manu, 427  
the devas in the period of; born  
as sons of Kaśyapa, 45  
Celestial at the time of the 14th  
Manu, 428  
son of Ripu and Brhati, 42  
one of the foremost sons of Viduṣa,  
747  
calamities, due to divine agency;  
remedial steps for, 625  
calling, words denoting, 992  
Campa, son of Pṛthulākṣa; son of, 748  
camūmukha, a modification of the  
array daṇḍa, 633  
Cāmuṇḍa, image of, 314  
Cāmuṇḍā, a mother goddess, 139fn  
request made to, 397, 399  
characteristics of the image of, 134  
worshipped, 412, 415  
invoked, 416  
Cañcalā, a spirit seizing the child in  
the twelfth month: symptoms of  
child seized by, 824  
a monstress seizing the child in  
the fifth year; symptoms of the  
child seized by; offering to ap-  
pease; fumigation and bathing  
when child is seized by, 824  
Cañcalāśikā, characteristics of the  
metre, 912  
Cañcāśva, son of Mukula; had the  
twins, 750  
Cancer, a constellation, 361, 384, 392  
Caṇḍa, an attendant of Śiva; wor-  
shipped, 51, 52  
mode of worshipping, 211-12  
carved on the door-frame, 115  
Caṇḍā, a goddess, 132, 375, 424  
a hell, 1038  
Caṇḍāla, a caste, 430  
duties of; rules relating to dress etc.,  
431  
Candanadundubhi, son of Tittiri; son  
of, 742  
Caṇḍanāyikā, a goddess, 132  
Caṇḍarūpā, a goddess, 132  
Caṇḍavati, a goddess, 132  
Caṇḍavṛṣṭiprapāṭaka, a variety of  
Daṇḍaka; characteristics of, 914-5  
Caṇḍeśvara, a holy spot at Vārāṇasi,  
330

- Caṇḍī, a mother goddess, 139fn  
 image of, 132  
 (See also Caṇḍikā)  
 a herb, 371, 378
- Caṇḍikā, image of, 106, 132, 139  
 benefit of establishing, 133  
 worshipped, 412
- Caṇḍīśa, placing the image of, 106  
 letter denoting, 419
- Caṇḍogrā, a goddess, 132
- Candra, a boundary mountain, 351
- Candrā, image of, 138
- Candrabhāgā, river; rises from the  
 Himālaya, 351
- Candrāloka, son of Sahasrāśva; son  
 of, 738
- Candramāh, herb denoted by, 406
- Candranāthaka, one of the siddhas, 415
- Candraparvata, son of Tārāpīḍa;  
 son of, 738
- Candrapūra, one of the siddhas, 414
- Candrāvalī, image of, 138
- Candrāvartā, characteristics of the  
 metre, 913
- Cāndrāyaṇa, an expiation, 328, 471,  
 472, 473, 475, 476, 477, 479, 480,  
 481, 487, 488  
 explanation of, 494  
 to be observed for having done cer-  
 tain sins, 489  
 destroys sin, 491  
 merits of practising, 524
- Cāṇūra, a wrestler killed by Kṛṣṇa, 28
- cāpa, a posture of the hands, 857  
 a modification of the array *danḍa*,  
 633
- Capalā, characteristics of the metre  
 906, 909
- Capricorn, a constellation, 384, 392
- Carakī, a demoness, 317  
 worship of, 274, 275, 276  
 materials for the worship of, 109
- Carcikā, a mother goddess, 139fn
- Carmaṇvatī, a sacred place (river),  
 327
- carrier, rules relating to, 675
- caru, a sacrificial offering, 58
- Cārudeṣṇa, born to Vasudeva, 744
- Cāruhāsinī, characteristics of the  
 metre, 907
- Caruka, a type of temple, 314
- caṣāla, meaning of the word, 1017
- case, that is rejected by another should  
 not be taken up, 656
- cases, the employment of the seven,  
 960
- casket, words denoting, 1017
- castes, duties of, 429-31  
 duties of different, 465-7  
 words denoting the fourth, 1023
- Caṣakā, a monstress affecting the  
 child in the fourth year; symptoms  
 of the child seized by; offering to  
 appease; fumigation and bathing  
 when the child is affected by, 824
- catarrh, remedy for, 773
- Caṣulādevī, a female divinity, 413
- Caturbāhu, form of Viṣṇu at Piṇḍā-  
 raka, 841
- cāturmāsya, a havir-yajña, 86, 466  
 the period for observing, 455
- Caturthikā, one of the four acts rela-  
 ting to a marriage, 434
- Caturvaktra, letter denoting, 419
- caturvyavasita, one of the yamakas, 935
- cauṣpada, a karaṇa, 363, 369
- Catuṣpatra, a variety of bandha, 937
- cause, words denoting, 991  
 word denoting primary, 991
- cavalry, functions of; ground suitable  
 for; three infantry soldiers needed  
 to fight, 632  
 the units needed to protect, 653
- celestial region, asterisms belonging to,  
 388
- celestial women, words denoting, 987
- celibacy, eight kinds of, 1041
- censure, words denoting, 993
- centipedes, remedy for poison due to,  
 819
- Chala, a division of Vithī, 928
- Chāndasatva, a defect of work, 947
- Chandovidhāna, science of, 2
- charm, of the shape of the figure of  
 Garuḍa, efficacy of, 811-14
- charms, herbs used in, 405-7
- chariot, ground suitable for; to be  
 protected by elephant (men), 632
- chariots, (men on) functions of, 631
- chariot-warriors, work of, 613
- charities, merits of making, 539
- Chāyā, gave birth to Sāvārṇi, Śani,  
 Tapati and Viṣṭi, 735  
 an embellishment of word; ex-  
 planation of; four kinds of, 932
- Chedani, a goddess, 424
- Chekoktichāyā, explanation of, 932
- chest, five kinds, 930
- chest injury, remedy for, 754
- child, in the womb of mother; des-  
 cription of the stages of growth of,  
 1032  
 period good for first feeding of, 358
- children, of different ages; words  
 denoting, 1014  
 remedy for cough, vomiting and  
 fever of; herbs which would improve  
 the speech etc. of, 766
- child's play, word for, 995

- chin, seven actions of, 929  
 Cidi, son of Kauṣika; descendants known as Caidyas, 741  
 circles, mystic, 375-79  
   different kinds of, 870  
 Citeyu, one of the ten sons of Bhadrāśva, 748  
 cities, provision of places for different people in, 320-21  
   vāstu relating to, 320-22  
 citra, an embellishment of word, 932  
 Citra, a type of temple, 315  
 Citrā, an asterism, 359, 360, 361, 363, 381, 385, 387, 400  
   characteristics of the metre, 907  
 Citrabhānu, a year of the Hindu calendar, 404  
 citraduṣkara, a division of objects to be struck by an arrow, 648  
 Citragupta, presiding deity of place of worship of planets, 467  
 Citrakāvya, definition of; seven kinds of, 935  
 Citrakūṭa, name of a place, 841  
   a sacred spot, 328  
   Rāma's arrival at the mountain of, 13, 14  
 Citralekhā, friend of Uṣā, daughter of Bāṇa, 30  
 Citrāṅga, a form of Rudra, 253  
 Citrāṅgada, a Gandharva, 31  
   son of Śantanu, 31  
 Citrapadā, characteristics of the metre, 911  
 Citraratha, ruler of the Gandharvas, 47  
   son of Ruṣadgu; son of, 741  
   son of Dharmaratha; son of, 748  
 Citrasena, son of Raucya Manu, 428  
 cloth, words relating to different kinds of, 1016  
 cloud, words denoting, 988  
 clouds, words denoting row of, 988  
 clouds (thunder), words denoting, 988  
 club, wielding of, 649  
 Coalescence, explanation of, 944  
 Colas, origin of, 747  
 colic, remedy for, 768, 776  
   intestinal, remedy for, 766  
 colours, words denoting different, 902  
   words denoting mixed, 992  
 commander(s), duties of, 630  
   instructions for, 633  
 comic sentiment, origin of, 923  
   four-fold; description of, 931  
 compositions, of different kinds such as Gomūtrikā, 936  
 compounds, divided as eternal and noneternal; examples of; six kinds of; divided into 28 kinds, 973  
   four-fold classification of; on account of prominence of one member, 975-76  
 concealing, words denoting, 989  
 Conceit, origin of, 923  
 conch-shell, a variety of, stated to be auspicious, 641  
 conciliation, a political expedient, 627  
   two kinds of, 587  
   four kinds of, 627-8  
   method of employing, 628  
 conduct, codes of, 436-39, 463-65  
   towards different people, 618  
   five kinds of codes of, 465  
 conjecture, word for, 991  
 conjugations, the important roots belonging to the ten, 982  
 conjuring, a political expedient, 627  
 consecration, commendable time for, 361  
   of the doors of the temple, 164-69  
   304-5  
   of the idol, 152-55  
   of an image, 96ff, 283-84  
   of the images of gods, 180-83  
   materials used in, 150-51  
   mode of doing, 110-113  
   of pitchers, 149-51  
   preliminary, 155-60  
   of tanks and ponds, 173-78  
   of a temple, 307-8  
   of umbrella etc.; mantras for, 725-28  
 constellations, the things they denote, 358  
 constipation, a decoction that is a remedy for, 775  
 consumption, remedy for, 767, 776  
 contemplation, of different kinds, 1046-1049  
   explanation of the term; benefit of practice of; mode of, 1046  
 contextual object, words denoting thought related to, 993  
 continents, names of, 323  
   extent and description of, 351-3  
 contrivance, explanation of, 945  
 conventional, a variety of excellence of sense; explanation of, 945  
 conversation, words denoting, 993  
   word denoting mutual, 993  
 cooked rice mixed with milk, words denoting, 1017  
 coral, auspiciousness of, 641  
 coronation of a king; mode of performing, 566-68  
   sacred syllables for, 569-73  
   asterism good for, 360  
 corrupted word, term denoting, 992  
 cough, remedy for, 830  
   remedy for five kinds of, 772

- cough and other ailments, remedy for 773
- counsel, five kinds of; the type of persons with whom the king can have, 624-5
- things which would break a secret, 625
- counsels, words denoting chief, 1018
- counter-suit, could be made when, 656
- countries, different kinds of; based on landscape, 758
- country, description of a prosperous, 620
- courses, for beings; two kinds of, 1078
- courtiers, the qualities of and selection of; should be neutral, 656
- cows, of different kinds; words denoting, 1021-22
- elixir for, 801
- excellence of the six items got from, 798
- food that yields more milk from, 801
- fumigation against evil planets for, 801
- a great gift of thousand, 544
- greatness of, 798, 799, 800
- mantras for the protection of, 835
- merits of making gift of different numbers of, 547
- nourishing food for calves of, 801
- propitiatory rites preceding the worship of, 801-2
- the purificatory item got from, 799
- oil that removes biliousness of, 800
- prescription for joining broken bones of, 800
- pain in the ears of, 800
- wounds of, 801
- remedy for deranged phlegm of, 800
- diseases affecting the horns of, 800
- diseases of digestive organs etc. of, 800
- diseases of the flesh of, 800
- dysentery of, 800
- heartaches and stomachache etc. of, 800
- pain in the teeth of, 800
- stiffness of, 800
- swelling of the belly of, 835
- toothache and diseases of mouth and tongue, 800
- creating dissent, one of the means to be employed by the king, 587
- creation, description of, 39-41
- process of, 1030
- primary, 48-50
- secondary, description of, 45-48
- of the world, 39
- cremation, cases when not done, 451
- crystal, a gem; is said to be auspicious, 641
- Cūdākṛti, one of the saṁskāras, 59
- Cūlikā, characteristics of the metre, 907
- curiosity, words signifying, 995
- Cūrṇaka, a division of prose Kāvya, 918
- Gyavana, son of Suhotra, 750
- Cyuta, a kind of Citrakāvya, 935
- definition of, 936
- Cyutadatta, a kind of Citrakāvya, 935
- definition of, 936
- Dadhi, an ocean, 324
- Dadhimaṇḍodaka, ocean, 352
- Dadhimukha, monkey guarding honey-garden, 20
- Dadhimukhya, a class of men at Kuśadvīpa, 352
- Dadhivāhana, was born from Aṅga, 748
- Dadhivaktra, a monkey, 21
- Dāhala, a country, 387
- dainandini, the creation known as, 49
- Daitya, to be worshipped, 317
- daityas, defeated the devas, 38
- Daityasūdana, form of Viṣṇu at Prabhāsa, 841
- Dākini, a goddess; worshipped, 415
- Dakṣa, born to Pracetas and Māriṣā, 43
- made the ruler of Prajāpati, 47
- Khyāti and others married the daughters of, 48
- Sati discarded her life on account of wrath of, 50
- one of the guards of the doors; to be worshipped, 93
- letter denoting, 419
- a law-giver, 455
- Dakṣasāvārṇi, ninth Manu, 428
- dakṣiṇāgnipada, at Gayā, 339
- damanaka, investiture of fibres of, 225-26
- Daminaḥ, a class of men at Kuśadvīpa, 352 fn
- Dāmodara, a name of Viṣṇu, 65
- form of Viṣṇu at Raivataka, 842
- a Śālagrāma, 125
- Damṣṭrālā, a goddess, 375
- Dānavas, progeny of Danu, 47
- Daṇḍa, one of the three sons of Dhundhumāra, 736
- the name of a temple, 318
- one of the bandhas, 936
- explanation of, 937
- daṇḍa, an array; description of; other arrays which are modifications of

- the array called; characteristics of, 633  
 seventeen kinds of arrays could be formed from, 634  
 characteristics of arrays which are modifications of, 633  
 yugorasya as a variation of, 634  
 valaya, an array formed by union of two, 635  
 a posture, 857
- Daṇḍahasta, one of the eight forms of Gaṇapati, 865
- Daṇḍaka, forest; as excellent, 328  
 Rāma's arrival at, 15  
 Śārngadhārin form of Viṣṇu at, 842  
 characteristics of, 914  
 different varieties of, 15
- daṇḍaka, weapon to be used against daṇḍa of the enemy, 634
- Daṇḍi, an attendant of Sun, 195
- Daṇḍi, letter denoting, 419
- Daṇḍin, tawny-coloured; to be worshipped, 51  
 beads belonging to the Savitra class, 894
- Danu, a demones; progeny of, 46, 46fn, 47
- Darbha, one of the sons of Āyus, 739  
 darbha, grass, 58, 94, etc.
- darkness, words denoting, 995
- darśa, union of Sun and Moon, 990
- Darśani, letter denoting, 417
- darśapaurṇamāsa, a haviryajña, 86, 466
- dart, measurement of, 649
- Dāruka, letter denoting, 419
- daśa, denotes a herb, 407
- Daśagriva, denotes Rāvaṇa, 20
- Daśaratha, son of Aja, 9  
 four sons of, 10, 738  
 saw the angry Kaikeyi, 12  
 Hanumān's narration of the story of, 19  
 praised Rāma for having slain Rāvaṇa, 23
- Daśārha, another name of Vidūratha, 742
- Daśārṇa, the seven hunters of, 349
- Daśāśvamedha, at Gayā, 338
- Dasyus, a class of men, 38
- Datta, a kind of Citrakāvya, 935  
 definition of, 936
- Dattātreya, manifestation of the Trinity of gods, 8  
 form of Viṣṇu, 131  
 born to Atri and Anasūyā, 49
- Dattoli, son of Pulastya and Priti, 49
- dawn, words denoting, 990
- day, words denoting, 990  
 words denoting past, current and future, 1000
- dead, recipes which would revive, 772
- death, the process of, 1037-8  
 medicines which would conquer, 779  
 medicine that overcomes premature, 778-9
- debt(s), definition of, 654  
 discharge of; asterism governing, 358  
 rules relating to, 659-61
- deceit, a political expedient, 587, 627
- deeds, merits of good, 451  
 need for performing virtuous, 901
- defect, of meaning is twofold—general and particular, 947
- Dehadhṛti, propitiation of, 176
- deities, names and worship of female, 292  
 presiding over the asterisms, lunar days etc., 805  
 worship of, 806  
 presiding over different things, 542  
 sacred bathing of, 716-7
- deliberation, word denoting, 991
- deluge, words denoting, 990
- demon, words denoting, 986, 988
- deposit, definition of the term; rules relating to, 661
- Depth, explanation of the composition known as 945
- depth, words denoting different, 996
- desires, renunciation of; praise of knowledge gained by, 107
- Deva, form of Viṣṇu at Raivataka, 841  
 one of the deities to be located in the body, 414
- Devabhoga, one of the siddhas, 414
- devadatta, a life-force, 257  
 carried by the vein huhu, 556  
 functions of, 557
- Devadeveśa, form of Viṣṇu on the Sahya mountain, 842
- Devadūti, a spirit possessing the child in the eleventh year; symptoms of the child possessed by; offering and fumigation when the child is possessed by, 825
- Devahūti, wife of Kardama; progeny of, 41, 41 fn
- Devaka, son of Āhuka; sons of; daughters of, 742
- Devaki, one of the daughters of Devaka; married by Vasudeva, 26, 26 fn, 742  
 as a manifestation of Aditi, 744  
 was worshipped by Kṛṣṇa, 28
- Devakṣetra, son of Devarāta; son of, 742
- Devakūṭa, a boundary mountain, 325
- Devala, exposition made by, 1074  
 son of Pratyūṣa, 44

- devala, a caste, 430  
 Devamidhuṣa, born in the line of  
   Dhṛṣṭa, 743  
 Devānika, son of Sudhanvā; son of,  
   738  
 Devāntaka, a demon, 22  
 Devāpi, one of the sons of Śantanu, 751  
 Devarata, one of the sons of Viśvā-  
   mitra, 749  
 Devarāta, son of Karambha; son of,  
   742  
 Devārha, one of the ten sons of Hṛdika;  
   son of, 743  
 devas, the battle between asuras and,  
   34, 35, 38  
   benefit of worship of, 40  
 Devavān, son of Rudra Sāvarṇi Manu,  
   428  
   son of Devaka, 742  
 Devavara, a manifestation of Viṣṇu,  
   428  
 Devavarṇini, first wife of Viśravas,  
   24 fn  
 Devavratā, 333 (See Dharmavratā)  
 Devāvṛdha, one of the four sons of  
   Sātvata; son of, 742  
 Devāvṛt, mountain, 352  
 Devayāni, daughter of Śukra; was  
   married by Yayāti, 25, 25fn., 740  
 Devi, significance of the term 994  
 Devikā, a river, 526  
   a holy place, 327  
 Devivrata, explanation of, 525  
 Dhairya, son of Jyotiṣmat, 352  
 Dhamani, image of; governs the north,  
   138  
 dhanañjaya, a life-force, 257  
   carried by the vein saṅkhini, 556  
   functions of, 557  
 Dhanañjaya, a divinity worshipped in  
   the east, 316  
 dhaniṣṭhā, an asterism, 359, 360, 361,  
   363, 376, 381, 382, 385, 388  
 dhanuḥ pakṣa, an array; characteri-  
   stics of, 633  
 Dhanus, a constellation, 367, 368 fn.  
 Dhanvantari, a form of Viṣṇu, 6  
   was born from Dirghatamas; son  
   of, 749  
   science of medicine propounded  
   to Suśruta by, 751ff  
 Dhanya, a class of men in Krauñca-  
   dvipa, 352  
 dhanyāka, a herb, 407  
 Dhara, one of the Vasus, 44  
 dhāraṇā, definition of, 454  
   explanation of the term, 1076  
   (see also retention)  
 dharaṇi, a stone, 269  
 Dhārikā, a female deity, 292  
 Dhāriṇi, daughter of the manes and  
   Svadhā, 49  
 dharmā, a puruṣārtha protected by  
   Viṣṇu, 23  
   Vibhiṣaṇa was deep-rooted in, 24  
   Bhīṣma's discourse on, 36  
   the homa that bestows, 53  
 Dharmā, alternate reading for Dhara,  
   44fn  
 Dharmā, married ten daughters of  
   Dakṣa, 44  
 Dharmā, god of virtue, 32, 332  
   worshipped, 51  
   worship of, 286  
   son of Gāndhāra; son of, 747  
 dharmadroṇa, a hymn, 349  
 Dharmānetra, son of Haihaya; son of,  
   740  
 Dharmapāla, a minister of King  
   Daśaratha, 11  
 Dharmarāja, denotes Yudhiṣṭhira,  
   33, 37  
 Dharmāranya, a sacred spot at Gayā,  
   337  
 Dharmaratha, son of Diviratha; son  
   of, 748  
 dharmas, the origion of heretics devoid  
   of Vedic, 38  
 Dharmasāstra, science of, 2  
 Dharmasāvarṇi, eleventh Manu, 428  
 Dharmatirtha, a holy place, 327  
 Dharmavati, wife of Dharmā, 332  
 Dharmavratā, daughter of Dharmā;  
   married by Marici, 332  
   Marici's curse on, 333  
 Dharmeśa, a divinity worshipped,  
   108  
 Dharmeyu, one of the ten sons of  
   Bhadrāśva, 748  
 Dharmopamā, explanation of, 940  
 Dhārṣṭaka, race of; was from Dhṛṣṭa,  
   one of the sons of Vaivasvata Manu,  
   736  
 Dhātā, a form of Rudra, 252  
   a year of the Hindu calendar, 404  
 Dhātaki, son of Savana, 353  
 Dhātr, one of the Ādityas, 45, 136  
   worship of, 176  
   saluted, 50, 50fn  
   adored, 88  
 Dhātr, a celestial; son of Bhṛgu and  
   Khyāti, 49  
 dhātri, herb, 407  
 Dhātri, a female deity, 292  
 dhattūra, black; herb, 406  
 Dhaumakalpa, a kalpa period, 733  
 Dhaumya, sage, 33  
 Dhāvani, a monstress afflicting the

- child in the sixth year; symptoms of the child afflicted by; offering to appease; fumigation and bathing when the child in afflicted by, 824
- Dhenu, one of the varieties of Gomūtrikā-bandha, 937
- dhenu, a posture of the hand, 196, 205, 208, 273
- Dhenuka, a demon, 27
- Dhenukā, a forest, 344
- Dhenumat, son of Jyotiṣmat, 352
- Dhenupada, at Gayā, 344
- dhenuvrata, mode of practising, 522
- Dhimān, son of Mahāvīrya, 323
- Dhiṣaṇā, of the family of Agni; progeny of, 43
- Dhṛṣṇu, son of Kuhura; son of, 742
- Dhṛṣṭa, one of the eight sons of Vaivasvata Manu, 735
- One of the sons of Asamañjas; two wives of, 743
- Dhṛṣṭadyumna, son of Drupada; son of, 750
- fate of army headed by, 35
- Dhṛṣṭaka, son of Kunti; son of, 742
- Dhṛṣṭaketu, son of Dhṛṣṭadyumna, 750
- Dhṛṣṭokta, one of the sons of Kārtavīrya, 741
- Dhṛtaketu, son of Dakṣasāvārṇi Manu, 428
- Dhṛtarāṣṭra, begot by Kṛṣṇa Dvāpāyana through the wife of Vicitravīryaka, 751
- born to Ambikā, 31
- Pāṇḍavas' destruction of the sons of, 34
- resorted to the forest after the war, 36
- beads belonging to Jyoti class, 894
- Dhṛti, a form of Hari, 91
- son of Dhṛṣṇu; son of, 742
- wife of Nandi, 739
- name of a metre, 905
- Dhṛtimān, a son of Purūravas, 739
- Dhruva, son of Uttānapāda and Sunīti, 41
- story of, 41 fn
- as a celestial star, 42
- Dhruva, one of the Vasus, 44
- one of the seven sons of Medhātithi; after whom the country was named, 351
- dhūli, auspiciousness of gem called, 641
- Dhumini, wife of Ajamidha, 750
- Dhūmra, a monkey, 21
- Dhūmrākṣa, a demon killed by Hanumat, 22
- Dhūmravarṇa, a name of the elephant-faced god, 866
- Dhundhu, a demon killed by Kuvalāśva, 736
- Dhundhumāra, name of Kuvalāśva as he killed the demon Dhundhu; the three sons of, 736
- Dhuni, son of Yuyudhāna alias Sātyaki; son of, 743
- dhustura, a flower for worshipping lord Hara, 529
- Dhvani, alternate reading for Muni, 44fn
- stated as identical with any one of the figures like Ākṣepa, 943, 944
- dhvāṅkṣi, denotes the entry of the Sun in one of the signs, 362
- dhyāna, definition of, 454
- explanation of the term 1076
- diabetes, remedy for, 753
- diamond, a gem, 640
- auspiciousness of and qualities of a good, 641
- diarrhoea, excellent remedies for, 754, 767
- diction, four kinds of, 927
- digestion, remedy that stimulates, 778
- digestive power, remedy to restore, 775
- dik, herb denoted by, 406, 407
- Dilipa, son of Amṣumān; son of, 737
- son of Raghu; son of, 737
- Dima, a type of drama, 921
- dipaka, a perfection, 257
- Dipani, letter denoting, 417
- Diptā, a female divinity; worshipped, 51
- Diptamāyā, a hell, 1039
- Diptikāraṇa, a Rudra, 254
- Diptimān, a sage, 428
- Diptimati, a female deity, 292
- direction, words denoting, 988
- Dirghabāhu, son of Aja; son of, 737
- Dirghatamas, son of Kāśi (Kausika?); son of, 749
- disc, uses of, 651
- disciple, qualities of, 804
- ointment of, 263-4
- discussion, word denoting, 991
- diseases, different kinds of, 83
- words denoting different; words denoting persons free from illness, 1014-15
- four kinds of; description of; remedies for; making gifts to get rid of, 757
- mental; hymn on Viṣṇu for, 758
- excessive eating as cause of, 760
- of children; remedies for, 766
- general remedies for all, 769
- forty kinds of, due to deranged bile; twenty kinds of, due to deranged phlegm, remedy for eighty kinds of; due to deranged wind, 774

- caused by planets, remedy for, 829  
 disgust, origin of the sentiment, 923  
 sentiment of; is twofold; arises from  
 aversion, 932  
 dispute, explanation of the matters  
 for, 654-55  
 dispute, the preliminary procedures  
 relating to; before taking up for  
 discussion; termed as miscellaneous;  
 being annoyed contrary to codes  
 is a matter for, 656  
 disputes, words denoting discussions  
 relating to, 992  
 four steps relating to; eighteen kinds  
 of and one hundred divisions of;  
 should be examined by the king,  
 656  
 qualifications of witnesses, 661-2  
 relating to boundaries; procedures  
 for solving, 670-71  
 disrespect, words meaning, 995  
 dissension, a political expedient, 627  
 three kinds of; means of employing,  
 628  
 as a means to win an enemy, 631  
 dissolutions, of four kinds; description  
 of, 1028-9  
 description of the absolute, 1030  
 Diti, wife of Kaśyapa; progeny of, 45  
 mother of the demons, 7 fn  
 lost her offspring and propitiated  
 Kaśyapa, 47  
 worship of, 274  
 worshipped, 317  
 Divaspati, Indra during the period  
 of the thirteenth Manu, 428  
 Divijāta, a son of Purūravas, 739  
 divine edifice, general characteristics  
 of, 313-16  
 Diviratha, was the next king after  
 Dadhivāhana; son of, 748  
 Divodāsa, popular name of Hemara-  
 tha; son of one of the progeny of  
 Cañcāśva, 749  
 progeny of, 750  
 Divyā, a goddess, 375-376  
 Dodhaka, characteristics of the metre,  
 912  
 dog, remedy for poison due to, 820  
 dog-bite, remedy for poison due to, 756  
 Dohini, letter denoting, 418  
 dramas, names of twentyseven types of;  
 two courses of characteristics of;  
 means of attaining threefold end  
 of life; thirtytwo components of, 921  
 explanation of opening in, 922  
 dramatic representation, four ways of;  
 explanation of, 930  
 Drauṇi, (Aśvatthāmā) a sage, 428  
 survived the Mahābhārata battle, 36  
 Draupadī, married by the Pāṇḍavas,  
 32, 751  
 stayed in the forest with Pāṇḍavas, 33  
 Aśvatthāmā's destruction of the  
 sons of, 35  
 fall of, 37  
 Dravarasa, son of Madhu; son of, 742  
 Drāviḍi, characteristics of, 934  
 Draviṇa, son of Dhara, 44  
 dṛḍha, a division of objects to be  
 struck by an arrow, 648  
 dṛḍhaka, a modification of the array  
 called daṇḍa, 633  
 array formed by adding wings  
 and flanks, 634  
 Dṛḍharatha, son of Navaratha; son  
 of, 742  
 Dṛḍhāśva, one of the three sons of  
 Dhundhumāra; the two sons of,  
 736  
 Dṛḍhāyus, a son of Purūravas, 739  
 dreams, significance of, 595-6  
 recollection of the experience in  
 the waking state, 1056  
 drinks, not intoxicating, 487  
 Droṇa, conferred weapons on Arjuna,  
 32  
 Arjuna's apathy to fight on seeing,  
 34  
 description of the fight of, 35  
 Drauṇi as son of, 36  
 a boundary mountain, 352  
 dropsy, remedy for, 752-3  
 Dṛṣadvati, wife of Uśinara, 747  
 dṛṣṭam, fear known as, 1019  
 Dṛḥya, one of the three sons of  
 Yayāti and Devayāni, 740  
 Druhyu, son of Yayāti and Śarmiṣṭhā,  
 25  
 son of Gāndhāra, 747  
 Druma, son of Havya, 352  
 drunkenness, remedy for distemper  
 due to, 754  
 Drupada, son of Pṛṣata; son of, 750  
 on whose words Śikhāndi showered  
 arrows on Bhiṣma, 34  
 Droṇa's shower of arrows on, 35  
 drupadā, hymn, 437  
 drupadāt, a hymn, 562  
 Drutamadhya, characteristics of the  
 metre, 910  
 Drutavilambita, characteristics of the  
 metre, 912  
 Dugdha, a n ocean, 324  
 Duḥkha, born to Vedanā, 49  
 Duḥśāsana, brother of Duryodhana;  
 directed the dice-play, 33  
 Dundubhi, demon slain by Vālin, 17,  
 17fn  
 son of Dyutimat, 352

- a year of the Hindu almanac, 405  
 a boundary mountain, 351, 352  
 dundubhi, a type of temple, 315  
 durdhara, a hell, 532  
 Durdama, one of the sons of Vasudeva and Rohiṇī, 744  
 durdina, denotes a bad day, 989  
 Durgā, the other names of, 26  
 day of getting up, 362  
 image of, 132  
 outlines on cloth of the form of, 402  
 worshipped, 50, 52  
 investiture of sacred thread for image of, 215  
 benefits of propitiating, 404  
 Durgasena, son of Bhadrasenaka; son of, 740  
 durjaya, an array; a modification of the array maṇḍala; has eight army units, 634  
 · an array; made up of four valayas, 635  
 Durjaya, son of Ananta, 741  
 Durjayā, image of, 138  
 Durmallikā, a type of drama, 921  
 Durmati, a year of the Hindu almanac, 405  
 Durmukha, a year of the Hindu almanac, 405  
 Durmukhi, a goddess, 375  
 dūrvā, a kind of grass, 94  
 Durvāsas, son of Atri and Anasūyā, 49  
 curse on celestials by, 5  
 Duryodhana, son of Dhṛtarāṣṭra and Gāndhārī, 31  
 Karṇa became a dependent on, 32  
 refuses to give half the kingdom, 33  
 going for battle at Kurukṣetra, 34  
 army of, 35  
 seen by Yudhiṣṭhira on the way to heaven, 38  
 Dūṣaṇa, demon, 16  
 · commander of Khara; was killed by Rāma, 16 fn  
 Duṣkara, an embellishment of word, 932  
 a kind of Yamaka; three kinds of; explanations of, 936  
 duṣkara, a division of objects to be struck by an arrow, 648  
 Duṣṭaçaṇḍālikā, a female divinity, 411  
 Duṣyanta, son of Marutta; son of, 747  
 one of the four sons of Tāṁsurodha; wife of; son of, 749  
 Dūti, a female divinity, 411  
 duties, as laid down in the Vedas; excellence of, 1074  
 Dvādaśātman, a Śālagrāma, 126  
 Dvaipāyanas, Rgveda as the authority for, 730  
 Dvairatha, a son of Jyotiṣmat, 352  
 Dvandva (compound), two kinds of—  
 itaretarayoga and samāhāra; examples of, 975  
 dvāpara, a yuga; division of Veda at the end of, 429  
 Dvāravati, city founded by Raivata, 736  
 a sacred spot, 327  
 made as his capital by Kṛṣṇa, 28  
 Kṛṣṇa's return to, 743  
 Aniruddha brought to Śoṇitapura by Uṣā from, 30  
 solution to the fortunes of, 50  
 repetition of the name of Kṛṣṇa at, 841  
 was flooded by ocean, 37  
 dvidvādaśa, denotes the second and twelfth houses, 357  
 Dvigu (compound), having a number as the first member, 975  
 Dvimidha, one of the three sons of Bṛhat, 749  
 Dvimūrdhan, one of the sons of Hiraṇyākṣa, 46  
 Dviraṇḍaka, letter denoting, 419  
 dvisthūna, an array; characteristics of, 633  
 Dvividā, a monkey that accompanied Rāma for the battle at Laṅkā, 21  
 killed by Kṛṣṇa as he avenged the death of Naraka, 30, 30 fn  
 Dwarf, Viṣṇu's manifestation as; as son of Kaśyapa, and Aditi, 745  
 alms sought from Bali by, 8  
 obeisance made to, 82, 83  
 characteristics of the image of, 129  
 dysentery, medicine for, 752  
 infantile; remedy for, 766  
 remedy for; remedy for long standing, 768  
 of acute nature; remedy for, 777  
 accompanied by swelling; remedy for, 777  
 Dyuti, wife of Vibhāvasu, 738-9  
 dyūta, a flower, 529  
 Dyutimān, ruled Krauñca, 322  
 Dyutimat, a boundary mountain; son of, 352  
 ear, pain in; remedy for, 755  
 bleeding of; remedy for 766  
 ear-ache, remedy to remove, 777  
 earth, extent of, 353  
 and parts of, words denoting, 1005-6  
 best suited for installation of an image, 267  
 a great gift, 544  
 merits of and mode of making, 555-6

- saluted, 50  
 eclipse, merits of making a gift at the time of, 362  
 Ekacakrā, city, Pāṇḍavas stay at, 32, 32 fn  
 Ekadaṃṣṭra, a name of the elephant-faced god, 190  
 ekadaṇḍin, an ascetic, 454  
 Ekadanta, one of the eight forms of Gaṇapati, 865  
 Ekanetra, a Rudra, 263  
   letter denoting, 419  
 Ekāṅghri, a guardian deity, 284  
 Ekapāda, letter denoting, 419  
 Ekarudrākṣa, a Rudra, 263  
 Ekavira, mode of worship of Gauri according to, 897  
 ekoddiṣṭa, ceremony, 459  
   mode of performing, 348  
 Elegance, relating to Guṇa; explanation of, 945  
 elephant, words denoting things relating to, 1019  
   ground suitable for, 632  
 elephant (golden) and horse, a great gift, 544  
 elephantiasis, remedy for, 768  
 elephants, men mounted on; functions of, 631  
   needed to protect a chariot, 632  
   three cavalry (men) to be employed to fight with, 632  
 elephants, characteristics of; treatment of their diseases, 781-83  
   having commendable qualities to be possessed, 781  
   diseases of the legs of, 782  
   remedy for all sorts of disorders of, 782  
   remedy for colics of, 783  
   constipation of, 781  
   dysentery of, 782  
   earache of, 782  
   fainting of, 781  
   the fevers of, 781  
   worms in the intestines of, 782  
   jaundice of, 781  
   the disease known as 'kaṭu' of, 782  
   loss of appetite of, 782  
   injuries of, 783  
   stiffness of neck of, 782  
   shivering of, 782  
   the enlargement of spleen of, 782  
   numbness of trunk of, 782  
   removal of excess wind in the bodies of, 781  
   propitiatory rites for curing the ailments of, 795-98  
   anointment for, 783  
   anointment for headache of, 781  
   bed for, 783  
   excellent collyrium for, 783  
   cooling agent for the eyes of, 783  
   for sharpening the eyesight of, 783  
   dried barley for deranged humours of, 783  
   kind of food good for, 783  
   incense which makes them victorious in battle, 783  
   milk as a drink for emaciation due to rutting in, 783  
   nails of; cutting of; should be bathed with oil once in a month, 783  
   prescription that increases the strength of, 783  
   medicine for drinking in the case of retention of urine of, 782  
   excellent drink for wounds of, 782  
   elevated thinking, word signifying, 995  
   embellishment, of senses; eight kinds of, 939  
   of both sound and sense; six varieties of, 942-44  
   embellishments, word, meaning and both; of words, nine kinds of; adding beauty to poetry; three kinds of, 932  
   embryo, words relating to, 1014  
   emerald, a gem, 640  
   qualities of a good, 641  
   emetic, commended in the case of hemorrhage, 752  
   the best, 757  
   decoction which would, serve as, 769  
   a decoction that serves as a good, 778  
   emotions, eight transient, 924-6  
   inter-dependent on sentiment, 924  
   empire, seven constituents of, 585  
   employer, has the option to pay an employee for overtime, 674  
   endeavour, the five kinds of, 922  
   enemies, three kinds of, 605  
   opportune moments to win on the sides of an array; means to win, 631  
   enemy, definition of an; ways to conquer an, 627  
   in one's own soil or another's soil; means to win, 631  
   enmity, five kinds of, 623  
   epics, merits of making a gift of, 735  
   epilepsy, remedy for long standing, 773  
   remedies for, 829  
   eraṇḍamuṇḍi herb, 407  
   erotic, origin of the sentiment; two-fold; subdivided into two; four-fold divisions of a division of, aids of, 931  
   erotic sport, words denoting, 995  
   eternally, words denoting, 988

- eunuch, words which are used in the sense of, 1014
- euphonic combinations, examples of, 954-57
- evening, words denoting, 990
- events, preliminary and later; the strength of, 657
- evidences, in a lawsuit, 657  
fine for false, 663
- excellence, adds charm to poetry; exists in two forms, 944  
of word; seven kinds of, 944  
of sense; six varieties of, 945  
of words and sense; six varieties of, 946
- excess, words denoting, 988
- excitant, two kinds of; supportive; the influence of the emotions associated with; the nature of enhancing, 926  
of women are twelve, 927
- exercise, rules relating to doing, 764
- exertion, of the body regarded as gestures of the body, 928
- expedients, six kinds of, 606-8  
the seven political, 627
- expedition, definition of, 607  
instructions relating to military, 594  
propitious periods for undertaking, 604
- expiations, different kinds of; subtle kinds of, 482-3  
different kinds of, 485  
destroying sins, 490  
for association with sinners, 478-82  
for discontinuing the worship of gods, 490-92  
factors to be examined before laying down, 486
- expression, two forms of natural form of, 939
- extraneous matter, detection of, 268, 269
- eye, remedy for all diseases of; whiteness in; remedy for; ointment for external part of, 755
- eye-brow, sevenfold movement of, 929
- eyesight, prescription that strengthens, 778
- face, six kinds of actions of, 929
- fame, words signifying, 993
- fasting, rules relating to and benefits of, 492  
as superior austerity, 1074
- ferry charges, words for, 996
- festivals, celebrations of, 184-86
- feet, manifold action of, 930
- feudatories, duties of, 626
- fever, medicines for, 752  
due to deranged wind; remedy for, 772  
due to deranged wind and bile; remedy for, 772  
due to tumour; remedy for, 774
- fever and other ailments, decoction of herbs for, 772
- fever with other ailments, remedy for, 773, 774
- fevers, remedy for all, 772
- fevers and other ailments, remedy for, 774
- fine arts, sixtyfour varieties of; two divisions of, 926
- fines, different kinds of; for different offences, 589-93, 676-79, 681  
for various offences, 682-3
- fire, as the best sweating agent, 757  
a prescription which would enable one to walk on, 770.
- fire, spark of; words denoting, 988
- sphere of; asterisms belonging to, 387  
words denoting flames of, 988  
words denoting submarine, 988
- Fire (god), 60, 215  
mode of installation of, 205-11
- Fish, Viṣṇu's manifestation as, 3 ff., 9, 129  
image of, 116
- fisherman, words denoting, 996
- fishula, remedy for, 775  
ointment for wounds in, ointment which arrests its spread, 767, 768
- flagstaff, material for making; length of, 308  
consecration of, 308-11
- floods, words denoting overflow of, 995
- flowers, eight kinds of gestures referred to as; eight different things as seat etc. referred to as, 530  
words which mean arrangement of, 1017
- food, two parts: one getting secreted and the other getting absorbed, 758
- forest, words which mean, 1006
- formula, for conquering the three worlds, 396-7  
for success in battle, 397-400
- formulae, presided over by different gods, and their characteristics, 895  
having more than five letters fruitful always, 802
- fort, defects of, 626
- fortress, to be built on hills, 620
- forts, construction of, 576-7  
the situation of; the six kinds of, 620
- fragrance, word for; word for attractive, 991

- word denoting object having good, 992
- Friday, for first feeding of a child, 358  
for first shave of a child, 359  
should not enter the cow-pen on, 361  
causes death with certain asterisms, 376  
causes afflictions with certain asterisms, 377  
inauspicious if coincides with second day, 381  
Rāhu rules in the east on, 409
- friend, the three gains got through a, 621  
friends, four kinds of, 621  
friendship, qualities of men with whom king should make; means of acquiring, 621  
fright, origin of the sentiment, 924  
fruits, asterism for eating, 358  
fruits of action, three, 1072  
fumigation, herbs used in, 583-4  
fundamental principles, worship of, 291
- Gabhastika, a name of the Sun, 136  
Gabhastimān, one of the territory, 350  
Gabhastimat, a nether world, 353  
Gadā, a demon killed by Viṣṇu, 334  
gadā (mace), used for acts such as āhata etc., 651  
gadā (mace), methods of using of, 652  
gadā, a posture, 857  
a type of temple, 315  
Gadādhara, form of Viṣṇu at Gayā, 841  
killed Heti and other demons, 334  
merits of worshipping, 337
- Gadāloka, sacred place at Gayā, 340, 341  
Gadāprakṣālaṇa, sacred place, 340  
Gādhi, Indra; was born from Kuśika; son and daughter of, 749  
Gadini, a goddess, 376  
Gagana, a deity assigned on the body, 414  
Gaganānandadeva, worshipped, 414  
Gaganānandanātha, a deity, 413  
gahana, a posture relating to the riding of horses, 787  
gaja, a type of temple, 315  
Gajavakra, an appellation of elephant-faced god, 190, 865  
galagaṇḍa, a disease; remedy for, 766  
Galaṇḍa, letter denoting the divinity, 419  
Gālava, a Pāñcarātra tantra, 106  
Gamanopamā, explanation of, 941  
Gāmbhīrya, an excellence of word; (see also depth), 944  
gambling, different types, 655  
rules relating to, 675  
evil results of, 627  
Gaṇa, worship of, 197  
obeisance to, 51  
Gaṇacchandas, description of, 905  
Gaṇādhīpa, one of the eight forms of Gaṇapati, 190, 865  
Gaṇakriḍā, one of the names of Gaṇeśa, 190  
Gaṇanāyaka, one of the names of Gaṇeśa, 190  
Gaṇapati, elephant-faced god to be worshipped, 190  
different names of, 877  
of the form of praṇava, 412  
mode of worship of, 876-78  
Gaṇapati, eight forms of; worship of, 865-66  
Gaṇas, worshipped, 51  
gaṇas, relating to metres, explanation of, 906  
Gaṇḍa, a division of Vithi, 928  
gaṇḍa, an adverse period, explanation of, 382  
period of, 383  
gaṇḍamālā, a disease, remedy for, 766  
gaṇḍānta, an adverse period, description of, 382  
Gandhamādana, a monkey, 21  
a mountain, 324, 325  
a forest, 325  
Gāndhāra, son of Gaṇḍira, sons of, the descendants of, 747  
Gāndhāras, origin of, 747  
Gāndhāri, one of the wives of Kṛṣṇa, 744  
one of the two wives of Dhṛṣṭa, 743  
wife of Dhṛtarāṣṭra, 31  
accompanied her husband to the forest, 36  
gāndhāri, a vein, carries the wind udāna, functions of, 556  
Gandharva, located in a square for worship, 108  
worshipped, 316  
Gāndharva, the science of, 3  
a territory, 350  
gāndharva, a type of marriage, 435  
Gandharvas, born to Ariṣṭā, 47  
names of, 987  
Citraratha made the ruler of, 47  
Kṛṣṇa married the daughter of, 28  
milking of the cow in the company of, 43  
ride on the chariot of the Sun, 356  
prayer to destroy evil forces of, 84  
gandhaśasyaka, a gem (?), 641  
Gandhavati, spirit possessing the

- child in the seventeenth year, symptoms of the child possessed by, offering to appease, 826
- Gāṇḍira, son of Varūtha, son of, 747
- Gāṇḍiva the bow got from Fire-god, 32
- Gandhivṛtta, a division of prose kāvya, 918
- Gaṇeśa, other names of, 190, 987  
establishment of image of, 116  
mode of worshipping, 189-90  
obeisance to, 1
- Gaṇeśvara, one of the eight forms of Gaṇapati, 865
- Gaṅgā (Ganges), words denoting celestial, 987  
brought down from heavens by Bhagiratha, 737  
had Bhīṣma as the son from Śantanu, 31, 751  
sacred, 350, 491  
excellence of, 1074  
greatness of, 328-29  
greatness of its confluence with Sarasvati, 327  
greatness of its confluence with Gomati, 328  
always meritorious, 436  
greatness of land adjacent to, 329, 330  
water at the time of eclipse getting the sanctity of, 362  
purifies the bather, 331  
purifies one by mere remembrance, 355  
Viṣṇu to be contemplated at the confluence of the river with the ocean, 841  
worship of, 197  
adored, 50, 88  
worshipped, 51
- Gaṅgādvāra (Haridvāra), not easily accessible, 330
- Gaṅgāviṣṇu, exposition made by, 1074
- gañjā, said to be auspicious, 641
- gara, an astral combination (karaṇa), 363, 369fn
- Garbha, one of the five sons of Vitatha, 749
- Garbhādhāna, a rite, 59, 71, 86, 95, 112
- garden, words for, 1006-7
- Gārgya, a Pāncarātratantra, 106
- gārhapatyapada, at Gayā, 339
- garuḍa, an array, 612
- Garuḍa, born from Vinatā and Kaśyapa 46, 63fn  
was made as the chief of the birds, 47
- Kṛṣṇa as riding, 28, 30  
installation of the image of, 173
- benefit of worshipping, 343  
worshipped, 51 (See also Vainateya)
- Garuḍamaṇḍapa, a shed in a temple, 115
- Garuḍapurāṇa, narrated by lord Viṣṇu in the Tārksakalpa, describes the birth of Garuḍa from the Universal Egg, should be given as a gift, 734
- Gāruḍī, name of a herb, efficacy of, 378
- garutmān, a type of temple, 315
- Gāthā, definition of the metre, 915
- Gātra, one of the sons of Vasiṣṭha and Urjā, 49
- Gauḍiyā, a variety of diction, characteristics of, 927
- Gauri (Pārvati), renounced by Śiva, 6  
seen by Uṣā as sporting with Śiva, 29  
image of, 139  
installation of image of, 172, 302-3  
at Gayā, benefit of worship of, 343  
to be worshipped, 133  
different modes of worship of, 896-99  
adored, 1, 51, 52  
characteristics of the metre, 913
- gaurinavamivṛata, mode of practising, 509-10
- Gautama, a law-giver, 455
- Gavākṣa, a monkey, 21
- Gaya, given as one of the sons of, Ūru and Āgneyī, but Śibi according to Viṣṇupurāṇa, 42  
a demon, legend relating to, 332-35  
son of Dhīṣaṇā of the family of Agni, 43  
a son of Sudyumna, ruled over all the quarters, 735  
one of the five sons of Vitatha, 749  
son of Nakta, 323  
a monkey, 21
- Gayā, a sacred place, 350, 491  
ruled by Gaya (Gayāpurī), 735  
extent of, 334  
Brahmā's curse on the brahmins at, 338  
mode of pilgrimage to, 335-44  
mode of performing śrāddha at, 345-50
- Janārdana as ancestors at, 342  
merits of performing ancestral rites at, 335  
significance and greatness of, 332-35  
Gadādhara to be contemplated at, 841  
sacredness of image of Brahmā at, 106
- Gayākedāra, at Gayā, obeisance made to 339
- Gayānābhi, at Gayā, one should offer piṇḍa at, 342

- Gayāśiras, at Gayā, 337, 342  
 extent of, 338
- Gāyatri, a metre, 562  
 number of letters in, 902  
 the number of letters in a quarter of, 902-3  
 white coloured, belongs to Agni-veśyagotra, 905  
 appropriate time for recital of, 916  
 mantra, name of the gods presiding over the letters of the colours associated with, 560-1  
 mode of reciting, the greatness of, 559-63  
 use of, 87, 87fn  
 should be recited, 437  
 destroys sins when repetition is made, 491  
 merits of doing oblations with, 561  
 explanation of, 563-4  
 that is known as ajapā, 557-8  
 mantra personified as goddess, white in complexion, born in the Kātyāyani gotra, 561  
 letter denoting, 418
- gem, in the serpents, auspiciousness of, 641
- Gemini, commendable for marriage when ruled over by certain asterisms, 357  
 relating to worship of Viṣṇu, 361  
 good for agriculture, 361,  
 a special designation of, presence of Sun in, 362  
 time taken by the Sun to cross, 384  
 friendly with Sagittarius, 392
- gems, words denoting the place of origin of, 996  
 eight kinds of, 283  
 characteristics of, 640-641  
 good characteristics of, 641  
 asterisms suitable for wearing, 359  
 to be worn by a king, 640
- genealogy, words which mean, 1017
- germ (in a play), explanation of, 922
- gestures, eight kinds of, 530  
 twelve kinds of, explanation of five of, 928-9
- Ghana, a Rudra, 254
- Ghanāntasthā, a female energy, 136
- Ghanāyus, a son of Purūravas, 739
- Ghaṇḍā, a female divinity, 375
- ghaṇṭā, one of the postures of the hand, 857
- Ghaṇṭādevī, a female divinity, 379
- Ghaṇṭākarna, image of, 135
- Ghaṇṭāli, an evil spirit which possesses a child on the third night after birth, 821  
 symptoms of the child possessed by, offering to appease, unguent for the child possessed by, 821
- Ghātakacakra, a mystic diagram to know victory etc., 388-9
- Ghaṭotkaca, son of Bhimasena and Hiḍimbā, 751
- Ghora, a form of Rudra, 253  
 located and worshipped, 292
- ghorā, signifies the entry of the Sun in one of the constellations, 362
- Ghorā, a female divinity, worshipped, 375  
 located on the left tooth, 417  
 a hell, 1038
- Ghorarūpā, a hell, 1038
- Ghoṣa, born to Dharma and Lambā, 44
- Ghrdrikā, one of the daughters of Tāmra, 46
- Ghrta, son of Dharma, son of, 747
- Ghrteyu, one of the ten sons of, Bhadrāśva, 748
- Ghrtoda, an ocean surrounding the Kūśadvipa, 352
- gift, a political expedient, three kinds of, 627  
 five kinds of, 628  
 mode of making, 544  
 suitability of a person to receive, 541  
 injunctions on the recipient of, 542  
 to be made to poor and greedy for winning them, 629  
 efficacy of making a, 463  
 becomes futile if made expecting return, 541  
 gift of a cow, mode of making and merits of, 543-46  
 merits of giving cows as, 547  
 offering grains as a best, 544  
 of earth, merits and mode of making, 555-6
- gifts, sixteen great, 544-46  
 different kinds of, merits of giving, 546-52  
 proportionate to one's possession, 546  
 as a means to be employed by the king, 587  
 which confer the desired fruits, 552-55  
 rules relating to making, 538, 539-43  
 certain rules relating to making, 549  
 rules relating to accepting, 543  
 common procedures in making all, 543  
 the words to be said while making, 543  
 mode of making, for different yugas, 543  
 greatness of making different kinds of, 544

- merits of making, 491, 538, 541, 542  
 merits of making different kinds of, 556  
 merits of giving on certain days, 550  
 meritorious than performing sacrifices, 551  
 girdle, time for tying of, 359  
 Girikā, queen of Suhotra, propitiated  
 Vasiṣṭha and had seven sons, 750  
 girikarnikā, flower not to be used in  
 worship, 529  
 a herb, 371  
 girivajra, auspiciousness of, 641  
 Gīti, characteristics of the metre, 906  
 Gityāryā, characteristics of the metre,  
 907  
 glance, three-fold, divided into thirty-  
 six kinds, 929  
 goad, words for, 1019  
 Gobhānu, son of Varga, son of, 747  
 goblins, worshipped, 50  
 remedy for defects due to, 756  
 gocarma, (a measure of surface)  
 merits of making a gift of, 547  
 Godāvāri, flows from Sahya, 351  
 Janasthāna on the banks of, 15  
 greatness of, 328  
 sacredness of, 350  
 goddesses, names of different, 420-23  
 images of, 132-35, 138-39  
 mode of worship of, 23-4  
 godhikā, an array, consists of five  
 units of army, 634  
 God of Death, synonyms of, 988  
 gods, forms of, represented by the  
 vowels and consonants, 873-74  
 worship of different, 273-75, 952-3  
 consecration of the images of, 180-83  
 merits of worshipping different such  
 as Rudra, Viṣṇu etc., 900  
 gods and goddesses, comprising the  
 part of a mantra relating to Brahmā,  
 420  
 comprising the part of mantra  
 relating to Viṣṇu, 420-21  
 comprising the part of mantra  
 relating to Siva, 421-22  
 installation of images of, 171-3  
 goitre, a remedy to be used as an  
 unguent in, 776  
 gokarṇa, a flower, 529  
 gokṣurakā, a herb, 407  
 Gokula, a place, 27  
 Gomantaka, a place, 28  
 Gomatī, river, confluence with Gaṅgā  
 327, 328  
 Gomatividyā, a sacred formula, effi-  
 cacy of repeating the, 799  
 repeated as an atonement, 475  
 gomedā, a gem, said to be auspicious,  
 641  
 Gomedha, a boundary mountain, 351  
 Gomukhi, a spirit possessing the  
 child in the third month, symptoms  
 of a child possessed by, offering  
 to appease, bathing the child  
 possessed by, 823  
 gomūtrikā, an array, a variation of  
 array called bhoga, 634,  
 an array, modification of bhoga, 635  
 Gomūtrikā, one of the bandhas, two  
 kinds of, description of, 936-7  
 bandhas, composed in all the metres,  
 938  
 gonasas, serpents known as, 807  
 treatment of poison due to, 818  
 good deeds, words denoting, 990  
 good people, commendable acts of,  
 617-8  
 Gopāla, beads belonging to Jyoti  
 class, 894  
 Gopīśvara, form of Viṣṇu to be con-  
 templated on the shore of Sindhu  
 ocean, 842  
 Gopracāra, at Gayā, 341  
 gorakṣa, a herb, 406  
 gosava, a sacrifice, 474  
 Goṣṭhi, a type of drama, 921  
 gout, of acute nature, an extraction  
 of oil of herbs as a remedy for, 775  
 remedy for, 755, 767  
 Govardhana, a mountain, 841  
 govatsadvādaśī, mode of practising  
 the vow of, 512  
 Govinda, a name of Viṣṇu, 65  
 characteristics of the form of, 128  
 auspicious day for making an image  
 of, 215  
 saluted by Indra, 27  
 govindadvādaśī, mode of practising the  
 vow of, 512  
 goviṣṇanamudrā, a posture of the hands,  
 196  
 govraṭa, definition of the austerity  
 termed as, 799  
 graceful, a mode, explanation of, 933-4  
 graha, herbs denoted by, 406, 407  
 grāhaṇī, one of the praṇita mudrās,  
 857  
 grāhyakaṇṭhakapāyana, a posture  
 relating to riding of horses, 787  
 grains, eight kinds of, 283  
 words denoting, and related things,  
 1021  
 guidelines for storing and selling,  
 386-7  
 grāmaṇī, ride the chariot of Sun, 356

- grammatical incorrectness, a defect of word, 947
- Grāmyatva, a defect of word, 947
- Granthika, beads belonging to the Śiva class, 894
- grazing, rules relating to, 671-72
- Ḡḍhreśvara, at Gayā, to be worshipped, 342
- Ḡḍhrakūṭa, at Gayā, balls of rice to be offered at, 342
- Ḡḍhravata, at Gayā, balls of rice to be offered, 342
- green, words denoting, 992
- greying of hair, herbs to be used as sternutatory to arrest, 774
- gr̥harāja, a type of temple, 314
- grief, need to discard, 1068
- group of gods, words denoting, 986
- ground, period within which ownership can be claimed, 657
- Gr̥tsapati, one of the two sons of Kapila, brahmins, warriors and tradesmen as descendants of, 749
- guardian deities, names and worship of, 284
- guḍapāka, a hell, 532
- Gūḍārtha, a defect, 944
- guḍavrata, merits of practising, 523
- guḍūci, a herb, 371, 407
- Guha, image of, 106
- hunter chief entertained Rāma, 13
- Guhyakubjikā, a goddess, 423
- Guhyāśaktinī, a female divinity, 416
- Gulma, one of the siddhas, 414
- gumphanā, an embellishment of word, 932
- explanation of, three kinds of, 933
- guṇas, in poetry, the place of, 944 (see also excellence)
- Gupta, a kind of Citrakāvya, definition of, 935
- Gurjara, (region of), 387
- guru, an array, description of, 633
- Guṭikā, beads belonging to the Savitra class, 894
- haemoptysis, cause of, 760
- haemorrhage, medicines for, 752
- remedies which arrest, 776-777
- Haihaya, one of the sons of Satajit, son of, 740
- Haihayas, descendants of Tālajaṅgha, 741
- hālāhala, poison, 5
- a deadly poison, Viṣṇu's tenth manifestation referred to, as for the conquest of; took the poison from Maheśvara, 746
- Halamukhi, characteristics of the metre, 911
- Halliśaka, a type of drama 921
- Haṁsa, beads belonging to Śikhā class, 894
- haṁsa, a type of temple, 315
- haṁsa bija, mantra, efficacy of locating, 849
- Haṁsādhika, a monstress possessing the newly born child on the fifth night, symptoms of child possessed by, unguent for the child possessed by, offering to appease, 821
- Haṁsaruta, characteristics of the metre, 911
- Haṁsatirtha, at Gayā, 344
- hand, employed in two ways—folded and unfolded, thirteen actions of the folded, twentyfour actions of the unfolded, 930
- Hanūmat, Rāma taken to Sugriva by, 17
- searched the southern direction, 18
- crossed the ocean, 19
- words spoken to Sitā by, 20
- accompanied Rāma to Laṅkā, 21
- killed Dhūmrākṣa, 22
- bore Lakṣmaṇa to Nikumbhilā, 22
- brought Sitā to Rāma as directed, 23
- figure of, 137
- accomplishes all acts, 379
- Hara, poison retained by Śiva, 5
- one of the eleven forms of Śiva, 45
- made as lord of the goblins, 47
- letter denoting 418 (See Śiva)
- harem, words denoting superintendent of, 1018
- Hari, a manifestation of Viṣṇu, 428
- manifestation in four forms, 10
- form of Viṣṇu on Govardhana, 841
- different forms of, 47
- to be contemplated at Śālagrāma, 841
- cause of creation etc. 39
- showing the feminine form to Śiva, 6
- reference to fight with Śiva, 30
- conferred supreme position on Dhruva, 41
- manifested with four hands before being born as Kṛṣṇa, 26
- day of waking of, 361
- installation of image of, 172
- Kṛṣṇa referred to as, 28, 31, 36
- sages conducting a sacrifice to, 1
- mantra having the name of, 52, 56
- to be contemplated, 37
- should be adored, 61, 67, 68
- remembered, 58
- uttering the name of, 71, 73
- meditation on, 53, 55
- worship of, 75ff
- a female divinity to be invoked, 91

- har.drā, a herb, 407  
 Haridvāra, a sacred spot, 327  
 Harihara, form of Viṣṇu, 131  
 Hariṅaplūtā, characteristics of the metre, 910  
 Hariṅī, characteristics of the metre, 913  
 hariṅī, a nerve, 316  
 Hariśaila, a boundary mountain, 352  
 Hariścandra, son of Satyaratha; son of, 737  
     a place at Vārāṇasi, 330  
 Harita, a celestial at the time of the 12th Manu, 428  
     a country, 352  
 haritā, a herb, 372  
 Hārita, a law-giver, 455  
 haritaki, a herb, 407  
 Havis, one of the sons of Rukmakavaca, 741  
 Haviṣya, a sage, 428  
 Havya, sons of, 352  
 Havyavāha, (fire) to be worshipped, 316  
 hay, asterisms good for gathering of, 360  
 Haya, one, of the sons of Śatajit, 740  
 Hayagriva, form of Viṣṇu, 326  
     image of, 115  
     Śālagrāma called, 125  
     a demon killed by Viṣṇu, 4  
 Hayagriveśa, prayer to, 82  
 Hayānā, a female divinity; image of, 138  
 Hayaśirā, daughter of Vṛṣaparvan, 46  
 Hayaśiras, form of Viṣṇu, 131  
 Hayaśirśatantra, a Pāñcarātrāgama, 105, 117 fn. (saṁhitā)  
 Hayāsyā, image of; installation of, 172  
 head, thirteen ways of movement of; diseases relating to; sternutatory for, 929  
 Harivarṣa, a mountain, 324  
     Naiśadha given by Priyavrata to, 322  
 harsh, a mode; explanation of, 933-4  
 Haryaṅgaka, son of Campa; son of, 748  
 Haryaśva, one of the two sons of Dṛḍhāśva, 736  
     son of, 737  
 Hasta, an asterism, 357, 358, 359, 360, 361, 363, 381, 382, 385, 387, 400  
 haste, words denoting, 988  
 hasticchāyā, definition of, 463  
 hastijhvā, an occult nerve, 253  
     carries the wind vyāna; functions, of, 556  
 Hastināpura, a city, 37  
 Jayanta to be worshipped at, 841  
 Hāṭaka, a male divinity worshipped, 310  
 hāva, the collective word for behaviour of women, 995  
 Havirdhāna, son of Antardhāna and Śikhaṇḍini; sons of, 43  
 haviryajña, one of the domestic sacrifices, 7 kinds of, 86, 466  
 head, ointment for, 755  
     remedy for fall of hair from, 834  
 headache, remedy to remove, 777  
 health, no fortune equal to, 1074  
 heart, location of, 760  
 heart, disease, purgatives to be given for, 754  
 heat, words denoting excessive and little heat, 990  
 heaven, synonyms of, 986  
 heaven and earth, interspace between; words denoting, 988  
 hell, words denoting, 995  
 hells, the names of different, 1038-39  
     the nature of different, 530-32  
 hemajihva, rite called, 86  
 hemākṣa, rite called, 86  
 Hemakūṭa, country, 322  
     location of, 324  
 Hemalamba, a year of the Hindu calendar, 405  
 hemāṅga, rite called, 86  
 Hemaparvata, mountain, 350  
 Hemaratha, son of Ketumān; well known as Divodāsa, 749  
 Hemaśaila, a boundary mountain, 352  
 hemasūtraka, rite called, 86  
 herbs, eight kinds of, 283  
     symbolical numbers denoting, 406  
     hot and cold, the two kinds of strength of, 762  
     tastes and qualities of, three flavours of, 761, 762  
     general rule for making a decoction of, 762  
     purpose for which used, 406  
     used in charms, medicines etc., 405-8  
     which give good complexion, 763  
     which would subjugate the partner, 833  
     which would bring happiness and prosperity to the married couple, 833  
     that should be used for getting a son, 834  
 heroes, four kinds of; four different kinds of; the three minor companions of, 926  
 heroic, origin of the sentiment, 923

- threefold; accomplished by enthusiasm, 931-2  
 heroines, different types of, 926  
 Heti, a demon, 334  
 hetu (cause), an embellishment of senses, 939  
   explanation of; produced in two ways, 942  
 Hetuka, a guardian deity, 284  
 hiccough (hiccup), remedy for, 753, 754, 773, 830  
 Hiḍimbā, wife of Bhimasena, 751  
 hill, word denoting; word denoting earth near and above, 996  
 Hima, country, 322  
   life in, 323  
 Himādrī, (Himālaya) 350  
 Himalayas, mountain, 37 fn., 351  
 Himavān, location of, 324  
 Himavat, (Himālaya) 47, 50  
 Himśā, wife of Ādharma; progeny of, 49  
 Hiraṇvat, son of Agnidhra; region given to, 322  
 Hiraṇyā, a female divinity, 230  
 Hiraṇyagarbha, denotes Brahmā, 40  
   creation made by, 40 fn  
 hiraṇyagarbha, a great gift, 544  
 Hiraṇyaka, a mountain, 324  
 Hiraṇyakaśipu, a demon; born to Kaśyapa and Diti, 45  
   brother of Hiraṇyākṣa, 7, 7 fn.  
   performed penance at Śrīparvata, 331  
   reference to his destruction of Viṣṇu, 745  
   sons of, 26  
   becoming embryo in the womb of Devala, 26fn  
   the four sons of, 46  
 Hiraṇyākṣa, demon; son of Kaśyapa and Diti, 45  
   killed by Viṣṇu in his manifestation as a boar, 7, 7fn, 745  
   five sons of, 46  
   progeny mixed with that of Danu in the text, 46fn  
 hiraṇyākṣa, a rite, 86  
 hiraṇyamitra, a rite, 86  
 hiraṇyāṅga, a rite, 86  
 hiraṇyāṅghri, a rite, 86  
 hiraṇyapāṇi, a rite, 86  
 Hiraṇyaramaka, son of Parjanya Prajāpati, 48  
 hiraṇyāśya, a rite, 86  
 hiraṇyavarṇā, a hymn, 436, 562  
 hiraṇyavat, a rite, 86  
 hole, words signifying, 995  
 horses, four varieties of; methods to train, 789  
 four different varieties of; such as brahmin etc, 789  
 certain kinds of gaits of, 788-89  
 auspicious physical features of, 790  
 inauspicious features of, 790  
 having certain physical features to be avoided, 789-90  
 rider should make good the bad qualities in, 785  
 management of; treatment of the diseases of, 784-89  
 taming of, 788  
 means of control, 788  
 instructions relating to keeping of vicious, 794  
 four political expedients relating to; and appropriate time for using them, 786  
 qualities of men expert in handling, 786  
 preparatory steps before riding, 785  
 asterisms and seasons commendable for first ride on, 784  
 seasons forbidden for riding, 784  
 ability without instruction to ride on, 784  
 names of different postures relating to riding, 787  
 instructions relating to riding of, 786-7  
 instructions relating to riding in the morning and evening, 786  
 places unsuitable for riding on, 784  
 should not be whipped soon after mounting, 786  
 should not be whipped at improper places, 784  
 censure of a person not knowing how to manage a, 786  
 praise of a person who knows both the good and bad qualities of, 786  
 food for different breeds of, 788  
 the food and the quantity of food to be given for, 793-4  
 drinks for, 792  
 instructions relating to bathing of, 793  
 substitute drinks during different seasons for, 793  
 consecration and location of gods on the bodies of, 784-5  
 characteristics of, treatment of the diseases of, 789-94  
 propitiatory rites for curing the ailments of, 794-5  
 bitten by flies; remedies for, 788  
 a curative for harassing cough of, 791  
 emetics for all kinds of diarrhoea of, 791

- an oily emetic that makes comfortable, 791  
 remedy for dysentery of, 790-1  
 remedy for eye diseases of, 792  
 a potion that removes the fatigue of, 791  
 remedy for haemoptysis of, 792  
 remedies for deranged humours of, 793, 794  
 remedy for itching of, 792  
 afflicted by fever should first be treated with water, 791  
 remedy for pain due to whipping of, 792  
 prescription to remove pain in the stomach of, 790  
 beneficial remedy for paralysis of the tongue of, 792  
 remedy for swelling due to stiff-throat of, 791  
 anointment for swollen (limbs) of, 791  
 remedy for ulcers of, 792  
 remedy for passing of blood in urine of, 791  
 remedy for a wound of the tendon or of an ear etc. of, 792  
 horse (golden), a great gift, 544  
 horse (golden) and chariot, a great gift, 544  
 horticulture, science of, 764-5  
 hotra, priest for Rks, 429  
 house, good time for building, 360  
   good asterisms for entering the new, 360  
   months good for entering, 360  
 householder, duties of, 431-32  
 houses, the trees which should be grown around, 643  
 Hrada, son of Hrāda, 46  
 Hrāda, one of the sons of Hiraṇyakaśipu, 46  
 Hṛīmkāri, a female divinity, 424  
 Hṛlika, son of Bhoja; ten sons of, 743  
 Hṛṣikeśa, a form of Viṣṇu, 65  
   form of Viṣṇu at Kubjāma, 841  
   at Gayā worshipped, 343  
   invocation to, 52, 82  
 huhu, a vein; carries the wind devadatta, 556  
 humility, as cause of statesmanship, 617  
   need for practising, 618  
 humours, the qualities of the three, 759  
   get increased or abated in the different seasons, 759  
   characteristics of men having in excess one of the three, 1033  
   the nature of people having in excess one kind of, 760  
   get increased or abated according to the quality of the food, 759  
   as capable of coursing through the entire body, 760  
   cause and symptoms of the derangement of different, 760  
   the defects due to, 758  
   certain practices which would remove each one of the three, 764  
   remedies for diseases due to derangement of, 761  
 Huṅkāra, one of the Yoginis; image of, 138  
 Hutahavyavāha, one of the sons of Dhara, 44  
 Hutāsā, one of the Yoginis; image of, 138  
 Ibhāśya (Gaṇeśa), worship of the image of, 215  
 Icchā, a female divinity, 292  
 Idā, a female energy, 136  
 idā, a vein; carries the wind prāṇa; functions of, 556  
   established on the left side of the body, 557  
 idol, conservation of, 152-55  
 ignorance, words denoting, 991  
 Īhāmṛga, a type of drama, 921  
 Ikṣu, an ocean, 324  
 Ikṣvāku, one of the eight sons of Vaivasvata Manu, 9, 735  
   descendants of family of, 738  
 Ilā, one of the Yoginis; image of, 138  
 Ilā, daughter of Manu; later changed as a male, 735  
 Ilāvṛta, Meru given by Agnidhra to, 322  
 Ilāvṛta, a mountain, 324  
 illusions, different kinds of, 629  
 image, consecration of, 283-94  
   preliminary, consecration of, 155-6  
 image of Siva, installation of, 294-302  
 image of Vāsudeva, installation of, 161-64  
 images, renovation of decayed, 1843  
 pedestals of, 123  
 impartiality, commended, 1073-4  
 impure, words denoting, 996  
 impurities, five kinds of general, 947  
 incantations, description of, 409-11  
   of five kinds, 896  
   of different kinds; appropriate period for practising, 896  
   effects of evil; means of getting relief from, 843-5  
 incessant rain, words denoting, 989

- incident, as the body of the drama  
two varieties of, 922  
indeclinables, the different meanings  
of the various, 996-1000  
Indication, explanation of; five kinds  
of, 943  
indifference, a political expedient, 587,  
627  
  explanation of, 629  
indigestion, remedy for, 776  
Indra, synonyms of, 987  
  the word Parjanya denotes, 40  
  name of the mansion of, 987  
  words denoting the club of, 987  
  name of the chariot of, 987  
  brought the chariot for Yudhiṣṭhira,  
  38  
  name of the charioteer of, 22 fn  
  Diti's desire to get a vanquisher of,  
  47 fn  
  Indrajit as the conqueror of, 24  
  revived the monkeys, 23  
  conquest of Kṛṣṇa over, 28  
  Arjuna's obstruction of rain caused  
  by, 32  
  Maruts as allies of, 47  
  festivities for, 27  
  day of waking of, 361  
  restored to status by Rāji, 740  
  kingdom restored by Viṣṇu to, 745  
  Viṣṇu worshipped by residents of the  
  world of, 37  
  praised the goddess, 26  
  praise of Śrī made by, 49  
Indra, image of, 137  
  pervades the limbs, 65  
  worship of the image of, 215  
  obeisance made to, 1  
  worshipped, 51, 52, 66  
  offering made to, 274  
  herb denoted by, 406  
  herbs made use of by, denotes the  
  asterism Pūrvāśāḍha, 407  
Indradvipa, one of the territories in  
Bhārata, 350  
Indradyumna, son of Tejas, 323  
Indrajit, a demon; Hanumat searched  
the house of, 19  
  Rāma and Lakṣmaṇa fainted on  
  account of the weapon used by;  
  was killed by Lakṣmaṇa, 22  
  known so on account of the con-  
  quest of Indra, 24  
Indrāṇī, other names of, 987  
  image of; worshipped on the mar-  
  riage day, 435  
  one of the goddesses, 415  
indrāṇī, a herb, 371  
  a herb worn on the body for pro-  
  tection, 378  
Indrapramiti, Ṛgveda imparted to, 429  
Indravajrā, characteristics of the  
metre, 912  
Indravajra, mixed varieties are for-  
med from, 912  
Indravamśā, characteristics of the  
metre, 912  
Indu, one of the female energies, 136  
infantry, functions of; ground sui-  
table for; to protect each foot of  
elephant (men), 632  
infants, recipes for the diseases of,  
820-826  
inference, word for, 991  
inflammation, of the glands of the  
neck; remedy for, 776  
  of anus; remedy to remove pain in,  
  777  
infections, two kinds of—sup and tiṅ,  
957  
  use of the different, 971-73  
Inḡudi, a tree, 13  
initiation, mode of performing, 67-74  
  purificatory, 235-37  
  that secures nirvāṇa, 257-62  
  of principles, 262-3  
injury, ten kinds of, 1041  
inquiry, word denoting, 991  
insanity, five causes for, 826  
  remedy for removal of, 773  
insects, remedy for venom due to all,  
819-20  
installation, of the deity, 87ff  
installation, five kinds of, 266  
  of deities, 116-118  
  of an image; five divisions of, 147-49  
  of images presiding over five ele-  
  ments, 271  
  of a līṅga, 278-83  
  suitable period for, 278-9  
  of the image of Gaurī, 302-3  
  of the image of Śīva, 266-72, 294-  
  302  
  of the image of Sun-god, 303-4  
  of an image of Vāsudeva, 161-64  
instrument, two kinds of—external  
and internal, 970-71  
insult, words denoting, 993  
intellect, words denoting; retentive  
power of; word for, 991  
interest, rules relating to period of, 673  
intoxication, remedy for removal of,  
773  
investiture of, fibres of damanaka, 225-  
26  
investiture of sacred thread, for the  
deity, 87ff  
  time for, 359  
  for all gods, 100-101  
  for Viṣṇu, 98 ff

- invocation, that routs the enemy, 394-5  
 Irā, grass and other things as production of, 46  
 Iśa, propitiation of, 176  
   worshipped, 316  
 iśa, a herb denoted by, 407  
 I śāna, a name denoting Rudra, 50  
   worshipped, 51  
   a form of Śiva worshipped, 51  
   worship of the image of, 116  
 Iśāni, worshipped, 317  
 iṣṭa, explanation of, 539  
 Iśvara, presiding deity of an element, 271  
 Iśvara (Śiva), adored, 1  
 Iśvara, a year of the Hindu Calendar, 404  
 iśvara, a herb denoted by, 406  
 iśvari, name of a herb, 378  
 itch, dry spreading 755; remedy for, 769  
 itihāsa, definition of the term, 992  
 Jagati, a metre, 902, 905  
   white coloured; belongs to Vāsiṣṭha-gotra, 905  
   the number of letters in a quarter of, 903  
   appropriate time for recital of, 916  
   metres belonging to the class of, 912  
 Jagatipaṅkti, composition of, 904  
 Jagatprabhu, form of Viṣṇu at Vimala, 841-2  
 Jaghanacapalā, characteristics of the metre, 906  
 Jāhnavī, (river Ganges) crossed by Rāma, 13  
   image of, 133  
 Jahnu, son of Ajamiḍha and Keśini; son of, 749  
   names of the four sons of, 750  
 Jaigīṣavya, exposition made by, 1074  
 Jaimini, disciple of Vyāsa, 429  
 Jājali, represents a branch of Atharvaveda, 730  
 Jala, an ocean, 324  
 Jālabandha, one of the varieties of Gomūtrikā bandha, 937  
 Jalada, son of Havya, 352  
 Jaladhara, a boundary mountain, 352  
 Jālandhara (region of), 387  
 Jālandhara, mountain, 412, 414  
 Jalaśāyin, form of Viṣṇu at Nandā, 842  
 Jalodhdhatagati, characteristics of the metre, 912  
 Jamadagni, Viṣṇu's manifestation as Bhārgava, son of, 8, 9  
   conquered by Rāma, 11  
 Jāmadagnyaka, image of, 115  
 Jāmbavat, name of a person who accompanied Rāma, 21  
   killed the lion that killed Prasena, 743  
 Jāmbavatī, daughter of Jāmbavān, 743  
   one of the wives of Kṛṣṇa, 744  
   birth of Sāmba to Kṛṣṇa and, 29  
   Yādavas dressed up Sāmba, son of, 36fn  
 Jambha, a demon, 6, 317  
 Jambhaka, a demon; offering made to, 109, 275  
 Jambū, a river, 324  
 jambū, a tree, 324  
 jambū, fruit; dvīpa gaining the name on account of, 324  
 Jambūdvīpa, one of the seven continents, 323  
   given by Priyavrata to Agnidhra, 322  
   location of, 324  
   an appellation on account of jambū fruits, 324  
   extent of, 351  
   division of, 322  
 jāmitra, the seventh sign of the zodiac, 388  
 Janaka, king of Mithilā, 10  
   exposition made by, 1074  
 Jānaki (Sitā), married by Rāma, 11  
   Rāma's search of, 17  
   monkeys sent in directions other than the south could not find, 18  
   words spoken by Hanūmat to, 19  
   Rāma's reaction on seeing the jewel as if he has seen, 20  
   Aṅgada's advice to Rāvaṇa to return, 21  
 Janaloka, distance of, 354  
 Janamejaya, son of Purañjaya; son of, 747  
   son of Puru, son of, 748  
   a descendant of Parikṣit, son of, two other sons of, 750  
 Janārdana, epithet of Viṣṇu, 84  
   form of Viṣṇu at Kubjāma, 841  
   at Gayā, 337  
   a śālagrāma, 125  
 Janas, one of the worlds; worshipped, 79  
 Janasthāna, on the banks of river Godāvāri; Rāma's stay at, 15  
 janma, one of the tārābalas, 359  
 Janmāṣṭami, merits of practising, 506  
 Jantu, son of Puruhūta, son of, 742  
   son of Somaka, son of, 750  
 japā, a flower, benefit of worshipping with, 529  
 Japyeśvara, at Vārāṇasi, 330

- Jarāsandha, son of Sambhava, son of, 750  
 Mathurā was besieged by, 28
- Jārūkhya, one of the sons of Vasudeva, and Devaki; was killed by Karmāsa, 744
- Jarā, one of the progeny of Mṛtyu, 49
- jāta, a posture relating to archery, 646  
 posture advocated, 646
- Jātadevā, a spirit possessing the child in the eighth year, symptoms of a child possessed by, offering to appease, bathing and fumigation for child possessed by, 825
- Jaṭādhara, form of Viṣṇu on Ganges, 841
- jātakarma, rite after the birth of a child, 432  
 done for purification, 481  
 as a Vedic rite, 59  
 oblation made for purification with, 71  
 a rite to be performed, 86
- Jaṭāyu, a vulture wounded by Rāvaṇa, 16  
 told Rāma about Rāvaṇa's abduction of Sitā; death of, 17  
 words spoken by Sampāti, brother of, 18
- Jaṭhara, a boundary mountain, 325, 326
- Jāti, a division of Padya; characteristics of, 919
- jāti, greatness of the herb, 378
- jaundice, remedy for removal of, 767
- javānikā, one of the herbs, 407
- Jaya, a year of the Hindu almanac, 405  
 one of the eight forms of Gaṇapati, 865  
 form of Viṣṇu at Jayanti, 841
- jaya, a pitcher, 270
- Jayā, one of the female divinities, 51, 375  
 one of the wives of Kṛṣṇa, 744
- jayā, a stone, 269  
 a nerve, 316
- Jayacakra, a diagram for finding victory; description of, 389-90
- Jayadeva, a muhūrta; deeds to be done in, 371
- Jayadhvaja, one of the sons of Kārtavīrya; was great among Āvantiyas; son of, 741
- Jayadratha, son of Br̥hātmat; son of, 748
- Jayanta, a male divinity, 107  
 worship of, 273
- form of Viṣṇu at Hastināpura, 841  
 a minister of king Daśaratha, 11
- Jayantī, letter denoting, 417  
 image of, 138  
 name of a place, 841
- Jayantikā, a female divinity, image of, 138
- Jejovati, a female divinity, 424
- Jimūta, son of Vyoma, son of, 742  
 a country, 352  
 a variety of Daṇḍaka; formation of, 915
- Jiraka, a herb, 407
- Jiva, denotes Jupiter, worshipped, 52
- Jñānā, a female divinity, 292  
 —letter denoting, 418
- Jñānamudrā, a posture made with the hands, 73
- Jñānasāgara, one of the Pāñcarātra āgamas, 106
- Jṛmbhana, a missile, 30
- judges, swerving from codes are punishable, fine for swearing double that of a quarrel, 656
- junctions, the five kinds of, importance of, 922
- Jupiter, words denoting, 989  
 image of, 137  
 is contemplated as yellow, 828  
 chariot of, 356  
 distance of Mars and Saturn from, 354  
 letter presided over by, 374  
 characteristic of a person born in the house of, 392  
 period (years) of influence of, 363, 393  
 the part of a day presided over by, 381  
 a period called mahājyāiṣṭi on the basis of location of, 362  
 occupying certain constellations should be avoided for building houses, 360  
 not recommended for marriage when set or retrograde or transiting, 357  
 not commended for Upanayana when set, 359  
 in the tenth house to be avoided, 384  
 in the second and seventh houses indicate happiness, 383  
 gives success, 377
- justice, its four feet, four places and four means; eight parts of; three sources of; two sorts of statements for; two parties of; two kinds of issues for, 653

- administration of, 653-58  
 jvālā, an occult nerve, 316  
 jvālāgardabhaka, a disease, 84, 84fn.  
 jvālīni, one of the praṇita-mudrās, 857  
 Jvara, personified and worshipped, 292
- Jyāmagha, one of the sons of Rukma-kavaca; a hen-pecked husband; names of the wife and son of, 741
- Jyeṣṭha, month of, 360, 362, 386
- Jyeṣṭhā, a female divinity, 51, 201, 292, 374, 412, 413  
 an asterism, 358, 360, 361, 362, 363, 381, 382, 385, 388, 400
- jyeṣṭhasāman, a hymn; a pañktipāvana should know, 349
- Jyoti, one of the four kinds of rosary beads; the four divisions of, 894  
 characteristics of the metre, 907
- jyotirasa, a gem (?), 641
- Jyotiṣa, science of, 356-63  
 four lightnings according to, 45fn
- Jyotiṣmat, ruled Kuśa, 322  
 names of the sons of, 352
- Jyotiṣmati (Jagati), a metre; composition of, 904
- Jyotiṣtoma, a sacrifice, 64fn
- Jyotsnā, a female divinity, 292
- Kabandha, a demon killed by Rāma, 17
- Kaca, Śukra's curse on, 25fn
- Kaccha, a region; installation should not be done by men from, 106
- kacchapa, one of the treasures, 111
- Kadamba, a tree, 324  
 a flower, 529
- Kadrū, progeny of, 46
- Kaikasi, wife of Viśravas; progeny of, 24, 24fn
- Kaikeya, one of the four sons of Śibi, 747
- Kaikeyī, birth of Bharata to, 10  
 was informed about the coronation of Rāma by, 11, 12  
 Daśaratha's words to, 13  
 reproached by Bharata, 14  
 was paid respects by Rāma, 23
- Kailāsa, mountain, 325
- kailāsa, a class of temple; circular shaped, 314  
 the temples belonging to the class of, 315
- Kāka, beads belonging to Jyoti class, 894
- kākapāda, an array; consists of four units of army, 634
- Kākaśilā, at Gayā, 341
- Kāki, a daughter of Tāmra, 46
- Kākinī, a female divinity, 415
- Kākoli, a evil spirit which possesses a newly born child on the fourth night, symptoms of the child possessed by; offering to appease; unguent for the child possessed by, 821
- Kakub, a variety of Uṣṇik; the number of letters in each pāda of, 903
- Kakudmat, a boundary mountain, 352
- Kakudmati, composition of the metre, 904
- Kakudmin, an alias of Raivata, 736
- Kakutstha, born in the line of Ikṣvāku, 9  
 from Vikukṣu, 736
- Kalā, a female divinity, 52
- kalā, a measure, 134
- Kālā, death; Droṇa compared with, 35  
 a guardian deity, 284  
 son of Dhruva, 44  
 son of Dirghabāhu, 737
- Kālā, a monstess seizing the child in the ninth year; symptoms of child seized by; offering to appease, 825
- kalādhyā, one of the kinds of mantras of Śiva, 873  
 description of, 875
- Kalahānsī, a spirit possessing the child in the tenth year; symptoms of the child possessed by; offering to appease; fumigation when the child is affected by, 825
- Kālaka, presiding deity of place of worship of planets, 467
- Kālākā, one of the daughters of Vaiśvānara, 46
- Kālākāntī, a female divinity, 202
- Kālakarṇī, a female divinity; image of, 138
- Kālānābha, one of the sons of Hiranyākṣa, 46fn
- Kālānala, a divinity; worshipped, 414  
 son of Sabhānara; son of, 747
- Kālāñjara, mountain; sacredness of, 328, 349
- Kalāpa, division of poetry called, 919  
 nature of; employs Kaiśiki vṛtti, 920
- Kālārātri, night of destruction, 13fn  
 personified as a divinity; offering made to, 395  
 a hell, 1038
- Kalaśa, a type of temple, 315
- Kālasamjñaka, a Rudra, 255
- Kālasūtra, sub-division of a hell, 532, 1039
- Kalavikariṇī, a female divinity, 51
- Kālavikariṇī, a goddess, 201
- Kālayavana, a demon, 28, 28fn
- Kālayukti, a year of the Hindu calendar, 405

- Kāleśa, a liṅga, 343  
 Kālī, repetition of the name of the goddess, 411  
 worshipped, 51, 201  
 name of Satyavati, wife of Śantanu, 751  
 Kālikā, a river; greatness of confluence of, 328  
 Kālīndī, one of the wives of Kṛṣṇa, 744  
 Kālīṅga, country of; asterisms indicating destruction of, 387  
 installation rite should not be done by one born in, 106  
 one of the sons of Bali, 747  
 Kāliya, a serpent subdued by Kṛṣṇa, 27  
 Kaliyuga, Śiva as presiding over all the regions of, 337  
 conduct of the people at the end of, 38  
 Kalki, Viṣṇu's manifestation as, 38, 39  
 figure of, 130  
 Kalmāśapāda, son of Rṭuparṇa; son of, 737  
 Kalpa, science of, 2  
 Kalpa(s), significance of the term, 1018  
 manifestations of Viṣṇu, innumerable in the different, 39, 39fn  
 reference to Bāṇa's propitiation of the goddess in the previous, 46  
 dissolution at the end of, 3  
 Kalpalatā, a great gift, 544  
 Kalpavṛkṣa, a great gift, 544  
 Kalpavṛkṣavrata, mode of practising the vow of, 522  
 Kalyāṇa, a form of Rudra, 253  
 Kāma (god of love), synonyms of, 986  
 Kāma, Pradyumna identified with, reborn as Pradyumna, 29, 29fn  
 one of the siddhas, 414  
 kāma, one of the puruṣārthas protected by Rāma, 23  
 mantra which bestows, 33  
 Kāmadhenu, divine cow in the possession of Jamadgni, 9  
 water on earth identified with, 337  
 Kāmadhenu, golden, a great gift, 544  
 Kamalā, a female divinity; worshipped, 413, 414  
 Kāmāṅgadrāviṇī, Kubjikā addressed as, 413  
 Kāmarūpa, augury foreboding destruction of, 387  
 installation should not be done by those born in, 106  
 a mountain; worshipped, 412, 414  
 kāmratrayodaśī, see anaṅgatrayodaśī  
 Kambalabarhiṣ, one of the sons of Babhru, 742  
 son of Devārha; son of, 743  
 Kambalabarhiṣ, son of Marutta; son of, 741  
 Kaṁsa, the eldest among the sons of Ugrasena, 742  
 the destruction of the children of Devaki by, 26, 26fn  
 reference to killing of Pralamba, an asura friend of, 30fn  
 attempts made to kill Kṛṣṇa by, 27  
 Śambara as a companion of, 29fn  
 was killed by Kṛṣṇa, 28  
 Kanaka, son of Durgama; sons of, 740  
 Kanakā, a female divinity; worshipped, 230  
 Kanakeśa, at Gayā, 339  
 Kanakhala, a sacred place; glory of, 327  
 location of, 336  
 kāñcanāra, flower not to be used in worship, 529  
 Kāñci, installation should not be done by those born in, 106  
 kāñciyamaka, one of the Yamakas, 935  
 Kandarpa, god of love; worshipped, 109  
 Kandarpanātha, a male divinity; worshipped, 415  
 Kaṇḍu, a sage, 43  
 Kaṅka, Yudhiṣṭhira disguised as, 33  
 a boundary mountain, 352  
 kaṅkola, given as an offering, 94  
 Kaṅku, one of the sons of Ugrasena, 742  
 kāntā, a herb, 372  
 a nerve, 316  
 kaṅṭakāri, herb, 407  
 Kānti, a form of Hari, 91  
 an embellishment of sound and sense; explanation of, 942  
 Kāntotpiḍā, characteristics of the metre, 913  
 Kaṅva, son of Pratiratha; son of, 748  
 Kāṅvas, a branch of Yajurvedins, 429  
 Kaṅvāśrama, glory of, 327  
 Kāṅvi, a branch of Yajurveda, 730  
 Kanyā, a constellation, 367  
 (See also Virgo)  
 kanyādāna, one of the four acts relating to a marriage, 434  
 kanyasa, a variety of prāṇāyāma, 1044  
 Kapālamocana, a sacred place, 328  
 Kapālin one of the eleven (Rudras), 45  
 Kapālini, a female divinity; worshipped; letter denoting, 417  
 Kaparda, matted hair of Śiva, 987  
 Kapardin, benefit of worshipping, 343

- Kapardin, one of the eleven forms of (Rudra), 45
- Kapila, form of Viṣṇu on the banks of the eastern ocean, 341  
 enunciation made by, 1073  
 a class of men in the Śālmaladvipa, 352  
 one of the sons of Jyotiṣmat, 352  
 one of the three sons of Dhundhumāra, 736  
 two sons of, 749
- Kapilā, a female energy, 136, 424  
 at Gayā, 341  
 a class of cow; mode of worshipping, 212-14
- kapilā, one of the lightnings, 45fn
- Kāpila, a Pāñcarātra āgama, 106
- Kapota, beads belonging to the Śiva class, 894
- Kapotaromā, son of Dhṛti; son of, 742
- kara, a measure, 107
- kāraka, explanation of the term, 970
- Kāraḥbrahṁśa, an impurity, 947
- karāla, a hell, 532
- Karālī, a goddess; worshipped, 375, 413, 416, 424
- karālī, a mudrā, 857
- Karālikā, a hell, 1038
- Karālin, a guardian deity, 284
- Karambhaka, son of Śakuntī, son of, 742
- Karaṇa, a measure of time; correction for, 369, 369fn
- Karandhama, son of Traisāni; son of, 747
- Karaṅkiṇī, image of, 138
- Karatoyā, a river, 328
- karavira, a flower, 529
- Karaviraka, one of the sons of Kanaka, 740
- Kardama, Prajāpati, father of Śaṅkhapād, 47  
 two daughters of, 41, 41fn  
 Kramapādika given in Agnipurāṇa instead of, 49fn
- Kardamālā, at Gayā, 342
- Karka, a serpent; image of, 137
- Karkari, a water jar, 68
- Karkaśṅgi, an array; consists of three units of army, 634
- Karkaṭaka, a constellation 367, 368 (See also Cancer)
- karkaṭi, a herb, 406  
 a flower; not to be used for Śiva, 529
- karketana, a gem, 641
- Karkoṭaka, one of the eight chief serpents, 415  
 the number of heads of, 807
- Karmadhāraya (compound), seven kinds of; examples of, 974-75
- Karṇa, born of Kuntī; became a dependent of Duryodhana, 32  
 aided Duryodhana in his dice play, 33  
 killed the warriors of Pāṇḍavas and was killed by Arjuna, 35  
 son of Viśvajit; son of, 748  
 a type of drama, 921
- Karṇāditya, at Gayā; worshipped, 339
- Karṇamoṭani, goddess; incantation of, 375
- Karṇāṭi, characteristics of, 934
- karṇavedha, time for, 359
- karṇikāra, a flower, 529
- karṣa, a measure, 408
- kārṣika, a weight, 209
- Kārtaviryārjuna, son of Kṛtavīrya  
 greatness of, 740, 741  
 had thousand arms and was valorous, 8  
 the names of five foremost among hundred sons of, 741  
 Jamadagni killed by the sons of, 9
- Kārttika, benefit of purchasing grains in the month of, 386
- Kārttikavrata, for Viṣṇu; mode of practising, 522-3
- Kārttikeya, name of Kumāra, as he was son of Kṛttikā, 44  
 benefit of offering homa to, 339  
 benefit of worshipping, 343
- Karūṣa, one of the eight sons of Vaivasvata Manu, 735
- Kārūṣas, were born from Karūṣa; were of warrior caste, 736
- kāśa, a flower, 529
- Kaseru, one of the nine territories, 350  
 an advice to stay at, 330  
 Pauṇḍraka as the ruler of, 28fn
- Kāśī, a sacred place, 491, 841
- Kāśirāja, Sutanu as daughter of, 28fn
- Ambikā and Ambālikā as daughters of, 31
- kaśmala, a hell, 532
- Kāśmīra, name of a region, 387, 841  
 installation not to be done by those born in, 106
- Kaṣṭatva, a defect of a word, 947
- Kaśyapa, a sage, son of Marici, 9, 735  
 married thirteen daughters of Dakṣa, 44  
 father of Sun, 735  
 progeny of (through Diti), 7fn, 45  
 Rudras as sons of Surabhi and, 44fn  
 Danu's propitiation of for offspring, 47
- Garuḍa born to Vinatā and, 63fn
- Pulomā and Kālakā as wives of, 46
- earth given by Paraśurāma to, 9

- goddess earth addressed as related to, 112
- Viṣṇu's manifestation as a dwarf as a son of Aditi and, 745
- manifested as Vasudeva, 744
- his view relating to a metre, 913
- Kathā, a division of the prose kāvya; characteristics of, 919
- Kathānikā, a division of the prose kāvya; definition of, 919
- Kaṭhī, a branch of Yajurveda, 730
- Kathodghāta, a division of Āmukha; explanation of, 922
- Katimukha, one of the sons of Viśvāmitra, 749
- Kaṭiśa, letter denoting, 418
- kaṭukandā, a herb, 372
- Kātyāyana, sage, 345
- śrāddha rite as narrated by a law-giver, 455
- kaulava, a karaṇa, 362, 369fn
- Kauleśa, a male divinity, 413
- Kauli, prayer made to goddess, 413
- Kauliśānātha, a male divinity, 413
- Kaumāra, the ninth creation known as, 48
- Kaumāri, a mother goddess, 139fn, 411, 415
- prayed, 379, 399
- image of, 133
- Kaumodakī, a mace, 128
- kaumudavrata, mode of practising and merits of, 524, 537
- to be practised in the bright fortnight of āśvayujī, 537
- Kauntali, characteristics of, 934
- Kaunti, characteristics of, 934
- Kauravas, origin of, 31
- Kauśalyā, Rāma's birth from Daśaratha and, 10
- was informed by Rāma about the coronation, 11
- bowed to by Rāma before leaving for the forest, 13
- Daśaratha's narration of the past course on him to, 14
- was saluted by Rāma after returning from the forest, 23
- one of the wives of Kṛṣṇa, 744
- Kauśika, one of the sons of Vidarbha; son of, 741
- one of the two sons of Kapila, 749
- Kauśiki, one of the modes, 928
- Kaustubha, gem, 6, 51, 55, 63, 99
- Kauthuma, a branch of Sāmaveda, 730
- Kautsa, sage for the hymn *citram devānām*, 563
- Kāveri, a river; greatness of, 328
- installation should not be done by those born in the region near, 106
- river, confluence with Narmadā, 331
- Kavi, one of the sons of Manu and Nāḍvalā, 42
- Kāvya, a type of drama, 921
- kāvya, definition of; three kinds of; definition of prose; three divisions of, 918
- five divisions of prose, 919
- Kedāra, one of the holy places, 330
- a līnga; benefit of worshipping, 343
- Keralas, origin of, 747
- Kesarācala, group of mountains, 325, 325fn
- have abodes of gods, 326
- Keśari, a monkey that accompanied Rāma to Laṅkā, 21
- a boundary mountain, 352
- Keśava, a name of Viṣṇu, 65
- characteristics of the form of, 127
- killed the demon Hayagrīva, 4
- form of Viṣṇu at Mathurā, 841
- Keśī, a demon in the form of a horse; killed by Kṛṣṇa, 27
- Keśini, wife of Ajamidha, 749
- Ketaki, a flower, 529
- not to be used for worshipping Śiva, 530
- Ketu, form of, 137
- the form that is to be contemplated, 828
- chariot of, 356
- worshipped, 52
- Ketumāla, a mountain, 325
- a country, 325
- Viṣṇu as Varāha in, 326
- Western countries given by Agnidhra to, 322
- Ketumān, son of Dhanvantari; son of, 749
- Ketumat, son of Rajas; was made the protector of waters, 48
- Khaḍga, a male divinity; worshipped, 414
- khadga, a posture, 857
- Khaḍgadeva, one of the siddhas, 414
- Khaḍgeśa, letter denoting, 419
- khadira, a tree, 407
- khalikāra, a posture of the horse, 787
- khamalaṅkṛta, one of the kinds of mantras of Śiva, 873
- description of, 875
- Khaṇḍakathā, a division of prose kāvya; contained in the Kathā in the catuspadī, 919
- Khaṇḍava a forest, 32
- Khaṇḍikya, a king of Mithilā, 1060

- Khañja, characteristics of the metre, 911
- Khara, demon brother of Śūrpaṅakhā; ruled Janasthāna, 15, 15fn  
a year of the Hindu calendar, 405
- Khasā, Yakṣas and demons born from, 47
- khāṭaka, an array formed by modification of daṇḍa, 634
- Khaṭi, a place worthy to be seen, 640
- Khaṭṭara, a place worthy to be seen, 640
- khavṛkṣa, a type of temple, 315
- Khecarā, a goddess, 424
- Khecari, a goddess, 424
- Khīnkhiṇi, a female divinity to be worshipped, 412
- Khyāti, one of the sons of Ūru and Āgneyū, 42  
a daughter of Dakṣa; married Bhṛgu, 48  
progeny of, 49
- Kicaka, brother-in-law of Virāṭa; was killed by Bhimasena, 33, 33fn
- kilakiñcita, a kind of gesture, 929
- killer, definition of, 485
- killing, definition of, 485  
words denoting, 1017
- Kimpuruṣa, Hemakūṭa was given by Agnidhra to, 322  
characteristics of the region called, 323  
country; no misery in, 326  
a mountain, 324
- kiṁśuka a flower, 529
- Kindama, a sage; cursed Pāṇḍu, 32fn
- king, words denoting, 994  
mode of performing the coronation of, 566-68  
should be endowed with modesty, 617  
the qualities of, 619  
the seven qualities of, 683  
code of righteous conduct for, 588  
vices of, 627  
vices which should be avoided by a, 626  
aggregate of six things to be given up by, 617  
compared to the sun, moon etc., 588  
strategies to be employed by, 606-7  
the six expedients used by, 607-8  
general duties of, 579-81, 584-6  
duties of, 619, 621-22  
daily duties of, 608-9  
duties in the harem, 581-82  
should protect himself and the kingdom, 622  
should protect the people, 674  
means of protecting, 577  
guidelines for employing men of good conduct and ability by, 573-5 to make treaties with whom, 623  
twelve circles of friends and enemies relating to, 603, 622  
details relating to payment of share of gains to, 674  
the four obligatory acts of; relating to wealth, 617  
should worship those who carry banners and weapons, 639  
when should a battle be begun by, 623-624  
the sixteen kinds of war to be avoided by a, 623  
rites preceding the march of, 609-12  
kingdom, the seven constituents of, 605, 618  
sovereignty as the most important means for, 619  
kings, rites to be performed in a year by, 722-25  
kinnaras, synonyms of, 988  
image of, 137  
Kintughna, a karaṇa, 363, 369  
Kirti, a female energy; worshipped, 90  
wife of Jayanta, 739  
Kirtimān, one of the sons of Vasudeva and Devaki; killed by Kaiśa, 744  
Kīṣkindhā, Sugriva made ruler of, 17, 18  
a place; form of Viṣṇu to be worshipped at, 841  
kitchen, words related to, 1021  
knots, on the sacred thread, names of; number of, 216  
knowledge, word for, 991  
relating to science; word for, 991  
relating to unreality of world; words for, 991  
doubtful; words referring to, 991  
false; words denoting, 991  
conclusive; words for, 991  
two kinds of—parā and aparā, 2  
the foremost, 455  
relating to Brahman; the greatness of, 1059  
the different virtues considered as, 1070  
state of persons who had gained, 1074  
as means for realizing the identity of soul and Brahman, 1076  
merits of gaining, 1077  
Kodraka, a boundary mountain, 352  
Kolāhala, a demon; was subdued by Viṣṇu in his eleventh manifestation, 745, 746  
Kolāhalā, a hell, 1038  
Kolas, origin of, 747

- Kolbagiri, a sacred place, 328
- Komalatva (softness), an excellence of sense, 945
- Koṅkaṇa, installation not to be done by people born in, 106
- augury indicating the destruction of, 387
- Kośa, contains elegant verses of great poets, 920-21
- two divisions of, 921
- Kosala, installation should not be done by people born in, 106
- augury indicating the destruction of, 387
- Koṭacakra, mode of drawing etc. 385-6
- koṭihoma, mantras and materials for; mode of performing; merits of performing, 426
- Koṭīśa, at Koṭīrītha; worshipped, 341
- worshipped, 414
- Koṭīrītha, a sacred spot, 327, 330
- Koṭīrītha, at Gayā, 341
- offering to be made at, 344
- Krakaca, a hell, 532
- Krama, a form of Rudra, 252
- Kramapādika, son of Pulaha and Kramā, 49
- Krānti, a female divinity, 91
- Kratha, one of the sons of Vidarbha; son of, 741
- Krathana, a monkey that accompanied Rāma to Laṅkā, 21
- Kratu, a sage; a mind-born son of Brahmā, 41, 42fn
- Bālakhilyas were born from, 49
- one of the sons of Ūru and Āgneyi, 42
- Krauñca, a continent, 323
- given to Dyutimān by Priyavrata, 322
- rulers of; ocean around, 352
- a mountain, 352
- Krauñcapadā, characteristics of the metre, 914
- Krauñcapāda, at Gayā, 342
- Krauṣṭuki, an authority in prosody, 903
- kr̥cchra, an expiation; explanation of, 482
- an atonement for eating food from certain people, 471
- for officiating as priest for degraded person, 479
- for mendicants, 431
- period of observance for kings and others, 486
- to be observed at the six-monthly rite, 488
- to be observed for having committed sins, 489
- as a means of testing one's strength, 533
- kr̥cchra cāndrāyaṇa, an expiation, 477
- kr̥cchra sātāpana, an expiation, 477
- kr̥cchrātik̥cchra, an expiation, 479
- explanation of, 482, 799
- Kriyā, a female divinity, 292, 424
- Kriyābhramśa, an impurity, 947
- Kriyāśakti, letter denoting, 418
- kr̥kara, a life-force carried by the vein alambuṣā, 556
- functions of, 557
- Kṛmi, one of the four sons of Bhajamāna, 742
- wife of Uśinara, 747
- son of Kṛmi and Uśinara, 747
- Kṛmila, one of the five kings born from Bāhyāśva, 749
- Krodha, born from Mr̥tyu, 49
- Krodhā, animals were born from, 46
- Krodhana, a year of the Hindu Calendar, 405
- Krodhanā, image of, 138
- Krodhīśa, letter signifying, 419
- Kroṣṭu, one of the sons of Yadu, 740
- the race of; in whose race Lord Hari himself was born, 741
- son of, 741
- Kṛpa, one of those who survived in the (Bhārata) battle, 36
- one of the pairs born from Satyadhṛk, 750
- Kṛpaṇā, image of, 138
- Kṛpi, one of the pairs born from Satyadhṛk, 750
- Kṛśāśva, the celestial weapons as the progeny of, 45
- Kṛṣeyu, one of the ten sons of Bhadrāśva, 748
- Kṛṣṇa, manifestation of Viṣṇu as, 25-31
- appeared for the destruction of demons, 745
- born to Vasudeva and Devaki to remove oppression on the earth, 26, 744
- entrusted to Nanda by Vasudeva, 27
- reference to Pralamba approaching, 30fn
- came to Gomantaka from Mathurā, 28
- destruction of Kālayavana by, 28fn
- story relating to Aṣṭāvakra's blessings on the nymphs to become wives of, 37fn
- some names among the sixteen thousand wives of, 744
- married Satyabhāmā, 743
- the genealogy of, 25, 29, 744

- killed Śatadhanu and recovered the gem and entrusted to Akrūra, 743  
 recovered the syamantaka gem from Jāmbavān and married Jāmbavati, son of, 743, 744  
 exonerated of, 743  
 story relating to Aniruddha, grandson of, 30  
 story of Bhārata, describing the greatness of, 31  
 became the charioteer of Arjuna, 32  
 birth of a son to Subhadrā, sister of, 33  
 encouraged Arjuna to fight, 34  
 survived the Mahābhārata war, 36  
 in whose absence the chariot etc. of the Pāṇḍavas were lost, 37  
 the mark on the chest of, 51  
 letters denoting, 63  
 name of the conch of, 63 fn  
 form of Viṣṇu, 841  
 name to be repeated at Dvārakā, one of those assigned on the body in worship, 414
- Kṛṣṇa, one of the six sons of Dhīṣaṇā, 43  
 Kṛṣṇa, one of the sons of Kārtavīrya, 741  
 Kṛṣṇa, a class of men in the Śālmala Dvīpa, 352  
 Kṛṣṇā, one of the female divinities invoked, 230  
 Kṛṣṇā, a flower, 529  
 Kṛṣṇa Dvaipāyana, begetting sons through the wife of Vicitravīryaka, 751  
 Kṛṣṇāṣṭami, mode of practising the vow of, 507-8  
 Kṛṣṇavenī, a river; flows from Sahya, 351  
 Kṛta, an attendant of Śiva, 201  
 Kṛtāgni, one of the sons of Kanaka, 740  
 Kṛtamālā, river; flows from Malaya, 351  
 story relating to Manu's libation at, 3  
 kṛtamāla, a herb, 407  
 kṛtāñjali, a herb, 406  
 Kṛtānta, god of death; worshipped, 316  
 Kṛtaujas, one of the sons of Kanaka, 740  
 Kṛtavarmā, one of the ten sons of Hṛdika, 743  
 Kṛtavarman, one of those who survived after the Bhārata war, 36  
 Kṛtavīrya, one of the sons of Kanaka; son of, 740  
 Kṛtavrata, a disciple of Lomahaṅga, 730
- Kṛtayuga, repeats in a cyclic order, 39  
 worshipped, 50  
 creation of Manu relating to, 323  
 Kṛteyu, one of the ten sons of Bhadrāśva, 748  
 Kṛti, son of Lomapāda, 741  
 name of a metre, 905  
 classical metres based on, 914  
 kṛts, the primary affixes added to verbs, 985-6  
 Kṛttikā, asterism; belongs to the sphere of fire, 387  
 an asterism; mother of Kārttikeya, 44  
 commended for first feeding of the child, 358  
 commendable for sowing seed, 361  
 occurring on a Saturday as auspicious, 377  
 not to wear new clothes on, 359  
 misery caused by Sun's presence in, 363  
 categorised as evil, 381  
 located in the east in kṛtacakra, 385  
 located in the third column in the diagram to find period for journey, 400  
 Kṛttivāsas, image of, 138-9  
 Krūra, letter denoting, 419  
 Kṣamā, wife of Pulaha; progeny of, 49  
 image of, 135  
 Kṣami, an energy, 292  
 kṣapaṇaka (mantra), description of, 875  
 Kṣāra, an ocean, 351  
 kṣāra, a medicine, 407  
 kṣatriya, synonyms of, 1018  
 kṣaya, one of the kinds of mantras of Śiva, 873  
 Kṣayā, image of, 138  
 Kṣema, one of the sons of Medhātithi, 351  
 kṣema, one of the tārābalas, 359  
 Kṣemā, image of, 138  
 Kṣemaka, son of Anarka; son of, 749  
 Kṣemakāri, a goddess, 424  
 Kṣemaṅkari, image of, 135  
 Kṣemyā, a name of Durgā, 26  
 kṣetra, things denoted by the term, 1070  
 kṣetrajña, meaning of the term, 1070  
 Kṣetraka, son of Svāhya, 743  
 Kṣīrābdhi, ocean around Śākadvīpa, 352  
 kṣīri, a herb, 371  
 kṣiroda, an ocean, 351  
 Kṣobhaṇi, a goddess, 424  
 Kṣudra, a Rudra, 254  
 Kubera, lord of wealth; son of Viśravas, 24

- synonyms of, 988  
 was made king of kings, 47  
 image of, 137  
 propitiation of, 176  
 worshipped, 51  
 kubjaka, a flower, 529  
 Kubjāma, a sacred place, 327  
   greatness of Hṛṣikeśa to be con-  
   templated at, 841  
 Kubjikā, goddess; 411 ff  
   mode of worship of, preliminaries  
   for worship of, 412  
   mode of worship of, 413  
   mode of contemplation of, 416  
   worship of the sandals of, 415  
   a charm in a cloth may have the  
   outlines of, 402  
 Kuḍamala, sub-division of a hell, 1039  
 Kuhū, a son of Angiras and Smṛti, 49  
   wife of Haviṣmān, 739  
 kuhū, denotes the moon a digit less  
   on the new moon day, 990  
   an occult nerve, 257  
 Kuhura, one of the sons of Babhru;  
   son of, 742  
 Kuksi, a daughter of Kardama and  
   Devahūti, 41  
 kuksi, a modification of the array  
   daṇḍa, 633  
 Kulaka, division of poetry called, 919  
   has many couplets, 920  
 Kulaṭā, a female divinity; mode of  
   worship of, 412  
 Kulavāgīśi, goddess Kubjikā addressed  
   as, 413  
 Kuleśvari, female divinity; contem-  
   plated, 404  
 Kulika, one of the eight chief ser-  
   pents; the number of heads of, 807  
   presides over the junctions of  
   periods; duration of the rule of,  
   808  
   assigned on the ears in the worship  
   of Kubjikā, 415  
 Kumāra, denotes Skanda born of Agni  
   in a clump of reeds, 44  
 Kumāra, son of Havya, 352  
 Kumāra, river; rises from Śuktimat, 351  
 Kumārakoṭi, a sacred place; great-  
   ness of, 327  
 Kumāralalitā, characteristics of the  
   metre, 911  
 kumāri, a herb, 406  
 Kumbha, a demon; Hanūmat searched  
   for Sitā in the house of, 19  
   killed by Rāma, 22  
 Kumbha, a constellation; correction  
   for, 367  
   victory or death indicated by, 377  
 Kumbha, name of a pitcher, 270  
 Kumbha, a posture made with the  
   hands, 187, 899  
 Kumbhaka, a variety of prāṇāyāma;  
   reason for its name as, 557  
 Kumbhakarṇa, a demon; Hanūmat  
   searched for Sitā in the house of, 19  
   was always sleeping, 24  
   battle of; killed by Rāma, 22  
 Kumbhakarṇi, a spirit afflicting the  
   child in the ninth month; symptoms  
   of child affected by; offering to  
   appease, 823  
 Kumbhāṇḍa, a minister of Bāṇa, 30  
 Kumuda, worshipped, 51  
 Kumuda, a divinity assigned on the  
   body, 414  
 Kumuda, a deity presiding over the  
   banner, 148  
   worshipped, 284  
 Kumuda, a gate-keeper; adored, 93  
 Kumuda, a boundary mountain, 352  
 kumuda, one of the treasures, 111  
 Kumudākṣa, a deity presiding over  
   the banner, 148  
   worshipped, 284  
 Kuṇḍalakṣmi, goddess Lakṣmi at the  
   middle of sacrificial pit, 95  
 kuṇḍalini, nature and location of, 558  
 Kuṇḍi, a goddess, 133  
 Kuni, a son of Manu and Naḍvalā,  
   42 fn  
 Kunti, son of Kratha, 741  
   son of, 742  
 Kunti, wife of Pāṇḍu, 744  
   sons of, 751  
   birth of Yudhiṣṭhira, Karṇa and  
   others to, 32  
   went to the forest after the Bhārata  
   war, 36  
 Kuraṅgeśa, one of the siddhas; wor-  
   shipped, 415  
 kūrcha, used for worship, 94  
 Kūrma, form of Viṣṇu, 326  
   saluted, 50  
   śālagrāma representing, 125  
 kūrma, a life-force carried by the  
   vein Yaśā, 556  
   functions of, 557  
   a posture, 55  
 Kūrmacakra, to find the victory etc.,  
   description of, 370  
 Kūrmaka, letter denoting, 419  
 Kūmapurāṇa, narrated in connection  
   with the story of Indradyumna;  
   narrated by tortoise form of lord  
   Viṣṇu; extent of; should be given  
   as a gift, 734  
 Kuru, name of a king, 322  
   born in the family of Aila Purūravas,  
   31

- son of Saṁvarāṇa; migrated from Prayāga and founded kingdom of Kurukṣetra; the four sons of, 750
- Kuru, a country on the western part, 322, 351
- Kuru, Uttara, a mountain, location of, 324
- Kuru, Uttara, a country; river Bhadrā passes through, 325
- Kurukṣetra, one of the sacred places, 491  
five pits made by Paraśurāma at, 9  
armies of Pāṇḍavas and Kauravas met at, 34  
greatness of, 350  
greatness of even the dust particles of, 327  
liberation conferred by stay at, 335  
certain men and species of beings born as brahmins at, 349  
auspiciousness of image of Brahmā at the centre of, 106  
Vāmana form of Viṣṇu worshipped at, 841
- Kurus (Kauravas), enmity between Pāṇḍavas and, 32
- Kurus, recognised the Pāṇḍavas in the Virāṭa, 33  
description of the battle between Pāṇḍavas and, 34
- Kurus, a class of men in Plakṣadvīpa, 351
- Kurus, country; location of, 325  
Viṣṇu as Matsya in, 326
- Kuruvinda, nature of rubies got from, 641
- Kuśa, born to Sitā in the hermitage of Vālmiki, 24  
born in the family (of Raghus) as son of Rāma; son of, 738
- Kuśa, one of the seven sons of Suhotra and Girikā, 750
- Kuśa, a continent, 323  
given by Priyavratā to Jyotiṣmān, 323  
rulers of, 352
- kuśa (grass), Vena was killed by the sages, with, 42, 42fn  
the name Prācinabarhis associated with, 43  
used in worship, 58, 67, 68, 94, 95
- Kuśa, a flower, 529
- Kuśāgra, born from Bṛhadratha; son of, 750
- Kuśāla, country ruled by a son of Dyutimat, 352
- Kuśāla, one of the siddhas, 414
- Kuśasthali, as the domain of Ānarta; kingdom of; got by Raivata, 736
- Kuśeśaya, a boundary mountain, 352
- Kuśika, son of Balākāśva; son of, 749
- Kuśottara, son of Havya, 352
- Kūṣmāṇḍa, an attendant of Śiva; image of, 135  
worship of, 310
- kūṣmāṇḍa, a flower, 529  
not to be used in worship, 530
- kuṣṭha, a herb, 372
- Kusumamālā, letter denoting, 418
- Kusumavicitrā, characteristics of the metre, 912
- Kusumitalatāvellitā, characteristics of the metre, 914
- kuṭaja, a flower; not to be used in worship, 529  
not to be used for Śiva, 529
- Kuṭika, beads belonging to the Savitra class, 894
- Kuṭila, beads belonging to Śikhā class, 894
- Kuṭṭala, a hell, 531
- Kuvalāśva, son of Bṛhadāśva; got the name Dhundhumāra, 736
- Kuvalayāpiḍa, a demon, 27
- lagna, denotes the rise of a constellation, 989
- laguḍa, uses of, 652
- lajjālūkā, a herb, 406
- lakṣahoma, mode of performing, 425-6
- Lakṣmaṇa, born to Sumitrā, 10  
married Urmilā, 11  
accompanied Rāma to the forest, 13  
cut the nose of Śūrpaṅakhā, 15  
Sitā's words to; Rāma's words to, 16  
comforted Rāma, 17  
Hanūmat recounting to Sitā the story of Rāma and, 19  
killed Indrajit, 22  
reference to killing of the demons by, 24
- Lakṣmaṇā, one of the wives of Kṛṣṇa, 744
- Lakṣmī, consort of Nārāyaṇa (Viṣṇu), 49, 738  
synonyms of, 986  
origin and greatness of, 6  
characteristics of the image of, 131, 133  
characteristics of certain forms of Viṣṇu in the company of, 131  
installation of image of, 169-70  
worshipped, 51, 52, 197  
mode of worship of, 19, 849-51
- lakṣmī, a nerve, 316
- Lakṣmīnārāyaṇa, a śālagrāma, 125
- Laktā, image of, 138
- Lalanā, a spirit seizing the child in

- the fifth month; symptoms of the child seized by; offering to appease, 823
- Lālasā, image of, 138
- Lalita, characteristics of the metre, 909
- lalita, a kind of gesture, 929
- Lalitā, another name of Gauri, 133
- characteristics of the image of, 139
- Lalitā, daughter of king of Vidarbha, 526
- Lālitya, an excellence of word 944  
(See also smoothness)
- Lambā, wife of Dharma; progeny of, 44
- Lambaka, a division of prose kāvyas, 919
- Lambakuṣi, a name of Gaṇeśa, 190
- Lambana, a son of Jyotiṣmat, 352
- Lambodara, one of the eight forms of Gaṇapati, 865
- Lambodari, letter denoting, 417
- Lāngali, letter denoting, 419
- language, explanation of abusive, 655
- Laṅkā, Śūrpanakhā's arrival at; Sitā carried by Rāvaṇa to 16
- Sampātī's words about Sitā's presence at, 19
- Hanūmān's search for Sitā at, 19
- burning of city of, 20
- Vibhiṣaṇa anointed as ruler of, 21
- entrusted by Rāma to Vibhiṣaṇa, 23
- goddess addressed as builder of bridge to, 379
- lapis lazuli, a gem, 640
- qualities of excellent variety of, 641
- Lāṭas, the names of towns given to, 315
- Lāṭiyā, a variety of diction; characteristics of, 927
- Lauhitya, a sacred place, 328
- Lava, born in the family (of Raghus) as son of Rāma, 738
- born to Sitā in the hermitage of Vālmiki, 24
- Lavali, characteristics of the metre, 909
- Lavaṇa, an ocean, 324
- Lavaṇa, a demon killed by Śatrughna, 24
- law codes, stronger than sciences of wealth, 657
- procedure if there is conflict between two, 657
- laws, code of, 455-7
- laws, code of criminal, 588-93
- law-suit, rests on the witnesses, 654
- as protecting the four institutions of life, 654
- as encompassing four persons, 654
- the four items accomplished by means of, 654
- eight accessories of, 654
- the three causes for, 654
- two other causes of; the six things associated with each one of the two, 654
- the three evidences in, 657
- laya, explanation of, 994
- Layā, image of, 138
- layers, of the skin; description of, 1034
- lead, auspiciousness of, 641
- leg, diseases of; remedy for, 769
- Leo, a fixed sign; acts of fixed nature to be done in, 384
- the time taken by the Sun to cross, 384
- rite to determine the sex of the child to be done in, 357
- building of a house to be avoided when Jupiter is in, 360
- the day of getting up of Indra when Sun is in, 361
- banner of Indra to be lowered in, 362
- friendly with Gemini as also Libra, 392
- leprosy, remedy for, 753, 767, 773-4, 779
- letters, are either sixtythree or sixty-four; classification of, 915
- origin of, 916
- division into five groups on the basis of place of articulation etc., 916
- places of articulation of, 916, 917
- merits or demerits of sticking to or shifting the places of articulation of, 916
- instructions in using the, 916, 917
- in the name of a votary; the four-fold classification of, effects of, 895
- in the name, as aid to prognostication, 409
- indicating victory and prosperity, 376
- group of; denoting the planets, 378
- libation, mode of offering, 535-37
- merits of offering, 450-51
- liberation, words denoting, 991
- got by means of knowledge, 1059
- Libra, a constellation commendable for marriage when Sun is in, 357
- known as the waking day of Hari if Sun is in, 361
- time taken by Sun to traverse, 384
- friendly with Aries, 392
- lightning, words denoting, 989
- Likhita, a law-giver, 455
- likhyā, a measure, 107
- Lilā, image of, 138
- lily, words denoting, 996
- limbs, words denoting the different, 1015

- eight kinds of; associated with exertion, 929
- liṅga(s), different varieties, dimensions, of, 141-145
- movable variety, mode of fixing, 301-302
- classified into groups of; on the basis of doorway etc., 142
- description of, 143
- made of earth; merits of worshipping, 142, 901
- movable, 321
- characteristics of, 139-41
- measurement of eyes proportionate to, 288
- mode of installation of, 172, 278-82, 295, 296, 297, 960
- rites relating to installation of, 289-90
- old or broken; repair of, 311-13
- mode of worshipping, 299
- benefits of worshipping different, 142, 900
- contemplation of; as in one's own body, 60
- liṅga, a posture made with the hands, 218, 229, 297, 898
- Liṅgapurāna, in the Āgneya-kalpa; extent of, 733
- contains description of virtues by lord Śiva in the form of fiery liṅga, 733
- merits of making a gift in Phālguna, 733
- Lion, manifestation of Viṣṇu, 9
- lip, lower; six actions of, 929
- liptā, a measure of time, 370
- loan, rates of interest relating to, 658
- loan-bond, rules relating to writing of, 663-4
- lodhra, a herb, 372
- logical reasoning, word for, 991
- Loha, name of a demon, 639
- cut by lord Viṣṇu, 639-40
- Loha, a hell, 532
- Lohabhāra, subdivision of a hell, 1039
- Lohaśaṅku, subdivision of a hell, 1039
- Lohita, a divinity; letter denoting, 419
- Lohita, a country known by the name of a son of Vapuṣmān, 352
- Lokabhāvana, form of Viṣṇu at Nepāla, 841
- Lokākula, a place; Ripuhara to be worshipped at, 841
- Lokāloka, a peak; extension of, 353
- lokana, a posture relating to riding horses, 787
- lokoticchāyā, that which follows the proverb, 932
- Lolupā, a female divinity; image of, 138
- Lomahaṣaṇa, got the Vedic lore from Vyāsa; disciples of, 730
- Lomapāda, one of the sons of Vidarbha; son of, 741
- Lomapāda, son of Satyaratha; son of, 748
- long life, a mixture that would give, 756
- prescription to get, 777
- lotus, words denoting different kinds of, 996
- words denoting the root of a, 996
- worship of gods in, 79fn
- efficacy of worshipping with, 529
- merits of worshipping lord Hari with, 529
- diagram of; for daily worship etc., 880
- Lunar race, description of, 738-40
- lunar days, the names of the presiding deities of, 805
- lustre, words denoting, 989, 990
- lute, words denoting different kinds of, 994
- machine, uses of, 652
- madanadvādaśī, mode of practising the vow of, 512
- Mādhava, a name of Viṣṇu, 65
- characteristics of the form of, 128
- Mādhavi, characteristics of, 934
- Madhu, Viṣṇu as the killer of the demon, 65
- Madhu, son of Devakṣetra; son of, 742
- Madhuhara, a name of Viṣṇu, 65
- madhuparka, offered at the time of worship, 55
- madhurā vṛtti, explanation of, 933
- madhu ṛks, recitation of; as a pañkti-pāvana, 349
- Mādhurya (tranquility) an excellence of sense, 945
- Madhusūdana, Viṣṇu as the destroyer of demon Madhu, 746
- form of Viṣṇu on Mandara, 841
- to be contemplated everywhere, 842
- Madhusravas, at Gayā, piṇḍa to be offered at, 344
- Madhyā, a metre; number of letters in, 905
- Madhyadeśa, location of, 351
- Madhya Jyotis, composition of the metre, 904
- Mādhyakaṭhi, a branch of Yajurveda, 730
- madhyama, a variety of prāṇāyāma, 1044
- Mādhyandini, a branch of Yajurveda, 730

- Mādri, one of the wives of Kṛṣṇa, 744  
 Mādri, one of the two wives of Dhṛṣṭa; progeny of, 743  
 Mādri, other wife of Pāṇḍu, 32, 744  
 progeny of, 751  
 death of Pāṇḍu while hving union with, 32  
 Maga, a class of men at Śākadvīpa, 352  
 Magadha, a class of men at the Śākadvīpa, 352  
 Māgadha, a forest; the name Vaiṅkṣṇa to be repeated at, 842  
 māgadha (s), a caste, origin of, 42, 430  
 duty of, 431  
 Maghā, an asterism known as down-fall, 381  
 comprises the sphere of wind, 387  
 comprises the sphere of fire, 387  
 effect of Sun's transit in, 363  
 harvest of grains to be done in, 361  
 auspicious for administering medicine, 358  
 known as blunted; its effect relating to journey, 382  
 not commendable for attending on the employer, 360  
 not commended for wearing new clothes, 359  
 affliction caused by its occurrence on a Tuesday, 376  
 fatality indicated by its conjunction with Saturday and full moon, 377  
 Māgha, a month; a commendable day for first shave in, 359  
 benefit of purchasing food grains in, 387  
 inauspicious for first entry into a house, 360  
 Mahābāhu, one of the sons of Hiraṇyākṣa, 46fn  
 Mahābhadrā, a lake in the Jambūdvīpa, 325  
 Mahābhairava, obeisance to, 379  
 Mahābhārata, story of, 34ff  
 mode of honouring a person reciting, 734  
 mode of making gifts after the recitation of, 734  
 mahābhūtaghaṭa, a great gift, 544  
 Mahābja, a serpent; image of, 137  
 Mahābodhi, tree at Gayā; merits of worshipping, 338  
 Mahābṛhati, constitution of; another name of, 904  
 Mahācaṇḍā, a hell, 1038  
 Mahācapalā, characteristics of the metre, 906  
 Mahādeva, a form of Rudra, 50  
 favour extended to Sati by, 45  
 worship of, 290  
 Mahāghorā, a hell, 1038  
 Mahājvālā, a hell, 532  
 mahājyaishṭhi, the presence of Jupiter and Moon in the asterism Jyēṣṭhā, 362  
 Mahākāla, image of, 135  
 letter denoting, 419  
 to be worshipped, 51, 197, 283  
 Mahākālī, a female energy; colour of, 136  
 letter denoting, 417  
 contemplation on, 413  
 mahākālī, a medicinal plant, 378  
 Mahākāvya, characteristics of poetry called, 919-20  
 Mahākoṭi, at Gayā; piṇḍa to be offered at, 342  
 Mahākoṭī, a goddess, 375  
 Mahākrūrā, a yogini; image of, 138  
 Mahāksobhakārīṇī, Kubjikā addressed as, 413  
 Mahālakṣmī, characteristic features of the form of, 134  
 worshipped, 52, 415  
 benefit of the worship of, 343  
 Mahālaya, a holy spot at Vārāṇasī, 330  
 Mahāmanas, son of Mahāśāla; son of, 747  
 Mahāmāri, goddess; image of, 401  
 a formula affecting enemies; description of, 401-2  
 Mahāmāyā, cloth containing the figure of, 402  
 Mahāmoha, one of the gods to be located and worshipped, 292  
 mahāmudrā, a posture with the hands, 200  
 Mahānābha, one of the sons of Hiraṇyākṣa, 46fn  
 Mahānadi, river at Gayā; bathing in, 341  
 Phalgoturtha on, 337  
 Mahānānā, image of, 138  
 Mahānanta, worshipped, 414  
 Mahānaraka, sub-division of a hell, 1039  
 mahānila, a kind of sapphire, 640  
 Mahānta, son of Dhīmān, 323  
 Mahāpadma (Mahāmbuja), one of the eight chief serpents; the number of heads of, 807  
 forms the eyebrows of the goddess, 415  
 mahāpadma, a type of temple, 315  
 a treasure, 111, 269  
 mahāparāka, an expiation; explanation of 494

- Mahāpārśva, a demon killed by Rāma, 22
- Mahāpuṣṭhipravardhanā, a goddess staying in a particular circle, 376
- Mahāramya, images of, 135
- Mahāraurava, sub-division of a hell, 531, 1039
- Maharloka, distance of, 354  
worshipped, 79
- Mahāsāla, son of Janamejaya; son of, 747
- mahāsāntapana, an expiation, explanation of, 482, 494, 799
- Mahāsena, letter denoting, 419
- Mahat, origin of, 40, 48
- Mahātala, a nether world, 353
- Mahātāmīsraka, a hell, 531
- Mahātāmra, a hell, 532
- Mahāvajrā, a hell, 1038
- Mahāvici, sub-division of a hell, 531, 1039
- Mahāvīrya, a form of Rudra, 253
- Mahāvīrya, son of Virāt, 323
- Mahāvita, son of Savana, 353
- Mahāyoga, form of Viṣṇu at Kāśī, 841  
form of Viṣṇu at Śālagrāma, 841
- Mahendra, a name of the elephant-faced god, 190, 866
- Mahendra, lord Indra; worship of 176  
offering of gems made to, 273
- Mahendra, mountain in Bhāratavarṣa, 350  
rivers originating from, 351  
Paraśurāma's final stay at, 9
- Mahendrā, a female energy; to be worshipped, 91
- Māhendra, hill the name of Acyuta to be repeated at, 482
- Mahendrakā, a divinity worshipped, 414
- Māhēndri, one of the eight goddesses, 412
- Mahēśvara, worship of, 290  
Kṛṣṇa's conquest of the fever related to, 30
- Māheśvari (Māheśī), one of the eight goddesses, 139fn, 399, 411, 415
- Mahidhara, offering made to, 109
- Mahimā, son of Sarīhāna; son of, 740
- Mahimān, son of Janamejaya, 750
- Mahipāla, beads belonging to the Śiva class, 894
- Mahiṣa, a boundary mountain, 352
- Mahodara, one of the forms of Gaṇapati, 190, 865
- Mahodara, a demon killed by Rāma, 22  
mahodari, denotes the entry of the Sun in one of the signs, 362
- Maināka, a mountain; rise of, 19
- Mainda, a monkey; accompanied Rāma to Laikā, 21  
whose brother Dvividā was killed by Balarāma, 30fn
- Maithila, denotes King Janaka, 10
- Maitra, a muhūrta; deeds to be done in, 371
- Maitra=Anurādhā
- Maitrāyaṇi, a branch of Yajurveda, 730
- Maitreya, priest of king of Sauvira, 526
- Maitreya, son of Divodāsa; son of, 750
- Maitriśī, one of the goddesses, 413
- Makara, a constellation; correction for 367  
(See also Capricorn)
- makara, a treasure, 111, 269
- makara, an array; a variation of the array called bhoga, 634
- Makarākṣa, a demon killed by Rāma, 22
- Mālā, characteristics of the metre, 913  
mālāmantras, have more than twenty letters; yield results in youth, 802  
on the practice of, 804
- mālati, a flower, 529
- Malaya, mountain, 350, 351
- Malayagiri, as a sacred place, 328
- mālāyamaka, one of the yamakas, 935
- Mālini, characteristics of the metre, 913
- Mālinimantra, rite relating to, 418-9
- mālikā, a herb, 371, 378  
a flower, 529
- Mālopanā, explanation of, 940
- Mālyavat, mountain, 325  
Rāma's stay on, 18
- manaṣilā, used as an unguent, 372
- Mānasa, a manifestation of Viṣṇu, 428
- Mānasa, one of the sons of Vapuṣmat; denotes also the country ruled by him, 352
- Mānasa, as an excellent place, 330
- Mānasa, a boundary mountain, 353
- Mānasa, a lake, 325, 349
- Manasya, son of Mahānta, 323
- Manasyu, son of Prācinavān; son of, 748
- Mānava, a missile, 10
- Mānavakakṛīḍitaka, characteristics of the metre, 911
- manda, a variety of horses, 789
- mandā, a name of the entry of the Sun in one of the signs, 362
- Mandaga, a class of men in the Śākadvīpa, 352
- Mandākini, river; as excellent, 328  
Rāma's stay on the banks of, 14
- mandākini, a name of the entry of the Sun in one of the signs, 362
- Mandākṛāntā, characteristics of the metre, 913-4

- maṇḍala, an array; description of, 633  
 an array; two units taken from  
 and combined (for a battle), 634  
 an array; modifications of, 634  
 some variations of, 635  
 certain features of amara same as,  
 635
- maṇḍala, a posture relating to archery,  
 645
- maṇḍala, baked flour, 108
- maṇḍaleśvara, meaning of the word,  
 1018
- maṇḍali, a class of serpents based on  
 excess of one humour, 807
- Mandara, a boundary mountain, 324,  
 352  
 made as the churning rod to churn  
 the ocean, 5, 745  
 the name Madhusūdana to be  
 repeated at, 841
- mandara, a type of temple, 314
- mandāra, a flower; used in the wor-  
 ship of Viṣṇu, 99  
 used in the worship of Śiva, 101, 529
- Māṇḍavī, married by Bharata, 11
- Mandehāḥ, a class of men in the  
 Kuśadvīpa, 352fn
- Māndhātṛ, son of Yuvanāśva; sons of,  
 737  
 father of Mucukunda, 28fn
- mandira, a type of temple, 314
- Maṅgalā, benefit of worshipping the  
 goddess, 343
- maṅgalā, a stone, 269
- Maṅiguṇanikarā, characteristics of  
 the metre, 913
- maṅika, a class of temple; oval-sha-  
 ped; the temples belonging to the  
 class of, 315
- Mañivaka, son of Havya, 352
- Mañjari, characteristics of the metre,  
 909
- mañjiṣṭhā, used for making an  
 unguent, 372
- Mañjūṣa, a hell, 532
- Man-lion, form of Viṣṇu, 129
- Manmatha, a year of the Hindu  
 calendar, 405
- Manoharā, wife of Dhara; sons of, 44
- Manojava, different reading for Puro-  
 java, 44fn
- Manomani, a female divinity; wor-  
 shipped, 51
- Manonmana, a form of Rudra, 253
- Manonmani, a goddess; an envoy of  
 goddess Tvaritā, 424
- Manonuga, one of the sons of  
 Dyutimat, 352
- manoramā, a nerve, 316
- manorathadvāṣi, mode of practi-  
 sing the vow of, 512
- Mantharā, an attendant of Kaikeyi, 11  
 words of, 12
- Mantra, a form of Rudra, 253
- mantra, eight-syllabled, 53, 56  
 known as ari; destructive nature of,  
 803  
 which accomplishes all the desires,  
 830  
 for conquest of evil influences of  
 pauṣṇa, 835  
 propitiation of the letters compos-  
 ing a; benefit accruing from,  
 835-836  
 of five syllables sacred to Śiva;  
 mode of worship with, 837-40
- mantras, forming base of all mantras,  
 373  
 different kinds of, 265-66, 358, 416-  
 19, 832-35  
 their nomenclature, 802-806  
 narration of different kinds of;  
 effects of, 872-3  
 for worship; description of, 50  
 collection of; the five parts of, 830  
 of different kinds; application of,  
 863-64  
 classification as āgneya and saumya,  
 802  
 should begin with praṇava, 805  
 the six accessory acts relating to,  
 403-4  
 instructions relating to repetition  
 of, 805  
 to be repeated facing east or looking  
 downwards, 805  
 means of acquiring perfection in and  
 the efficacy of, 804  
 whose letters are governed by  
 baneful asterisms to be avoided,  
 803  
 number of repetitions of; inversely  
 proportional with the number of  
 letters in, 804  
 sleeping and waking states relating  
 to, 803  
 method to find the auspiciousness  
 of, 265  
 which remove the baneful influences  
 of planets, 826-30  
 eight kinds of benevolent, 874  
 for making offering to the spirits, 826  
 relating to six kinds of acts such as  
 paralyzing, 871-2  
 that would stupefy the three worlds,  
 845-9  
 three parts of; relating to the three  
 gods, 420  
 relating to worship of different gods,  
 864-65

- of Śiva; different kinds of, 873-75  
 relative merits of different methods  
 of repetition of, 805
- Manu, the term denoting the period  
 of, 39fn
- Svâyambhuva as the first, 41fn  
 creation of, 322-23  
 born to Cākṣuṣa and Puṣkariṇi;  
 progeny of, 42
- Vaivasvata; born to Sun and  
 Saṁjñā, 735  
 words spoken to the Fish by, 4
- a law-giver, 455
- herb denoted by the term, 406, 407
- Manus, names of different, 427-9  
 reign in a day of Brahmā, 429  
 periods of different, 427-9  
 names of Indra and the sages during  
 the periods of, 427-9
- Manvantaras, periods of Manu, 39fn  
 manifestations of Viṣṇu innumera-  
 ble in, 39
- Mārgaśīrṣa, month; increased return  
 of certain food articles in, 386
- marica, a herb, 407
- Mārica, a demon; stupefied by Rāma's  
 missile, 10  
 words spoken to Rāvaṇa by, 16  
 imitated the voice of Rāma and  
 cried aloud, 16fn
- Marici, a sage; mind-born son of  
 Brahmā, 9, 41, 42fn, 735  
 Kaśyapa born from, 9  
 had Paurṇamāsa through Sambhūti,  
 49  
 worship of, 108, 274, 275, 317
- Māriṣā, daughter of Kaṇḍu and  
 Pramlocā; offered by Soma to  
 Pracetas, 43
- mark, words denoting, 989
- Mārkaṇḍeya, born to Mṛkaṇḍu and  
 Vedaśīrā, 49  
 imparted knowledge to Vajra, 30
- Mārkaṇḍeyapurāṇa, contains discus-  
 sion on righteousness; extent of, 732  
 to be given as a gift in Kārttika, 732
- Mārkaṇḍeyeśvara, at Gayā; wor-  
 shipped, 342
- marriage (s), four kinds of acts relating  
 to, 434  
 rules relating to, 434-36  
 eight kinds of, 434-5  
 time for performing, 357  
 commendable constellations and  
 planets for, 435  
 asterisms commendable for, 435  
 prohibited periods for performance  
 of, 435
- Mars, distance of, 354  
 chariot of, 356
- period (years) of influence of, 363,  
 393  
 presides over a part of day, 381  
 letter presided over by, 374  
 the effect of occupying the second  
 house by, 383  
 confers good in the (tenth house),  
 384  
 indicates defeat if battle is begun  
 when it leaves its asterism, 386  
 bad luck indicated by, 400  
 causes riot, 377  
 the days which are to be avoided  
 if associated with, 410  
 is for victory, 389  
 nature of person born in the house  
 of, 392  
 image of, 137  
 the form of that is to be contem-  
 plated, 828
- Mārtaṇḍa (Sun), the day for the in-  
 stallation of, 87
- Marut, Maruts came into being from,  
 44
- Māruta, Wind-god; worship of, 274
- Māruti (Hanūmat), crossing of the  
 ocean by, 19  
 words spoken to Rāvaṇa by, 20  
 Rāma and Lakṣmaṇa were made  
 secure when the mountain was  
 brought by 22  
 attacked Rāvaṇa, 23
- Maruts, were born from Marut, 44  
 Vāsava was made the chief of, 47  
 brought Bharadvāja to Bharata, 749
- Marutta, son of Titikṣu; son of, 741  
 —son of Karandhama; son of, 747
- maruvaka, leaves, 529
- masi, oil of, 372
- māsika, ceremony; parāka to be obser-  
 ved at the time of, 488
- massaging, method of; benefits of,  
 763-4
- Mātali, charioteer of Indra, 22, 22fn
- Mataṅga, at Gayā, 338, 343
- Mataṅgāśrama at Gayā, 337
- Mataṅgavāpi, at Goyā, 337
- Mataṅgeśā, at, Gayā; worshipped, 337
- Mathurā, Lavaṇa killed by Śatrughna  
 at, 24  
 Kṛṣṇa rode a chariot and reached, 27  
 Kṛṣṇa came to Gomantaka leaving,  
 28  
 Keśava to be worshipped at, 841
- Matināra, one of the ten sons of  
 Bhadrāśva; the three sons of, 748
- Mātrāsamaka, characteristics of the  
 metre, 907
- mātrkā-mantras, denote the monosyl-  
 labic words; deities governing, 952

- Matsya, form of Viṣṇu, 326  
—name of a śālagrāma, 125
- Matsyakālī, one of the seven sons of  
Suhotra and Girikā, 750
- Matsya-purāna, narrated by lord  
Viṣṇu in the form of a fish to Manu,  
4, 734  
should be given as a gift at the time  
of the equinox, 734
- Mattā, characteristics of the metre,  
912
- Mattākriḍā, characteristics of the  
metre, 914
- Mattamayūra, characteristics of the  
metre, 913
- Mattoktichāyā, explanation of, 932
- mature, a mode; explanation of, 933,  
934
- Maturity, explanation of, 945
- Maukulyas, were descendants of  
Mukula, 750
- Māyā, a female energy, 292, 417  
—wife of Bhaya, 49
- māyā (mantra), denotes certain group  
of letters, 888  
no divisions in, 895
- Māyāvati, Rati born as; maid of  
Sambara; married Pradyumna, 29,  
29fn
- Mayūrasārīṇī, characteristics of the  
metre, 912
- mayūrasikhā, a herb, 406
- Māyāvin, son of Dundubhi, 17fn
- means, seven kinds of, 587
- measures, table of, 1022
- Medhā, a female divinity; worshipped,  
52  
—one of the sons of Priyavrata, 322
- Medhātithi, ruled Plakṣa, 322  
names of the sons of, 322, 351  
son of Kaṇva, 748
- medicine, asterism good for taking, 358  
dosage of; the factors to be noted  
in deciding, 762
- medicines, falling under six heads  
and accomplishing two kinds of  
effects, 770  
conferring longevity and curing  
diseases, 778-80
- meditation, on Brahman; mode of  
practising, 1055-6
- Meghanāda, was born from Rāvaṇa,  
24
- Meghanādā, image of, 138
- Meghapālaka, one of the seven sons  
of Nahuṣa, 740
- memory, herb for improving, 773
- men, different classes of, words de-  
noting, 1013  
having different deformities or  
abnormalities; words for, 1014  
mounted on elephants, work of, 613
- Menā, a daughter of the manes and  
Svadhā, 49
- mental change, word denoting, 995
- Meru, mountain; extent of, 324  
—is in the shape of a lotus, 325  
—a region, 322  
Rṣabha was born to Nābhi through,  
323
- meru, a type of temple, 314
- Mercury (a planet), distance of, 354  
chariot of; 356  
period (years) of influence of, 363,  
393  
presides over a part of day, 381  
the form that is to be contemplated  
of, 137, 828  
gives realisation of desire, 377  
letter presided over by, 374  
characteristics of a person born in  
the house of, 392  
good for truce, 389  
occupying second house confers  
good, 383  
beneficial in the twelfth, 384  
indicates defeat in battle begun  
when it is leaving its asterism, 386
- merudāna, ten kinds of, mode of  
making, 344-5  
twelve varieties of, 553-5  
mode of offering (goddess), 554
- Meṣa, a constellation; letter denoting,  
419  
correction for, 367  
causes victory if full and death  
otherwise, 377  
good and bad effects of planets in,  
383
- meṣaśṛṅgi, a herb, 406
- messenger, qualification of; three  
types of, 625
- metals and chemicals, words denoting,  
1022-3
- metres, Vedic; rules relating to, 902  
having different numbers of pādas,  
903  
of other kinds formed from Utkṛti,  
905  
the gotras of; the deities of, 905  
colours of different, 905  
classical, 905  
the three divisions of, 908  
characteristics of equal, 908  
calculating the number of half-equal  
908  
on the calculation of the number of  
unequal, 908  
classical, based on Vedic metre  
Abhikṛti, 914

- based on Atikṛti, 914  
 based on Kṛti, 914  
 classical; based on Prakṛti, 914  
 classical; based on Vedic metre  
 Saṅkṛti, 914  
 classical; based on the Vedic metre  
 Utkṛti, 914  
 classical; based on Vedic metre  
 Vikṛti, 914  
 tabular representation of, 915  
 to be employed in a Mahākāvya,  
 920
- midnight, words denoting, 990  
 military expedition, instructions relat-  
 ing to, 594
- Mīmāṃsā, science of, 2  
 Mīna, correction for 367  
 (See also Capricorn)  
 letter denoting, 419
- mind, words denoting, 991  
 mind, two divisions of exertions of;  
 one of them relating to men divided  
 further into eight, 927  
 as the reins, 1075
- minerals, eight kinds of, 283  
 minister, words denoting, 1018  
 ministers, qualities of, 619  
 how the king should examine the  
 worthiness of, 619-20  
 defects of, 626
- mire, words denoting, 995  
 miscarriage, in women; remedy for  
 arresting, 777  
 miseries, true knowledge about; com-  
 mended, 1074
- Mithuna, a constellation; correction  
 for 367  
 (See also Gemini)
- Mitra, one of the twelve Ādityas; son  
 of Kaśyapa, 45  
 as one of the names of Sun, 136  
 —a divinity to be worshipped, 317  
 worship of, 274  
 —one of the Ādināthas, 412
- mitra, one of the tārābalas, 359
- Mitradevi, one of the daughters of  
 Devaka; married by Vasudeva,  
 742
- mitram, explanation of, 1019
- Mitravinda, one of the wives of Kṛṣṇa,  
 744
- Mitrayu, a disciple of Lomahaṅga,  
 730
- mocaka, a perfection, 257
- Modāki, son of Havya, 352
- mode, fourfold; uneven in the actions  
 of a drama, 928
- modes (vṛtti), five kinds of; produced  
 by repetition of a single letter, 933
- Mohā, an energy, 292
- mohalatā, a herb, 406
- mohini, a herb, used for subjugation,  
 372
- Mohopamā, explanation of, 940
- mokṣa, one of the puruṣārthas, 53
- mokṣaṇi, one of the praṇitamudrās,  
 857
- Monday, rite of chewing betel leaf to  
 be done on, 358  
 first shave commended on, 359  
 one should not do agriculture on,  
 361  
 inauspicious nature of eleventh day  
 falling on, 381
- month, lunar, solar and astral, 495
- Moon, only one in the world, 376  
 synonyms of, 989  
 orb of; words denoting, 989  
 lustre of; words denoting, 989  
 sixteenth digit of; words denoting,  
 989  
 distance of, 354  
 period (years) of, 363  
 influence of, 393  
 periods over a part of a day, 381  
 form of, 137  
 appeases defeat, 377  
 benefits caused by different positions  
 of, 383, 384  
 death caused by investiture of thread  
 when Moon has set, 359  
 its presence in asterism jyeṣṭhā  
 known as mahājyaṣṭhi, 362  
 when holes are noticed in the disc of,  
 387  
 eclipse of the head known by the  
 presence of, 388  
 characteristic of a person born in the  
 house of, 392  
 ceremonies to be done when it is  
 pure, 362
- moon-stone, a gem, 641
- moral observance, five kinds of, 454
- mortgage, rules relating to different  
 types of, 660-1
- moṭana, a posture relating to riding  
 horses, 787
- mountains, words denoting, 1006
- mṛdaṅga, synonym for; different kinds  
 of, 994
- Mṛdava, a division of Vithi, 928
- Mṛga, a divinity; worshipped, 108,  
 316, 317
- mṛga, a variety of horses, 789
- Mṛgaśiṛṣa, one of the fixed asterisms,  
 381  
 comprises the sphere of wind, 387  
 location in a diagram, 385  
 located in the second column in  
 a diagram, 400

- an asterism; good for discharging debt, 358  
 commendable to begin the construction of a house, 360  
 good for harvesting grains, 361  
 good for taking harvested grains inside the house, 361  
 mahājyaīṣṭhi caused by, 362  
 effect of Sun's transit in, 363  
 commended for all acts, 381
- Mrgavyādha, one of the eleven forms of Rudra, 45
- Mṛkaṇḍu, son of Vidhātṛ; son of, 49
- Mṛtyu, father of Sunīthā, 42fn  
 —born to Bhaya and Māyā, 49  
 —an energy, 292
- mṛtyu, one of the groups of letters, 390  
 to be rejected in all undertakings, 391
- Mṛtyuñjaya, a form of Śiva; mode of worship of, 899  
 worshipped, 374
- mṛtyuñjaya, a formula known as; description of, 395
- Mucukunda, son of Māndhātṛ, 28, 737  
 obtained a boon of long sleep, 28fn
- mudgara, uses of, 652
- mudrā(s), posture of the hands for worship, 53  
 different kinds—formation of, 66-67  
 for worship of Sun, 196  
 —an embellishment of word, 932  
 explanation of, 932
- Mudrāspṛṣṭa, one of the siddhas, 414
- Muhūrtā, Muhūrtas were born from, 44
- Muhūrtas, born from Muhūrtā, 44  
 muhūrtas, different names of, 371
- Mukhamaṇḍī, a female force, 84
- Mukhapūrvikā, characteristics of the metre, 906
- mukhavyāvartana, an action of the horse while moving, 788
- Mukhya, a divinity worshipped, 317  
 offering made to, 274
- mukhya, denotes first in junction, 1018
- Mukhyā, a division of Abhivyakti, 943
- Mukhyaka, one of the sons of Bali, 747
- mukhyasarga, the fourth creation, 48
- Muktaka, division of poetry called, 919  
 consists of single verses, 920  
 describes different incidents, 920
- Muktakeśī, a monstress possessing the newly born child on the seventh night, 822  
 symptoms of child possessed by, 822  
 material for fumigation when possessed by, 822  
 unguent for the child afflicted by, 822
- Mukula, one of the five born from Bāhyaśva, 749  
 Cañcāśva as son of, 750  
 whose descendants were known as Maukulyas and were brahmins, 750
- Mukuṭā, the female spirit possessing the child two months old; symptoms of the child possessed by, 822  
 offering and fumigation to appease, 823
- Mūla, an asterism; belongs to the watery region, 388  
 marriage is commendable in, 357  
 discharge of debt to be done in, 358  
 commendable for beginning the construction of a house, 360  
 good for doing agriculture, 361  
 good for harvest of grains, 361  
 commended for all acts, 381  
 one of the blunted asterisms, 382  
 misery caused by Sun's transit in, 363  
 has face downward, 381  
 location in koṭacakra for forecast, 385  
 occupies the first column in a diagram, 400
- mūlagaurivrata, for Goddess Lakṣmī, 500-2
- mūlakṛcchra, an expiation, 483
- mūlamantra, bathing of the deity done with, 53
- mundane existence, three kinds of afflictions in, 1040
- Muṇḍapṛṣṭha, at Gayā, 336-7, 338  
 worshipped, 342
- Muṇḍikā, a spirit possessing the child in the fifteenth year; symptoms of the child possessed by, 825
- Muni, the nymphs were born from, 47  
 one of the sons of Dyutimat, 352  
 one of the sons of Āpa, 44
- muni, herb denoted by the word, 406, 407
- muniṣuṣpa, a flower, 529
- muñja, a lake in Jambūdvīpa, 325
- Muñjakeśa, represents a branch of Atharvaveda, 730
- Muñjaveṣa, an excellent spot, 328
- Muraja, one of the bandhas; explanation of, 936
- murder, without witness; precautionary steps for passing judgement, 676
- musali, a herb, 371, 378
- musical instruments, four kinds of, 994  
 words denoting different, 994

- mustard, used in a paste to give success against enemy, 372
- Muṣṭika, a wrestler killed by Kṛṣṇa, 28
- muṣṭimudrā, a posture of hands used in worship, 96
- mystical diagrams of different kinds; for worship, 879-83
- mystic syllables, used in consecration, 111
- Nabha, son of Nala; son of, 738
- Nābhāga, one of the eight sons of Vaivasvata Manu, 735  
had two sons who were vaiśyas and became brahmins later, 736  
—son of Bhagiratha; son of, 737
- Nābhi, was given country Hina by his father Agnidhra, 322  
Rṣabha born to Meru and, 323
- Nāciketa, fire; merits of worshipping thrice a day, 349
- nādi-s, the three being present in the goddess, 374  
(See also veins)
- Naḍvalā, wife of Manu; ten sons of, 42
- Naga, a hill at Gayā; excellence of, 337
- Nāga, image of, 106  
investiture of sacred thread for; to be done, 215
- nāga, a vital wind, 253  
a life-force carried by the vein pṛthā, 556  
functions of, 557
- Nāgadvīpa, one of the nine territories, 350
- nāgāh, herb denoted by the word, 406
- nāgakarṇa, a flower, 529
- Nāgānanda, sandals of; should be worshipped, 414
- Nāgapāśa, weapon used by Indrajit to bind Hanūmat, 20
- nāgapuṣpa, used as an unguent to control others, 372
- Nāgas, Vāsuki was made the ruler of, 47
- Nāgāstra, weapon used by Indrajit, 22  
(See also Nāgapāśa)
- Nāgavithi, was born from Yāmi, 44
- Nāgeśvarī, location of the letter represented by, 417
- Nāgigāyatri, the number of letters in the three feet of, 903
- Nāgnajiti, one of the wives of Kṛṣṇa, 744
- Nagodbheda, greatness of the sacred place of, 327
- Nahuṣa, son of Āyu, 25, 31  
one of the sons of Āyus; seven sons of, 739
- Naigameya, brother of Kumāra, 44
- Naimiṣa, Śaunaka and other sages at, 1  
a sacred place, 491  
merits of, 328
- naimittika, one of the three kinds of creation, 48  
ceremony should be done, 98
- Naimittiki, a division of Abhivyakti, 943
- Nairṛta, propitiation of, 176  
worshipped, 51
- Naiśadha, a country, 322
- naiṣṭhika brahmacāri, should stay with the preceptor till death, 433
- Nakṣatra-Yoga, constants, 365-6
- Nakta, son of Pṛthu and father of Gaya, 323
- Nakula, born to Mādri and Pāṇḍu, 744, 751  
son of 751  
fell on the way of the march, 37  
born through Aśvinikumāra, 32
- Nakuliśa, letter denoting, 419
- Nala, a monkey; building of a bridge in the ocean by, 21  
accompanied Rāma to Laṅkā, 21  
—son of Niśadha; son of, 738  
—a year of the Hindu calendar, 405
- Nalā, a goddess, 424
- Nalakūbara, son of Kubera, 90
- Nālikā, a division of Vithi, 928
- Nāmā, location of the letter denoting, 417
- nāmadvādaśi, merits of practising the vow of, 512
- nāmakaraṇa, one of the Vedic rites to be performed, 59
- namaskāra, use of the term, 403
- name, words denoting, 992
- Nanda, a cowherd chief; Balarāma and Kṛṣṇa left in the custody of, 27  
nanda, one of the treasures, 111
- Nandā, a place; Jalasāyin to be worshipped at, 842
- nandā, name of a stone, 269  
—a nerve, 316
- nandaka, description of the sword called, 639
- Nandana, a guard of the door; to be worshipped, 93  
—a year of the Hindu Calendar, 405  
—a forest, 325
- Nandarūpa, worshipped, 414
- nandāśaptami, a vow; details relating to, 505
- Nandi (n), conquered by Tārṅṣya, 30  
worship of, 197, 283  
to be worshipped, 51
- Nandigrāma, Bharata's return to, 15  
Rāma's arrival at, 23
- nandika, a type of temple, 314

- Nandin, a muhūrta; deeds to be done in, 371
- Nandiśa, image of, 135
- nandivardhana, a type of temple, 314
- Nara, son of Gaya, 323
- son of Uśinara and Narā, 747
- Narā, wife of Uśinara, 747
- Naracakra, to find failure etc., 389
- Nārada, story of Rāmāyaṇa described by Vālmiki to, 9
- Vālmiki's composition of Rāmāyaṇa after hearing from, 25
- Kṛṣṇa's action after hearing from, 30
- methods of worship of Viṣṇu as told by, 50
- a boundary mountain, 351
- Nāradiya, a Pāñcarātra āgama, 106
- Nāradiyapurāṇa, narrated by Nārada; extent of; to be given as a gift in Āśvina, 732
- Naraka, demon; Kṛṣṇa as killer of, 28
- the story relating to Dvidida, friend of, 30 fn
- called Rauraka, Vedanā as wife of, 49
- Narakanāyikā, a hell, 1038
- Nara-Nārāyaṇa, prayer to cleanse the votary, 85
- Narāntaka, a demon killed by Rāma, 22
- Narasimha, man-lion form of Viṣṇu to kill Hiranyakaśipu, 7
- basic syllables of; used for consecration, 67
- obeisance made to, 62
- an image of, 130
- benefit of worshipping, 343
- outlines of; on a cloth, 402
- (See also Nrsimha)
- Nārasimha, a Pāñcarātra āgama, 106
- Nārāyaṇa, one of the names of Viṣṇu, 65
- the reason for being called as, 40
- image of, 130
- characteristics of the form of, 128
- basic syllable ending with, 67, 68
- mantra used in religious rite, 53
- obeisance made to, 62
- benefit of worshipping, 343
- syllable of; for food offering, 68
- Śālagrāma denoting, 125
- Nārāyaṇiyaka, a Pāñcarātra āgama, 106
- Nārāyaṇi, location of the letters denoting, 416
- Nariṣyanta, one of the eight sons of Vaivasvata Manu, 735
- Narmadā, wife of Purukutsa, 737
- Narmadā, (river) flows from Vindhya, 351
- greatness of, 327, 331, 350
- purifies by mere sight, 331
- Śrīyaḥ pati to be contemplated on, 842
- nasal diseases, beneficial remedy for, 755
- Nāṭaka, a type of drama, 921
- Nāthaka, one of those worshipped, 414
- Nāṭikā, a type of drama, 921
- Nāṭyarāsaka, a type of drama, 921
- Nāṭyeśa (Śiva), image of, 314
- Navamālīni, characteristics of the metre, 913
- Navaratha, son of Bhimaratha; son of, 742
- navaśrāddha, the rites after the death of a person, 488
- Navavyūha, a śālagrāma, 126
- navavyūhārcana, for Viṣṇu, 527-28
- nayana, herb denoted by the word, 406
- neck, nine actions of, 929
- Nepāla, a place, 841
- nerves, names of the ten, 316
- nether world, words denoting, 595
- nether worlds, extent of; names of, 353
- netra, a herb, 407
- a measure, 124
- neyā, another name of Asāmayikatva, 947
- Nicṛt, composition of the metre, 904
- nidhana, one of the tārābalas, 359
- Nidhṛti, son of Dhṛṣṭaka; son of, 742
- night, words denoting, 990
- endowed with darkness; word denoting, 990
- with moonlight; word denoting, 990
- Nighna, son of Anarāyaṇa; son of, 737
- son of Anamitra; sons of, 743
- Nikṛti, daughter of Adharma and Himsā, 49
- Nikumbilā, a place where Indrajit was doing homa, 22
- Nikumbha, a demon killed by Rāma, 22
- son of Haryaśva; son of, 737
- Nilā, a monkey; accompanied Rāma to Laṅkā, 21
- killed Akampana and Prahasta, 22
- Nilā (Nilācala), mountain; was given by Agnidhra to Ramya, 322
- a varṣa-parvata on the north, 324
- as a boundary, 325
- Nilakaṅṭha (Śiva), reason for being called so, 5
- Nilāmbarā, a female energy; colour of, 136
- Nilāñjika, one of the sons of Yadu, 740
- nimba, herb, 407
- flower not to be used in worship, 530

- Nimi, one of the four sons of, 742  
 nīpa, a flower, 529  
 Nirāhārā, a spirit possessing the child in the seventh month; symptoms of the child seized by; offering to appease, 823  
 Nirāñjanākāra, a Rudra, 254  
 Nirmoha, a sage, 428  
 Nirṛti, image of 137  
 Nirucchvāsa, a hell, 531  
 nirūdhapaśubandhaka, a haviryajña, 466  
 Nirukta (etymology), science of, 2  
 niśā, a herb; used to make an unguent, 372  
 Niśadha, mountain; location of, 324, 325, 326  
 son of Atithi; son of, 738  
 Niśānātha, worship of the sandals of, 414  
 Niśaṭha, son of Balarāma and Revati, 29  
 Nīścara, a sage at the time of the eleventh Manu, 428  
 Nīścayopamā, explanation of, 940  
 Nīścīrā, at Gayā, 342  
 niṣkala, one of the kinds of mantras of Śiva, 873  
 description of, 875  
 Niṣkampā, a goddess, 376  
 Niṣkubha, salutations made to, 52  
 Niṣvara, different reading for Nīścara, 428fn  
 Niṣṭhā, an energy, 292  
 Niṣṭhūrā, a goddess staying in the circle of smell, 376  
 name uttered in worship of Śiva, 202  
 Niṣumbha, a demon; gained favour from Brahmā and was later killed by the goddess, 26 fn  
 Nitala, a nether world, 353  
 nitya, one of the three kinds of creation, 48  
 explanation of, 49  
 nivātakavaca, a term denoting the progeny of Prahrāda, 46  
 niyama, relating to a kind of yamaka, 936  
 explanation of the term, 1017  
 niyamas, five kinds of, 1076  
 Niyamopamā, explanation of, 940  
 nominal bases, examples of forms after inflection of, 960-66  
 primary; formation of, 980-81  
 non-attachment, for pleasures; commended, 1074  
 noose, materials for the thread of, 649  
 method of using, 649  
 eleven ways of manipulating a, 651  
 five ways of casting a, 651  
 nose, bleeding of; remedy for, 766  
 six actions of, 929  
 nouns, inflections in, 957  
 Nṛga, son of Uśinara and Nṛgā, 747  
 Nṛgā, queen of Uśinara, 747  
 Nṛsīmha, image of, 115  
 mantra for the worship of, 117  
 (See also Narasīmha)  
 śālagrāma designated as, 125  
 Nṛhari, installation of the image of, 179  
 Nyagrodha, one of the sons of Ugrasena, 742  
 Nyañkusāriṇi, a metre; composition of; different name of, 903  
 nyāsa, in the worship, 90  
 Nyāya, science of, 3  
 Oath, when prescribed, 657  
 objects, seven kinds of, 970  
 as the pasture ground, 1075  
 oblation, mode of doing, 92ff, 467  
 observances, different kinds of, 1041  
 Oceans, surrounding the continents, 324  
 a great gift of (seven) 544  
 Oḍhra, region of; Puruṣottama to be worshipped at, 842  
 Odiśa, an Ādinātha, 412  
 offences, of different kinds, fine for, 676-79, 681  
 offering to god, mode of making, 107-110  
 officiating priest, injunctions for, 680  
 oil, as an excellent diuretic, 757  
 old age, remedies to rejuvenate in, 769-70  
 Om, syllable of; consecration to be done with, 58  
 oblation begun with, 59  
 as the first term in the different formulae, 62  
 repeated with different formulae, 72  
 omens, known from birds, 600-603  
 ordeals, five kinds of divine, 664  
 instituted for great offences, 664  
 of five kinds instituted for different persons, 664  
 procedure relating to, 664-6  
 ornaments, of different kinds; words denoting, 1016  
 oysters, word for, 996  
 Padacaturūrdhvam, characteristics of, 909  
 pādādi-yamaka, one of the yamakas, 935  
 pādakṣcchra, an expiation, 483

- to be observed at the annual ceremony, 488
- Pādākulaka**, characteristics of the metre, 907
- Pādānicrt**, a variety of Gāyatri, 903
- pādāntayamaka**, one of the yamakas, 935
- Padapaṅkti**, a variety of Paṅkti; composition of, 904
- Padma**, a deity; located on the body, 414  
—one of the eight chief serpents; the number of heads of, 807  
forms the eyebrow of the goddess, 415  
image of, 137  
—beads belonging to Śikhā class, 894
- padma**, an array; a variation of maṇḍala, 635  
—a type of temple, 315  
—a treasure, 88, 111, 269
- padma(m)**, a posture made with the hands, 196, 657, 898
- Padmā**, a hell, 1038
- padmaka**, a posture of sitting, 454, 1076  
(See also padmāsana)
- padmahastaka**, measure, 107
- Padmanābha**, one of the names of Viṣṇu, 65
- Padmapurāna**, extent of; to be given as a gift in Jyēṣṭha, 732
- padmāsana**, a posture of sitting, 70  
(See also padmaka)
- Padmāvati**, a hell, 1038
- Padmini**, a goddess; invoked, 112
- padmini**, a treasure, 111
- Padya**, definition of; two divisions of 919  
(See also poetry)
- Paila**, disciple of Vyāsa, 429
- paid respect to Vyāsa**, 1  
—son of Ruṣadratha; son of, 747
- pains**, such as ādhyātmika; need for remedying, 1074
- Paippalāda**, disciples of Sumantu, 429
- paiśāca**, a type of marriage, 435
- pāka** (ripeness), an excellence of word and sense; explanation of; four kinds of, 946
- Pākayajña**, a domestic sacrifice, 475
- Pākayajñas**, the seven kinds of, 86
- pakṣa**, the herb denoted by the word, 406
- pakṣiṇī**, night with preceding and succeeding days, 990
- pala**, a measure, 408  
—a measure of time, 370
- Pālita**, one of the sons of Pṛthu, 43
- pallava**, explanation of, 403
- Pampā lake**, Rāma's arrival and stay at, 17
- Panasa**, a monkey; accompanied Rāma to Laṅkā, 21
- Paṇava**, characteristics of the metre, 912
- Pañcabrahman**, six formulae; accessories to, 890-891  
one of the forms of; worshipped, 51
- pañcabhadra**, remedies known as, 772
- pañcadhanus**, son of Sṛṅjaya; son of 750
- pañcagavya** (five things got from a cow), efficacy of taking, 488  
as a purificatory for stealing, 489
- Pāñcajana**, a demon conquered by Kṛṣṇa, 28
- Pāñcajanya**, letters for the worship of, 63
- Pañcaka**, one of the seven sons of Nahuṣa, 740
- Pañcakoṇikā**, a hell, 1039
- Pāñcāla**, a country, 351  
the visit of the Pāṇḍavas to, 32
- Pāñcālas**, killed by Aśvatthāman, 35  
—the five kings known as, 749
- Pāñcālī**, a variety of diction; characteristics of, 927
- pañcāmṛta**, offered in the course of worship, 98
- Pañcāṅga** (Almanac), 364-69
- Pañcāntaka**, letter denoting, 419
- Pañcarātra**, the names of the different texts of, 105  
reference to siṃhavidyā in one of the, 117fn
- Pañcaśikha**, exposition made by, 1073-4
- pañcatiktaka**, remedy known as, 774
- Pañcavaṭi**, on the banks of river Godāvāri, Rāma's stay at, 15
- Pāṇḍavas**, collective term for the sons of Pāṇḍu, 751  
taken as the instrumental cause for Viṣṇu's manifestation, 31, 37  
escape from the lac house, 32  
stay at Ekacakra, 32fn  
were recognised by the Kurus after the death of Kicaka, 33  
Śikhāṇḍī became commander of the, 34  
Aśvatthāmā's destruction of the sleeping army of, 35  
the five; as the survivors of the battle, 36  
worshipped lord Viṣṇu, 335  
ascendancy to heaven of, 36-38
- Pāṇḍu**, begot by Kṛṣṇa Dvaipāyana through the wife of Vicitraviryaka; son of, 31, 751  
married Kuntī; sons of, 32, 744  
Mādrī was the other wife of, 744

- story relating to curse of sage  
Kindama on, 32fn
- Pāṇḍusilā, at Gayā; food to be offered  
at, 344
- Pāṇḍyas, origin of, 747
- pāṅkacchapikā, a posture, 198
- Paṅkajā, a spirit seizing the child in  
the sixth month; symptoms of the  
child possessed by; offering to  
appease, 823
- Paṅkti, a metre, 562, 902  
composition of, 904  
blue coloured; belongs to Bhārgava  
gotra, 905
- paṅktipāvanas, explanation of the  
term, 349, 464
- Pāpa, a demon to be worshipped, 317
- Pāpaghna, one of the sons of Ruk-  
makavaca, 741
- Pāpamokṣa, at Gayā; one should  
bathe at, 342
- Pāpini, the name of an evil spirit  
which possesses the child on the  
first day after birth; symptoms of  
the child possessed by, 820  
offering to appease; unguent for the  
child possessed by, 821
- Parā, a goddess, dwelling in the es-  
sence, 375
- Pāra, a celestial at the time of the  
ninth Manu, 428
- parāka, an expiation; explanation of,  
483, 494  
destroys sin, 491  
for purification, 479  
to be done at māsika after death,  
488
- parama, a ray of the Sun, 195
- Paramā, a goddess; worshipped, 413  
letter denoting, 417
- Paramākṣara, a form of Rudra, 252
- paramamitra, one of the tārābalas, 359
- Paramānandadeva, worshipped, 414
- paramāṇu, a measure, 107
- Parameṣṭhi, son of Indradyumna, 323
- Parameṣṭhi, śālagrāma called, 125
- Parameṣuka, one of the foremost sons  
of Viduṣa, 747
- parārdha, explanation of the term,  
1029
- Parāśara, a law-giver, 455
- Parasparopamā, explanation of, 940
- Paraśurāma, manifestation of Viṣṇu, 8  
son of Jamadagni, 9  
narration of duties of castes to, 429
- Parāvidyā, as superior knowledge, 3  
explanation of the term, 1082
- Pāribhāṣikī, a division of Abhivyakti,  
943
- parigha, a period of obstacle; all under-  
takings to be avoided in, 383
- Pārijāta, divine tree, 6, 28
- Parikathā, a division of prose  
kāvyā; has the combined charac-  
teristics of Kathā and Akhyāyikā,  
919
- Parikṣit, one of the sons of Kuru, 750  
Janamejaya as a descendant of, 750  
son of Abhimanyu, 751  
embryo saved in the womb of  
Uttarā was born as, 36  
was established in the kingdom by  
Yudhiṣṭhira, 37
- Pāriplavaṅgaka, a variation of the  
array bhoga, 634
- Paritāpa, a hell, 532
- Pāriyātra, mountain, 326, 350, 351
- Parjanya (Indra), created by  
Prajāpati, 40  
worshipped, 107  
one of the different names of Sun,  
136
- Parjanya Prajāpati, Hiraṇyāromaka  
as son of, 48
- parpaṭa, a herb, 407
- pārṣṇigrāha, explanation of the term,  
1019
- Pārtha (Arjuna), words spoken by  
Kṛṣṇa to, 34  
obsequies of Yādava performed by,  
37
- pārthi, a rite to be performed, 86
- Pārthiva, a year of the Hindu calendar,  
405
- parvan, the period between first and  
fifteenth lunar day, 990
- pārvaṇasrāddha, a domestic sacrifice,  
86, 466
- Pārvatī, synonyms of, 987  
was, seen sporting with Śiva by  
Uṣā, 29  
worshipped, 50, 51
- Paryābandha, division of poetry called,  
919
- Paryāyokta, saying in a different way,  
944
- pāśa, a posture of the hands, 857
- passive, examples for the formation  
of, 983
- pasture land, location of; extent of,  
672
- paśubandha, one of the haviryājñas, 86
- Paśupati, Rudra was called as, 50  
worship of, 290  
weapon of; appeasing rite employ-  
ing the mantra of, 885-87
- pāṭala, a flower, 529
- Pātāla, a nether world, 353
- Pāṭalikā, characteristics of the metre,  
907

- path, words having the sense of, 1006  
 path of action, two kinds of, 455  
 pāṭhā, a herb, 410  
 pathos, origin of the sentiment, 924  
 three kinds of, 931  
 Pathyā, a variety of the Āryā metre;  
 number of gaṇas in, 906  
 characteristics of the metre, 908  
 Pathyāpankti, composition of, 904  
 Pathyāvakra, characteristics of the  
 metre, 908  
 patrakṛcchra, an expiation, 483  
 paṭṭiśa, uses of, 652  
 paunarnavā, a herb, 407  
 Pauṇḍraka, conquered by Kṛṣṇa, 28  
 story relating to, 28fn  
 Paurṇamāsa, son of Marici and Sam-  
 bhūti, 49  
 Pauṣa, month of; auspicious to enter  
 a house in, 360  
 Pauṣkara, a Pāncarātra āgama, 106  
 pauṣṇa, explanation of the period  
 known as, 835  
 Pāvaka, son of Agni and Svāhā, 49  
 was made the king of Vasus, 47  
 Pavamāna, son of Agni and Svāhā, 49  
 pāvamāni, a hymn, 562  
 pāvanti, a flower, 529  
 pavilions, building of different kinds  
 of, 178-80, 318  
 pavitra, of darbha grass, 58  
 Payoṣṇi or Payoṣṇikā, a river that  
 flows from Sahya, 351  
 as a bestower of fruits, 328  
 payovrata, mode of practising, 522  
 pearl(s), a kind of gem, 640  
 from oysters are pure, 641  
 other excellent kinds of, 641  
 pedestal, characteristics of, 146  
 pedestals of images, characteristics of,  
 123-24  
 peel of thunder, words denoting, 989  
 percussion instruments, different kinds  
 of, 994  
 perfumings, eight kinds of, 257  
 perfumes, mode of preparation of;  
 eight acts in, 582-3  
 periods of the day, good or bad, 383-4  
 phalacaturdaśi, on the practice of, 517  
 phalakṛcchra, an expiation, 483  
 Phalgucandī, at Gayā; obeisance paid  
 to, 343  
 Phālguna, benefit of purchasing per-  
 fumes in the month of, 387  
 —denotes Arjuna; fallen on the way  
 of march, 37  
 Phālguni, an asterism known as  
 blunted, 382  
 (Pūrva) phālguni, as asterism; loca-  
 tion in Koṭacakra, 385  
 Phalgotirtha, at Gayā; merits of  
 bathing at, 337  
 Gayāśīras has been made the hermi-  
 tage at, 338  
 Phalgvīśa, at Gayā; obeisance made to,  
 343  
 phaṇi, a class of serpents based on  
 excess of one humour, 807  
 —herb denoted by the word, 406  
 Phaṇirāhu, a method to find the  
 results of a battle, 380  
 Phaṇirāhu, the effect of its position  
 in various directions, 409  
 phaṇiśvara, diagram of, 400  
 phaṭ, use of the term, 403  
 Phaṭkāri, a goddess, 424  
 a monstress possessing the newly  
 born child on the sixth night;  
 symptoms of child possessed by;  
 offering to appease, 821  
 unguent for child possessed by,  
 822  
 Phetkāri, letter denoting goddess, 418  
 phlegm, remedy for the removal of  
 excess of, 775  
 remedy for twenty kinds of disea-  
 ses due to deranged, 774  
 phlegm and wind, a purgative for  
 deranged, 775  
 phonetics, description of, 915-17  
 physician, fine for giving wrong medi-  
 cal treatment, 679  
 physiognomy of men, indications of,  
 635-7  
 piety, two kinds of; not equal to  
 Agnipurāṇa, 1078  
 piles, beneficial remedies for, 754  
 remedy for, 767, 776  
 pilgrimage, benefits of, 326  
 Pilipiccha, a demon, 317  
 Pilipiṅja, a demon; appeasing off-  
 ering to, 109  
 offering made to, 275  
 pilu, auspiciousness of, 641  
 Pināka, bow of Śiva, 987  
 piṅḍa (?), auspiciousness of a gem  
 called, 641  
 Piṅḍāraka, a great place, 327  
 Caturbāhu to be worshipped at, 841  
 Piṅḍākṣi, image of, 138  
 Piṅgala, an attendant of Sun, 136,  
 195  
 —a divinity; to be worshipped, 414  
 —a year of the Hindu calendar, 405  
 Piṅgalā, afflicting the child in the  
 fourth month; symptoms of the child  
 afflicted by, 823  
 piṅgalā, a vein; carries the wind apāna,  
 functions of, 556

- is established on the right side of the body, 557
- Piṅgalācakra, description of, 377
- Pināki, a divinity worshipped, 414  
letter denoting, 419
- Pipilikā, a goddess, 376
- Pipilikāmadhyamā, composition of the metre, 904
- pippala, a tree, 324
- Pippalāda, represents a branch of Atharvaveda, 730
- pippali, a herb, 407
- Pisāci, image of, 138
- Pisces, the time taken by the Sun to transit, 384  
the rite to determine the sex of a child to be done in, 357  
the first feeding of the child to be done in, 358  
friendly with Virgo, 392
- Pisītāsā, image of, 138
- Pita, a class of men at Śālmala, 352
- pitā, name of a lightning, 45fn
- pitchers, of different kinds; words denoting, 1019  
consecration of, 149-51  
worship of different, 277
- Pitrs, worship of 317
- pits, in the dry bed of rivers; words for, 996
- place and time, the role of, 923
- plaintiff, to be examined first, 657
- Plakṣa, a continent, 323  
about the people of, 351  
given by Priyavrata to Medhātithi, 322  
the rulers of and the oceans surrounding, 351
- plakṣa, a tree, 47, 92
- planets, metals for making images of, 461  
propitiatory rite for, 461-2  
offerings for, 462  
mantras for propitiating, 462  
three kinds of propitiation of, 467  
propitiatory rite for, 467-70  
benefits of propitiation of, 469-70  
effect of presence in nativity sign, 393  
character of an infant known from, 392-3  
good or bad depending on the positions of, 383-4  
symptoms of those possessed by evil influences of, 827
- plants, medicinal, 378  
of different kinds; words which mean, 1008-12
- Plava, a year of the Hindu calendar, 405
- pleasure, proceeds from conceit, 923
- ploughman, injunctions for, 680
- ploughs (five), a great gift, 544
- poet, the five items to be indicated by, 922  
creator with reference to poetry, 924
- poetic convention, definition of; two kinds of; further divisions of, 949
- poetry, different kinds of, 919  
the nature of matter treated in, 920
- poison(s), words denoting, 995  
two kinds of, 811  
the three pungents which as a drink or unguent or collyrium would remove, 817-18  
use of white pepper and śiriṣa flower against, 818  
of different kinds; remedy for, 818-9  
remedy for removal of all, 773  
of different kinds; effective remedy for, 756  
the different remedies against, 577-818  
due to an ass etc; mantra for the removal of, 819  
due to gonasa and other snakes; treatment of, 818-20  
due to a scorpion; remedy for, 819  
due to a spider etc.; remedy for, 819
- remedial mantra for the removal of, 817-18  
mantra to be recited to destroy the vegetable, 820  
due to a dog; remedy for, 820  
due to sixteen kinds of rats; remedy for, 819  
twenty ways of treatment for, 819
- polestar, location etc. of, 355
- Svargaloka as lying between the Sun and, 354
- pollution, instances when there is no, 443  
periods for different kinds of, 444-50  
different kinds of, 444-50
- pollution and purification, 440-44
- portents, relating to images, 711  
foreboding the death of the king, 712-3  
appeasing rites for 710-713  
worship of gods to destroy the effects of, 713-16
- possession, desire for; referred to as due to ignorance, 1073
- Prabhā, one of the wives of the Sun, 735  
—wife of Sagara; bore sixty sons, 737  
—wife of Prabhākara, 739
- Prabhākara, a son of Jyotiṣmat, 352
- prabandha, imaginary story, 992
- prabhañjana, a vital wind, 253

- Prabhāsa, a sacred place, 350  
 Daityasūdana to be contemplated at, 841  
 Hari (as Kṛṣṇa) discarded his body at, 37  
 greatness of, 327, 491  
 —at Gayā; merits of offering piṇḍa at the pretakuṇḍa at, 342  
 —one of the eight Vasus, 44  
 Prabhāseśa, at Gayā; obeisance to be made to, 342  
 Prabhāta, born to Sun and Prabhā, 735  
 Prabhava, a Rudra, 254  
 —a guard, 93  
 —a year of the Hindu calendar, 404  
 —a type of temple, 314  
 Prabhāvati, a female divinity; worshipped, 52  
 Prabodhani, a female energy; invoked, 136  
 Prabhu, a form of Rudra, 252  
 Pracaṇḍa, a male divinity; figure carved on the door-frame, 115  
 Pracaṇḍā, a goddess, 132  
 —a hell, 1038  
 Pracaṇḍogrā, image of, 138  
 Pracetas, (lord of waters) worship of, 273  
 —name of the sons of Prācinabarhis, 43  
 —son of Viḍuṣa; names of foremost among hundred sons of, 747  
 Prācinabarhis, son of Dhīṣaṇā; sons of, 43  
 Prācinavān, son of Janamejaya; son of, 748  
 Pracitā, a variety of Daṇḍaka, 915  
 Prācyavṛtti, characteristics of the metre, 907  
 pradara, a modification of the array called daṇḍa, 633  
 —a disease of women; remedy for, 777  
 pradāraka, an array; formed by two wings to daṇḍa, 634  
 Pradhāna, a son of Dyutimat, 352  
 Pradhānam, significance of, 991  
 pradoṣa, period preceding night, 990  
 prāḍvivāka, meaning of the word, 1018  
 Pradyumna, one of the sons of Kṛṣṇa and Rukmiṇī, 744  
 son of; wife of, 745  
 story relating to, 29, 29fn  
 accompanied Kṛṣṇa, 30  
 image of, 130  
 worship of; formulae relating to, 62  
 worship with the basic syllable of, 68  
 worshipped, 91  
 a śālagrāma, characteristics of, 125  
 marks of six discs on, 125  
 Praghasa, a demon killed by Rāma, 22  
 Praharaṇakalitā, characteristics of the metre, 913  
 Praharaṣaṇī, a female energy, 136  
 Praharaṣiṇī, characteristics of the metre, 913  
 Prahāsana, a type of drama, 921  
 a component of the mode Bhārati; ridicules the ascetics and the like, 928  
 Prahasta, a demon killed by Nila, 22  
 Prahelikā, a kind of citrakāvya; definition of, 935  
 Prah(r)āda, son of Hiraṇyakaśipu; story of, 7fn  
 a devotee of Viṣṇu, 46  
 made the king by Viṣṇu, 47, 745  
 story relating to Bali, grandson of, 8fn  
 a Pāñcarātra āgama, 106  
 Prajāpati, creation of time etc. by, 40  
 sage for the vyāhṛtis (of Gāyatri), 562  
 name of a metre; number of letters in, 902  
 Prajāpati (Prajotpatti), a year of the Hindu calendar, 404  
 Prajāpatis, Dakṣa made the king of, 47  
 prajāpatya, an expiation; eating food once a day for three days, 483  
 explanation of, 494  
 for having eaten garlic etc., 472  
 for doing an act of an outcaste, 476  
 for the fourth class for purification, 479  
 for having caused the death of a cow, 487  
 for having taken urine, excreta etc., 488  
 for drinking wine and eating flesh, 488  
 destroys sin, 491  
 merits of practising, 524  
 a rite performed before becoming an ascetic, 452  
 a type of marriage, 434-5  
 beads belonging to the Śiva class, 894  
 Prakaraṇa, a type of drama, 921  
 Prakirṇaka, a division of Kośa, 921  
 prākṛtasarga, explanation of, 48  
 prakṛti, relating to a state of being, 991  
 Prakṛti, Viṣṇu's entry into, 39  
 classical metres based on, 914  
 Pralamba, a demon killed by Balarāma, 30  
 story relating to, 30 fn

- Pralayāntikā, image of, 138  
 Pramāṇi, characteristics of the metre, 908  
 Pramardini, a female energy, 136  
 Pramāthi, a year of the Hindu Calendar, 404  
 Pramitākṣarā, characteristics of the metre, 913  
 Pramlocā, mother of Māriṣā, 43  
 Pramoda, a year of the Hindu calendar, 404  
 Pramodaka, one of the two sons of Dṛdhāśva, 736  
 Prāmśu, one of the eight sons of Vaivasvata Manu, 735  
 prāṇa, a life force carried by the vein idā; functions of, 556  
   equated with the day, 557  
 Prāṇa, a son of Dhara and Manoharā, 44  
   —son of Dhātṛ, 49  
 praṇava, explanation of the significance and greatness of, 1042-3  
   the first syllable, 559  
   precedes all the mystic syllables, 52  
   a formula; no divisions in, 895  
   equated with the soul, 1056  
   Gaṇapati as representing, 412  
   equated with lord Śiva, 374  
   used for consecrating a child, 60  
   used in worship, 415  
   repeated, 63  
   destroys sins, 491  
 prāṇavāhini, a nerve, 316  
 prāṇyāma, two kinds of, 454, 557  
   meaning of the term, 1076  
   (agarbha) three kinds of, 454  
   (sagarbha) three kinds of, 454  
   different varieties of; merits of practising, 1044  
   as an atonement, 455  
   as dispelling sins, 487  
 praṇītā, a vessel, 58, 94  
   five mudrās known as, 857  
   shown in worship, 857, 869  
 Prapañcā, image of, 138  
 Prapitāmaha, a liṅga, 343  
 Prāpti, one of the two wives of Kaiśa, 28  
 prāsa, a weapon that is cast off, 645  
 Prasāda (lucidity), an excellence of word and sense; explanation of, 946  
 prāsāda, significance of the mantra known as; three kinds of, 558  
   description, 874  
   with parts and without parts, 874-75  
   no division in, 895  
 Praśānta, a form of Rudra, 252  
 praśara, a kind of citrakāvya; definition of, 935  
 Praśastatā (praiseworthiness), an excellence of word and sense; explanation of, 946  
 Praśasti, an embellishment of sound and sense; explanation of; two kinds, 942  
 Prasena, son of Nighna; was killed by a lion, 743  
 Prasiddhvimāla, one of the vimalas, 412  
 Prastāra, son of Pratihartā, 323  
 Prastārapaṅkti, a variety of Paṅkti; composition of, 904  
 Prastāvanā, another name of Āmukha, 922  
   —a component of the mode Bhārati, 928  
 prastha, a measure, 95, 1078  
 Prasthāna, a type of drama, 921  
 Pratardana, son of Divodāsa; two sons of, 749  
 Prathamā, a goddess, 375  
 Pratihāra, son of, 323  
 Pratihartā, son of Pratihāra; sons of, 323  
 Pratikṣetra, son of Śami; son of, 743  
 pratiloma, relating to caste, 430  
 Pratipa, son of Bhimasena; son of, 751  
 prātipadika, explanation of the term, 959  
 Pratritha, one of the three sons of Matināra; son of, 748  
 pratiṣṭha, a modification of the array daṇḍa; characteristics of, 633  
 Pratiṣṭhā, a metre; number of letters in, 905  
 Pratiṣṭhā (gāyatri), characteristic of, 903  
 Pratiṣṭhāna, a place; described as the mule of Brahmā, 329  
   got by Sudyumna; given to Purūravas, 735  
 Prativindhya, son of Yudhiṣṭhira and Draupadī, 751  
 Pratoda, a hell, 532  
 Pratyagraha, one of the seven sons of Suhotra and Girikā, 750  
 pratyāhāra, explanation of the term, 1045  
   significance of the word, 1076  
   to be done only by those who repeat mantras, 454  
 pratyāhāras, the fourteen notations in grammar; explanation of, 953  
 pratyālīḍha, a posture relating to archery, 645  
 Pratyāpīḍa, characteristics of the metre, 909  
 pratyari, one of the tārābalas, 359

- Pratyūṣa, one of the Vasus; father of Devala, 44
- Praudhī (maturity), an excellence of sense, 945
- Pravira, one of the four sons of Tamsurodha, 749
- Pravṛttaka, characteristics of the metre, 907  
a division of Āmukha; explanation of, 922
- Prayāga, a sacred place, 350  
greatness of, 328, 329-30  
destroys sins, 491  
Rāma's arrival at, 13  
Bharata's visit to, 14
- Prayoga, a deity; location of, 414
- Prayogātiśaya, a division of Āmukha; explanation of, 922
- preceptor, characteristics of, 804  
should be respected, 618
- preceptors, word denoting persons having same, 1017
- Premokti, a variety of Praśasti, 942
- Preṅkhana, a type of drama, 921
- present time, words signifying, 1015
- presiding deities of elements, location and worship of, 290-91
- presiding deity, worship of, 316-19
- presiding deity of a ground, mode of worshipping, 272-6
- Pretaśilā, at Gayā; merits of offering piṇḍa at, 342
- pride, words denoting, 995
- priests, associated with different Vedas; words denoting, 1017
- priests, officiating, words denoting, 1017
- principles, initiation in, 262-3
- Priti, mother of Dattoli, 49  
worshipped, 90
- priyā, a nerve, 316
- priyaṅgu, a herb, 372
- Priyavrata, son of Svāyambhuva Manu and Śatarūpā, 41  
sons of; performed penance and attained god, 322
- prokṣaṇi, a vessel, 58, 95
- properties, division of, procedure relating to, 666-70  
of a dead man; rules relating to payment to heirs, 680
- property, code of law relating to disputes about, 657-8  
enjoyment and possession as valid relating to, 657-8  
rules relating to sale of, 672  
mortgaged; disputes relating to, 657  
stolen; rules relating to, 672-73  
of women; six kinds of, 541
- prosody, rules of, 901-2  
relating to Vedic metres, 902
- prostration, merits of, 1043
- prśadājya, explanation of the word, 1017
- Prśadhra, one of the eight sons of Vaivāsavata Manu, 735  
became a sūdra on account of killing the cow of his preceptor, 736
- Prśata, son of Jantu; son of, 750
- Prthā, denotes Kunti; accompanied Dhṛtarāṣṭra and Gāndhāri to the forest, 36
- prthā, a vein; carries the wind nāga, 556
- Prthu, son of Vena, 42
- Prthu, installed as the ruler, 47  
two righteous sons of, 43  
—son of Vibhu, 323  
—son of Suyodhana, 736
- Prthudarbha, one of the four sons of Śibi, 747
- Prthulākṣa, son of Lomapāda; son of, 748
- Prthurukmaka, one of the sons of Rukmakavaca, 741
- Prthusena, son of Vṛṣasena, 748
- Prthuśrava, foremost among the sons of Śaśabindu; son of, 741
- prthividhara, a type of temple, 315
- Prthvi, characteristics of the metre, 913
- Prthvidhara, a god; worshipped, 317
- prthvisamānā, mantra, 442
- public service, qualities of those in, 674
- pukkasa, a caste, 430
- pulaka, a gem, 641
- Pulaha, a sage; a mind-born son of Brahmā, 41, 41fn;  
sons of, 49  
father of Viśravas, 24
- Pulastya, a sage; a mind-born son of Brahmā, 41, 41fn  
father of Dattoli, 49
- pulmonary consumption, commendable food during, 753
- Pulomā, a daughter of Vaiśvānara, 46
- Puloman, son of Danu and father of Śaci, 46
- puruṣavana, one of the rites, 59  
the time for performing, 86, 95
- punarnavā, a herb; used as an unguent, 372
- Punaruktatā (tautology), an impurity, 947  
two kinds of, 948  
sub-divisions of, 948
- Punarvasu, an asterism; has the face lateral, 381

- comprises the sphere of wind, 387  
 its location in Koṭācakra, 385  
 commended for all acts, 381  
 commendable for imparting archery, 359  
 commendable for taking harvested grains inside the house, 361  
 misery caused by the transit of Sun in 363  
 should not enter the cow-pen in, 361  
 —son of Candana- Dundubhi; wife and son of, 742  
 Puṇḍarika, a deity presiding over the banner, 148  
 worship of, 284  
 —a rite, 1079  
 —son of Nabha; son of, 738  
 —mountain, 352  
 —a measure, 551  
 Puṇḍarikākṣa, form of Viṣṇu at Puṣkara, 841  
 —a formula known as, 55  
 Puṇḍra, one of the sons of Bali, 747  
 punishment, one of the means to be employed by the king, 587  
 a political expedient, 627  
 two kinds of, 606  
 three kinds of, 628  
 two different kinds of, 628  
 for abuses; varies according to the order of castes, 676  
 pupil, obligation to the preceptor, 673  
 nine-fold function of 929  
 pūraka, a variety of prāṇāyāma; reason for its name as, 557  
 purāṇa, defined as having five characteristics, 992  
 Purāṇas, eighteen in number, 2, 730  
 as a form of Hari, 492  
 as an Aparāvīdyā, 2  
 the names of eleven Rudras in, 45fn  
 merits of making a gift of, 735  
 Purañjaya, son of Sṛñjaya; son of, 747  
 Purasta, one of the three sons of Matināra, 748  
 Purastād Bṛhāti, composition of, 903  
 Purastād Jyotis, composition of, 904  
 pure, word denoting, 996  
 things which are, 440  
 purgative, the herb that is the best, 757  
 decoction of herbs to be given as, 769  
 a decoction to be given as, 775  
 greasy barley water as; a different combination known as nārāca as, 778  
 purification for different pollutions, 441  
 for travellers for eating food, 480  
 mode of, 82 ff  
 of the principle of establishment, 248-52  
 of the principle of peace, 254-57  
 of remnant materials, 480  
 of scriptural knowledge, 252-54  
 of things, 439-40  
 purificatory rites, their number and names, 85ff  
 forty-eight names of, 466  
 purity, two kinds—external and internal, 1042  
 Pūrṇa, a mountain, 414  
 pūrṇa, a pitcher, 270  
 pūrṇā, a stone, 269  
 Pūrṇagiri, a mountain, 412  
 pūrṇimā, fifteenth day of lunar fortnight, 990  
 letter denoting, 417  
 Purojava, son of Anila, 44  
 Purovasu, son of Babhrusetu, 747  
 pūrtadharmā, explanation of, 539  
 Pūru, one of the sons of Manu and Naḍvalā, 42  
 —one of the sons of Yayāti, and Devayāni, 25, 31, 740  
 Janamejaya was born to, 748  
 one of the founders of a dynasty, 740  
 lineage of, 748-51  
 Puruhūta, son of Dravarasa; son of, 742  
 Purujāti, was born from Śānti; son of, 749  
 Purukutsa, son of Māndhātṛ; wife of; sons of, 737  
 Purumīḍha, one of the three sons of Bṛhat, 749  
 Purūravas, born to Budha and Ilā, 735, 739  
 born from Soma; father of Āyu, 25  
 enjoyed the company of Urvaśī, 739  
 practised Yoga and reached the world of Gandharvas; eight sons of, 739  
 divided one fire into three, 739  
 Puruṣa, form of Viṣṇu at Puruṣavaṭa, 841  
 Puruṣa (soul), Viṣṇu's entry in, 39  
 Puruṣasūkta, hymn; offering of water made with, 437  
 repetition of; as remover of sins, 482  
 Puruṣavaṭa, a place; the name of Puruṣa to be repeated at, 841  
 Puruṣottama, form of Viṣṇu in the region of Oḍhra, 842  
 —a śālagrāma, 126  
 Puruṣottama (Purī), a sacred place, 491

- merits of doing Śrāddha at, 350
- Pūrvabhādrapādā, an asterism; belongs to the sphere of fire, 387  
location in koṭacakra, 385  
represented by letters, 400  
associated with increase of grain, 361  
causing death, 377
- Pūrvaphālguni, an asterism; belongs to the sphere of fire, 387  
location of letters representing, 400  
commendable for doing agriculture, 361  
associated with increase of grains, 361  
profitable, 376  
misery caused by, 363
- Pūrvas, the three asterisms; associated with increase of grains, 361  
medicine to be administered in, 358  
commended for copulation, 434  
adversity caused by purchase of goods in, 359  
an employer should not be attended to in, 360
- Pūrvāśāḍha, an asterism; belongs to the watery region, 388  
location of letter representing, 400  
commendable for sowing seeds, 361  
associated with increase of grains, 361  
misery caused by transit of Sun in, 363  
affliction caused by, 377
- pūṣā, an occult nerve, 253
- Pūṣan, one of the Ādityas; as son of Kāśyapa, 45  
to be worshipped, 316  
worshipped with fried grains, 108
- Puṣkala, a class of men in Krauñcadvīpa, 3:2
- Puṣkara, narration of duties of castes, by, 429  
—a continent given to Savana, by Priyavrata, 322, 323  
ruler of, 353  
—a holy spot, 327  
Puṇḍarikākṣa to be contemplated at, 841  
destroys sins, 491  
benefit of making a gift at, 1078  
—son of Bharata, 24  
—a class of men in Krauñcadvīpa, 352
- Puṣkarīṇī, at Gayā; balls of rice to be offered at, 342  
—daughter of Vīraṇa Prajāpati; wife of Cākṣuṣa, 42
- Puṣpadanta, door keeper, 108  
worship of, 273, 317
- puṣpanandaka, a pitcher, 270
- Puṣpaka, chariot, 23  
—a class of temple, 314  
rectangle-shaped, 314  
nine temples belonging to the class of, 314
- puṣpakṛcchra, an expiation; explanation of, 483
- Puṣpavat, a boundary mountain, 352
- Puṣpitāgrā, characteristics of the metre, 911  
to be employed in a Mahākāvya, 920
- Puṣpotkaṭā, wife of Viśravas, 24
- Puṣṭi, wife of Dhātā, 739  
worshipped, 91
- Puṣṭi, nourishment; worshipped, 51
- Puṣṭiharā, a goddess, 376
- Puṣṭikā, a female divinity; worshipped, 52
- Puṣya, month; profit gained by purchase of perfume in, 387  
—asterism; belongs to the sphere of fire, 387  
has a firm look, 382  
location in koṭacakra, 385  
location of the letter representing, 400  
benefit of wearing a herb in, 410  
rite to determine the sex to be performed in, 357  
karṇavedha to be done in, 359  
good for eating new fruits and food, 358  
commended for all acts, 381  
misery caused by transit of Sun in, 363
- Puṣa, characteristics of the metre, 912
- Pūtanā, a demoness; sent by Kāṁsa to kill Kṛṣṇa, 27
- Pūtanā, exercises her influence during the day, 826  
letter denoting, 417  
holds sway over the north-east, 138  
symptoms of a child possessed by, 822  
a monster taking possession of the child that is one month old, 822  
material for the child possessed by, 822  
material for fumigation when possessed by, 822  
offering for seven days to appease, 822  
prayer to boyhood form of Viṣṇu to destroy evil forces like, 84  
worshipped by offering meat etc., 109  
offering of meat etc. to, 274

- to be worshipped, 317  
 Pūtimrttika, sub-division of a hell, 1039  
 Pūtivaktra, a hell, 532  
 putrañjiva, a herb, 406
- Qualitative, a kind of Abhivyakti, 943  
 qualities, eight kinds of, 466  
 characteristics associated with the three, 1033  
 needed for gaining fortune, 617  
 query, words standing for, 993
- Rāga (tint), an excellence of word and sense; explanation of, 946  
 Rāghava, words spoken by after hearing Daśaratha's words, 11  
 Hanūmat's words to Sitā to show, 20  
 Aṅgada's words to Rāvaṇa to return Sitā to, 21  
 Bharata's visit to, 24  
 the words of praise spoken by the sages to, 24  
 form of Viṣṇu at Citrakūṭa, 841 (See also Rāma)
- Raghu, son of Kakutstha, 9  
 —son of Anamitra; son of, 737  
 —one of the sons of Yadu, 740
- Rāgiṇi, image of, 138  
 Rahovādi, son of Saṁyāti; son of, 748  
 Rāhu, words denoting, 989  
 born to Simhikā and Vipracitti, 45  
 drinking of the nectar in the guise of the Moon by, 6  
 form of, 137  
 chariot of, 356  
 period (years) of influence of, 363, 393  
 presides over one-sixteenth part of day, 381  
 description of its rule on a day, 409  
 two kinds of eclipses caused by, 388  
 head denoted by the asterism occupied by, 380  
 worshipped, 52  
 contemplated as resembling charcoal, 828  
 merits of making a gift when the Sun is eclipsed by, 362  
 predictions based on the position of, 410  
 in tenth house confers good, 384  
 good or bad luck indicated by, 400  
 fright caused by the aspect of, 378  
 fatality indicated by, 389  
 indicates misery by presence in the seventh house, 383
- Rāhucakra, procedure for writing, 370-71
- description of, 377-78  
 Raivata, one of the eleven forms of Rudra, 45  
 —the fifth Manu, 427  
 —son of Reva; known as Kakudmin; an account of; performed penance on the Sumeru Mountain and reached lord Viṣṇu; founded Dvāravatī (Dvārakā), 736  
 —a boundary mountain, 352  
 Raivataka, a place; Deva worshipped at, 841  
 Dāmodara worshipped at, 842  
 Raja, son of Vasiṣṭha and Urjā, 49  
 —son of Viraja and father of Satyajit, 323  
 Rājagrha, a place; merits of, 328  
 rājamaya, auspicious nature of the gem called, 641  
 rajani, a herb; used as an unguent, 372  
 rājapaṭṭa, an inferior kind of diamond; said to be auspicious, 641  
 Rajas, father of Ketumat, 48  
 Rājasa, a form of god; letter denoting, 419  
 rājasi, denotes the entry of the Sun in a sign, 362  
 Rājasūya, a sacrifice, 33, 42, 1079  
 Rājeyas, name of the one hundred sons of Rāji, 739  
 Rāji, one of the sons of Āyus; hundred sons of, 739  
 got a boon from lord Viṣṇu and killed the demons, 739-40  
 whose sons usurped the kingdom of Indra, 740
- Rāji, salutations made to, 52  
 rājila, a class of serpents, 807  
 Rājīni, daughter of Raivata; one of the wives of the Sun, 735  
 Rākā, a son of Aṅgiras and Smṛti, 49  
 rākā, the full moon is called, 990  
 Rākini, a goddess; worshipped, 415  
 Rakṣa (Nairṛta), worshipped, 51  
 Rākṣasa, a year of the Hindu calendar, 405  
 rākṣasa, a type of marriage, 435  
 Rākṣasi, a spirit afflicting the child in the eleventh month: symptoms of the child afflicted by, 824  
 image of, 138  
 Raktā, invoked in worship, 230  
 Raktacandikā, invoked as the eyes in the worship of Kubjikā, 411  
 Raktākṣa, a year of the Hindu calendar, 405  
 Raktākṣi, image of, 138  
 Rāma, manifestation of Viṣṇu as, 9-25  
 foremost of Raghu, 738

- eldest son of Daśaratha, 738  
 birth of, 10  
 married Sitā, 11  
 conquest of Paraśurāma by, 11  
 proposal for coronation of, 11  
 Kaikeyi's request to send him to forest, 12  
 Daśaratha's words to, 13  
 Bharata's meeting with; arrival at Daṇḍaka, 15  
 Khara, Dūṣaṇa and other demons killed by, 16  
 lamented and searched for Sitā, 17  
 befriended Sugriva, 17  
 was assured by Sugriva of help to get back Sitā, 18  
 Sugriva's meeting with, 18  
 signet ring of, 18  
 Hanūmat recounting the story of, 19  
 crossing the ocean by, 21  
 fainting of, 22  
 killing of Rāvaṇa by, 23, 738  
 rescue of Sitā etc. by, 23  
 ruled at Ayodhyā, 738  
 image of, 115, 129  
 to be contemplated on every mountain, 482  
 salutations made to, 82  
 benefit of worshipping, 343  
 ethics narrated by, 617-18  
 Rāma (Paraśurāma), 9  
 Rāma, See Balarāma  
 Ramaṇa, a son of Dhara and Manoharā, 44  
 Rāmatirtha, at Gayā; balls of rice to be offered to, 342  
 Rāmāyaṇa, story of, 9  
 composed by Vālmiki after hearing from Nārada, 25  
 Rambha, a monkey; accompanied Rāma to Laṅkā, 21  
 Rambhā, as a form of Gaurī, 133  
 Rāmeśa, a liṅga at Gayā; benefits of worshipping, 343  
 Ramya, Nilācala given by Agnidhra to, 322  
 Ramyā, characteristics of the metre, 912  
 Ramyaka, a mountain, 324  
 Raṇāśva, one of the two sons of Saṁhatāśva; son of, 737  
 randhra, herb denoted by, 407  
 range of things, words denoting, 988  
 Rāṅgūlananda, to be worshipped, 414  
 rañjani, a flower, 529  
 rasāḥ, herb denoted by, 406  
 Rāsaka, a type of drama, 921  
 Rāṣṭrapāla, one of the sons of Ugrasena, 742  
 Rāṣṭravardhana, a minister of King Daśaratha, 11  
 rathāṇu, a measure, 107  
 Rathoddhata, characteristics of the metre, 912  
 Rati, invoked, 91  
 propitiation of, 176  
 reborn as Māyāvati, story of 29, 29fn  
 ratnadhenu, a great gift, 544  
 Ratnasundarī, worshipped in the worship of Kubjikā, 412  
 rats, poisons due to sixteen kinds; remedy for, 819  
 Raucya, thirteenth Manu, 428  
 Raudra (Raudri), a year of Hindu calendar, 405  
 —a muhūrta; deeds to be done in, 371  
 Raudraka, propitiation of, 176  
 Raudri, a female energy, 51  
 one of three forms of Ūmā, 374  
 a comparison of goddess Tvaritā, 424  
 as an old goddess, 412  
 characteristics of, 375  
 worshipped, 51, 201, 413  
 to be worshipped, 412  
 Raurava, had a son Duḥkha through Vedanā, 49  
 Raurava, a hell, 531  
 sub-division of hells, 1039  
 Rāvaṇa, Viṣṇu's manifestation to kill, 10  
 son of Viśravas and Kaikasi, 24  
 the king of Laṅkā, 15fn  
 Śūrpaṅkhā's visit to; abduction of Sitā by, 16  
 requesting Sitā to marry him, 19  
 reference to Jaṭāyu wounded by, 18  
 battle with Rāma and fall of, 23  
 search for Sitā by Hanūmat in the house of, 19  
 Hanūmat's words to and anger of, 20  
 was intent on killing Aṅgada, 21  
 Kumbhakarna's words to, 22  
 killed by Rāma, 738  
 —a muhūrta; deeds to be done in, 371  
 Ravi, as a name of the Sun, 136  
 —herb denoted by, 406  
 recipes, which would revive dead, 772  
 reconditeness, a defect of word; five kinds of, 947  
 red, words denoting different shades of, 902  
 regal power, three kinds of, 629  
 rejoice, words denoting, 990  
 relatives, words denoting different kinds of, 1014  
 religious observance, words denoting, 1017

- remedies, five groups of; the characteristics of, 763
- renovation of decayed images, 184
- Reṇukhaya, one of the sons of Satajit, 740
- Renukā, Bhārgava as son of, 8
- renunciation, explanation of the term, 1059
- greatness of, 464
- repetition, word meaning, 993
- of a word; two kinds of, 935
- compounded, 935
- of a sentence, 935
- reply, words signifying, 993
- respiration, nine actions of, 929
- retention, explanation of the term, 1049
- four kinds of; explanation of, 1050
- Reva, Raivata alias Kakudmin was the eldest among the hundred sons of, 736
- Revā, a river; greatness of, 328
- Revanta, son of Sun and Rājñi, 735
- Revanta, merits of worshipping, 343
- Revati, a female force, 84
- image of, 138
- goddess invoked, 399
- worshipped in the wind-circle, 375
- daughter of Raivata; given in marriage to Baladeva, 736
- wife of Balabhadra; sons of, 29
- beloved of lord Viṣṇu, 746
- an asterism; has its face lateral, 381
- belongs to the watery region, 388
- location in koṭacakra, 385
- location in a diagram, 400
- marriage commendable in, 357
- profit caused by things bought in, 360
- sowing seeds gains fortune in, 361
- new fruits and food to be eaten in, 358
- wearing of gems commendable in, 359
- misery caused by Sun's transit in, 363
- reward, for soldiers after victory; proportionate to the task accomplished, 632
- R̥gveda, authority for the Dvāipāyanas, 730
- hymns to be recited by the followers of, 287
- two divisions of, 730
- number of hymns of the brāhmaṇas of, 730
- application of the mantras of, 683-695
- as a manifestation of lord Viṣṇu, 356
- as an Aparāvidyā, 2
- saluted, 50
- assigned on the hand, 64
- ornament for Indra, 93
- R̥gvedā, a Yoginī; image of, 138
- rheumatic pain, in general and in the hip; remedy for, 775
- rheumatic patients, commendable medicines for, 754
- rheumatism, remedy for, 775
- righteousness, ten characteristics of, 454
- riktā days, good for commencement of study, 359
- Ripra, one of the sons of Śiṣṭi and Succhāyā, 42
- Ripu, had the son Cākṣuṣa through Br̥hati, 42
- Ripuhara, form of Viṣṇu at Lokākula, 841
- Ripuñjaya, form of Viṣṇu at Virajā, 841
- one of the sons of Śiṣṭi and Succhāyā, 42
- rite, strengthening, 410-11
- rites, different kinds of, 379
- R̥jṣa, sub-division of a hell, 1039
- Rk, hymns; creation of, 40
- Rkṣa, born to Ajamiḍha and Dhūmini; son of, 750
- Rkṣa (the second), son of Vidūratha; son of, 750, 751
- r̥kṣanāyaka, a type of temple, 315
- Rkseyu, one of the ten sons of Bhadrāśva, 748
- R̥namokṣa, at Gayā; merits of bathing in, 342
- rocanā, a herb, 372
- rocika, a perfection, 257
- Rodani, a monstress affecting the child on the tenth day after birth; symptoms of the child possessed by; offering and fumigation to appease; the unguent to besmear on the child possessed by, 822
- a monstress seizing the child in the third year; symptoms of the child seized by; offering to appease; fumigation when the child is seized by, 824
- rodhaka, explanation of, 403
- rodhamudrā, 308
- Rohiṇi, one of the fixed asterisms, 381
- one of the blunted asterisms, 382
- location in koṭacakra, 385
- location of the letter denoting, 400
- reason for unusual commotion in, 388
- a combination caused by the presence of Sun in, 362

- new fruits and food should be taken in, 358  
 commendable for marriage, 337  
 commended for copulation, 434  
 good for the first feeding of the child, 358  
 good for commencing construction of a house, 360  
 not good for entering the cow-pen, 361  
 misery caused by Sun's presence in, 363  
 wife of Vasudeva; the birth of Balarāma to, 26, 26fn., 744  
 Rohitāśva, son of Hariścandra; son of, 737  
 roots, paste of; to make the woman deliver the child comfortably, 834  
 rosary, the presiding deity of the thread of, 899  
 rosary beads, four different kinds of; each subdivided into four; benefits of wearing and using for counting, 894  
 row, words which mean, 1007  
 royal fan, characteristics of, 638  
 royal priest, qualities of, 619  
 Ṛṣabha, a constellation; correction for, 367  
 (See also Taurus)  
 —son of Nābhi and Meru, 323  
 —son of Svāhya; son of, 743  
 Ṛṣabha (hills), as a sacred place, 328  
 Ṛṣabhagajavilasitam, characteristics of the metre, 913  
 Ṛṣi, region known as, 640  
 Ṛṣyamūka, mountain; kingdom restored to Sugriva by Rāma at, 17-18  
 Ṛtadhāmā, Indra during the period of the 12th Manu, 428  
 ṛtavaḥ, herb denoted by, 406  
 Rtu, story relating to his disciple Nidāgha, 1066f  
 ṛtu, herb denoted by, 408  
 Ṛtuparṇa, son of Śrutāyu; son of, 737  
 ṛtvijaḥ, ṛtvik, herb denoted by, 406  
 ruby, a gem, 640  
 characteristics of, 641  
 said to be auspicious, 641  
 rucaka, a herb, 407  
 Rucirā, characteristics of the metre, 913  
 rudantikā, a herb, 406  
 rudhirākṣa, said to be auspicious, 641  
 Rudhirodgāri, a year of the Hindu calendar, 405  
 Rudra, creation of, 40  
 as a son of Sati, 45  
 being known so because of birth from wailing Brahmā, 49  
 protection sought by, 30  
 herb denoted by, 406, 407  
 the five constituents of worship of, 814-15  
 the sage, metre and deity for the hymns for, 815-16  
 the order of recitation of different hymns of, 815  
 presiding deity of an element, 271  
 worship of, 274, 290  
 denoting Śiva as destructive fire; as a form of Viṣṇu, 2  
 the feminine form of Viṣṇu seen by, 6  
 Rudracāmuṇḍā, a goddess of dancing; image of, 134  
 Rudracaṇḍā, a goddess; worshipped, 132  
 Rudracarcikā, a goddess, image of, 134  
 rudrahina, a pavilion relating to the presiding deity, 318  
 rudrajaṭā, a herb, 406  
 rudrākṣa, excellence of, 900  
 Rudrapāda, at Gayā; merits of touching, 338  
 Rudrasaṅgrāhī, a goddess; image of, 138  
 Rudras, as a creation of the sages, 41  
 names of eight, 263  
 eleven names of, 44, 44fn., 45fn.  
 fourteen names of, 254-55  
 25 different forms of, 252-3  
 names of different, 249  
 numerous, 45  
 consecration of, 180  
 Rudra, a siddha, 414  
 Rudreśa, a liṅga, 343  
 Rudra Sāvartī, the twelfth Manu, 428  
 Rukmakavaca, son of Kambalabarhiṣa; foremost among fifty sons of, 741  
 Ruknavatī, characteristics of the metre, 912  
 Rukmeṣu, one of the sons of Rukmakavaca, 741  
 Rukmikuṇḍa, at Gayā, 341  
 Rukmiṇī, one of the wives of Kṛṣṇa, 28, 744  
 birth of Pradyumna to, 29  
 had many forms together with Kṛṣṇa, 31  
 Rūkṣakarṇī, a goddess; image of, 138  
 Rumā, entrusted to Sugriva by Rāma, 17  
 Rūpaka, explanation of; when it may be called Upamā, 941  
 Rūpakam, one of the similarities, 939  
 Rūpavardhana, a form of Rudra, 252  
 Ruru, a demon; slayer of, 399  
 Ruṣadgu, son of Svāhā; son of, 741

- Ruṣadratha, son of Titikṣu; son of, 747  
 Śabdabheda, a weapon, 14  
 Śabdabrahman, one of the two brah-  
 mans; explanation of the term, 1060  
 Śabdaka, one of those worshipped in  
 the worship of Kubjikā, 414  
 Śābdam, explanation of the term, 1027  
 Sabhānara, one of the foremost sons  
 of Viduṣa; son of, 747  
 Śaci, daughter of Puloman, 46  
 śaciyāga, one of the four acts relating  
 to a marriage, 434  
 sacred formulas, conferring prosperity  
 and having medicinal effect; des-  
 cription of, 770-72  
 sacred spots, greatness of, 326-8  
 sacred thread, made of different  
 material for the different castes, 433  
 investiture of, 221-24  
 mode of investiture of, 215-21  
 knots on, 216  
 sacrifices, seven domestic, 466  
 sacrificial ground, words denoting,  
 1017  
 sacrificial pit, mode of constructing,  
 56-61  
 sacrificial rites, of three kinds, 1043  
 classified as sāttvika, rājasa and  
 tāmasa, 1071-72  
 Sadāśiva, presiding deity of an ele-  
 ment, 271  
 identified with letter kṣa, 254  
 worshipped in the worship of  
 Kubjikā, 414  
 Sadāśivā, a goddess worshipped in the  
 worship of Tvaritā, 424  
 śadaṣṭaka, position of planets, 357  
 sādḥaka, one of the tārābalas, 359  
 Sādhanī, letter denoting, 417  
 sādhyā, relating to letter in worship,  
 390, 391, 403  
 relating to the letters in the name  
 of the votary, 895  
 Sādhyā, Sādhyās were born to, 44  
 sādhyamantras, become fruitful by  
 repetitions, worship etc, 803  
 Sādhyas, born to Sādhyā, 44  
 consecration of the images of, 180  
 sadobhaya, a pavilion, 318  
 śadrśyam (similarity), an embellish-  
 ment of senses, 939  
 Sadyojāta, letter denoting, 418  
 saffron, used as an unguent, 372  
 Sagara, son of Bāhu; two wives of;  
 sons of; whose sons were burnt by  
 sage Kapila, 737  
 sages, general term for, 1018  
 names of the seven prominent  
 referred to as Citraśikhaṇḍin,  
 989  
 Sagittarius, the time taken by the  
 Sun to traverse, 384  
 friendly with Gemini, 392  
 Sahadeva, son of Somadatta; son of,  
 750  
 —son of Jarāsandha; son of, 750  
 —born to Mādri and Pāṇḍu, 744, 751  
 born through the grace of Aśvini-  
 kumāra, 32  
 fell on the way of march, 37  
 son of, 751  
 sahadeva, a herb, 372  
 sahadēvi, a herb used as an unguent,  
 372  
 offers good protection, 378  
 used in a charm, 405-6  
 sāhasa, denotes fine; three kinds of,  
 588-89  
 Sahasrajit, eldest son of Yadu, 740  
 Sahasrāṁśa, a name of the Sun, 136  
 Sahasrāśva, son of Ahināśva; son of,  
 738  
 Saḥiṣṇu, one of the sons of Pulaha and  
 Kṣamā, 49  
 Sahokti, one of the similarities, 939  
 explanation of, 941  
 Sahya, mountain, 350  
 rivers flowing from, 351  
 Devadeveṣa to be worshipped, 842  
 Sahyādri, a sacred mountain, 328  
 śaila, herb denoted by, 406, 407, 408  
 Śailuṣa, a Gandharva; sons of, 24  
 Saimhikeyas, Rāhu and others; pro-  
 geny of Śimhikā, 45  
 Saindhava, a forest, 842  
 saindhava, a herb, 407  
 Sairandhri, Draupadi as, 33  
 Saitava, an authority in prosody, 913  
 Śāka, one of the seven continents, 323  
 given by Priyavrata to Bhavya, 322  
 rulers of, 352  
 about the people of, 351  
 sakala, one of the kinds of mantras  
 of Śiva, 873  
 Śāka, son of Nariṣyanta, one of the  
 sons of Vaivasvata Manu, 736  
 śakaṭa, an array; a variation of the  
 array called bhoga, 634  
 an array of the shape of a cart, 635  
 Śākha, younger brother of Kumāra, 44  
 image of, 134  
 Śākini, a goddess; to be worshipped,  
 415  
 Śākini-s, image of, 135  
 Śakra (Indra), was given the worlds  
 by Viṣṇu, 8  
 abandoning of the festivity of, 27  
 birth of Arjuna by the grace of, 32  
 Maruts as the allies of, 47  
 praised Lakṣmi, 49

- salutation made to the face of, 51  
 worshipped, 316  
 one of the twelve Ādityas, 45
- Śakrajit (Indrajit), 20
- śākta, a method of locating mantras, 416
- Śakti, a guardian deity, 50  
 salutation made to, 52  
 worshipped, 284
- śakti, a posture of the hands, 857
- Śaktidikṣā, initiation to be performed, 73
- śakuna, an astral combination, 363
- Śakuni, a son of Hiraṇyākṣa, 46, 46fn  
 —assisted Duryodhana in dice play, 33  
 —an impeding force; prayer to Kṛṣṇa to destroy, 84  
 —karaṇa on fourteenth day of dark fortnight, 369
- Śakuntalā, wife of Duṣyanta, 749
- Śakunti, son of Dṛḍharatha; son of, 742
- Śakvari, name of a metre, 905  
 Mahākāvya should be composed in the metre, 926
- Śala, one of the sons of Bālhika, 751
- Śālagrāma, a sacred place, 350, 491  
 Mahāyoga to be contemplated at, 841  
 Hari to be contemplated at, 841  
 resorted to by Rṣabha, 323  
 merits of, 328
- śālagrāma, characteristics of, 124-126  
 three kinds of worship of, 126  
 mode of worshipping, 126
- śālāgrha, a type of temple, 314
- Śālīhotra, science of horses expounded by, 789
- Śālīni, characteristics of the metre, 912
- Śālmala, a continent, 323  
 given by Priyavrata to Vapuṣmān, 322  
 extent of and rulers of, 352
- Śālmala, a hell, 532
- Śālmali, main river in the hell, 1039
- śālmaliya, flower not to be used in worship, 529
- Śalya, fought for a day and was killed by Yudhiṣṭhira, 35
- samādhi, definition of, 454  
 explanation of, 943, 1076  
 explanation of the mode of practising, 1051  
 benefits of practising, 1052
- samam (evenness), an embellishment of sense, 939
- Sāman, hymns; creation of, 40  
 samāna, a life-force carried by the vein suṣumnā; functions of, 556
- Samāni, characteristics of the metre, 908
- samapada, relating to archery, 645
- samasaptaka, position of planets, happiness indicated by, 357
- Samāsokti, brevity of expression, 943
- Samasyā, a puzzle, 992  
 a kind of Citrakāvya, 935  
 definition of, 936
- Samavakāra, a type of drama, 921
- samāvarta, a rite to be performed, 95
- Sāmaveda, as an Aparāvidyā, 2  
 two branches of, 730  
 division of, 429  
 three kinds of songs of, 730  
 extent of, 730  
 hymns to be recited by a follower of, 287  
 use of the hymns of, 704-7  
 the śrisūkta of, 710  
 sacred for water god, 93
- Samaya, a Rudra, 254
- Samayavimala, to be worshipped, 412, 415
- Sāmāyikatvam (conventional), an excellence of sense, 945
- Sāmba, son of Jāmbavati from Kṛṣṇa, 29, 744  
 curse of the sages on, 36fn
- Śambara, a son of Hiraṇyākṣa, 46  
 —demon; Daśaratha's battle with, 12fn  
 —a companion of Kaiśa, 29  
 —story relating to, 29fn
- Śambarā, image of, 138
- Sambhava, one of the guards of door; worshipped, 93  
 son of Ūrja; son of, 750
- Śāmbhava, a method of locating mantras, 416
- sambhavāyaniya, details relating to the vow of, 520-1
- Śambhu, denotes Śiva; reference to Kāma made bodiless by, 29  
 Sati born again and becoming wife of, 50  
 investiture of sacred thread for, 215  
 one of the Rudras, 45, 252
- wife of Dhruva and mother of Siṣṭi and Bhavya, 42
- Sambhūta, son of Purukutsa; son of, 737
- Sambhūti, wife of Marici; progeny of, 49
- Samhāna, son of Dharmanetra; son of, 740
- Samhāri, a goddess, 375

- saṁhāramudrā, 198, 211, 212, 237, 238, 239  
 Saṁhārikā, letter denoting, 417  
 Saṁhāriṇimudrā, 236  
 Saṁhatāśva, son of Nikumbha; two sons of, 737  
 Śami, one of the five sons of Śoṇāśva; son of, 743  
 Saṁjñā, daughter of Tvaṣṭṛ; one of the wives of the Sun; gave birth to Vaivasvata Manu and the Aśvins, 735  
 sampat, one of the tārābalas, 359  
 Sampāti, eagle brother of Jaṭāyu; words spoken to the monkeys by, 18  
 words spoken to Hanūmat and others by, 19  
 sampradāna (giving), three kinds of; explanation of, 971  
 samprāptidvādaśī, on the practice of, 513  
 Sampratāpana, sub-division of a hell, 1039  
 sampuṭa, relating to a mantra, 403  
 Samrāt, daughter of Kardama and Devahūti, 41  
 saṁsargayamaka (samudga?), one of the Yamakas, 935  
 Saṁśayopamā, explanation of, 940  
 Samuccayopamā, explanation of, 940  
 Samudra, father of Śavarṇā, 43  
 samudra, a treasure, 269  
 Saṁvaraṇa, son of Rkṣa; son of, 750  
 Saṁvarta, a law-giver, 455  
 Saṁvarta, one of those worshipped in the worship of Kubjikā, 414  
 letter denoting, 419  
 Saṁvidhāna (contrivance), an excellence of sense, 945  
 Saṁyāti, son of Bahuvridha; son of, 748  
 Saṁyogavimala, one of the Vimalas; worshipped, 412  
 saṁyuktahalapāṅkti, name of a gift, 547  
 Sanaka, a sage; dwells in Janaloka, 354  
 expositions made by, 1074  
 Sanatkumāra, creation of, 40, 48  
 Kumāra identified with, 44  
 sand, word for, 995  
 sandal, red; as an unquent, 372  
 sandhyā, a flower, 529  
 Sandhyāvata, as an excellent place, 330  
 Śāṅḍilya, a Pāncarātrāgama, 106  
 Sāṅḍipani, guru of Kṛṣṇa, 28  
 Saṅghāta, sub-division of a hell, 1039  
 saṅgraha, collection of stories, 992  
 saṅgrahaṇa, a posture relating to riding horses, 787  
 Śani, worshipped 52,  
 Śanicakra, to find victory; drawing of, 370  
 saṅjaya, a modification of the array daṇḍa, 633  
 Saṅjivana, sub-division of a hell, 1039  
 Saṅjivani, letter denoting, 417  
 Saṅkalpa, progeny of, 44  
 Śaṅkara (Śiva), fight between Hari and, 30  
 installation of image of, 172  
 worshipped in the worship of Kubjikā, 414  
 Śaṅkari, image of, 133  
 Saṅkarṣaṇa, denotes Balarāma, 26 fn  
 as a form of Viṣṇu, 62  
 installation of image of, 172  
 as a deity presiding over the banner, 148  
 worship with the basic syllable of, 68  
 worshipped, 91  
 —a śālagrāma, 124, 125.  
 Śaṅkha, a law-giver, 455  
 —a serpent, image of, 137  
 śaṅkha, a type of temple, 315  
 —a treasure, 88, 111, 269  
 —one of the postures of the hand, 857  
 Śaṅkhadvāra, a place, 841  
 Śaṅkhakūṭa, group of mountains, 325, 325fn  
 Śaṅkhapād, son of Kardama Prajāpati; made ruler of the south, 47  
 Śaṅkhapāla, one of the eight chief serpents; the number of heads of, 807  
 Śaṅkhin, form of Viṣṇu at Śaṅkhadvāra, 841  
 śaṅkhini, an occult nerve, 257  
 carries the wind dhanañjaya, 556  
 Śaṅkhya, creation according to, 39fn  
 saṅkirṇa, a variety of horses, 789  
 Saṅkr̥ti, classical metres based on, 914  
 Saṅkṣepa, an embellishment of sound and sense; explanation of, 942  
 Saṅkṣiptaka, a variety of Ārabhaṭi, 928  
 Śaṅku, one of the sons of Ugrasena, 742  
 Śaṅkukarṇa, worship of, 284  
 Śaṅkumati, gāyatrī, composition of the metre, 904  
 Śaṅkurārya, one of the sons of Danu, 46  
 Śaṅkusirāḥ, different reading for Śaṅkurārya, 46fn  
 Sannateyu, one of the ten sons of Bhadrāśva, 748

- Sannati, wife of Kratu; progeny of, 49  
 Śānta, a son of Āpa, 44  
 śāntā, a nerve, 316  
 Śāntabhaya, a son of Medhātithi, 351  
 Śantanu, born in the race of Bharata  
 son of Pratiṣa; 31  
 sons of; through Gaṅgā and Kāli  
 (Satyavati), 751  
 śāntapana, an expiation; explanation  
 of, 482, 494  
 for having stolen things, 476  
 for having drunk polluted water,  
 480, 487  
 Santati, different reading for Sannati,  
 49fn  
 Śānti, Indra at the time of the 10th  
 Manu, 428  
 —a female energy; worshipped, 91  
 —born to Ajamiṣṭha and Nīlini, 749  
 sapīṇḍikaraṇa, rite; mode of per-  
 forming, 348-9  
 to be performed for women, 442, 460  
 sapphire, a gem, 640  
 qualities of a good, 641  
 sapta, herb denoted by, 407  
 Saptabhūmā, a hell, 1039  
 Saptarātra, religious texts, 105  
 Saptārcis, worship of, 285  
 śara, a posture of the hands, 857  
 a flower, 529  
 sārā, a ray of the Sun, 195  
 Sārā, image of, 138  
 Śārabha, a monkey that accompanied  
 Rāma to Laṅkā, 21  
 Śārabhaṅga, sage saluted by Rāma, 15  
 entered the fire in the presence  
 of Rāma, 15fn  
 Śārabhaṭa, a muhūrta; deeds to be  
 done in, 371  
 Śāradvata, married Ahlayā, and had a  
 son, 750  
 Śāradvipa, future birth of cakravākas  
 in, 349  
 Sāraṇa, one of the sons of Vasudeva  
 and Rohiṇi, 744  
 śarapuṅkhikā, a herb, 410  
 Sarasiruha, a variety of bandha, 937  
 Śārasvatākalpa, a kalpa period, 732  
 śārasvatāvratā, mode of practising, 524  
 Sarasvati (goddess), saluted, 1  
 the term used in a formula, 52  
 image of, 131, 133  
 worship of, 197  
 benefit of worshipping, 343  
 —river, 327  
 confluence of Ganges with, 327  
 Sarasvati, river at Gayā, 344  
 Sāraṭha, beads belonging to the Savitra  
 class, 894  
 Sarayū, a river, Daśaratha's funeral  
 rites done on the banks of, 14  
 Śarirā, letter denoting, 417  
 Sarmiṣṭhā, daughter of Vṛṣaparvan,  
 25, 46, 740  
 was the second wife of Yayāti, 25,  
 740  
 story relating to Devayāni's curse  
 on, 25fn  
 Śārṅga, worshipped, 52, 88  
 Śārṅgadhārin, form of Viṣṇu at  
 Daṇḍaka, 842  
 Sarpa, a form of Rudra, 45  
 sarpa, a constellation; adversity caused  
 by purchase of things in, 359  
 sarpacāri, array; modification of  
 bhoga, 635  
 sarpākṣi, used as an unguent, 372  
 sarpāsya, a modification of the array  
 daṇḍa, 633  
 Sarpis, an ocean, 324  
 sarpya, herb denoted by, 407  
 Sarva, a name of Rudra, 50  
 worship of, 290  
 sārvaabhauma, significance of the word,  
 1018  
 Sarvabhavodbhava, a form of Rudra,  
 252  
 Sarvabhūtamāni, a female energy;  
 worshipped, 51  
 Sarvadā (Śārvari), a year of the  
 Hindu calendar, 405  
 Sarvadhātri, a year of the Hindu  
 calendar, 405  
 Sarvajit, a year of the Hindu calendar,  
 405  
 Sarvajñā, image of, 138  
 Sarvajñavimala, one of the Vimalas,  
 412  
 worshipped, 415  
 Sārvakāmada, letter denoting, 419  
 Sarvakarmā, son of Kalmāṣapāda; son  
 of, 737  
 Sarvanetra, a deity presiding over the  
 banner, 145  
 worship of, 284  
 Sarvapāpahara, form of Viṣṇu on  
 Vindhya mountain, 842  
 Sarvatobhadra, a mystical diagram,  
 879-80  
 worship of Hari in, 75fn  
 —a type of temple, 314  
 —one of the bandhas; description of;  
 936  
 three kinds of, 937  
 —an array, 612, 630  
 modification of maṇḍala, 634  
 has opening on all sides, 634  
 formation optional, 635  
 Sarvatomukhī, an energy, established,  
 304

- worshipped, 51  
 Sarvatraga, son of Dharmasāvraṇi Manu, 428  
 Śaryāti, one of the eight sons of Vaivasvata Manu, 735, 736  
 —one of the seven sons of Nahuṣa, 740  
 Śaśabindu, son of Citraratha; a great monarch; a devotee of lord Viṣṇu; had ten thousand sons, 741  
 śaśi, herb denoted by, 406  
 Saśiva, a form of Rudra, 252  
 Śaṣṭhā, worshipped, 412  
 Śaṣṭhi, one of the Ādināthas, 412  
 Śatabhiṣak, a movable asterism, 381  
 a blunted asterism, 382  
 an asterism; profit caused by purchase in, 360  
 for increasing the grains, 361  
 misery caused by Sun's transition, 363  
 location of letter representing, 400  
 Śatadhanu, was killed by Kṛṣṇa, 743  
 Śatadhanvā, one of the ten sons of Hṛdika, 743  
 Śatadyumna, a son of Manu and Nāḍvalā, 42  
 Śatahpāṅkti, a variety of Paṅkti, 904  
 Śatajit, one of the sons of Yadu; three sons of, 740  
 śatamūli, a herb, 407  
 Śatānanda, a sage, 10  
 son of Śaradvata and Ahalyā, 750  
 son of, 750  
 Śatānika, son of Nakula and Draupadi, 751  
 śatapuṣpi, a herb, 407  
 Śatarūpā, two sons of, 41  
 Śataśṛṅga, hermitage of, 32  
 Śātātapa, a law-giver, 455  
 Śatatārā, an asterism; located in Koṭācakra, 385  
 śatāvri, a herb, 371  
 Śatāyus, a son of Purūravas, 739  
 Sati, gave up her life; born as daughter of Himavān, 30  
 —a nerve, 316  
 —an excellence of word, 944  
 Śatobṛhati, name of Mahābṛhati according to Bhaṅḍila, 904  
 Satrajit, son of Nighna; got the Syamantaka from Sun god; Syamantaka gem returned by Kṛṣṇa to; was killed by Śatadhanu, 743  
 śatru, explanation of, 1019  
 Śatrugna, birth of, 10  
 married Śrutakirti, 11  
 was brought to the city along with Bharata, 14  
 killed Lavaṇa, 24  
 Śatrujit, one of the five sons of Śoṇāśva, 743  
 Saṭṭaka, a type of drama, 921  
 sāttvika, one of the qualities, 48  
 Saturday, tripuṣkara caused by, 362  
 prosperity caused by Kṛttikā occurring on, 377  
 inauspiciousness of seventh day on, 381  
 rule of Rāhu lies at south-east on, 409  
 Saturn, distance of, 354  
 chariot of, 356  
 period (years) of influence of, 363, 393  
 presides over a part of day, 381  
 diagram of, 409  
 the letter presided over by, 374  
 image of, 137  
 contemplated as dark, 828  
 confers good in sixth place, 383  
 brings good in tenth place, 384  
 victory indicated by, 393  
 begets defeat, 377  
 fatality indicated by, 389  
 bad luck indicated by, 400  
 Sātvata, son of Jantu; four sons of; a good Yādava king, 742  
 Sātvati, one of the modes, 928  
 Satya, a manifestation of Viṣṇu, 428  
 —Aiśvara, an āgama, spoken by, 106  
 —one of the sons of Priyavrata, 322  
 —a world; worshipped, 79  
 —personified; worshipped, 316  
 Satyā, one of the wives of Kṛṣṇa, 744  
 Satyabhāmā, daughter of Satrajit; married by Kṛṣṇa, 743, 744  
 was devoted to Kṛṣṇa, 744  
 return of Kṛṣṇa in the company of, 28  
 Satyadevi, one of the daughters of Devaka; married by Vasudeva, 742  
 Satyadhṛk, son of Śatānanda; progeny of, 750  
 Satyahita, son of Vṛṣabha; son of, 750  
 Satyajit, son of Raja, 323  
 Satyaka, son of Śini, 743  
 Satyaketu, son of Sukumāra, 749  
 Sātyaki, son of Satyaka; also known as Yuyudhāna, 743  
 survived the Bhārata war, 36  
 Satyaloka, distance of; residents of, 354  
 Satyānanda, sandals of; worshipped, 414  
 Satyaratha, son of Satyavrata; son of, 737  
 son of Citraratha; son of, 748  
 Satyavāk, one of the sons of Manu and Nāḍvalā, 42

- Satyavat, different reading for Satyavāk, 42fn
- Satyavati, daughter of Gādhi, 749  
wife of Śantanu, 31  
had Vicitraviryaka as a son, 751
- Satyavrata, son of Taruṇa; son of, 737
- Saubhadra, denotes Abhimanyu
- Saubhāgya (loveliness), an excellence of word and sense; explanation of, 946
- Saubhāgyā, image of, 133
- saubhāgyavrata, details relating to, 502-3
- Saukumārya, an excellence of word, 944
- Saumitri, Lakṣmaṇa, Sitā's words to, 16
- Saumya, a blunted asterism, 382  
—a territory, 350  
—(north) Hiraṇyomaka made as regent of, 48  
—a muhūrta; deeds to be done in, 371
- Saumyā, a goddess accomplishing a charm, 375  
characteristics of the metre, 907
- saumyantras, characteristics of and effects of, 802-3  
got by inversion of the letters of āgneyamantras, 803
- Śaunaka, at the forest of Naimiṣa, 1  
—represents a branch of Atharvaveda, 730  
—a Pāñcarātrāgama, 106
- Śauṇḍikeyas, one of the five branches of Haihayas, 741
- Saurabha, characteristics of the metre, 909
- Śauri, form of Viṣṇu at Utpala, 842
- sautrāmaṇi, a havir-yajña, 86, 466
- Sauvira, a king; an account of knowledge imparted by Bharata to, 1062ff
- Sauvira, country; Viṣṇu temple built by king of, 526
- Savana, a sage, 428  
—one of the sons of Vasiṣṭha and Urjā, 49  
—son of Priyavrata, 322  
ruled Puṣkara, 353  
sons of, 353
- Savarṇā, daughter of Samudra; progeny of, 43
- Savarṇi, the eighth Manu; son of Sūrya and Chāyā, 428  
a disciple of Lomahaṛṣaṇa, 730
- Savitri, one of the twelve Ādityas, 45, 136  
worshipped, 317  
red flowers for worship of, 108
- Savitrā, worship of, 274
- Sāvitra, one of the four kinds of rosary beads; the four divisions of, 894  
a muhūrta; deeds to be done in, 371
- Sāvitrī, letter denoting, 418  
located for worship, 317  
worship of, 274  
name of a new-moon day conferring benefits, 519
- sāvitrīmantra, as purifying from sin, 479
- Scorpio, time taken by the Sun to transit, 384  
friendly with other constellations, 392
- scorpion, remedy for poison due to, 819
- scorpion-bite, remedy for, 756  
seasons, two divisions of; the different tastes getting increased in, 759  
seat of a king, characteristics of, 638  
self, the subtle nature of, 1076  
self, golden image of; merits of giving as gift of, 548
- selling, words denoting, 1022
- senility, remedy which arrests, 756
- sense(s), compared to an elephant, 617  
as the horses, 1075  
embellishment of, 939  
description of, 42
- sentence, definition of, 992  
that is well-constructed; word for, 993
- sentiments, importance of; interdependent on emotion, 924  
the names of, 994  
words denoting different, 994-5  
exhibited by moods; origin of, 923-4  
four self-developed ones, 924
- serpent, words standing for, 995
- serpent bites, four kinds of, 808  
at certain places described as inauspicious, 808-9  
auspicious and inauspicious sounds and objects seen relating to, 809  
description of auspicious-inauspicious type of messengers conveying news about, 809  
the poison due to; the way in which spreads, 810  
the treatment with mystic formulae for, 811, 814
- serpents, the different species of, 807  
seven factors such as the nature etc. of, 807  
the names of eight chief; classified into groups, 807  
three classes of, 807  
having hoods bear different signs, 807  
four divisions of, 807

- the names of the different teeth of, 807  
 details relating to impregnation, laying of eggs etc. by, 807-8  
 seven among the eight preside over the days of the week, 808  
 servant, words denoting, 1019  
 the qualities marking the king's, 621  
 servants, of the king, code of conduct for, 575-6  
 the qualities of, 620-21  
 Śeṣa, one of the eight chief serpents  
 the number of heads of, 807  
 born from Kadrū, 46  
 Viṣṇu as, 353  
 the word Ananta denoting, 63fn  
 worship of, 273, 317  
 worshipped, 108  
 śeṣa, an array; marked by rows of elephants, 634  
 Sevācakra, indicating gain or loss, 390-91  
 Sevyā, name of the wife of Jyāmagha, 741  
 sheaths, description of the seven, 1034  
 shellac, as an unguent, 372  
 shyness, words denoting, 995  
 Śibi, a son of Hrada, 46  
 different reading for Gaya, 42fn  
 the four sons of, 747  
 Śibikāveśma, a type of temple, 314  
 sickness, a general remedy to remove, 769  
 siddha, letters falling into the group of, 390  
 relating to the letters in the name of the votary, 895  
 as fruitful, 391  
 Siddha (vimala), worshipped, 415  
 Siddhacāmuṇḍā, image of, 135  
 siddhacatuṣka, four siddhas, 415  
 Siddhakoṭiśvara, worshipped, 414  
 siddhamantras, become fruitful by mere repetition, 803  
 Siddhartha, a minister of King Daśa-ratha, 11  
 —a year of the Hindu calendar, 405  
 siddhārtha, a herb, 407  
 siddhas, names of, 414  
 Siddhāśrama, a place; Rāma's stay at, 10  
 Siddhayogeśvari, image of, 135  
 Siddheśvara, a liṅga, 34<sup>2</sup>  
 sides, five actions of, 930  
 Śikhā, a goddess, 417  
 —one of the four kinds of rosary beads; the four divisions of, 894  
 —characteristics of the metre, 907, 911  
 śikhā, a herb, 372  
 Śikhaṇḍi, son of Drupada, 34fn  
 fought on the side of the Pāṇḍavas, 34  
 Śikhaṇḍin, a Rudra, 263  
 Śikhaṇḍini, later transformed to a male form, 34fn  
 wife of Antardhāna, 43  
 Śikhariṇi, characteristics of the metre, 913  
 Śikhī, letter denoting, 419  
 Śikhivāhini, a goddess; location of the letter denoting, 417  
 Śikhivāsa, group of mountains, 325, 325fn  
 Śikṣā (phonetics), science of, 2  
 Śilpaka, a type of drama, 921  
 simantnonayana, a rite, 59, 86, 95  
 Sīmha, a constellation; correction for 367  
 (See also Leo)  
 sirṅha-homa, performance of, 118  
 sirṅhakarṇa, a position relating to archery, 648  
 sirṅhavidyā, ceremony known as, 117  
 Sirmhikā, a demoness, daughter of Kaśyapa and Diti, 45  
 killed by Hānūmat, 19  
 Sirmhonnatā, the name of Vasanta-tilaka according to sage Kaśyapa, 913  
 similarity, explanation of; is four-fold, 939  
 Śimśapā, tree in the Aśoka grove, 19  
 Śi(Śā)msāpāyana, a disciple of Lomahaṛṣaṇa, 730  
 sin, words denoting, 990  
 sins, major types, 471-74  
 the consequential births for different, 1039-40  
 hymn which destroys, 483-5  
 Sindhu, region of, indication of the destruction of the inhabitants of, 387  
 —ocean; name of Gopiśvara to be repeated at, 842  
 —a river, 24  
 as yielding all fruits, 327  
 Sindhuvīpa, sage for the hymn āpo hi śthā, 562  
 —son of Ambariṣa; son of, 737  
 sindhu-vāraka, a herb, 407  
 Śini, one of the sons of Babhru, 742  
 —descendant of Dhṛṣṭa; 743  
 Śini, was born from Anamitra; son of, 743  
 Sinivāli, wife of Kardama, 738-9  
 —a son of Aṅgiras and Smṛti, 49  
 sinivāli, the new-moon day if the moon is perceived, 980  
 sinivāli, caturdaśi, 360  
 śiphā, a herb, 407  
 śiriṣa, flower not to be used in worship, 529

- Śisira, a son of Dhara, 44  
 one of the sons of Medhātithi, 351
- Śiṣṭi, son of Dhruva and Śambhu;  
 son of, 42
- śisucāndrāyaṇa, an expiation; ex-  
 planation of, 482
- śiśuka (śisucāndrāyaṇa), an expiation  
 for eating certain things, 488
- Śiśuvaktrā, image of, 138
- Sitā, daughter of Janaka, 10  
 wife of Rāma, 738  
 Rāma was asked to observe vows  
 along with, 11  
 crossed the river Jāhnavī, 13  
 Śīrpaṅkhā's words to Rāvaṇa  
 relating to, 15  
 abduction of, 16  
 search ordered by Sugriva for, 18  
 Jaṭāyu gave his life for, 18
- seen by Hanūmat, 19
- crest-jewel given to Hanūmat by,  
 20
- Vibhiṣana's advice to Rāvaṇa, 21
- Kumbhakarna's words to Rāvaṇa  
 relating to, 22
- Rāvaṇa's intention to kill, 22  
 brought back after purification, 23
- birth of Kuśa and Lava to, 24
- rule of son of Sita, 25
- merit of worshipping, 343
- a river, 325
- śītakṛcchra, an expiation; explanation  
 of, 482, 799
- Sitāmbha, a lake, 325
- Śītoda, a lake, 325
- Śiva, synonyms of, 986-7  
 a form of Rudra, 252, 254  
 Viṣṇu as the refuge of, 746  
 name of attendants of, 987
- Bāṇa considered as a son of; words  
 spoken to Bāṇa by, 29
- words spoken by Viṣṇu to, 30
- image of; meditation on, 202
- installation of image of, 172
- mode of worshipping, 197-204,  
 837-40
- worship of, 274
- a sacred formula of, 837
- eight kinds of mantras of, 873
- appeasing rite for, 891-94
- to be contemplated at every quad-  
 rangle, 842
- a deity located in the body, 414
- herb denoted by, 406
- a son of Medhātithi, 351
- the name of a temple, 318
- one of four kinds of rosary beads;  
 the four divisions of, 894
- śiva, one of the kinds of mantras of  
 Śiva, 873
- Śivā, worshipped, 51  
 location of the letter representing,  
 417
- śivākhyā, a pavilion, 318
- śivarātrivratā, description of, 517-8
- śivāśraya, a pavilion, 318
- Śivottama, a Rudra, 263
- Skanda, synonyms of, 987  
 conquered by Tārksya and others,  
 30
- obeisance made to, 1
- worshipped, 51
- image of, 134, 314
- placing of the image of, 116
- worship of the image of, 215
- offering made to, 274, 275
- Skāndapurāṇa, narrated by lord  
 Skanda; on the virtues of Tatpuruṣa-  
 kalpa; extent of; should be given  
 as a gift, 733
- skandaśaṣṭhi, a vow; details relating to,  
 504
- Skandavikaṭa a demon, 317
- Skandhogrivi (Bṛhati), name of Nyaṅ-  
 kusārīṇi according to Krauṣṭuki, 903
- skin, defects of; remedy for, 767
- sky, words denoting 988
- slave, rules relating to making free a,  
 673
- Śleṣa, a variety of guṇa relating to  
 word, 944  
 (See also coalescence)
- sling, uses of, 652
- Ślokāyani, represents a branch of  
 Atharvaveda, 730
- Smara, worship of the image of, 215
- smoothness, explanation of, 945
- smṛti, collection of texts relating to  
 religious duties, 992
- Smṛti, wife of Aṅgiras, 49
- snake-bite, remedy for 756  
 (See also serpent bite)
- snātaka, denotes a person who had the  
 ceremonial bath, 1018
- Snehāh, a class of men at Kuśadvīpa,  
 352fn
- snow, words denoting, 989
- snuhi, a herb, 406
- society, everyone should strive for  
 the welfare of, 674
- ṣoḍaśa, herb denoted by, 407
- Ṣoḍaśī, a somasaṁsthā, 64, 79, 86, 466
- Ṣoḍhānyāsa, three kinds of, 416
- soft, a mode; explanation of, 933, 934
- Softness, explanation of, 945
- Śoka, born from Mrtyu, 49
- solar race, description of the genealogy  
 of, 735-38
- solar region, worshipped, 50
- soldiers, methods of fight by; to be

- rewarded suitably after the victory, 632
- Soma, born from Brahmā, 25  
 given as born from Atri, 31, 738  
 born to Atri and Anasūyā, 49  
 married 27 daughters of Dakṣa, 44  
 performance of Rājasūya by, 738  
 the supremacy gained by, 739  
 the wives of the celestials, and sages deserted their husbands and served, 738-39  
 seduced Tārā, wife of Bṛhaspati, 739  
 the king of planet; words spoken to progenitors by, 43  
 worship of, 274  
 worshipped, 52  
 requested to come, 336  
 —one of the eight Vasus; father of Varcā, 44
- Somadatta, son of Pañcadhanus; son of, 750  
 —one of the sons of Bālhika, 751  
 —one of the sons of Śantanu, 751
- Somaka, a boundary mountain, 351  
 son of Sahadeva; son of, 750
- Somakuṇḍa, at Gayā, 341
- Somanātha, a liṅga, 343  
 greatness of, 327
- Somapa, son of Maitreya, 750
- somasamsthās, the seven kinds of, 466  
 thousands of, 86
- Someśa, letter denoting, 419  
 worshipped, 100
- Śoṇā, a river, 841  
 as excellent, 328
- Śoṇāśva, one of the two sons of Śūra;  
 sons of, 743
- Śoṇitapura, city, 29
- Sopamā, worshipped, 412
- sore-mouth, remedy for, 768
- soul, words denoting, 991  
 that is liberated becoming one with Brahman explained, 1076  
 as the traveller, 1075
- sound, words standing for ordinary, 993
- sounds, three divisions of, 917  
 words denoting different kinds of, 993-4
- spear, uses of, 651
- speech, twelve kinds of exertions of, 927  
 preceded by weeping; words denoting, 993  
 words denoting, 992  
 words signifying beginning of, 992
- spheres, different kinds of, 387-8
- spūraṇa, denoting a division of time, 370
- spiders, remedy for poison due to, 756, 819
- spies, characteristics of, 625
- (evil) spirits, possessing the newly born child from the first day onwards; the names of different, 820-26
- spiritual initiation, removing bondage, 238-43  
 for emancipation, 243-48  
 four kinds of, 227  
 mode of, 226-35
- spitoon, words denoting, 1017
- spleen, enlargement of; remedy for, 752, 767, 769
- splendidness (Ojas), abundance of compounds, 945
- spy, words denoting, 1019
- śrāddha, mode of performing, 457-61  
 merits of doing on different day, 349, 350
- Śrāddhadeva, the seventh Manu, 427-8
- Sragdharā, characteristics of the metre, 914
- Sragviṇī, characteristics of the metre, 913
- Śrama, a son of Āpa, 44
- śrauti (rite), to be performed, 86
- Śravaṇa, an asterism having firm look, 382  
 the rite to determine the sex of the child to be done in, 357  
 auspicious for administering medicine, 358  
 new fruits and food to be eaten in, 358  
 good for gathering hay, 360  
 money is deposited or articles taken back in, 360  
 not commendable for tonsure and other rites, 359  
 cow-pen should not be entered in, 361  
 misery caused by Sun's transit in, 363  
 located in Koṭacakra, 385  
 located in a diagram, 400
- Śrāvaṇa, benefit of oil purchased in the month of, 386
- śravaṇadvādaśī, rules relating to the practice of, 513-14
- śrāvāṇī, a sacrifice, 86, 466
- Śrāvanta, son of Yuvanāśva; had Śrāvantikā as capital, 736
- Śrāvantikā, a city in the east: was the capital of Śrāvanta, 736
- Śrī, became the consort of Viṣṇu, 49  
 located on the body, 414  
 hymn in praise of, 615-16  
 mentioned as a form of Hari, 91

- worshipped, 1, 51, 52, 63  
 Śricandrādevī, a goddess, 413  
 Śridaṇḍī, a spirit possessing the child on the eighth night after birth; symptoms of child possessed by; offering to appease; materials for fumigation and besmearing when the child is possessed by, 822  
 Śridevī, one of the daughters of Devaka; married by Vasudeva, 742  
 Śridhara, a name of Viṣṇu, 65  
 contained in a formula, 52  
 image of, 115  
 name of a śālagrāma, 125  
 Śrigaditā, a type of drama, 921  
 Śrijaya, a type of temple, 315  
 characteristics of the temples of the class of, 318  
 Śrikanṭha, a Rudra, 263  
 letter denoting, 418  
 —a type of temple, 315  
 Śrikanṭhanātha, worshipped, 413, 414  
 śrikṛcchra, an expiation, 483  
 Śrimahākāla, worshipped, 414  
 Śrimukha, a year of the Hindu calendar, 404  
 Śripārvata, one of the eight holy spots, 330  
 as sacred, 328, 350  
 significance and greatness of, 331  
 Śripraśna, a Pāncarātrāgama, 106  
 Śrisamayakoṭīśa, worshipped, 414  
 Śrivatsa, worshipped, 51, 52, 55, 63  
 —a type of temple, 314  
 842  
 Śriyaḥpati, form of Viṣṇu on Narmadā, 842  
 Śrīgaberapura, a place; Rāma's arrival at, 13  
 Bharata's visit to, 14  
 as an excellent spot, 328  
 śrīgātaka, an array; formation optional, 635  
 Śrīṅgi, a varṣaparvata, 324  
 Śrījaya, son of Kālānala; son of, 747  
 —one of the five born from Bāhyāśva, 749  
 son of, 750  
 Śrīṣṭi, a minister of King Daśaratha, 11  
 sruk, a ladle, 58  
 Śrutadevī, one of the daughters of Devaka; married by Vasudeva, 742  
 Śrutakarmaka, son of Udāpi, 750  
 Śrutakirti, son of Arjuna and Draupadī, 751  
 —married by Śatrughna, 11  
 Śrutasena, one of the four sons of Jahnu, 750  
 —son of Bhimasena and Draupadī, 751  
 Śrutavarmā, son of Sahadeva and Draupadī, 751  
 Śrutāyu, son of Sindhudvīpa; son of, 737  
 —son of Bhānuratha, 738  
 Śruti, a division of Abhivyakti, 943  
 sruva, a ladle, 58  
 sthāli, a vessel, 94  
 sthālīpāka, a rite, 86fn  
 Sthaṇḍīleyu, one of the ten sons of Bhadrāśva, 748  
 Sthāṇu, letter denoting, 418  
 sthāpana, explanation of, 267  
 sthāpanimudrā, a posture of the hand, 202  
 Sthirā, a goddess, 376  
 sthitasthāpana, explanation of, 267  
 sthūṇākarma, a modification of the array daṇḍa, 633  
 sthūṇāpakṣa, an array; characteristics of, 633  
 stone slabs (in temples), mode of placing 276-7  
 strategem, one of the means to be employed by a king, 587  
 strength, prescription for gaining, 777  
 student, duties of, 432-33  
 study, commencement of; time for, 359  
 conclusion of; time for rite relating to, 359  
 Stuti, a variety of Praśasti, 942  
 Śubha, one of the siddhas, 414  
 subhadra, a pitcher, 270  
 Subhadrā, daughter of Vasudeva, 744  
 wife of Arjuna, 751  
 birth of Abhimanyu to, 33  
 as a goddess, 376  
 merit of worshipping, 343  
 subhadrā, a nerve, 316  
 Subhadrikā, a goddess, 376  
 subhagā, a herb, 372  
 Śubhakṛt, a year of the Hindu calendar, 405  
 Subhūmikā, a hell, 1039  
 subjects, five sources of dangers for, 622  
 substantives, the inflections of the seven cases of, 957  
 two kinds of—ending in vowels and ending in consonants; again divided into three, 957  
 examples for the two varieties, 957-58  
 in the feminine; examples for, 958-59  
 example for those in the neuter, 959  
 in the feminine; examples of finished forms of, 966-68

- in the neuter; examples of finished forms of, 968-70  
 different kinds of, 1024-7  
 success, the marks of, 625  
 Succhâyâ, wife of Śiṣṭi, 42  
 Śuci, born from Agni and Svâhâ, 49  
 —a daughter of Tâmrâ, 46  
 —different reading for Kavi, 42fn  
 —Indra at the time of the 14th Manu, 428  
 sūci, a kind of arrangement of the army, 630  
 a modification of the array *daṇḍa*, 633  
 sūcivÿuha, an array, 612  
 Sudarṣṅtra, one of the sons of Asamaujas, 743  
 Sudarśana, the disc of lord Viṣṇu, 827  
 installation of, 179  
 worshipped, 63, 84  
 —a *sâlagrâma*, 125  
 Sudarśanâ, a herb, 378  
 Śuddhavarîdârṣabha, characteristics of metre, 910  
 Śuddhavarîṭ, characteristics of the metre, 911-2  
 Śuddhodana, Viṣṇu's manifestation as son of, 38  
 Sudhanu, one of the sons of Kuru, 750  
 Sudhanvâ, son of Sambhûta; son of, 737  
 —son of Puṇḍarika; son of, 738  
 —son of Satyahita; son of, 750  
 —one of the sons of Kuru; son of, 750  
 Sudhanvaka, son of Akurâ, 744  
 Sudhanvan, water-god known as, 93  
 became the regent of the east, 47  
 Sudharmâ, name of the council of gods, 987  
 Sudirghâ, a hell, 1039  
 Sudyumna, a son of Manu and Naḍvalâ, 42  
 —name of Ilâ after she changed sex, 735  
 the three sons of, 735  
 sufferings, two kinds of; explanation of, 1030  
 sugandha, a flower that pleases lord Hari, 529  
 sugatidvâdaṣi, on the practice of, 513  
 Sughorâ, a hell, 1038  
 Sugriva, Râma advised by Jaṭâyû to meet; met by Râma, 17  
 Lakṣmaṇa's words to, 18  
 reference to his becoming a friend of Râma, 19  
 consoled Râma, 21  
 accompanied Râma to Laṅkā, 21  
 cut the nose of Kumbhakarṇa, 22  
 reference to Dvidiva, counsellor of, 30fn  
 as a door-keeper, 108  
 worship of, 273, 317  
 Sugrivâ, a daughter of Tâmrâ, 46  
 Sumitrâ, saluted by Râma, 23  
 Suhotra, one of the five sons of Vitatha, 749  
 Suhotra, son of Sudhanvâ; son of; seven other sons of, 750  
 Girikâ was the queen of, 750  
 Suhotraka, name of Atharvaveda, 93  
 Śuka, paying respects to Vyâsa, 1  
 Sukalâ, a goddess, 413  
 Sukanya, a son of Śaryâti, 736  
 Sukarmâ, a part of Sâmaveda given to, 429  
 Suketu, one of the five sons of Vitatha, 749  
 Sukha, a celestial, 428  
 sukha, a ray of the Sun, 195  
 Sukhodaya, a son of Medhâtithi, 351  
 Sukla, a year of the Hindu calendar, 404  
 Śukra, preceptor of the demons, 8, 41fn, 740  
 story relating to Devayâni, daughter of, 25fn  
 daughter of; invoked, 112  
 —planet worshipped, 52  
 —a son of Dhiṣaṇâ, 43  
 —a sage; son of Vasîṣṭha and Urjâ, 49  
 śukra, an array; description of, 633  
 Śukradevikâ, letter denoting, 418  
 Sukṣetra, son of Brahmasâvarṇi Manu, 428  
 —the name of a temple, 318  
 Sūkṣma, a Rudra, 255, 263  
 Sūkṣmâ, a female divinity, worshipped, 51  
 śukti, a weight, 209  
 Śuktimat, a mountain, 350, 351  
 Sukumâra, son of Havya, 352  
 Sukumâraka, son of Ānarta; son of, 749  
 Sukumârikâ, spirit exercising her influence the whole year, 826  
 Śûli, the name of a temple, 318  
 Śûlin, worship of the image of, 215  
 Sumâlin, father of Kaikasi, 24fn  
 Sumanâ, a boundary mountain, 351  
 Sumanas, a son of Āgneyi, 42  
 Sumanta, one of the four sons of Tamsurodha, 749  
 Sumantra, a minister of King Daśratha, 11  
 left back by Râma, 13  
 Sumantu, a disciple of Vyâsa; a part of Sâmaveda given to; divided Atharvaveda, 429

- represents a branch of Atharvaveda, 730  
 sumatadvādaśī, mode of practising the vow of, 513  
 Sumati, a disciple of Lomahaṛṣaṇa, 730  
 —son of Bharata, 323  
 Śumbha, a demon; killed by the goddess Durgā, 26, 26fn  
 Sumeru, a mountain where Raivata performed penance, 736  
 Sumitra, born to Gāndhāri and Dhṛṣṭa, 743  
 Sumitrā, birth of Śatrughna to, 10  
 Sumukha, a deity presiding over the banner, 145  
 worship of, 284  
 Sumukhī, consort of Skanda; image of, 134  
 a goddess worshipped, 375  
 Sumuṣṭika, one of the sons of Ugrasena, 742  
 Sun, synonyms of, 989  
 only one, 376  
 as a manifestation of Viṣṇu, 356  
 born from Marīci, 9  
 born from Kaśyapa, 735  
 three wives of, 735  
 (planet) distance of, 354  
 the extent of the chariots of; the horses etc. of, 355  
 celestials who ride the chariot of, 355  
 words denoting the lustre of, 990  
 words denoting halo around, 989  
 words denoting the ray of the, 989-90  
 image of, 136  
 contemplating the form of, 827  
 mantras for, 425  
 mode of worshipping, 195-97  
 mode of worship of, 830-32  
 worshipped by people of Śakadvīpa, 352  
 worship of, 51  
 worship of the weapons of, 52  
 eclipse of, 388  
 period (years) of influence of, 363  
 presides over a part of a day, 381  
 effect of stay in one's birth-star, 363  
 effect of stay in certain asterisms, 363  
 effects of transit in some karaṇas, 363  
 way to find strength of, 380  
 no influence on war, 377  
 qualities of a person indicated by, 392  
 consecration to be done in a particular position of, 361  
 benefit of transit in some karaṇas, 362  
 gains indicated by, 384  
 gains of position etc. indicated by, 393  
 marriage not commendable in particular position of, 357  
 adverse effect of entry in certain astral combinations, 362-3  
 death caused by the position in Aries, 378  
 misery indicated by, 383  
 epidemics indicated by certain things in the disc of, 387  
 fatality indicated by its presence in an asterism, 389  
 bad luck indicated by, 400  
 Sun, Viṣṇu made as the lord of, 47  
 Śunaḥśepa, also known as Aṣṭaka; was the other son of Viśvāmītra, 749  
 Sunāman, one of the sons of Ugrasena, 742  
 sunanda, a pitcher, 270  
 Sunday, rite for determining the sex of the child to be done on, 357  
 rite of chewing betel leaf to be done on, 358  
 first shave of a child commended on, 359  
 profit caused by purchase made on, 360  
 excavation of a tank etc. to be avoided on, 360  
 cows should not be grazed on, 361  
 a special combination caused by, 362  
 inauspiciousness of twelfth day occurring on, 381  
 the rule of Rāhu on, 409  
 Sundhu, son of Vitamaya; son of, 748  
 Sunithā, daughter of Mṛtyu; wife of Aṅga, 42  
 Suniti, wife of Uttānapāda, 41  
 sun-stone, a gem, 641  
 sūṅṭhi, a herb, 407  
 sūnya, one of the kinds of mantras of Śiva, 873  
 description of, 875  
 Supārśva, a mountain, 324, 325  
 supernatural events, relating to the three worlds, 711  
 Suprabha, a form of Rudra, 252  
 a country, 352  
 Suprabhā, a mountain in the south, 18  
 a goddess; worshipped, 230  
 daughter of Svarbhānu, 46  
 suprabhā, a nerve, 316  
 Suprasiddhā, image of, 138  
 supratīṣṭha, a modification of the array daṇḍa; characteristics contrary to, 633

- Supratiṣṭhā, number of letters in the metre 905
- Supratiṣṭhita, a deity presiding over the banner, 145  
worship of, 284
- Supreme Being, praise of perception of one's oneness with, 1074
- Supreme Brahman, nature of 923, 1070-1  
identified with knowledge, 1060  
declared as the thing to be known, 1070
- Supreme spirit, as the highest, 1075  
water known as nārāḥ because of its creation by, 40
- Surā, an ocean, 324
- surā, explanation of, 487
- Śūra, one of the sons of Kārtavīrya, 741  
—son of Vidūratha; son of, 743  
Vasudeva and others born to, 744
- Surabhi, birth of eleven Rudras to Kāśyapa and, 44, 44fn  
cows, buffaloes were born from, 46  
—divine cow; worshipped, 213
- suracāndrāyaṇa, an expiation; explanation of, 482
- Suranātha, sandal of; worshipped, 414
- Surāpi, one of the daughters of Devaka; married by Vasudeva, 742
- Surasā, mother of the serpents, 46
- Śūrasena, one of the sons of Kārtavīrya, 741
- Suratha, son of Janamejaya; son of, 750  
—one of the four sons of Jahnu, 750  
surety, for a loan; details relating to, 660
- Suroda, an ocean, 352
- Śūrpaṅakhā, a demoness 15  
sister of Rāvāna, 15fn, 24
- Sūrpāraka, a place, 640  
an excellent place, 328
- Suruci, wife of Uttānapāda; birth of Uttama from, 41
- Sūrya, a name of the Sun, 136  
herb denoted by, 406  
installation of image of, 172
- Suśabdaā, Gāmbhīrya called by some as, 945
- Suṣeṇa, a monkey that accompanied Rāma to Laṅkā, 21
- Susena, first child of Vasudeva and Devaki, 744
- Suṣeṇaka, a guard of the doors; worshipped, 93
- susiddha, relating to the letters in the name of the votary, 390, 391, 803, 895
- Suśilā, one of the wives of Kṛṣṇa, 744
- Śuṣkarevati, a goddess, 375
- Suṣmināḥ, a class of men at Kuśādvīpa, 352fn
- Suśruta, compositions declared as conferring boons by, 778
- Susthīrā, a goddess; worshipped, 412
- Suṣumnā, as a female energy, 136  
—at Gayā; piṇḍa to be offered at, 342
- suṣumnā, an artery, 54  
carries the wind samāna; functions of, 556  
is established in the middle of the body, 557
- sūta, as an interlocutor, 42  
a caste; origin of, 430  
duty of, 431
- Sutala, a nether world, 8, 353
- Sutanu, daughter of Kāśīrāja and wife of Vasudeva, 28fn
- Sutanū, one of the sons of Ugrasena, 742
- Sutapā, clan of celestials in the period of the 8th Manu, 428  
—son of Paila; son of, 747
- Sutapāḥ, a sage; son of Vasiṣṭha and Urjā, 49
- Sutikṣṇa, a sage; paid respect by Rāma, 15, 15fn
- Sutrāmaṇa, a celestial, 428
- Suvadanā, characteristics of the metre, 914
- Suvarṇa, an excellent place, 327
- Suvāsa, one of the sons of Asamaujas, 743
- Suvela, mountains; Laṅkā seen by Rāma from, 21
- Suvrata, son of Uśīnara and Dṛṣadvati, 747
- Suyajñaka, son of Pṛthuśrava; son of, 741
- Suyodhana, son of Kakutstha, 736  
denotes Duryodhana, 33, 35
- Svadhā, mother of Menā and Dhāriṇi, 49
- Svadhṛti, propitiation of, 176
- Svādūdaka, ocean around Puṣkara, 353
- Svāgatā, characteristics of the metre, 912
- Svāhā, wife of Agni; sons of, 49  
—son of Vṛjīnivān; son of, 741
- Svāhya, son of Yugandhara; was invincible; sons of, 743
- Śvaphalka(ka), son of Rṣabha; 743  
son of, 744
- Svarāt, composition of the metre, 904
- Svarbhānu, mother of Suprabhā, 46  
—a year of the Hindu calendar, 405

- Svargadvāra, at Gayā, 341  
 Svargaloka, location of, 354  
 Svargānanda, worshipped, 414  
 Svargativrata, on the eighth lunar day, anecdote etc. relating to, 508-9  
 svarita, a division of sound, 917  
 svarjit, a sacrifice, 474  
 Svārociṣa, the second Manu, 427  
 Svarodayacakra, success in battle known from, 370, 375  
 svarūpam (natural form), one of the kinds of embellishment of sense, 939  
 Svaśiva, a Rudra, 254  
 svastika, a type of temple, 315  
 a posture relating to archery, 646  
 Svāti, a movable asterism, 381  
 has a firm look, 382  
 comprises the sphere of wind, 387  
 commendable for marriage, 357  
 good for administering medicine, 358  
 archery to be imparted in, 359  
 commendable for construction of a house, 360  
 one should do agriculture in, 361  
 banner of Indra to be hoisted in, 362  
 an employer should not be attended upon on, 360  
 one should not enter the cow-pen in, 361  
 misery caused by Sun's presence in, 363  
 location in the Koṭacakra, 385  
 located in a diagram, 400  
 Svayambhū, denotes Brahmā, 40, 40fn  
 Svāyambhuva, the first Manu; progeny of, 427  
 genealogy of, 41, 41fn, 41-45  
 method of worship of Viṣṇu as done by, 50  
 —a Pāñcarātrāgama, 106  
 Svayanjātas, one of the five branches of Haihayas, 741  
 svayamvara, of Draupadī, 32  
 Śveta, letter denoting, 419  
 —a country, 352  
 —a parvata, 324  
 —a muhūrta; deeds to be done in, 371  
 Śveta kalpa, a kalpa period, 732  
 śvetārka, a herb, 371  
 Śvetavaṣa, country, 322  
 Śvetavāhana, one of the two sons of Śūra, 743  
 sweet, a mode; explanation, 933  
 swelling, herbal remedy for 753-4  
 decoction of herbs which removes, 769  
 remedy for, 776  
 sword, a weapon, fifty inches long as the excellent one; 645  
 commendable qualities of; certain rules relating to the use of; certain colours as not auspicious; the characteristics of, 640  
 mode of wearing, 649  
 thirtytwo kinds of employment of, 651  
 uses of, 652  
 Śyāma, a boundary mountain, 352  
 śyāmāka, a grain used in worship, 94  
 śyena, a modification of the array daṇḍa, 633  
 Śyeni, a daughter of Tāmra, 46  
 —characteristics of the metre, 912  
 syllables, use of different kinds of, 378  
 taddhita, bases, rules governing the formation of, 976-79  
 tagara, a flower, 529  
 —a herb, 372  
 taijasa, evolution of, 40  
 Tailapāka, a hell, 531  
 taitila, a karaṇa, 362, 369fn  
 Taittiriya, a branch of Yajurveda, 730  
 Takṣa, son of Bharata, 24  
 Takṣa (ka), one of the eight chief serpents; the number of heads of, 807  
 born from Kadri, 46  
 made as the king of serpents, 47  
 image of, 137  
 Kubjikā worshipped having, 415  
 tāla, an unguent, 372  
 a measure, 119 etc.  
 explanation of the term, 994  
 Tālajaṅgha, son of Jayadhvaaja; the five branches of Haihayas formed by the sons of, 741  
 Tālajaṅghikā, image of, 138  
 Tālavana, made secure by Kṛṣṇa, 27  
 tamāla, a flower, 529  
 Tamasā river, Rāma's halt on the banks of, 13  
 Tāmasa, the fourth Manu, 427  
 tāmasa, evolution of, 40, 40fn  
 eighth creation having the quality of, 48  
 Tami, an energy, 292  
 Tāmisraka, a hell, 531, 1039  
 Tāmra, daughters of, 46  
 Tāmravarṇa, a territory, 350  
 Tāmsurodha, one of the three sons of Matināra, 748  
 four sons of, 749  
 tāṇḍavam, synonyms of, 994  
 Tandinātha, worshipped, 414  
 tank, excavation of; good day for 360,  
 tanks, asterisms good for construction of, 765

- tanks and ponds, consecration of, 173-78  
 tanmātras, creation of, 48, 48fn  
 tantras, application as per, 62  
 Tanumadhya, characteristics of the metre, 911  
 Tapanā, a name of the Sun, 136  
 —sub-division of a hell, 1039  
 Tāpanī, image of, 138  
 Tapas, a world; worshipped, 79  
 —a sage, 428  
 Tāpasī, a spirit seizing the child in the tenth month; symptoms of the child seized by, 823  
 offering to appease, 823-4  
 Tapasvin, a son of Manu and Naḍvalā, 42  
 Tāpi, a river, flows from Sahya, 351  
 merits of, 328  
 Tapoloka, distance of, 354  
 (See also Tapas)  
 Taptakṛcchra, an expiation; explanation of, 482, 799  
 to be practised for eating food during pollution, 471  
 for having eaten offering intended for the dead, 472  
 to be practised for certain pollution, 480  
 to be observed for having caused death, 487  
 Tāra, a monkey; accompanied Rāma to Laṅka, 21  
 Tārā, entrusted with Sugriva, 17  
 —wife of Bṛhaspati; seduced by Soma; restored to Bṛhaspati; was found pregnant and was directed to shed the child, 739  
 —letter denoting, 418  
 image of, 138  
 tārābala, indication to find, 359  
 Tārācakra, indicating friendship; description of, 391  
 Tārākāmaya, battle involving the celestials on account of Soma, 739  
 Viṣṇu's role in, 745  
 Taralā, image of, 138  
 Taralatārā, a hell, 1038  
 Tārāṇa, a year of the Hindu calendar, 405  
 Tārāpiḍa, son of Candrāloka; son of, 738  
 Tārksya, eagle chief, 22  
 Nandi and others conquered by, 30  
 as destroyer of enemies etc, 394  
 worshipped, 52  
 —a Pāñcarātrāgama, 106  
 Tārksyacakra, description of, 394  
 Taruṇa, son of Tridhanvā; son of, 737  
 taruṇī, milk of; used as an unguent, 372  
 tastes, the different; as having originated from moon and fire, 761  
 Tata, characteristics of the metre, 912  
 Tātakā, a demoness; killed by Rāma, 10  
 Tatpuruṣa (compound), eight kinds of; examples of, 973-74  
 Taurus, a fixed sign, 384  
 agriculture to be done in, 361  
 a special combination caused by, 362  
 has enmity with Scorpion, 392  
 tauryatrikam, a collective term, 994  
 teeth, measure to strengthen, 755  
 Tejas, born from Sumati, 323  
 temples, preparing the ground for, 105-107  
 construction of, 113-115  
 benefits of constructing, 101-105, 901  
 merits of causing the construction of, 551  
 divisions based on installation of deities, 267  
 measurement of the stone slabs for, 269  
 common features of, 318  
 five classes of, 314  
 names of; containing rooms facing different directions, 318  
 the location of different chambers in, 318-19  
 location in cities, 321  
 to be protected by the king, 577  
 tenses and moods, grammatical connotation for, 981-2  
 formation of; examples for, 982-4  
 termination, for the verbs, 981  
 terror, sentiment of; accomplishing factor of, 932  
 thief, apprehension of, 681  
 thigh, stiffness of; remedy for, 754  
 thirst, pills to remove, 754  
 herbs which remove, 768  
 remedy for removal of, 773  
 throat-affections, remedy for 768  
 Thursday, profitable nature of, 376  
 chewing of betel leaf to be done on, 358  
 kārṇavedha to be done on, 359  
 agriculture to be done on, 361  
 inauspiciousness of sixth day falling on, 381  
 Rāhu lies at the south on, 409  
 tiladvādaśī, details relating to the practice and merits of, 512, 513  
 tilaka, a flower, 529  
 time, words denoting, 990  
 words denoting different periods of time, 1000  
 reckoning, 364  
 timira, a flower, 529

tiryaksrotas, explanation of, 48  
 Tīṣya, class of men at Krauñcadvipa, 352  
 tithayaḥ, herb denoted by, 406  
 Tithi, commencing point of and correction for, 367  
 further correction for, 368  
 herb denoted by, 408  
 Tithīśa, letter denoting, 418  
 Titikṣu, son of Uśanas; son of, 741  
 —was born from Uśinara; son of, 747  
 tittibha (?), auspiciousness of a gem called, 641  
 Tittiri, son of Kapotaramā; son of, 742  
 tomara (iron club), used for striking the eyes etc, 651  
 tongue, defects in; remedy for, 766  
 tonsure, time for, 359  
 to be done according to family custom, 432  
 toothache, remedy for, 766  
 topaz, a gem, 641  
 tortoise, form taken by Viṣṇu, 5ff, 129  
 Toṭaka, characteristics of the metre, 912  
 town, and suburbs and parts of words signifying, 1006  
 toxic matter, from head; eliminator for, 757  
 toyakṛcchra, an expiation, explanation of, 483  
 trader, percentage of profit allowed for, 679  
 rules relating to, 679-80  
 Trailokyākarsīṇī, Kubjikā addressed as, 413  
 Trailokyamohana, a Pāñcarātrāgama, 105-6  
 Traisāni, son of Gobhānu; son of, 747  
 Tranquility, explanation of, 945  
 transactions, when considered as invalid, 658  
 Trasadasyu, son of Purukutsa, 737  
 —son of Janamejaya, 750  
 trasareṇu, a measure, 107  
 treasures, words denoting, 988  
 to be confiscated by the king if concealed, 657  
 treasury, defects of, 626  
 should always be with the king, 632  
 term denoting person in charge of, 1018  
 treaties, sixteen kinds of, 622  
 those with whom one should make, 622  
 treatment, to be begun on a good day; the factors to be examined before giving, 758  
 treaty, defined as making peace, 607

trees, and parts of, different categories of, words which stand for, 1007-8  
 mode of planting, 188-89  
 the directions good for planting; the asterisms auspicious for, 764  
 planting and nurturing; planting and watering of; to be planted in such a way as to be fed by rivers etc; the minimum distance between, 643  
 method to make them bear more fruits, 765  
 bearing fruits; protection of, 644  
 Tretā, an attendant of Śiva, 201  
 Tretāyuga, creation relating to, 323  
 tri, herb denoted by, 407  
 tridaṇḍin, an ascetic, 454  
 Tridaśa, a Rudra, 255  
 tridaśa, herb denoted by, 406  
 Tridaśeśvara, a Rudra, 254  
 Tridhanvā, son of Sudhanvā; son of, 737  
 Trikoṇa, a hell, 1038  
 trikoṇa, marriage of girls not to be done in, 357  
 Trikūṭa, group of mountains, 19, 325, 325fn  
 Trimata, a division of Vithi, 928  
 Trimūrta, a Rudra, 263  
 Trimūrti, letter denoting, 418  
 trine, prosperity in married life indicated by, 357  
 Tripurā, the names of gods and goddesses to be worshipped in the worship of, 866-8  
 mode of worship of goddess, 866  
 salutation made to, 52  
 Tripuraḡhna, a guardian deity, 284  
 worshipped, 343  
 tripuṣkara, combination called, 362, 382  
 trirātravrata, for lord Viṣṇu; mode and merits of practising, 522  
 Trisāmā, a river; originating from Mahendra, 351  
 Trisīras, a demon 16  
 commander of Khara, was killed by Rāma, 16fn, 22  
 Triṣṭubh, a metre, 562, 902  
 the number of letters in a quarter of, 903  
 red coloured; belongs to Kauṣīkagotra, 905  
 appropriate time for the recital of, 916  
 a metre to be employed in a Mahākāvya, 920  
 Trisūla, the name of a temple, 318  
 trisūla, a posture, 857  
 trisūparṇa, a ṛk, 349

- Tritayajvara, located in connection with consecration, 292
- Trivikrama, a form of Viṣṇu, 65, 82  
form of Viṣṇu on Yamunā, 841
- name of a śālagrāma; characteristics of, 125
- triviṣṭapa, a class of temple; octagonal shaped, 314  
temples belonging to the class of, 315
- Troṭaka, a type of drama, 921
- Trṣṇā, born from Mrtyu, 49
- truth, words denoting, 993
- trust, definition of, 654
- Tryambaka, a form of Rudra, 45
- Tuesday, writing a formula for subjugation on, 358  
gain indicated, 376  
unfavourable for marriage, 357  
to be avoided for commencing first study, 359  
to be avoided for the excavation of a tank, 360  
inauspiciousness of sixth day occurring on, 381  
a special combination caused by, 362  
Rāhu lies at the south-east on, 409
- Tulā, a constellation; correction for 367 (See also Libra)
- tulāpuruṣa, a great gift, 544
- Tumburu, image of, 133
- tumours, in the abdomen; remedy for the destruction of, 776
- Tuṅgabhadrā, a river, 328
- Tūrṇanāthaka, worshipped, 413
- Turvasu, one of the sons of Yayāti and Devayāni, 25, 740  
father of Varga, 747
- Tuṣita, the names of Devas in the Cākṣuṣa manvantara, 45
- Tuṣṭi, a female divinity; invoked, 91  
worshipped, 52
- Tvaritā, goddess; mode of worship of, 423-4, 852-54  
mantras relating to the worship of, 424, 868-69  
spell relating to, 854-57  
secret mantra relating to, 424  
location of the basic mantras of, and worship of, 858-861  
companions of, 424  
addressed, 52
- Tvarita mantra, benefit of knowing, 863
- Tvaṣṭā, son of Manasya, 323
- Tvaṣṭr, one of the Rudras, 45  
—one of the Ādityas, 45, 136
- twilights, words denoting the three, 990
- Uccaiḥśravas, was made the ruler of horses, 47  
to be adored, 51
- ucchvāsa, a division of time, 370  
—a division of the prose kāvyas, 919
- ucchvāsana, an action relating to the riding on horses, 788
- udāna, a life-force carried by the vein gāndhāri, 556  
functions of, 557
- Udāpi, son of Sahadeva; son of, 750
- Udāratā, an excellence of word, 944 (See also splendiddness)
- Udāratā, (elegance) an excellence of sense, 945
- Udarka, son of Nidhṛti; son of, 742
- udarka, explanation of the term, 1019
- udāsina, significance of the term, 1019
- udātta, a division of sound, 917
- Udaya, a boundary mountain, 352
- udbhava, one of the seven sons of Nahuṣa, 740
- udbhavamudrā, 204, 236, 237, 246, 247, 248, 255, 258, 259, 260, 286
- Udbhida, a son of Jyotiṣmat, 352
- Uddhariṇi, the name of Vasantatilaka according to Saitava, 913
- Uddiyāna, a mountain, 412, 414
- Udgatā, characteristics of the metre, 909
- Udghāṭaka, a division of Vithi, 928
- Udgiṭha, son of Pratihartā, 323
- Udicyavṛtti, characteristics of the metre, 907
- udu tyam jātavedasam*, a hymn, 563
- Ugra, Rudra was variously called as, 50  
propitiation of, 176, 290
- Ugrā, a female deity, 292
- Ugracaṇḍā, a goddess, 132
- Ugragandha, a hell, 532
- Ugrasena, a Yādava, 30  
son of Āhuka, 742  
nine sons of; Kāmsa as the eldest, 742  
—one of the four sons of Jahnu, 750
- ūha, section of Sāmaveda, 730
- Uktā, a metre; number of letters in, 905
- Uktha, a somasamsthā, 79, 86, 466
- uktha, section of Sāmaveda, 730
- ukti, an embellishment of word, 932  
explanation of; six kinds of, 933
- ulcers, good remedy for, 768
- Ullāpyaka, a type of drama, 921
- Ulmuka, a son of Balabhadra and Revati, 29

- Umā, consort of; propitiated by Bāṇa, 46
- Umākānta, letter denoting, 419
- umāvrata, merits of practising, 525
- umbrella, characteristics of royal, 638  
a brahmin's, characteristics of, 638
- umesāvratā, should be practised by women, 525
- unconsciousness, remedy for removal of, 773
- unguents, for bathing, 372
- Universe, extent of, 353-56
- unmatta, flower not to be used in worship, 529
- Upacitrā, characteristics of the metre, 907
- Upacitraka, characteristics of the metre, 910
- Upadānavi, daughter of Vṛṣaparvan, 46
- Upadeva, son of Devaka, 742
- Upagiti, characteristics of the metre, 906
- upākaraṇan, explanation of the term, 1018
- upakrama, explanation of the word, 1017
- upākṛta, denotes an animal killed and sanctified, 1017
- Upamā, explanation of, 939  
two kinds of—compounding or not compounding; further divisions of, 939-40  
eighteen kinds of, 940  
another classification into five kinds, 941
- upamāna, explanation of the term, 1027
- upanayana, to be done in the eighth year for a brahmin, 432  
to be done in the eleventh year for the warrior class, 432  
to be done in the twelfth year for tradesman, 432-3  
should never be done after sixteenth year, 433
- Upaniṣads, adoration with, 99
- Upariṣṭād Bṛhathi, composition of, 903
- Upariṣṭājyotiḥ, composition of the metre, 904
- Upasthitā, characteristics of the metre, 912
- Upasthitapracupita, characteristics of the metre, 909
- Upendra, requested for protection, 128
- Upendravajrā, characteristics of the metre, 912
- Ūrdhvvabhū, a son of Vasiṣṭha and Urjā, 49
- Ūrdhvvagāmi, a perfection, 257
- Ūrdhvvagrāhi, a monstress possessing the newly born child on the ninth day; symptoms of the child possessed by; materials for fumigation and besmearing when the child is possessed by, 822
- Ūrdhvvāṅga, an array; formed from divisions of vajra, 634
- Ūrdhvasrotas, creation of, 48
- urinary ailment, remedy for, 767
- urinary defects, remedy for, 766
- urine, painful discharge of; remedy for, 754, 768
- Ūrja, son of Sudhanvā; son of, 750
- Urjā, wife of Vasiṣṭha, 49
- Urmilā, married by Lakṣmaṇa, 11
- Urobṛhathi (metre), name of Nyaṅkusādriṇi according to Yāska, 903
- Ursa Major, asterism denoting the seven sages, 354, 355
- Uru, son of Bhautya Manu, 428
- Ūru, sons of, 42
- Urvarūpa, different reading for Kramapādika, 49fn
- Urvaśi, a nymph, 330  
her love for Purūravas, 739
- Uṣā, daughter of Bāṇa, 29  
accompanied Aniruddha to Dvārakā, 30
- Uśanas, praised Dhruva, 41  
known also as Sukrācārya, 41fn  
—a law-giver, 455  
—son of Suyajñaka; son of, 741
- Uśinara, son of Mahāmanas; wives of; sons of, 747
- Uṣṇa, a country ruled by a son of Dyutimat, 352
- Uṣṇik, a metre, 562, 902  
two varieties of;—pura and para; number of letters in the pāda of, 903  
the number of letters in, 903  
has variegated colour; belongs to Kāśyapagoṭra, 905
- uṣṇiṣa, a type of temple, 315
- Utkala, name of a country, 735  
—a son of Sudyumna; ruled over Utkala, 735
- Utkalikā, a division of prose kāvya, 918
- Utkṛti, number of letters in the metre, 905
- Utkṛti, classical metres based on the Vedic metre, 914
- Utkura, a son of Hiraṇyākṣa, 46fn
- Utpala, a whirlpool, 842
- utpala, auspiciousness of a gem called, 641

- utprekṣā (fancy), an embellishment of senses, 939  
 explanation of, 941
- utsādana, the syllables used for the act of, 403
- Uttama, the third Manu, 427  
 —son of Uttānapāda and Suruci, 41  
 —one of the seven sons of Nahuṣa, 740
- uttama, a variety of prāṇāyāma, 1044
- uttamottama, a variety of prāṇāyāma, 1045
- Uttānapāda, sons of, 41
- uttara, a pitcher, 270
- Uttarā, daughter of King Virāta; wife of Abhimanyu, 33  
 whose embryo survived as Parikṣit, 36
- uttara, the three asterisms known as, 360, 381, 385  
 commended for copulation, 434
- Uttarā, an asterism; forms the watery region, 388  
 commendable for marriage, 357  
 commendable for imparting science of archery, 359  
 to enter a (new) house, 360  
 to take grains into the house in, 361  
 misery caused by Sun's transit in, 363
- Uttarabhādrapada, an asterism; a thing cannot be recovered if it is lost in, 382  
 location in a diagram, 400
- Uttaramānasa, at Gayā; bathing at, 336  
 one should go to Phalgotīrtha after visiting, 337
- Uttarāpatha, region of, 387
- Uttaraphālguni, an asterism; comprises the sphere of wind, 387  
 new clothes should not be worn in, 359  
 location in Koṭacakra, 385  
 located in a diagram, 400  
 Arjuna's name related to his birth in, 37fn
- Uttarāśāḍha, as asterism; located in Koṭacakra, 385  
 indication of unusual commotion in, 388
- utterance, words signifying contradictory, 993  
 word denoting sweet, 993  
 words denoting unrefined, 993  
 that is meaningless; word denoting, 993  
 words denoting good, 993  
 words denoting absurd, 993  
 word signifying inauspicious, 993  
 words denoting harsh, 993
- utthāpana, explanation of, 267
- vācā, a herb, 407  
 used as an unguent, 372
- Vadavāmukhi, image of, 138
- Vādi, different reading for Pālita, 43fn
- Vāditram, one of the kinds of musical instrument, 994
- Vāgīsvari, goddess of speech; mode of worship of, 878  
 invocation of, 246
- Vāgveṇī, a division of Vithi, 928n
- Vahni, adored, 1  
 vahni, a herb, 407
- vahnayaḥ, herb denoted by, 406
- Vāhlika, region of, 387
- Vaibhava, a Pāncarātrāgama, 106
- Vaibhrāja, a forest, 325  
 a boundary mountain, 351
- Vaidarbhi, wife of Pradyumna, 745  
 —a variety of diction; characteristics of, 927
- Vaidehaka, a caste; duties of, 431
- vaidhṛta, an obstacle; journey or battle to be avoided in, 383
- Vaidya, science of; Viṣṇu as the cause of, 3
- Vaidyuta, a country, 352
- Vaijayaṅta, name of the mansion of Indra, 987
- Vaikārikas, creation of, 40, 40fn  
 as the third creation, 48
- Vaikṛtasarga, explanation of, 48
- Vaikunṭha, a manifestation of Viṣṇu, 428  
 form of Viṣṇu at Māgadha forest, 842  
 image installation of, 172  
 —abode of Viṣṇu, 82  
 —name of a śālagrāma, 125
- Vainateya, letters representing, 63  
 weapons of; adored, 66
- Vairāja, a class of temple; square shaped; nine temples belonging to the class of, 314
- Vairāja Prajāpati, father of Sudhavan, 47
- Vairājas, presiding deities of Tapoloka, 354
- Vairohya, son of Ānarta, 736
- Vaiśākha, month of; multiplication of things brought in, 386  
 relating to Uṣā's dream, 29
- vaiśākha, a posture relating to archery, 645  
 advocated, 646
- Vaiśampāyana, disciple of Vyāsa, 429  
 a branch of Yajurveda, 730
- vaiṣṇava, the formulae relating to Viṣṇu, 895

- Vaiṣṇavapurāṇa, narrated by Parāśara; based on accounts in Varāha-kalpa; merits of making a gift of, 732
- Vaiṣṇavi, a mother goddess, 139fn  
invoked, 399  
to be worshipped, 412, 415
- vaiṣṇavi, a rite, 86  
—denotes asterism śravaṇa
- Vaiśravaṇa (Kubera), made as the king of kings, 47  
the great fig tree to be contemplated, 842
- Vaiśravaṇi, image of Kubera, 116
- vaiśvadeva, offering made to all gods, 539
- Vaiśvadevi, characteristics of the metre, 913
- Vaiśvānara, the two daughters of, 46
- vaiśya, words relating to the activities of, 1020-21
- Vaitāliya, characteristics of the metre, 906
- Vaitaṇḍya, a son of Āpa, 44
- Vaitariṇi, river at Gayā, 342
- Vaivasvata Manu, was born from Sun, 9  
eight sons of; at Ayodhyā, 735  
penance of, 3
- Vaivasvata manvantara, devas becoming Ādityas in, 45
- Vaivasvati, explanation of, 463
- Vājapeya (ka), a somaśaṁsthā, 86, 466  
certain practices relating to, 338  
benefit of performing, 1079  
located on the body, 64  
worshipped, 79
- Vājasaneyas, a branch of Yajurveda, 429
- Vājasaneyā Veda, only 15 sections would exist in Kaliyuga, 38
- Vajra, son of Aniruddha, 30, 745  
was installed in the kingdom, 37
- vajra, an adverse period; to be avoided, 383  
—a type of temple, 315  
—an array; arrangement of army in, 612  
to be made when there is fear on the sides, 630  
arrays formed from divisions of, 634
- vajra (mace), uses of, 652
- Vajradeha, a form of Rudra, 252
- Vajrakavāṭa, a hell, 532
- Vajrākṣa, an array; formation optional, 635
- Vajrakubjini, goddess Kubjikā invoked, 413
- vajranāsikā, a line drawn known as, 57
- Vajraśastraka, a hell, 532
- Vajraśṛṅghalā, a goddess, 410
- Vajrasvastika, a type of temple, 315
- vajratuṇḍa, a mudrā, 857
- Vajriṇi, a goddess located on the face, 416
- vākovākya, an embellishment of word, 932  
explanation of; two kinds of, 933
- Vakratuṇḍa, one of the forms of Gaṇapati, 190, 868
- vakula, a flower, 529
- Vaktra, characteristics of the metre, 908  
a metre to be employed in a Mahākāvya, 920
- Vākyaṛthopamā, explanation of, 941
- valabhi, a type of temple, 314
- valaya, a type of temple, 315
- valaya, a modification of the array daṇḍa, 633  
an array formed by union of two daṇḍas, 635  
durjaya made up of four, 635
- Vālin, brother of Sugriva; killed by Rāma, 17
- Vālmiki, sage, story of Rāmāyaṇa narrated by Nārada to, 9  
composed the Rāmāyaṇa, 25, 738  
birth of Kuśa and Lava at the hermitage of, 24
- Vāmā, as female energy; as one of the three forms of Umā, 374  
located, 292  
worshipped, 51, 201, 413
- Vāmadeva, a form of Rudra, 252
- Vāmana, a name of Viṣṇu, 65  
a manifestation of Viṣṇu, 428  
form of Viṣṇu at Kuruksetra, 841  
a deity presiding over the banner, 148  
as an excellent place, 328  
worship of, 284  
merits of worshipping, 343  
image of, 115  
installation of image of, 172  
name of śālagrāma, 125  
mountain, 352
- Vāmanapurāṇa, narration of story of Viṣṇu relating to Dhaumakalpa in, 733  
extent of, 733  
should be given as a gift during autumnal equinox, 734
- Vaṁśapatrapatita, characteristics of the metre, 913
- Vaṁśapūra, one of the siddhas, 414
- Vaṁśastha, characteristics of the metre, 912
- Vanamāla, form of Viṣṇu at Kiṣkindhā, 841

- Vānaraka, at Gayā, 341  
 Vānarī, a spirit seizing the child in the sixteenth year, 825  
 symptoms of the child seized by 825-6  
 offering to appease, 826  
 Vānavāsikā, characteristics of the metre, 907, 934  
 Vandani, a formation made with fingers, 66  
 Vaṅga, one of the sons of Bali, 747  
 a place, 640  
 Vañija, a karaṇa, 369fn  
 famine indicated by Sun's transit in, 363  
 vaṅik, an astral combination, 363  
 Vāñśa, letter denoting, 419  
 Vapu, a division of Kośa, 921  
 Vapuṣmān, ruled Śālmala, 322  
 names of sons of, 352  
 varada, a posture of the hands, 857  
 Varāha, form of Viṣṇu at Vardhamāna, 841  
 Viṣṇu resides at Ketumāla as, 326  
 saluted, 62  
 worshipped, 343  
 image of, 115, 131  
 śālagrāma denoting, 125  
 a posture of the hands, 67  
 Varāhakaḷpa, a period, 4, 732  
 Varāha-purāṇa, narrated by lord Viṣṇu, dealing with the account of boar form; extent of; merits of making a gift of it in Caitra, 733  
 Vārāhi, a mother goddess, 139fn  
 invoked, 399  
 image of, 133  
 worshipped, 412, 415  
 name of a metre; the number of letters in the pādas of, 903  
 vārāhi, a herb, 371, 378  
 Varāṇā, a river at Vārāṇasī, 330  
 Varapradā, image of, 138  
 Vārāṇasī, location and greatness of, 330-1  
 an excellent sacred place, 327, 350  
 Vāra-tithi, correction, 365  
 Varcā, son of Soma, 44  
 Vardhamāna, a variety of metre; the number of letters in each pāda of, 903  
 characteristics of, 910  
 —name of a place, 841  
 Vardhani, a water jar used in worship, 68, 94  
 worshipped, 99  
 —a type of temple, 315  
 Varga, son of Turvasu; son of, 747  
 Varṣa, an Ādinātha, 412  
 Varṣaketu, son of Kṣemaka; son of, 749  
 varṣavratas, vows, relating to rainy season, 525  
 Vartulā, a hell, 1039  
 Varuṇa, one of the Ādityas, 45  
 a name of Sun, 136  
 Varuṇa, words denoting, 988  
 made as the king of water, 47  
 image of, 137  
 installation of image of, 173  
 consecration of image of, 174-77  
 meditation of, 286  
 propitiation of, 176, 317  
 meditated upon, 89  
 temple of, 106  
 —a territory, 350  
 —a muhūrta; deeds to be done in, 371  
 vāruṇa, denotes Śatabhiṣak, 360  
 Vāruṇī, a goddess; origin of, 5  
 vāruṇī, one of the dhāraṇas; explanation of, 1050  
 Varūtha, son of Duṣyanta; son of, 747  
 Vāśa, a deity; worshipped, 414  
 vāsaka, a herb, 407  
 Vasantatilaka, characteristics of the metre; differently called by others, 913  
 Vāsaraka, a sacred place, 330  
 vaṣat, use of the term, 403  
 Vāsava, Indra; made the ruler of Maruts, 47  
 Vāsava, denotes the asterism Jyeṣṭhā vasavaḥ, herb denoted by, 406  
 Vasiṣṭha, one of the sages; creation of, 41  
 an interlocutor, 2, 3  
 Daśaratha's request to arrange for Rāma's coronation, 11  
 Bharata brought to the city by, 14  
 saluted by Rāma, 15, 23  
 progeny of; through his wife Urjā, 49  
 goddess earth addressed as born of, 112  
 as one of the seven asterisms having Dhruva in font, 42fn  
 merits of contemplating as a form of god, 842  
 one of the sages who protected the celestials in the battle, 746  
 hymn addressed to Śiva by, 564-65  
 a law-giver, 455  
 Vasiṣṭha, a Pāncarātrāgama, 106  
 Vasiṣṭheśa, at Gayā; obeisance and offering of piṇḍa to, 342  
 Vāstu, deity worshipped, 50, 51  
 Vāstu, relating to cities, 320-22

- Vastūpamā, explanation of, 940  
 vāstupūjā, performed by Rāma, 14  
 Vastūthāpana, a variety of Ārabhaṭi, 928  
 Vasu, a son of Purūravas, 739  
 —wife of Mārica Kaśyapa, 739  
 Vasus as born from, 44  
 vasu, merits of use of herb denoted by, 408  
 Vasudeva, born to Śūra, 744  
 a manifestation of Kaśyapa, 744  
 wife of; sons of, 744  
 other sons of, 744  
 birth of Kṛṣṇa to Devaki; wife of, 26  
 story relating to, 26, 26fn  
 Kṛṣṇa entrusted to Nanda by, 27  
 worshipped by Kṛṣṇa, 28  
 Vāsudeva, as a form of Hari, 91  
 the foremost among the Yādavas, 25  
 Jarāsandha referred to as the des-piser of, 28  
 as leading the Yādavas, 736  
 Pauṇḍraka asserting as the real, 28fn  
 seen by Yudhiṣṭhira on the way to heaven, 38  
 image of, 115, 130  
 characteristics of the image of, 118-23  
 installation of an image of, 161-64  
 located on the thumbs, 56  
 obeisance made to, 1  
 worshipped, 50, 71  
 refers to Viṣṇu; worshipped by Rāma, 23  
 characteristics of formulae relating to, 62  
 recitation of mantra relating to, 53  
 use of basic syllable of, 67, 68  
 oblations made to, 73  
 —a śālagrāma, 124, 125  
 Vāsuki, one of the eight chief ser-pents; the number of heads of, 807  
 born from Kadrū, 46  
 made the ruler of Nāgas, 47  
 was used as the rope while churning the ocean, 5, 745  
 as a garland on the neck of goddess Kubjikā, 415  
 —a sacred spot; as being present at Prayāga, 330  
 Vasuloka, Bhīṣma waiting on the bed of arrows to reach, 34  
 vasumati, a nerve, 316  
 Vasus, a class of semi-divine beings, 44fn  
 born from Vasu, 44  
 the names of the eight, 44  
 Pāvaka made as the king of, 47  
 directed Bhīṣma to wait to reach Vasuloka, 34  
 mode of consecration of, 180  
 vaṭa, a tree, 92, 324  
 Vāta, Wind god; birth of Bhima from, 32  
 —the name of a temple, 318  
 Vaṭeṣa, an excellent place, 328  
 Vātormi, characteristics of the metre, 912  
 Vatsa, son of Pratardana; son of, 749  
 Vatsabhūmi, son of Vatsaka, 749  
 vatsaka, father of Vatsabhūmi, 749  
 Vaṭu, a form of Rudra, 252  
 Vaṭuka, obeisance made to, 414  
 a form of Gaṇapati, 412  
 Vava, an astral combination, 363  
 Vāyavi, a spirit possessing the child in the thirteenth year; symptoms of child possessed by; offering to appease; bathing and fumigation when the child is possessed by, 825  
 Vāyaviya-purāṇa, narrated by Vāyu relating incidents of Śveta kalpa; extent of; to be copied and given as a gift in Śrāvaṇa, 732  
 vāyavya, denotes the asterism svāti; commended for copulation, 434  
 vāyavyakrcchra, expiation of; eating handful of food everyday for a month, 483  
 Vāyu, image of, 106, 137  
 propitiation of, 176  
 contemplation on, 286  
 syllables of; used for purification, 60  
 worshipped by inhabitants of Śāl-mala, 352  
 Vāyutirtha, at Gayā, 341  
 Vāyuvegā, location of letter denoting the goddess, 417  
 image of, 138  
 Veda, efficacy of herb denoted by, 470, 408  
 vedāḥ, denotes a herb, 406  
 Vedanā, sons of, 49  
 Vedānta, is knowledge about Brahman, 1082  
 Vedas, goddess as the source of, 26  
 the number of hymns of all, 730  
 division of at the end of dvāpara, 429  
 the different recensions of, 730-31  
 Hayagrīva a demon killed by Viṣṇu to rescue, 4  
 reference to those who had become Bauddhas abandoning, 38  
 adored, 50  
 Vedaśirā, wife of Mrkaṇḍu, 49  
 Vedhā, a goddess, 292  
 Vedic study, period for commencing and cessation of, 456

- Vegavati, characteristics of the metre, 910  
 vehicle, words for, 1019  
 veins, convey the ten life-forces, 556-7  
 number 72000; the names of ten prominent, 556  
 Vena, son of Aṅga and Sunithā, 42  
 birth of Aṅga when his right hand was charred, 42fn  
 story relating to, 42  
 venereal disease, remedy for, 774  
 venom, due to all insects; remedy for, 819-20  
 due to centipedes; remedy for, 819  
 (See also poison)  
 Venus, words denoting, 989  
 distance of; from Mars, 354  
 distance of; from Mercury, 354  
 chariot of, 356  
 letters presided over by, 374  
 period (years) of influence of, 363, 393  
 presides over a part of a day, 381  
 gives mental happiness, 377  
 confers good occupying first house, 383  
 confers good occupying the second or third house, 383  
 indicates happiness occupying the seventh house, 383  
 auspicious occupying the ninth house, 384  
 confers gain in the tenth house, 384  
 beneficial in the twelfth house, 384  
 plenty of wealth etc., in the period of, 393  
 marriage not commended when set, 357  
 investiture of sacred thread not commended when set, 359  
 building of a house should be avoided when set or transition, 360  
 defeat indicated by movement from its own asterism, 386  
 image of, 137  
 contemplated as white, 828  
 verbs, three forms of bhāva, karmaṇi and kartari, 981  
 transitive and intransitive; the two other forms of, 981  
 primary affixes added to, 985-6  
 Vetāla, beads belonging to Śikhā class, 894  
 vibhadra, a pitcher, 270  
 Vibhava, a year of the Hindu calendar, 404  
 vibhāvanā (imagination), an embellishment of senses, 939  
 explanation of, 941-2  
 Vibhiṣaṇa, a demon; Hanūmat searching the house of, 19  
 prevented Rāvaṇa from killing Hanūmat, 20  
 anointed as the ruler of Laṅkā, 21  
 was on the side of Rāma, 22  
 Laṅkā entrusted by Rāma to, 23  
 became deep-rooted in dharma, 24  
 invoked for destroying evil demons, 84  
 Vibhu, son of Prastāra, 323  
 —son of Varṣaketu; son of, 749  
 Vibhūti, a female divinity; worshipped, 51  
 vibhūti, a nerve, 316  
 Vicitrakeśa, an attendant of Śiva, 201  
 Vicitravīrya (ka), son of Śantanu and Kālī (Satyavati), 31, 751  
 Ambikā and Ambālikā became wives of; died on account of consumption, 31  
 Viḍālā, image of, 138  
 Viḍālākṣi, consort of Skanda, 134  
 viḍāṅga, a herb, 407  
 Vidarbha, son of Jyāmagha; sons of, 741  
 Vidarbha, king of; benefit gained by giving a lamp by the wife of, 526  
 vidarbha, explanation and use of the term, 403  
 Vidāri, a demones; worshipped with red lotuses, 109  
 word with lotus flowers offered to, 274  
 worshipped outside, 317  
 vidharkṣa, to be avoided in a marriage, 357  
 Vidhātṛ, son of Brahmā, 50fn  
 father of Mṛkaṇḍu, 49  
 adored, 50, 88  
 Vidhātṛi, a female deity, located, 292  
 Vidruma, a boundary mountain, 352  
 Vidura, begot by Kṛṣṇa Dvaipāyana through the wife of Vicitravīryaka, 751  
 was burnt by forest fire, 36  
 honoured Kṛṣṇa, 33  
 Vidūratha, son of Udarka; also known as Daśārha; son of, 742  
 —chief among the charioteers; son of Bhajamāna; son of, 743  
 —son of Suratha; son of, 750  
 Vidiṣa, son of Ghrta; son of, 747  
 Vidyā, a goddess; worshipped, 413  
 Vidyādharas, image of, 137  
 Vidyākoṭīśvara, worshipped, 414  
 Vidyās, two kinds of—parā and aparā; explanation of, 1077  
 Lord Viṣṇu is of the form of two, 491  
 Vidyēśvaras, the names of the eight, 875

- Vidyujjīhvā, image of, 138  
 Vidyēśas, meditation of, 291  
 Vidyunmālā, characteristics of the metre, 911  
 Vidyutā, a female divinity; worshipped 51  
 Vighna, a variety of bandha, 937  
 Vighnanāśana, a name of the elephant-faced god, 190, 866  
 Vihaṅga, a celestial, 428  
 Vijaya, a minister of King Daśaratha, 11  
 Vijaya, a year of the Hindu calendar, 405  
 —a muhūrta; deeds to be done in, 371  
 —a kind of temple, 315  
 —a pitcher, 270  
 —a modification of the array daṇḍa, 633  
 Vijayā, a goddess accomplishing a charm, 375  
 —one of the wives of Kṛṣṇa, 744  
 —a stone, 269  
 Vijayāntikā, image of, 138  
 vikalā, correction, 367  
 application of, 368  
 vikalpa, relating to a kind of yamaka, 936  
 Vikarālā, a hell, 1038  
 Vikāri, a year of the Hindu calendar, 405  
 Vikaṭa, a name of the elephant-faced god, 190, 866  
 vikaṭa, a posture relating to archery, 646  
 Vikarama, a form of Rudra, 252  
 —a year of the Hindu calendar, 404  
 vikrāntayamaka one of the yamakas, 935  
 Vikriyopamā, explanation of, 940  
 Vikṛtā, image of, 138  
 Vikṛtānā, image of, 138  
 Vikṛtī, a year of the Hindu calendar, 405  
 classical metres based on, 914  
 Vikuṣi, was born from Ikṣvāku; was a divine ruler, 736  
 Vilamba, a year of the Hindu calendar, 405  
 vilāsinī, used in a paste for subjugation, 372  
 Vilepa, a hell, 532  
 Vimala, a Rudra, 254  
 —a place, 842  
 vimala, a ray of the Sun, 195  
 Vimalā, a female divinity; image of, 138  
 worshipped, 51  
 invoked, 111  
 form of Viṣṇu to be represented as attended by, 131  
 vimalā, a nerve, 316  
 Vimalas, five names of, 415  
 vimāna, a type of temple, 314  
 Vinaśana, as meritorious, 327  
 Vinatā, a monkey; accompanied Rāma to Laṅkā, 21  
 Vinatā, mother of Aruṇa and Garuḍa, 46  
 mother of Garuḍa, 63fn  
 Vinatāśva, a son of Sudyumna; ruled over the western part of the earth, 735  
 Vināyaka, conquered by Tārṅśya, 30  
 image of, 134  
 installation of image of, 172  
 mode of worshipping of, 865  
 merits of worshipping, 343  
 Vināyakā, letter denoting, 417  
 Vindhya, a mountain, 350, 842  
 Narmadā and other rivers flow from, 351  
 Vipāpmā, one of the sons of Āyus, 739  
 Viparitākhyānikā, characteristics of the metre, 910  
 Viparitopamā, explanation of, 940  
 Vipāṇa, a division of Vithi, 928  
 vipat, one of the tārābalas, 359  
 Vipracitti, married Sindhikā, 45  
 Vipula, a mountain, 324  
 Vipulā, characteristics of the metre, 906, 909  
 Vira, one of the four sons of Tamśurodha, 749  
 —one of the seven sons of Suhotra and Girikā, 750  
 Virabhadra, image of, 135, 139  
 Viraja, son of Sāvarni Manu, 428  
 Virajā, son of Tvaṣṭā, 323  
 —a place, 841  
 Viraka, one of the four sons of Śibi, 747  
 Virakataka, one of the siddhas, 414  
 Viraṇa Prajāpati, father of Viriṇi, 42  
 Viras, the name of the formulae of Rudra, 895  
 Virāsana, a posture, 473, 482  
 Virasena, a guard of the door; to be worshipped, 93  
 Virāt, son of Nara, 323  
 —metre; the number of letters in a quarter of, 903  
 composition of the metre, 904  
 Virāṭa, country, 33  
 king of, 33fn  
 drowned in the ocean of arrows of Droṇa, 35  
 Virāt gāyatri, the number of letters in the pāda of, 903  
 viravaktra, an array, 630

- Virgo, friendly with Scorpion, 392  
 has dual nature, 384  
 one should do agriculture in, 361  
 goddess Durgā is awakened when  
 Sun enters, 362  
 time taken by Sun to transit, 384
- Vīrīmśa, a class of men in the Plakṣa-  
 dvīpa, 351
- Vīriṇī, daughter of Virāṇa Prajāpati;  
 also known as Puṣkariṇī, 42
- Virocana, son of Prahrāda, 46  
 father of Bali, 8fn, 46  
 —a muhūrta; deeds to be done in, 371  
 virodha (contradiction), an embel-  
 lishment of sense, 939  
 explanation of, 942
- Virodhi, a year of the Hindu calendar,  
 405
- virtues, eight kinds of, 86  
 ten kinds of, 493  
 of religious students, 617
- Virūpākṣa, a demon; killed by Rāma,  
 22
- Virūpākṣī, a goddess dwelling in the  
 essence, 375
- Viśākha, younger brother of Kumāra,  
 44
- Viśākha identified with Skanda, 134
- Viśākhā, an asterism; belongs to the  
 sphere of fire, 387  
 down-faced, 381  
 known as Tripuṣkara, 382  
 grains increased if a formula is  
 written and placed in, 361  
 an employer should not be attended  
 upon in, 360  
 misery caused by Sun's transit in,  
 363  
 assigned in the south-west, 385  
 location of, 400
- Viśākhayūpa, a place, 841
- Viśāla, a prince, 339  
 —a type of temple, 314  
 —a modification of the array daṇḍa,  
 633
- Viśālā, at Gayā, 339, 342  
 —a nerve, 316
- Viśālākṣī, image of, 138
- Viśandhī, an impurity, 947  
 two kinds of, 948
- Viśeṣaka, division of poetry called, 919  
 definition of the kāvyā known as,  
 920
- Viśeṣokti, explanation of, 941
- Viṣkambha, the part of which to be  
 avoided, 383
- Viśloka, characteristics of the metre,  
 907
- Viṣṇu, synonyms of, 986  
 the different names of, 65
- Śrī as the consort of, 49
- Brahmā was born from the navel  
 lotus of, 9, 31  
 identical with brahman, 355  
 as the cause of the universe, 356  
 as the refuge of Śiva, 746
- Garuḍa as the vehicle of, 51  
 Prācinabarhis conferred status of  
 progenitor by, 43
- Dhruva's steadfast devotion to, 41fn  
 manifestation as a Fish, 2, 3ff  
 killed Hayagrīva, a demon, 4  
 tortoise form of, 2, 5ff  
 manifestation as a boar, 7ff  
 Prahrāda as a staunch devotee of, 46  
 the first war assuming the form of  
 a man-lion, 745  
 manifestation as Rāma, 9ff  
 Rāma praised by Indra and others  
 as; worshipped by Rāma, 23  
 meditative sleep cast on the sons of  
 Hiranyakaśipu by, 26  
 manifestation as Kṛṣṇa, 25-31  
 removed the oppression of the de-  
 mons on earth, 36
- Yādava women referred to as the  
 wives of, 37  
 manifestation as Buddha, 38  
 manifestation as Kalki, 38  
 manifestation as Vyāsa and divisions  
 of Vedas etc., 730  
 kings etc. as manifestations of, 746  
 the different manifestations of; and  
 the battles in which he partici-  
 pated, 745  
 manifestations innumerable, 39  
 past manifestations of, 428  
 greatness of; knowing the objects of  
 world as manifestations of, 1077  
 different forms of, 82  
 characteristics of the form of, 128  
 characteristics of the different forms  
 of, 129-31  
 as being present in all the beings,  
 1075  
 invoked differently by different men,  
 1075  
 the Purāṇa dealing with the eternal  
 form of, 3  
 reference to Garuḍa, vehicle of, 30  
 presiding deity of an element, 271  
 image of, 130  
 installation of the image of, 172  
 to be meditated, 53, 58  
 to be contemplated at the conflu-  
 ence of Ganges with the ocean,  
 841  
 adoration of different forms of, 127-  
 29  
 prostration of, 176

- worship of the disc, gem etc., of, 63  
 adoration of the weapons of, 66  
 reference to Bhiṣma as contemplating on, 35  
 assignment of, 69  
 purification of fire of and boiling food intended for, 59  
 placing on head of the hand of, 61  
 primordial form dissolved in fire, 73  
 mode of worshipping, 50-53  
 mode of worshipping in nine compartments, 527-28  
 mantra for the seat and image of, 52  
 meditation on man-lion form of, 53  
 salutations made to, 50, 62  
 meditated, 68  
 worshipped in a circular altar, 70  
 merits of worshipping, 51  
 as the greatest kinsman, merits of meditating on, 1074  
 greatness of a person who has attained, 1075  
 the qualification of a person who attains the place of, 1075  
 merits of contemplation on, 1077  
 merits of worshipping, 644, 731  
 the greatness of, 731  
 the greatness of fiftyone names of, 840-42  
 hymn on; destroys all sins, 483-5  
 a hymn that destroys evil addressed to, 728-29  
 śālagrāma representing, 125  
 —a name of the Sun, 136  
 devas born as one of the Ādityas as, 45  
 made as the lord of Suns, 47  
 —a law-giver, 455  
 Viṣṇudāsaka, one of the sons of Vasudeva and Devakī; was killed by Kāṁsa, 744  
 viṣṇukrānta, a herb used as a paste, 372  
 used as a charm, 406  
 Viṣṇumadvrata, explanation of, 525  
 Viṣṇupada, at Gayā; merits of doing ancestral rite at, 339  
 Viṣṇuvrata, details relating to, 499-500  
 Viṣṇuyaśas, father of Kalki, 38  
 viśokā, an occult nerve, 316  
 viśokadvādaśī, on the practice of, 512  
 Viśravas, son of Pulastya; wives and progeny of, 24  
 Viṣṭi, a karaṇa, explanation of, 369fn  
 adverse effect of Sun's entry in, 363  
 viṣṭirāhu, description of, 410  
 Viśva, tantra spoken by, 106  
 Viśvā, mother of Viśvedevas, 44  
 viśvacakra, a great gift, 544  
 Viśvagāśva, son of Pṛthu, 736  
 Viśvajit, son of Brhadratha; son of, 748  
 Viśvakarman (celestial architect), was born from Kaśyapa and Prabhā, 44  
 made a mace for Viṣṇu, 334  
 image of, 137  
 the sculptor should be imagined by the priest as, 118  
 Viṣvaksena, form of Viṣṇu; characteristics of, 131  
 to be worshipped, 61  
 worshipped, 66, 100  
 merits of worshipping, 51  
 carving of staff similar to that of, 115  
 Viśvāmītra (sage), son of Gādhi; sons of, 749  
 respected on account of his glory, 10  
 one of those who protected the sages in battle, 746  
 Viśvārcā, a female energy placed at the end of a petal; colour of, 136  
 Viśvarūpa, one of the Rudras, 45  
 form of Viṣṇu; characteristics of the image of, 131  
 installation of the image of, 172  
 Viśvarūpikā, image of, 138  
 Viśvedevas, born to Viśvā and Kaśyapa, 44  
 mode of consecration of the image of, 180  
 invoked at the time of śrāddha, 346  
 one of the siddhas, 414  
 Viśveśvara, form of Viṣṇu on river Śoṇā, 841  
 Vitāla, a nether world, 353  
 vitality, the things which give, 756  
 Vitamaya, son of Manasyu; son of, 748  
 Vitānaka, characteristics of the metre, 908  
 Vitatha, worshipped, 316  
 born to Bharata after performance of rituals by Bharadvāja; five sons of, 749  
 Vithi, a type of drama, 921  
 thirteen sub-divisions of, 928  
 a component of the mode Bhārati, 928  
 Vitihotra, Ananta was the son of, 741  
 Vitihotras, one of the five branches of Haihayas, 741  
 Vivasvat, one of the Ādityas, 45  
 a god to be worshipped, 317  
 worship of, 274  
 viveka, denotes power to distinguish, 1018  
 vomiting, beneficial drinks during, 754  
 oil boiled with herbs to be used for bathing to remedy, 774  
 vow, of giving a gift of lamp, 525-6

- of fasting; mode of practising and merits of, 533-34  
 on the eleventh day; merits of, 532  
 rules relating to the practice of, 493, 538  
 certain regulations relating to, 497  
 ten virtues to be practised during, 493  
 eight things which do not vitiate a vow, 496  
 resolutions relating to, 496-7  
 to be observed on the first lunar day, 497-8  
 to be observed on the second lunar day, 498-500  
 to be observed on the third lunar day, 500-3  
 to be observed on the fourth lunar day, 503  
 to be observed on the fifth lunar day for the serpents, 504  
 to be observed on the sixth day, 504  
 to be observed on the seventh lunar day for the sun, 504-5  
 to be observed on the eighth lunar day; for lord Kṛṣṇa, 505-6, 507-8  
 to be observed on the ninth lunar day for goddess Durgā, 509-10  
 to be observed on the tenth lunar day; merits of, 510-11  
 to be practised on the eleventh day for Lord Viṣṇu, 511  
 to be practised on the twelfth lunar day, 512-3  
 to be practised on the thirteenth lunar day, 515-6  
 to be practised on the fourteenth lunar day for lord Śiva, 516-7  
 relating to week days, 519-20  
 relating to different asterisms, 520-21  
 that are practised on certain days, 522-3  
 to be performed in different months, 523-4  
 relating to different seasons, 524-25  
 merits of practising, 591, 538  
 expiation for breaking, 496
- Vraja, one of the sons of Dhiṣaṇā, 43  
 Vrajyās, names of sections of Kośa, 921  
 vrata, as a penance, 492-3  
 vratibandha, one of the Vedic rites, 59  
 vṛddha, formulae having upto 300 letters, 895  
 Vṛddhaka, a fierce force; prayer made for protection from, 84  
 Vṛddharevati, a terrible force; prayer made for protection from, 84  
 Vṛddhaśarman, one of the sons of Āyus, 739
- Vṛjivān, son of Kroṣṭu; son of, 741  
 Vṛka, son of Rohitāsva; son of, 737  
 Vṛkala, a son of Siṣṭi and Succhāyā, 42  
 Vṛkatejasa, a son of Siṣṭi and Succhāyā, 42  
 Vṛkodara, denotes Bhimasena,  
 Vṛndāvana, Kṛṣṇa's visit to, 27  
 Vṛntā, characteristics of the metre, 912  
 Vṛṣa, Indra at the time of the 11th Manu, 428  
 Vṛṣa (Viṣa), a year of the Hindu calendar, 404  
 Vṛṣabha, son of Kuśāgra; son of, 750  
 vṛṣabha, a type of temple, 315  
 Vṛṣākapi, one of the Rudras, 45  
 Vṛṣaparvan, father of Śarmiṣṭhā, 25, 740  
 daughters of, 46  
 Vṛṣasena, son of Karna; son of, 748  
 Vṛścika, vikala correction for, 367  
 (See also Scorpion)  
 Vṛṣṇi, one of the four sons of Sātvata, 742  
 Vṛṣṇis, a division of Yādavas, 736  
 Vṛṣṭi, one of the four sons of, 742  
 Vṛtra, a demon, killed by lord Viṣṇu in his ninth manifestation in the form of a foam, 745, 746  
 Vṛtreṣa, a siddha to be worshipped, 415  
 Vṛtta, characteristics of the metre, 914  
 Vṛtta, a division of Padya; characteristics of, 919  
 Vṛttas, three divisions of, 919  
 vṛtti, see modes  
 Vyādhi, born from Mrtyu, 49  
 vyāghāta, an adverse period to be avoided, 383  
 Vyāhāra, a division of Vithi, 928  
 vyāhṛtis of gāyatri, name of the sage associated with, 562  
 Vyākaraṇa (grammar), as an Aparāvidyā, 2  
 Vyāla, a variety of Daṇḍaka; formation of, 915  
 Vyāna, a vital wind, 253  
 carried by the vein Hastijūhvā, 556  
 functions of, 557  
 vyantaras, a variety of serpents; have mixed marks born at an unspecified time, 807  
 Vyāsa, as a manifestation of lord Viṣṇu, 730  
 divided the Vedic hymns and Upaniṣads into recensions, 730  
 as an interlocutor, 1  
 birth of Dhṛtarāṣṭra from, 31  
 consoled Arjuna, 37  
 a law-giver, 455  
 Vyastasambandhatā, an impurity, 947

- vyatipāta, an obstacle to be avoided, 383
- Vyatikopamā, explanation of, 940
- Vyāyoga, a type of drama, 921
- Vyoma, worshipped, 316
- Vyoma, son of Vidūratha; son of, 742
- Vyūhas, the names of the eight, 65
- wages, commensurate with work, 675
- war, when one should begin a, 623
- warriors, the duties of different kinds of, 613
- wasting diseases, food that gives strength in, 754
- water, as a form of Viṣṇu, 173
- words used in the sense of, 995
- word denoting drops of, 989, 995
- asterisms belonging to regions of, 388
- relative merits of bathing in different kinds of, 436
- cold, as the best astringent, 757
- waves, words denoting, 995
- wealth, words denoting, 1022
- word representing desire for, 995
- three kinds of acquisition of, 541
- should be acquired by rightful means, 617
- period within which one can claim his ownership of, 657
- weapons, of different kinds; words denoting, 1020
- two kinds of— weapons and missiles, 645
- two kinds of— those cast off and those retained, 645
- two divisions of— curved and conceit, 645
- the gradations in the use of, 645
- should be worshipped before an expedition is made, 639
- should be washed before use, 647
- propitiatory rites for, 883-85
- Wednesday, discharge of debt to be made on, 358
- the first shave of a child is commended on, 359
- harvested grains to be taken into the house on, 361
- loss brought by Ārdrā occurring on, 376
- inauspicious nature of third day occurring on, 381
- Rāhu lies at the north on, 409
- week days, the names of the presiding deities of, 805
- weight, different measures of, 588
- welfare, words denoting, 991
- white, words denoting, 992
- white, word denoting little, 992
- wind, words denoting, 988
- sphere of; asterisms belonging to, 387
- that is deranged; remedy for, 756
- remedy for eighty kinds of diseases due to deranged, 774
- remedy for the removal of excess of, 775
- wind and bile, remedy for deranged, 776
- wine, three kinds of; women mentioned as the fourth, 1042
- winning, different means for, 629
- witnesses, lawsuit depending on, 654
- codes relating to, 656-7
- qualifications and rules relating to, 661-2
- when considered as false, 663
- of the plaintiff should be heard first, 657
- women, words which denote, 1013
- words denoting different, 1014
- words denoting the parts of body of, 1016
- characteristic features of, 637-8
- when allowed to re-marry, 434
- when declared as pure and impure, 463
- three divisions of property of, 541
- results of the defect of association with, 627
- nature of treatment after delivery of, 756
- wonder, origin of the sentiment, 924
- wooden water-carrier, word denoting, 996
- words, having many meaning, 1001-1005
- denoting conjunctural stories, 992
- division of, 918
- repetition of; two kinds of—single letter or many letters, 933
- two kinds of defects of, 947
- denoting celestial region and nether world; synonyms of, 986ff
- of threat; fine relating to, 676
- mono-syllabic; their meaning, 950-52
- world, Brahman as the cause of; Pradhāna as the cause of, 949
- worldly events, words denoting, 992
- worms, remedy which destroys, 755, 776
- remedy to remove all, 766
- worship, words denoting, 1017
- words denoting mode of, 1017
- mode of, 54-56
- of deities, mode of, 190-95
- five constituents of, 836
- of Viṣṇu and other gods, 50-53

- relating to forms such as Vāsudeva, 62-66  
 in different diagrams of the shape of a lotus, circle etc., 880-83  
 of gods in sixtyfour squares, 272ff  
 in eightyone squares, 275  
 of Hari in Sarvatobhadra, 75-78  
 of different gods in a lotus figure, 79-81  
 for success in battle, 425  
 different flowers used in, 528-29  
 withered and broken flowers not to be used in, 529  
 merits of, 538  
 of gods; expiations for discontinuing, 490-2  
 worshippers, of lord; four types of, 1069  
 wound, a paste that heals, 775  
 healing medicine for, 768  
 wounds, a paste for cleaning, 774  
 due to affected arteries, 775  
 parasites of; juice that destroys, 775  
 a decoction for cleaning, 774-5  
 wrath, sentiment of; origin of, 923  
 three-fold; factors accomplishing, 931  
 wrestling, modes of, 652-3
- Yādavas, belong to the race of Yadu, 25  
 counted as eighty thousand; were protected by Kṛṣṇa, 745  
 rise of innumerable, 31  
 Kāṁsa's father made ruler of, 28  
 Kālayavana, as a foe of, 28fn  
 Kṛṣṇa's amusement at Dvārakā with, 30  
 destruction of, 36, 37  
 legend relating to destruction of, 36fn  
 Arjuna's performance of obsequies of, 37
- Yadu, one of the sons of Yayāti and Devayāni, 740  
 founder of a dynasty, 740  
 Yādavas came in the race of, 25  
 five sons of, 740  
 one of the seven sons of Suhotra and Girikā, 750
- Yajamāna, explanation of the term; synonyms of, 1017
- Yajñadatta, an ascetic youth killed by Daśaratha, 14
- Yajñavarāha, form taken by Viṣṇu, 7
- Yājñavalkya, as a priest of Kalki, 38  
 branches of Yajurveda founded by, 429  
 —a law-giver, 455
- Yajur hymns, creation of, 40
- Yajurveda, an Aparāvidyā, 2  
 branches of, 730  
 division into four of, 429  
 division into seven of, 429  
 number of hymns of, 730  
 auspicious for Yama, 93  
 the hymns to be recited by a follower of, 287  
 use of the hymns of, 695-704  
 the hymns of; which confer fortune, 710  
 assigned on the fingers, 64
- Yākini, a goddess, 415
- Yakṣa, image of, 106
- Yakṣa, born from Khasā, 47  
 Kṛṣṇa married the daughter of, 28  
 prayer made for protection from, 84
- Yakṣiṇī, a monstress possessing the child in the fourteenth year; symptoms of child possessed by; offering to appease; bathing when the child is possessed by, 825
- Yakṣman, worshipped, 317
- Yama, born to Sun and Samjñā, 735  
 also called Dharmā; Yudhiṣṭhira as born due to the grace of, 32  
 domain enlarged due to Bhārata war, 35  
 made the king of manes, 47  
 Kṛṣṇa was worshipped by, 28  
 image of, 106, 137, 314  
 investiture of sacred thread for the image of, 215  
 contemplation of, 286  
 requested to come, 336  
 propitiation of, 176  
 worshipped, 51, 55  
 praise of, 403-4  
 asterism of, 384  
 —name of celestials during the period of Svāyambhuva Manu, 427  
 —a law-giver, 455  
 —a muhūrta; deeds to be done in, 371  
 —denotes daily rites, 1018
- Yamaka, explanation of; two kinds of  
 —contiguous and non-contiguous, 934  
 further divisions of, 934  
 ten prominent kinds of, 935
- Yāmala, a method of locating mantras, 416  
 mode of worship of Gauri according to, 897
- Yamagitā, narration of; consists of exposition made by Kapila and others, 1073-76
- Yamajihva, a guardian deity, 284  
 image of, 138  
 worship of, 273
- Yamas, description of, 1076

- Yamasūryaka, the name of a temple, 318
- Yāmi, Nāgavithi born from, 44
- Yamunā, the spirit afflicting the child in the eighth month; the symptoms of child seized by, 823
- the spirit possessing the child in the seventh year, 824
- symptoms of the child possessed by, 824-5
- offering to appease, 825
- bathing and fumigation for child possessed by, 825
- born to Rājñi and Sun, 735
- river; Kṛṣṇa's conquest of Kāliya in, 27
- was dragged by Pralamba, 30
- flowing at Prayāga, 329
- region of; indication for the destruction of, 387
- image of, 133
- worship of, 197
- worshipped, 51, 88
- Trivikrama to be contemplated at, 841
- Yāmya, denotes the asterism Bharāṇi, medicine to be administered in, 358
- imparting the science of archery to be done in, 359
- yaśā, a vein; carries the wind Kūrma, 556
- Yāska, an authority on metrics, 903
- Yaśodā, lord Hari as a child taken by Vasudeva to, 26
- in the custody of Nanda, the husband of, 27
- Yaśdoharā, one of the daughters of Devaka; married by Vasudeva, 742
- Yaśovati, a nerve, 316
- Yātānā, a monstress affecting the child in the second year; symptoms of the child affected by; offering to appease; bathing and other practices for child affected by, 824
- Yathāsāṅkhya (relative enumeration), an excellence of word and sense; explanation of, 946
- Yati, one of the seven sons of Nahuṣa; even as boy contemplated on Viṣṇu and attained him, 740
- explanation of, 911
- yaticāndrāyaṇa, an expiation; explanation of, 482
- yatis, significance of the term, 1018
- Yaugiki, an excellence of word, 944
- yava, a measure, 107, 123, 140
- Yāvadarthatā, an embellishment of sound and sense, 942
- explanation of, 942-3
- Yavamadyā, composition of the metre, 904
- yavamadyamā, a measure, 107
- yavamati, characteristics of the metre, 911
- Yavanas, Kālayavana as the king of, 28fn
- Yavinara, one of the five born from Bāhyāśva, 749
- Yayāti, one of the seven sons of Nahuṣa, 25, 31, 740
- rescued Devayāni and married her, 25fn
- married Devayāni the daughter of Sukra, 740
- married also Śarmiṣṭhā, daughter of Vṛṣaparva, 740
- had two sons through Devayāni and three sons through Śarmiṣṭhā, 740
- years, cycle of; results indicated by names of, 404-5
- yellow, words denoting, 992
- Yoga, one of the five factors in the almanac; correction for, 368, 369
- division of time; good or bad known from names, 371
- and its constituents; explanation of, 1041
- has eight constituents, 1082
- relating to a mantra, 403
- Yoginis, image of, 138
- Yogīśavimāla, worshipped, 415
- yogorasya, an array; two wings in the array daṇḍa, 634
- yonī, a posture made with the hands, 95, 898
- Yuddhamuṣṭi, one of the sons of Ugrasena, 742
- Yudhājī, uncle of Bharata, 11
- born to Mādri and Dhṛṣṭa, 743
- Yudhiṣṭhira, born to Pāṇḍu and Kuntī from god Dharma, 32, 744, 751
- son of, 751
- was defeated by Duryodhana in dice, 33
- Kṛṣṇa's directive to fight with Duryodhana, 33
- army of, going to Kurukṣetra, 34
- killed Śalya, 35
- became a king after the war, 36
- set on his final journey, 37
- Yuga(s), extent of, 39fn
- creation takes place in every, 45
- salutation made to 50
- herb denoted by, 406
- Yugandhara, son of Dhuni; son of, 743
- Yūka, a measure, 207
- yukti, an embellishment of word, 932
- explanation of; six kinds of, 933

- yūñjate mana*, a hymn, 437  
 yuthi, yūthikā, a herb, 371, 378  
 yūthikā, a flower, 529  
 Yuva, a year of the Hindu calendar, 404  
 Yuvanāśva, son of Āyus, 736  
 —son of Raṇāśva; son of, 737
- Yuyudhāna, another name of Sātyaki, 743  
 Zodiacal signs, movable; fixed and dual; their influence on the days; the time taken by the Sun to traverse, 384